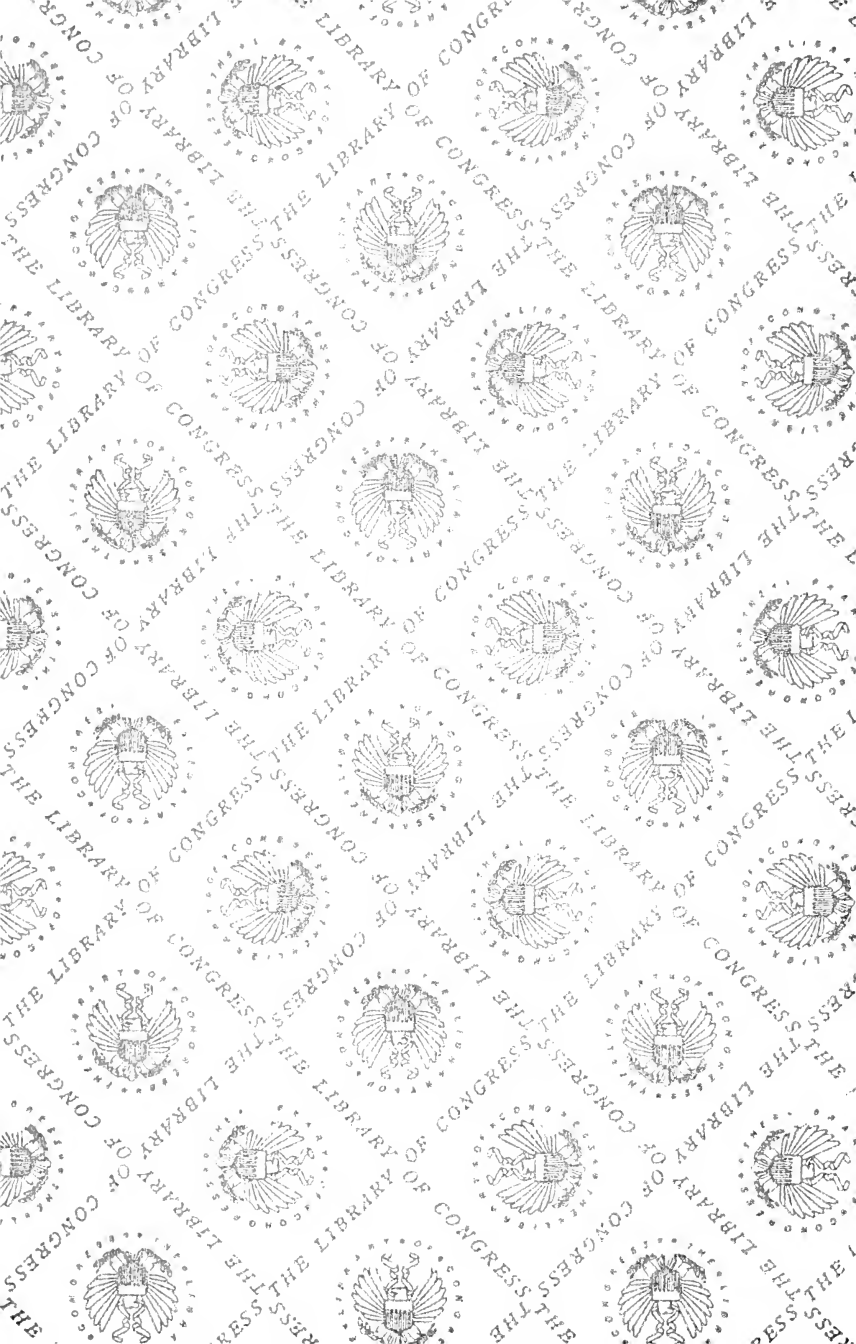
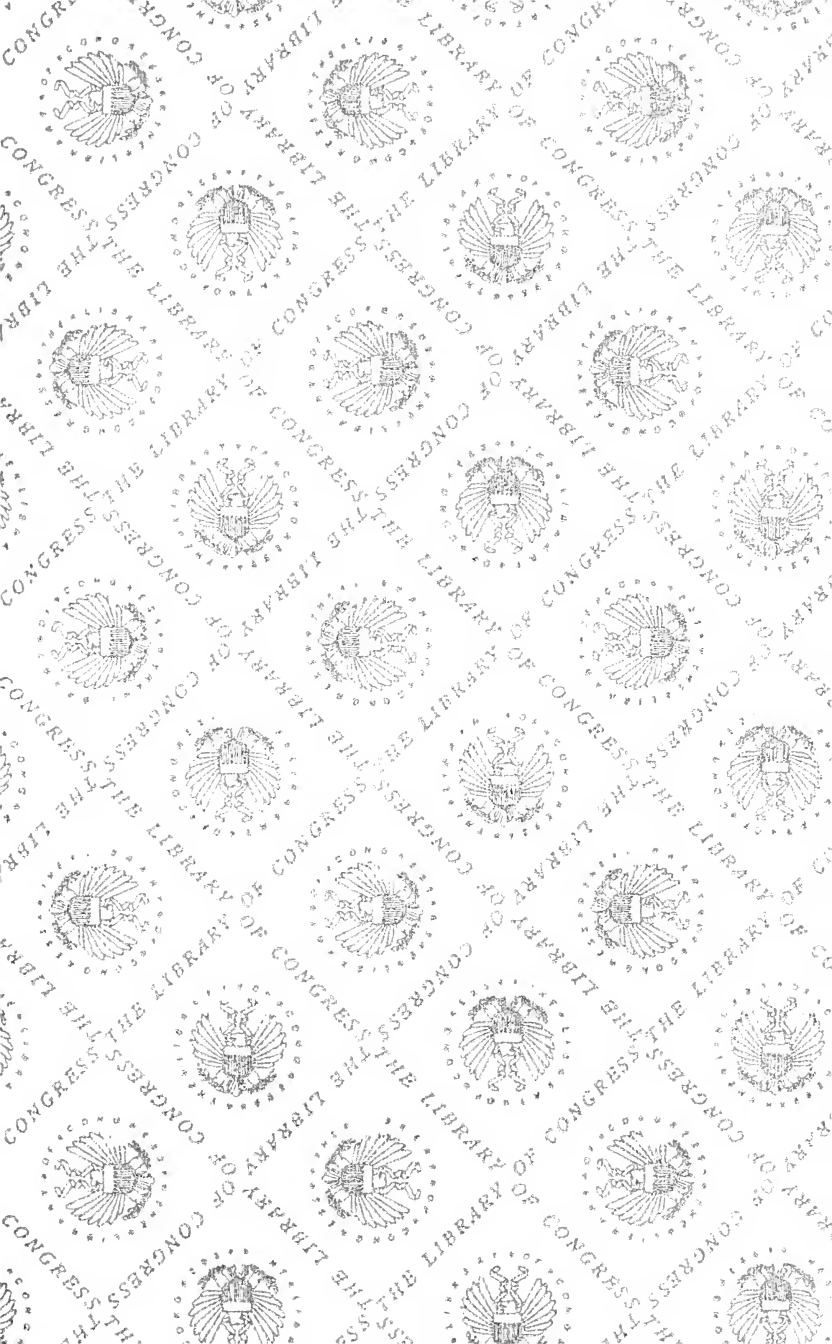


LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00003271080







Revised Electrotpe Edition.

A

PICTORIAL HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES.

FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

By BENSON J. LOSSING,

AUTHOR OF "THE PICTORIAL FIELD BOOK OF THE REVOLUTION," "ILLUSTRATED FAMILY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," "PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES FOR SCHOOLS," "EMINENT AMERICANS," ETC. ETC.

ILLUSTRATED BY OVER 200 ENGRAVINGS.

NEW YORK:

PUBLISHED BY MASON BROTHERS,

H. H. BANCROFT, & CO., SAN FRANCISCO.

Deposited in Clerk's Office, Dist. Ct. New York April 30. 1858.

E 178
1
L 865
Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by

MASON BROTHERS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

LOSSING'S HISTORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

COMPLETE SERIES FOR ALL CLASSES.

LOSSING'S PICTORIAL PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; 222 pages
12mo. Price 60 cents.

LOSSING'S PICTORIAL SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; 371 pages
large 12mo. Price \$1.

LOSSING'S ILLUSTRATED FAMILY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; with a
Frontispiece illuminated in colors. *For District, School, and Family Lib-*
raries. 672 pages imperial octavo, bound in emblematically embossed
and gilt leather. *Sold by Subscription only.*

DESCRIPTION OF THE FRONTISPIECE.

In front sits HISTORY, with her pen and tablet, making her records of human progress. Before her lies the open book of THE PAST, full of her chronicles. Near her is a globe, emblem of the theater of those achievements, whose memory she preserves. At her side is ART, delineating a map of the New World, in which we live, with the word *Excelsior* at the top, meaning "more lofty"—the destiny of our country. Upon a pedestal is a marble bust of Franklin, under which was written by a distinguished French statesman, "He wrested the thunder from heaven, and the scepter from tyrants." It indicates the perpetuity of the memory of the founders of our Republic, to be like that of marble. Above the group, just soaring, is winged FAME, bearing a medalion likeness of Washington in one hand, and her trumpet in the other. In the back ground is an unfinished Pyramid, emblematic of our Confederacy of States, continually increasing, and adding block after block of imperishable material to the wonderful structure, so high already as to overlook the nations of the earth. The branches of the olive and oak, on either side, symbolize the *peace* which prevails within our borders, and the *strength* which it imparts.

ELECTROTYPED BY
T. B. SMITH & SON.
82 & 84 Beekman-street.

PRINTED BY
C. A. ALVORD,
15 Vandewater st., N. Y.

INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS.

BEFORE commencing the preparation of the following pages, I carefully examined the various small Histories of the United States in use, noted their obvious excellences and defects, and endeavored to learn what was needed in the arrangement of a plan more attractive and efficient for instructing the young people of our country in its wonderful story, than had been hitherto employed. Using the best results of the labors of others in this special field for a foundation, I have constructed this volume of materials taken from the earlier, most elaborate, and most reliable historians of our continent, on a plan which, I believe, will be found, by instructors and pupils, to possess superior advantages as an easy and thorough method for teaching and acquiring an accurate general knowledge of events relating to the birth and growth of our Republic.

The work is arranged in six chapters, each containing the record of an important period. The first exhibits a general view of the *Aboriginal* race who occupied the continent when the Europeans came. The second is a record of all the *Discoveries* and preparations for settlement made by individuals and governments. The third delineates the progress of all the *Settlements* until colonial governments were formed. The fourth tells the story of these *Colonies* from their infancy to maturity, and illustrates the continual development of democratic ideas and republican tendencies which finally resulted in a political confederation. The fifth has a full account of the important events of the *War for Independence*; and the sixth gives a concise history of the *Republic*, from its formation to the present time.

I have endeavored to show the cause of every important event, and thus, by developing the philosophy of our history, to make it more attractive and instructive than a bald record of facts. And wherever the text appeared to need further elucidation, I have given additional facts in foot-notes. These may be profitably consulted by teacher and pupil, for they will greatly aid them in obtaining a clear understanding of the subject.

The system of concordance interwoven with the foot-notes throughout the entire work, is of great importance to instructor and learner. When a fact is named which bears a relation to another fact elsewhere recorded in the volume, a reference is made to the *verse* and *page* where such fact is mentioned. A knowledge of this relationship of separate events is often essential to a clear view of the subject, and without this concordance, a great deal of time would be spent in searching for that relationship. With the concordance the matter may be found in a moment. Favorable examples of the utility of this new feature may be found on page 91. If strict attention shall be given to these references, the whole subject will be presented to the mind of the student in a comprehensive aspect of unity not to be given by any other method. It will greatly lessen the labors of the teacher, and facilitate the progress of the learner.

To economize space, and prevent confusion, the dates have been put in brackets in their proper places in the text. When the volume shall be used as a reading book, these inclosed figures may easily be omitted. So with the references: they may be passed without notice; and by these omissions the sentences will appear unbroken. The questions are few, and are suggestive and comprehensive. They are so constructed that the student will be compelled to acquire a thorough knowledge of the subject under consideration before a correct answer to the question can be given. Much of this part of the labor is left to the judgment of the teacher.

The engravings are introduced not for the sole purpose of embellishing the volume, but to enhance its utility as an instructor. Every picture is intended to illustrate a fact, not merely to beautify a page. Great care has been taken to secure accuracy in all the delineations of men and things, so that they may not convey false instruction. Geographical maps have been omitted, because they must necessarily be too small to be of essential service. History should never be studied without the aid of an accurate atlas.

With these few observations concerning the general plan of this work, I submit the volume to the public, willing to have its reputation rest upon its own merits.

C O N T E N T S.

CHAPTER I.

THE ABORIGINES.

Section I. General characteristics of the Indian Tribes, 7.—II. The Algonquins, 12.—III. The Huron-Iroquois, 17.—IV. The Catawbias, 19.—V. The Cherokees, 20.—VI. The Uchees, 21.—VII. The Natchez, 21.—VIII. The Mobilian Tribes, 22.—IX. The Dahcotah, or Sioux Tribes, 23.—X. The Extreme Western Tribes, 25.

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERIES.

Section I. Scandinavian Voyages and Discoveries, 26.—II. Spanish Voyages and Discoveries, 27.—III. English and French Discoveries, 35.

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENTS.

Section I. Periods of Settlement—Virginia, 47.—II. New York, 53.—III. Massachusetts, 53.—IV. New Hampshire, 63.—V. Maryland, 64.—VI. Connecticut, 66.—VII. Rhode Island, 70.—VIII. Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, 72.—IX. The Carolinas, 76.—X. Georgia, 78.

CHAPTER IV.

THE COLONIES.

Section I. Virginia, 81.—II. Massachusetts, 90.—III. New York, 111.—IV. Maryland, 120.—V. Connecticut, 123.—VI. Rhode Island, 126.—VII. New Jersey, 127.—VIII. Pennsylvania, 130.—IX. The Carolinas, 132.—X. Georgia, 139.—XI. A Retrospect, 142.—XII. The French and Indian War, 147.

CHAPTER V.

THE REVOLUTION.

Section I. Preliminary Events, 177.—II. First Year of the War for Independence, 187.—III. Second Year of the War for Independence, 197.—IV. Third Year of the War for Independence, 211.—V. Fourth Year of the War for Independence, 224.—VI. Fifth Year of the War for Independence, 231.—VII. Sixth Year of the War for Independence, 239.—VIII. Seventh Year of the War for Independence, 247.—IX. Closing Events of the War for Independence, 257.

CHAPTER VI.

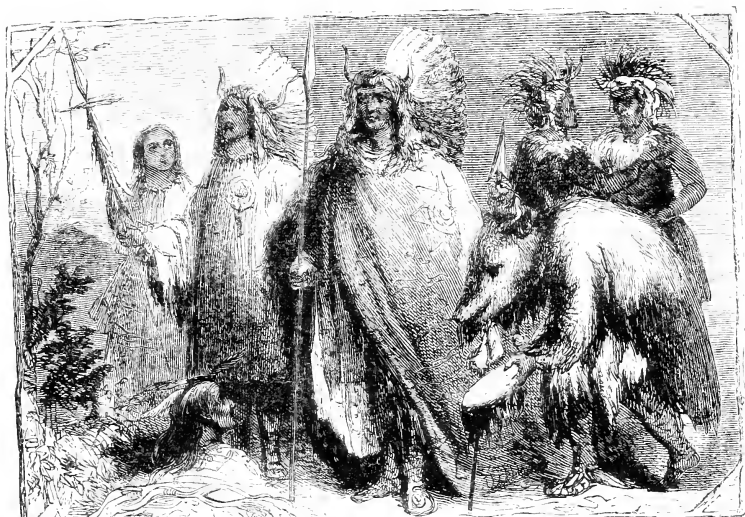
THE CONFEDERATION.

Section I. Washington's Administration, 263.—II. Adams's Administration, 270.—III. Jefferson's Administration, 272.—IV. Madison's Administration, 278.—V. The Second War for Independence, 284.—VI. The Second War for Independence continued, 293.—VII. Monroe's Administration, 301.—VIII. Adams's Administration, 305.—IX. Jackson's Administration, 308.—X. Van Buren's Administration, 314.—XI. Harrison's and Tyler's Administration, 317.—XII. Polk's Administration, 320.—XIII. Taylor's and Fillmore's Administration, 324.—XIV. Pierce's Administration, 343.—Inauguration of Buchanan, 350.

S U P P L E M E N T.

The Declaration of Independence, 353.—The Signers of the Declaration, 359.—Constitution of the United States, 360.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SIoux INDIANS.

CHAPTER I.

THE ABORIGINES.

SECTION I.

1. THE Aborigines, or first inhabitants of a country, properly belong to the history of all subsequent occupants of the territory. The several nations of red or copper-colored people, who occupied the present domain of the United States when Europeans first came,

form as necessary materials for a portion of the history of our Republic, as the Frenchmen¹ and Spaniards² by whom parts of the territory were settled, and from whom they have been taken by conquest or purchase.

2. The history of the Indian³ tribes, previous to the formation of settlements among them, by Europeans,⁴ is involved in great obscurity. Whence came

1. Verse 2, page 148.

2. Verse 17, page 40.

3. Verse 12, page 31.

4. Before the year 1607.

QUESTION.—1. What are Aborigines? and what their historical position?



RED JACKET.

Origin of the American Indians.

Strange stories concerning them.

they? is a question yet unanswered by established facts. In the Old World, the monuments of an ancient people often record their history. In North America such intelligible records are wanting. Within almost every State and Territory remains of human skill and labor have been found,¹ which seem to attest the existence here of a civilized nation or nations, before the ancestors of our numerous Indian tribes became masters of the continent. Some of these appear to give indisputable evidence of intercourse between the people of the Old World and those of America, centuries, perhaps, before the birth of Christ, and at periods soon afterward.² We have no proof that such intercourse was extensive; that people from the Eastern hemisphere ever remained long enough in America to impress their character upon the country or the Aborigines, if they existed; or that a high degree of civilization had ever prevailed on our continent.

3. Some refer the origin of the Indian tribes to the Phœnicians and other ancient maritime nations; others to the Egyptians and Hindoos; and others find their ancestors among the "lost tribes of Israel," who "took counsel to go forth into a farther country where never mankind dwelt,"³ and crossed from Asia to our continent, by way of the Aleutian Islands, or by Behring's Straits.⁴ These various theories, unsupported as they are by a sufficiency of acknowledged facts, have no practical value for the young student of our history. The proper investigation of such subjects requires maturity of judgment when reason and reflection have succeeded the eager credulity of childhood and early youth.

4. When America first became known to Europeans, it afforded materials for wonderful narratives concerning its inhabitants and productions. The few natives who were found upon the seaboard, had all the characteristics common to the human race. The interior of the continent was a deep mystery, and for a long time marvelous stories were related and believed of nations of giants and pigmies; of people with only one eye, and that in the center of the forehead; and of whole tribes who existed without eating. But when sober men penetrated the forests, and became acquainted with the inhabitants, it was discovered that from the Gulf of Mexico to the country north of the chain of great lakes,⁵ the people were not remarkable in persons and qualities,

1. Remains of fortifications, similar in form to those of ancient European nations, have been discovered. Also fire-places, of regular structure; weapons and utensils of copper; catacombs with mummies; ornaments of silver, brass, and copper; walls of forts and cities; and many other things which only a people advanced in civilization could have made.

2. A Roman coin was found in Missouri: a Persian coin in Ohio; a bit of silver in Genesee county, New York, with the year of our Lord 600 engraved on it; split wood and ashes, thirty feet below the surface of the earth, near Fredonia, New York; and near Montevideo, South America, in a tomb, were found two ancient swords, a helmet and shield, with Greek inscriptions, showing that they were made in the time of Alexander the Great, 330 years before Christ.

3. II. Esdras, xiii. 40-45.
4. The people of north-eastern Asia, and on the north-west coast of America, have a near resemblance in person, customs, and languages; and those of the Aleutian Islands present many of the characteristics of both. Ledyard said of the people of eastern Siberia, "Universally and circumstantially they resemble the Aborigines of America."

5. Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, Michigan, and Superior.

QUESTIONS.—2. How do we find the early history of the Aborigines of the United States? What appears to have been their relation to the rest of the world? 3. What are the opinions of some respecting their origin? 4. What strange stories were told concerning some of the tribes? What did a correct knowledge of them show?

Names of Indian nations.

Their characteristics, employment, food, and clothing.

and that a great similarity in manners and institutions prevailed over that whole extent of country.

5. The Indians spoke a great variety of dialects,¹ but there existed not more than eight radically distinct languages among the whole aborigines, from the Atlantic to the Mississippi, and beyond, namely: ALGONQUIN, HURON-IROQUOIS, CHEROKEE, CATAWBA, UCHEE, NATCHEZ, MOBILIAN, and DAHCOTAH or SIOUX. These occupied a region embraced within about twenty-four degrees of latitude and almost forty degrees of longitude, and covering a greater portion of the breadth of the north temperate zone.

6. In physical character, moral sentiment, social and political organization and religious belief, all the nations and tribes were similar. They were all of a copper color; were tall, straight, and well-proportioned; their eyes black and expressive; their hair black, long, coarse, and perfectly straight; their constitution vigorous; and their powers of endurance remarkable. Bodily deformity was almost unknown, and few diseases prevailed. They were indolent, taciturn, and unsocial; brave, and sometimes generous, in war; unflinching under torture; revengeful, treacherous, and morose when injured or offended; not always grateful for favors; grave and sagacious in council; often eloquent in speech; sometimes warm and constant in friendship; and occasionally courteous and polite.

7. The men were employed in war, hunting, and fishing. The women performed all menial services. They bore all burdens during journeys; spread the tents; prepared food; dressed skins for clothing; wove mats for beds, made of the bark of trees; and planted and gathered the scanty crops of corn, beans, peas, potatoes, melons, and tobacco. Their wigwams, or houses, were rude huts, made of poles covered with mats, skins, or bark of trees, and all of their domestic arrangements were very simple.



A WIGWAM.

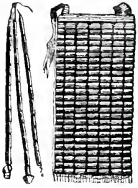
8. Their implements were made of stones, shells, and bones, with which they prepared their food, made their clothing and habitations, and tilled their lands. Their food consisted of a few vegetables, fish, and the meat of the deer, buffalo, and bear, generally roasted upon the points of sticks, sometimes boiled in water heated by hot stones, and always eaten without salt. Their dress in summer was a slight covering around the loins. In winter they were clad in the skins of wild beasts,² often profusely ornamented with the claws of the

1. Dialect is the form of expression peculiar to the people of different provinces or sections of a country where the same *language* is spoken. The people of London and Yorkshire have such different modes of expressing the English language, that it is difficult, sometimes, for them to understand each other. The former is more correct and refined than the latter.

2. See the engraving at the head of this chapter. One of the men is dressed in a bear's skin, and is in the act of representing that animal. Another has the horns of a buffalo and the feathers of eagles on his head. For a notice of the portrait, see Note 3, page 10.

QUESTIONS.—5. How many distinct languages did the Indians possess? Name them. What extent of territory did they occupy? 6. In what were the tribes similar? What was their general character? 7. What was the chief employment of men and women? 8. Of what did their implements, food, and dress consist?

Indian money, writing, weapons, and wars.



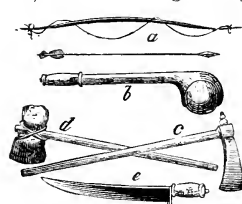
WAMPUM.

bear, the horns of the buffalo, the feathers of birds, and the bones of fishes. Their faces were often tattooed, and generally painted with bright colors in hideous devices. Their money was little tubes made of shells, fastened upon belts or strung in chains, and called *wampum*.¹ It was used in traffic, in treaties, and as a token of friendship or alliance. Wampum belts constituted records of public transactions in the hands of a chief.

9. The Indians had no written language, except rude hieroglyphics, or picture writings.² Their history, consisting of records of warlike achievements, treaties of alliance, and deeds of great men, was, in the form of traditions, carefully handed down from father to son, especially from chief to chief. Children were taught the simple arts practiced among them, such as making wampum, constructing bows, arrows, and spears, preparing matting and skins for domestic use, and fashioning rude personal ornaments.



INDIAN HIEROGLYPHICS.



INDIAN WEAPONS. 5

10. They were ambitious of distinction, and, therefore, war was their chief vocation.³ They generally went forth in parties of about forty bowmen. Sometimes a half dozen, like knights-errant,⁴ went out upon the war-path to seek renown in combat. Their weapons were bows and arrows, hatchets (tomahawks) of stone, and scalping-knives of bone. Some wore shields of bark; others wore skin dresses for protection. They were skillful in stratagem, and seldom met an enemy in open fight. Their close personal encounters were fierce and bloody. They made prisoners, and tortured them,

1. Wampum is made of the clear parts of the common clam shell. This part being split off, a hole is drilled in it, and the form, which is that of beads known as *bugles*, is produced by friction. They are about half an inch long, generally disposed in alternate layers of white and bluish black, and valued, when they become a circulating medium, at about two cents for three of the black beads, or six of the white. They were strung in parcels to represent a penny, three pence, a shilling, and five shillings of white; and double that amount in black. A fathom of white was worth about two dollars and a half, and black about five dollars. They were of less value at the time of our War for Independence. The engraving shows a part of a string and a belt of wampum.

2. This is part of a record of a war expedition. The figures on the right and left—one with a gun, and the other with the hatchet—denote prisoners taken by a warrior. The one without a head, and holding a bow and arrow, denotes that one was killed; and the figure with a shaded part below the cross indicates a female prisoner. Then he goes in a war canoe, with nine companions, denoted by the paddles, after which a council is held by the chiefs of the Bear and Turtle tribes, indicated by rude figures of these animals on each side of a fire.

3. It was offensive to a chief or warrior to ask him his name, because it implied that his brave deeds were unknown. Red Jacket, the great Seneca chief, was asked his name in court, in compliance with a legal form. He was very indignant, and replied, "Look at the papers which the white people keep the most carefully"—(land cession treaties)—"they will tell you who I am." He was born near Geneva, New York, about 1750, and died in 1830. He was the last great chief of the *Senecas*.

4. Knights-errant of Europe, six hundred years ago, were men clothed in metal armor, who went from country to country to win fame by personal combats with other knights. They also engaged in wars.

5. *a*, bow and arrow; *b*, a war-club; *c*, an iron tomahawk; *d*, a stone one; *e*, a scalping-knife.

QUESTIONS.—8. What was their money and its uses? 9. What were their literature and arts? 10. What were the weapons of war, and what the warlike habits of the Indians?

Indian women, customs, burials, and religion.

and the scalps¹ of enemies were their trophies of war. Peace was arranged by sachems² in council; and each smoking the same "pipe of peace," called *calumet*,³ was a solemn pledge of fidelity to the contract.

11. Women were degraded to the condition of abject slaves, and they never engaged with the men in their amusements of leaping, dancing, target-shooting, ball-playing, and games of chance. They were allowed as spectators, with their children, at war-dances around fires, when the men recited the feats of their ancestors and of themselves. Marriage, among them, was only a temporary contract; the men had the right to take wives, and dismiss them at pleasure. The affections were ruled by custom, and those decorous endearments and attentions toward woman, which give a charm to civilized society, were wholly unknown among the Indians. The sentiment of conjugal love was not always wanting, and attachments for life were frequent. There was no society to call for woman's refining qualities to give it beauty, for they had but few local attachments, except for the burial-places of their dead.



CALUMETS.

12. Their funeral ceremonies and methods of burial were similar throughout the whole continent. They laid their dead, wrapped in skins, upon sticks, in the bottom of a shallow pit, or placed them in a sitting posture, or occasionally folded them in skins, and laid them upon high scaffolds, out of the reach of wild beasts. Their arms, utensils, paints, and food were buried with them, to be used on their long journey to the spirit-land. Over their graves they raised mounds, and planted beautiful wild flowers upon them. Relatives uttered piercing cries and great lamentations during the burial, and they continued mourning many days.



BURIAL-PLACE.

13. Their religion was simple, without many ceremonies, and was universally embraced. They had no infidels among them. They believed in the existence of two Great Spirits: the one eminently great was the Good Spirit, and the inferior was an Evil one. They also deified the sun, moon, stars, meteors, fire, water, thunder, wind, and every thing which they held to be superior to themselves, but they never exalted their heroes or prophets above the sphere of humanity. They also adored an invisible great Master of life, in different forms, which they called *Manitou*, and made it a sort of tutelar

1. They seized an enemy by the hair, and, by a skillful use of the knife, cut and tore from the top of the head a large portion of the skin.

2. *Sachems* were the civil heads of nations or tribes; *chiefs* were military leaders.

3. Tobacco was in general use among the Indians for *smoking*, when the white men came. The more filthy practice of *chewing* it was invented by the white people. The *calumet* was made of pipe-clay, and often ornamented with feathers.

QUESTIONS.—11. What was the condition of Indian women? What can you tell about Indian families? 12. How did they bury their dead? How did the relatives of the deceased behave? 13. What was the character of their religion? What were their chief articles of belief?

Indian government.

Fate of the Aborigines.

The Algonquins.

deity.¹ They had vague ideas of the doctrine of atonement for sins, and made propitiatory sacrifices with great solemnity. All of them had dim traditions of the creation, and of a great deluge which covered the earth. Each nation had crude notions, drawn from tradition, of their own distinct origin, and all agreed that their ancestors came from the North.

14. Their government was a mixture of the patriarchal and despotic. All political power was vested in a sachem or chief, who was sometimes an hereditary monarch, but frequently owed his elevation to his own merits as a warrior or orator. While in power, he was absolute in the execution of enterprises, if the tribe confided in his wisdom. Public opinion, alone, sustained him. It elevated him, and it might depose him. Every measure of importance was matured in council, which was composed of the elders, with the sachem as umpire. His decision was final. Whithersoever he led, the whole tribe followed. The utmost decorum prevailed in the public assemblies, and a speaker was always listened to with respectful silence.

15. Such were the inhabitants of the territory of the United States when discovered by Europeans. They were almost all wanderers, and roamed over the vast solitudes of a fertile continent, free as the air, and unmindful of the wealth in the soil under their feet. The great garden of the Western World needed tillers, and white men came. They have thoroughly changed the condition of the land and the people. The light of civilization has revealed, and industry has developed, vast treasures in the soil, while before its radiance the Aborigines are rapidly melting like snow in the sunbeams. A few generations will pass, and no representative of the North American Indian will remain upon the earth.

SECTION II.

THE ALGONQUINS.

1. The French gave the name of ALGONQUIN to an extensive tribe of Indians upon the Ottawa river in Canada, and it was afterward applied to that great collection of tribes north and south of the lakes,² who spoke dialects³ of the same language. They inhabited the territory now included in all of Canada, New England, a part of New York and Pennsylvania, the States of New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, eastern North Carolina above

1. They believed every animal to have had a great original, or father. The first *buffalo*, the first *bear*, the first *beaver*, the first *eagle*, etc., was the *Manitou* of the whole race of the different creatures. They chose some one of these originals as their special *Manitou*, or guardian, and hence arose the custom of having the figure of some animal for the arms or symbol of a tribe, called *Totem*. For example, each of the *Five Nations* (see Sec. III.) was divided into several tribes, designated The Wolf, The Bear, The Turtle, etc., and their respective *totems* were rude representations of these animals. When they signed treaties with the white people, they sometimes sketched outlines of their *totems*. The annexed cut represents the *totem* of *Teyendagages*, of the *Turtle* tribe of the *Mohawk* nation, as affixed by him to a deed.

2. Note 5, page 8.

3. Note 1, page 9.

QUESTIONS.—14. What was the form of aboriginal government? What was the influence of a chief? 15. What has civilized man effected in their country? What is their probable destiny? 1. Who were the ALGONQUINS? What portion of the United States did they occupy?



TOTEM.

Tribes of the Algonquin nation.

Cape Fear, a large portion of Kentucky and Tennessee, and all north and west of these States, eastward of the Mississippi.

2. The ALGONQUIN nation was composed of several powerful tribes, the most important of which were the *Knisteneaux* in the far north, the *Ottawas*, *Chippewas*, *Sacs* and *Foxes*, *Menomonees*, *Miamies*, *Piankeshaws*, *Pottawatomes*, *Kickapoos*, *Illinois*, *Shawnees*, *Powhatans*, *Corees*, *Nanticokes*, *Lenni-Lenapes*, or *Delawares*, *Mohegans*, the *New England Indians*, and the *Abenakes*. There were smaller, independent tribes, the principal of which were *Susquehannocks*, on the Susquehannah, in Pennsylvania; the *Mannahoacks*, in the hill country between the York and Potomac rivers; and the *Monocans*, on the head waters of the James river in Virginia. All of these tribes were divided into cantons or clans, sometimes so small as to afford only a war party.

3. The KNISTENEAX yet [1857] inhabit a domain extending across the continent from Labrador to the Rocky Mountains, and are the hereditary enemies of the ESQUIMAUX, their neighbors of the Polar Circle. The original land of the OTTAWAS was on the west side of Lake Huron, but they were seated upon the river bearing their name when the French discovered them. They claimed sovereignty over that region, and exacted tribute from those who passed to or from the domain of the *Hurons*.¹ They assisted the *Hurons* in a war with the FIVE NATIONS² in 1650, and suffered much. The *Hurons* were almost destroyed, and the OTTAWAS were much reduced in numbers. Some of them, with the *Huron* remnant, joined the *Chippewas*, and finally the whole tribe returned to their ancient seat [1680] in the northern part of the Michigan peninsula. Under their great chief, Pontiac, they were confederated with several other ALGONQUIN tribes of the North-west, in an attempt to exterminate the white people, in 1763.³ Within a fortnight, in the summer of that year, they took possession of all the English garrisons and trading posts in the West, except Detroit, Niagara,⁴ and Fort Pitt.⁵ Peace was restored in 1764-5, the confederation was dissolved, and Pontiac took up his abode with the *Illinois*, where he was murdered. His broken nation sought refuge with the French, and their descendants may yet [1857] be found in Canada.

4. The CHIPPEWAS and POTTAWATOMIES were closely allied by language and friendship. The former were on the southern shores of Lake Superior; the latter occupied the islands and main land on the western shores of Green Bay, when first discovered by the French, in 1761. They afterward seated themselves on the southern shore of Lake Michigan [1701], where they remained until removed, by treaty, to lands upon the Little Osage river, westward of Missouri. They are now [1857] the most numerous of all the remnants of

1. Between the *Ottawas* and *Hurons* were a tribe called *Mississaguies*, who appear to have left the ALGONQUINS and joined the FIVE NATIONS, south of Lake Ontario.

2. Chap. I., Sec. III., Verse 2; also Verse 4, page 17.

3. Verse 50, page 169

4. Verse 50, page 169.

5. Verse 50, page 169.

QUESTIONS.—2. What were the chief tribes of the ALGONQUIN Nation? 3. Where did the *Knisteneaux* dwell? Where did the *Ottawas* dwell? What are the chief events in their history? 4. Where did the *Chippewas* and the *Pottawatomes* dwell? Where is their present home?

the ALGONQUIN tribes. The *Chippewas* and the *Sioux*, west of the Mississippi, are their deadly enemies.

5. The *SACS* and *FOXES* are really one tribe. They were first discovered by the French at the southern extremity of Green Bay, in 1680. In 1712, the French garrison of twenty men, at Detroit,¹ was attacked by the *Foxes*. The French repulsed them, with the aid of the *Ottawas*, and almost destroyed the assailants. They joined the *Kickapoos* in 1722, in driving the *Illinois* from their lands on the river of that name. The *Illinois* took refuge with the French, and the *Kickapoos* remained on their lands until 1819, when they went to the west bank of the *Missouri*, in the vicinity of Fort Leavenworth. The *Sacs* and *Foxes* sold their lands to the United States in 1830. Black Hawk, a *Sac* chief, who, with his people, joined the English in our second war with Great



BLACK HAWK.

Britain,² demurred, and commenced hostilities in 1832.³ The Indians were defeated, and Black Hawk,⁴ with many of his warriors, was made prisoner.

6. The *MENOMONEES* were discovered by the French upon the shores of Green Bay, in 1699. They yet [1857] remain upon their ancient territory, but their southern neighbors and friends, the *Winnebagoes*, have gone westward of the Mississippi.⁵

7. The *MIAMIES* and *PIANKESHAWS* inhabited that portion of the Ohio lying between the Maumee river of Lake Erie, and the ridge which separates the head waters of the Wabash from the Kaskaskias. They were called *Twightwees* by the *FIVE NATIONS* and the English. Of all the Western tribes, these have ever been the most active enemies of the United States.⁶ They have ceded their lands, and are now [1857] far beyond the Mississippi.

8. The *ILLINOIS* formed a numerous tribe, twelve thousand strong, when discovered by the French. They were seated upon the Illinois river, and consisted of a confederation of five families, namely, *Kaskaskias*, *Cahokias*, *Tamaronas*, *Michigamias*, and *Peorias*. Weakened by internal feuds, the confederacy was reduced to a handful, by their hostile neighbors. They ceded their lands in 1818, when they numbered only three hundred souls. A yet smaller remnant are now [1857] upon lands west of the Mississippi.

9. The *SHAWNEES* occupied a vast region west of the Alleghanies,⁷ and their great council-house was in the basin of the Cumberland river. At about the

1. Verse 50, page 169.

2. Verse 6, page 280.

3. Verse 5, page 309.

4. The picture is from a plaster cast of his face, taken when he was a prisoner in New York, in 1832. See Verse 5, page 309.

5. The *Winnebagoes* are the most dissolute of all the Indian remnants. In August, 1853, a treaty was made with them to occupy the beautiful country above St. Paul, westward of the Mississippi, between the Crow and Clear Water rivers.

6. Verse 5, page 280.
7. The Alleghany or Appalachian mountains extend from the Catskills, in the State of New York, in a south-west direction, to Georgia and Alabama, and have been called the "backbone of the country." Some geographers extend them to the White mountains of New Hampshire.

QUESTIONS.—5. Who are the *Sacs* and *Foxes*? and where did they dwell? What are the principal events in their history? 6. What do you know of the *Menomonees* and their neighbors? 7. Where did the *Miamies* and *Piankeshaws* dwell? and where are they now? 8. What was the condition, and where the residence of the *Illinois* tribe when first discovered? Name their divisions. What is their fate? 9. What region did the *Shawnees* inhabit?

time when the English first landed at Jamestown¹ [1607], they were driven from their country by more southern tribes. Some crossed the Ohio, and settled on the Sciota, near the present Chillicothe; others wandered eastward into Pennsylvania. The Ohio division joined the *Eries* and *Andastes* against the FIVE NATIONS, in 1672. Suffering defeat, the *Shawnees* fled to the country of the *Catawbas*, but were soon driven out, and found shelter with the *Creeks*.² They finally returned to Ohio, and being joined by their Pennsylvania brethren, they formed an alliance with the French against the English.³ They were subdued by Boquet in 1763,⁴ and again by Virginians, at Point Pleasant, at the mouth of the great Kenawha, in 1774.⁵ They aided the British during the Revolution, and continued to annoy the Americans until 1795, when permanent peace was established.⁶ They were the enemies of the Americans during their second war with Great Britain. They are now [1857] but a miserable remnant, and occupy lands south of the Kansas river. The road from Fort Independence⁷ to Santa Fé passes through their territory.

10. The POWHATANS constituted a confederacy of more than twenty tribes, including the *Accohannocks* and *Accomacs*, on the eastern shore of the Chesapeake Bay. Powhatan (the father of *Pocahontas*⁸) was the chief sachem, or emperor of the confederacy, when the English first appeared upon the James river [1607]. They remained nominally friendly to the white people during Powhatan's lifetime, but after his death they made two attempts to exterminate the English [1622, 1644]. They were subjugated in 1644,⁹ and from that time they gradually diminished in numbers and importance. Of all that great confederacy in Lower Virginia, it is believed that not one representative on earth remains, or that one tongue speaks their dialect.

11. South of the *Powhatans*, on the Atlantic coast, were the *Corees*, *Cheraws*, and other small tribes, occupying the land once inhabited by the powerful *Hatteras*.¹⁰ They were allies of the *Tuscaroras* in 1711, in an attack upon the English,¹¹ suffered defeat, and have now disappeared from the earth. Their dialect is forgotten.

12. The NANTICOKES occupied the great peninsula between the Chesapeake and Delaware Bays. They were early made vassals, and finally allies on compulsion, of the FIVE NATIONS. They left their ancient domain in 1710, occupied lands upon the Susquehannah, in Pennsylvania, until the Revolutionary War commenced, when they crossed the Alleghanies, and joined the British in the West. They are now [1857] scattered among many tribes.

13. The LENNI-LENAPES,¹² who were frequently called *Delawares*, comprised

1. Verse 10, page 50.

4. Note 7, page 169.

2. Verse 2, page 22.

5. Note 4, page 193.

3. Verse 8, page 150.

6. Verse 8, page 266.

7. United States fort on the Missouri. Santa Fé is in New Mexico, 765 miles south-west of Fort Independence.

8. Verse 14, page 51.

9. Verse 12, page 55.

10. This tribe numbered about 3,000 warriors when Raleigh's expedition landed on *Roanoke Island*, but when the English made permanent settlements in that vicinity, they were reduced to about fifteen bowmen.

11. Verse 13, page 136.

12. *Original people*.—This name has been applied to the whole ALGONQUIN nation. The *Lenni-Lenapes* QUESTIONS.—9. Relate the chief events of the history of the *Shawnees*. 10. Who were the *Powhatans*? What their divisions? Where their country? 11. Where, and who were the *Corees*? 12. Who were the *Nanticokes*? and what became of them?

The Lenni-Lenapes.

The Mohegans.

two powerful nations, namely, the *Minsi* and the *Delawares* proper. The former occupied the northern part of New Jersey, and a portion of Pennsylvania, and the latter inhabited lower New Jersey, the banks of the Delaware below Trenton, and the whole valley of the Schuylkill. The FIVE NATIONS subjugated them in 1650, and brought them under degrading vassalage. They gradually retreated westward before the tide of civilization, and finally a portion of them crossed the Alleghanies, and settled in the land of the *Hurons*,¹ on the Muskingum, in Ohio. Those who remained in Pennsylvania, joined the *Shawnees*,² and aided the French against the English, during the French and Indian war.³ In 1768 they all went over the mountains, and the great body of them became friends of the British during the Revolution. They were at the head of the confederacy of Western tribes who were crushed by Wayne in 1794,⁴ and the following year they ceded all their lands on the Muskingum, and seated themselves near the Wabash. In 1819, they ceded those lands also, and the remnant now [1857] occupy a territory north of the Kansas river, near its mouth.

14. The MOHEGANS were a distinct tribe, on the Hudson river, but the name was given to the several independent tribes who inhabited Long Island and the country between the *Lenni-Lenapes* and the New England Indians.⁵ Of this family, the *Pequods*,⁶ inhabiting eastern Connecticut, on the shores of Long Island Sound, were the most powerful. They exercised authority over the *Montauks* and twelve other tribes upon Long Island. Their power was broken by the revolt of *Uncas* against his chief, *Sassacus*,⁷ a short time before the appearance of the white people. The *Manhattans* were seated upon the Hudson, in lower Westchester, and sold Manhattan Island, whereon New York now stands, to the Dutch.⁸ The latter had frequent conflicts with these and other River Indians.⁹ The Dutch were generally conquerors. The *Mohawks*, one of the FIVE NATIONS,¹⁰ were pressing hard upon them at the same time, and several of the *Mohegan* tribes were reduced to the condition of vassals of that confederacy. Peace was effected in 1665, by the English governor at New York. In the meanwhile, the English and *Narragansets* had smitten the *Pequods*,¹¹ and the remaining independent *Mohegans*, reduced to a handful, finally took up their abode on the west bank of the Thames, five miles below Norwich,¹² at a place still known as *Mohegan Plain*. Their burial-place was at Norwich, and there a granite monument rests upon the grave of *Uncas*. The tribe is now almost extinct—"the last of the Mohicans" will soon sleep with his fathers.



UNCAS' MONUMENT.

claimed to have come from beyond the Mississippi, conquering a more civilized people on the way, who inhabited the great valleys beyond the Alleghany mountains.

1. Verse 1, page 17.

2. Verse 9, page 14.

3. Chap. IV., Sec. XII.

4. Verse 8, page 266.

5. Verse 15, page 17.

6. Verse 8, page 68.

7. Verse 11, page 69.

8. Verse 1, page 111.

9. Verse 6, page 113.

10. Verse 2, page 18.

11. Verse 11, page 69.

12. Note 1, page 256

QUESTIONS.—13. Who were the *Lenni-Lenapes*? Where did they dwell? Relate the principal events in their history. 14. Who were the *Mohegans*? Where was their country? What were their chief tribes? Relate some of the principal events in their history.

15. The NEW ENGLAND INDIANS inhabited the country from Connecticut to the Saco river. The principal tribes were the *Narragansets* in Rhode Island, and the western shores of Narraganset Bay; the *Pokonokets* and *Wampanoags* on the eastern shore of the same bay, and in a portion of Massachusetts; the *Nipmucs* in the center of Massachusetts; the *Massachusetts* in the vicinity of Boston and the shores southward; and the *Pawtucketts* in the north-eastern part of Massachusetts, embracing the *Pennacooks* of New Hampshire. These were divided into smaller bands, having petty chiefs. They were warlike, and were continually engaged in hostilities with the FIVE NATIONS or with the *Mohegans*. The English and Dutch effected a general peace in 1673.¹ Two years afterward [1675], *Metacomet* (King Philip) aroused most of the New England tribes against the English. A fierce war ensued, but ended in the subjugation of the Indians and the death of *Philip*, in 1676.² The power of the New England Indians was completely broken. Some joined the more eastern tribes, and others took refuge in Canada, whence they very frequently came to the border settlements on errands of revenge.³ These incursions ceased when the French dominion in Canada ended in 1763.⁴ When the Puritans came⁵ [1620], the New England Indians numbered about ten thousand souls; now [1857], probably not three hundred representatives remain; and the dialects of all, except of the *Narragansets*, are forgotten.

16. The ABENAKES were eastward of the Saco. The chief tribes were the *Penobscots*, *Norridgewocks*, *Androscoggins*, and *Passamquoddies*. These, with the more eastern tribes of the *Micmacs* and *Etchemins*, were made nominal Christians by the French Jesuits;⁶ and they were all firm allies of the French until the conquest of Canada by the English, in 1760.⁷ All of the ABENAKES, except the *Penobscots*, withdrew to Canada in 1754. A few scattered families of the latter yet [1857] dwell upon the banks of the Penobscot river, and wanderers are seen on the St. Lawrence.

SECTION III.

THE HURON-IROQUOIS.

1. The great body of the IROQUOIS tribes occupied almost the whole territory in Canada south of the Ottawa, between Lakes Ontario, Erie, and Huron; a greater portion of the State of New York, and a part of Pennsylvania and Ohio along the southern shores of Lake Erie. They were completely surrounded by the ALGONQUINS, in whose southern border, in portions of North Carolina and Virginia, were the *Tuscaroras* and a few smaller *Iroquois* tribes.⁸

1. Verse 14, page 9. 2. Verse 30, page 102. 3. Verse 35, page 104. 4. Verse 48, page 168.
5. Verse 1, page 90. 6. Verse 35, page 104. 7. Verse 47, page 168.
8. The Southern *Iroquois* were the *Tuscaroras*, *Choicans*, *Meherrens*, and *Nottoways*. The three latter

QUESTIONS.—15. What were the names, and where were the abodes of the tribes of New England Indians? Relate the principal events in their history. 16. What were the chief tribes of the *Abenakes*? What region did they inhabit? What has become of them? 1. What region did the *Huron-Iroquois* tribes inhabit?

The Huron-Iroquois.

The Five Nations.

The *Hurons* occupied the Canadian portions of the territory, and the land on the southern shore of Lake Erie, and appeared to be a distinct nation; but their language was found to be identical with that of the *Iroquois*. The *Hurons* consisted of four smaller tribes, namely, the *Wyandots*, or *Hurons* proper, the *Attiouandirons*,¹ the *Eries*, and the *Andastes*. The two latter tribes were south of the lake, and claimed jurisdiction back to the domains of the *Shawnees*.²

2. The FIVE NATIONS, or IROQUOIS proper, formed a confederacy composed of the *Seneca*, *Cayuga*, *Onondaga*, *Oneida*, and *Mohawk* tribes, all occupying lands within the present State of New York. The Great Council fire of the Confederation was with the *Onondagas*, and the metropolis, or chief village, was near the present city of Syracuse. The French gave them the name of *Iroquois*; the ALGONQUINS called them *Mingoes*.³ At what time the confederation was formed, is not known.⁴ It was strong and powerful when the French discovered them [1609], and they were then engaged in bloody wars with their kinsmen, the *Wyandots*.

3. The FIVE NATIONS resolved to strike a final and decisive blow against their western neighbors, in 1649, and, gathering all their warriors, made a successful invasion of the *Wyandot*, or *Huron* country. Great numbers of the *Wyandots* were slain and made prisoners, and the whole tribe was dispersed. Some of the fugitives took refuge with the *Chippewas*; others fled to Quebec; and a few became a part of the *Iroquois* confederacy. Yet the spirit of the *Wyandots* was not subdued, and they claimed and exercised sovereignty over almost the whole of the Ohio country. They had great influence among the ALGONQUIN tribes,⁵ and even as late as the treaty of Greenville, in 1795, the principal cession of lands in Ohio to the United States was made by the *Wyandot* chiefs in council.⁶ They, too, are reduced to a mere remnant of less than five hundred souls, and now [1857] occupy lands upon the Neosho river, a chief tributary of the Arkansas.

4. The FIVE NATIONS were exceedingly warlike, and they made hostile expeditions against the New England Indians,⁷ in the east, the *Eries*, *Andastes*, and *Miamies* in the west,⁸ and penetrated to the domains of the *Catawbas*⁹ and *Cherokees*¹⁰ in the south. They subjugated the *Eries* in 1655, and after a contest of twenty years, brought the *Andastes* into vassalage. They conquered the *Miamies*¹¹ and *Ottawas*¹² in 1657, and made incursions as far as the Roan-

were upon the rivers in lower Virginia, called by their respective names, and were known under the general title of *Tuscaroras*.

1. *Neutral Nation*. When the *Hurons* and FIVE NATIONS were at war, the *Attiouandirons* fled to the Sandusky, and built a fort for each of the belligerents when in that region. But their neutrality did not save them from internal feuds, which finally dismembered the tribe. One party joined the *Wyandots*; the other the *Iroquois*.

2. Verse 9, page 14.

3. *Mingoes*, or *Minquas*, was a term more particularly applied to the *Mohawk* tribe. They called themselves *Kayingehaga*—"possessors of the flint." The confederation assumed the title of *Nonoskonti*—"cabin-builders."

4. Probably about the year 1539.

5. Verse 2, page 13.

6. Verse 8, page 266.

7. Verse 15, page 17.

8. Verse 3, page 14.

9. Verse 1, page 13.

10. Verse 1, page 20.

11. Verse 7, page 14.

12. Verse 3, page 13.

QUESTIONS.—1. Of what tribes did the *Hurons* consist? 2. What tribes formed the FIVE NATIONS? What region did they inhabit? Relate the principal events in the history of the FIVE NATIONS. What do you know of the *Wyandots*? 4. What was the character of the FIVE NATIONS? What were their principal war expeditions?

Confederacy of the Six Nations.

Its extinction.

The Catawbas.

oke and Cape Fear rivers to the land of their kindred in dialect, the *Tuscaroras*, in 1701.¹ Thirty years afterward, having been joined by the *Tuscaroras*, and the name of the confederacy changed to that of THE SIX NATIONS, they made war upon the *Cherokees*² and *Catawbas*. They were led on by Hi-oka-too, a *Seneca* chief. The *Catawbas* were almost annihilated by them, after a battle of two days. So determined were the FIVE NATIONS to subdue the southern tribes, that when, in 1744, they ceded a part of their lands to Virginia, they reserved a perpetual privilege of a war-path through the territory.

5. After the *Tuscaroras* were defeated by the Carolinians, in 1712,³ they came northward, and, in 1714, joined the FIVE NATIONS. From that time the confederacy was known as the SIX NATIONS. They were generally the sure friends of the English and inveterate foes of the French.⁴ They were all friends of the British during the Revolution, except a part of the *Oneidas*. The *Mohawks* were the most active enemies of the Americans; and were obliged to leave the State and take refuge in Canada at the close of the Revolution. The others were allowed to remain; and now [1857] mere fragments of that great confederation exist, and, in habits and character, they are radically changed. The confederacy was forever extinguished by the sale of the residue of the *Seneca* lands in 1838. In 1715, the confederacy numbered more than forty thousand souls; now [1857] they are probably less than four thousand, most of whom are upon lands beyond the Mississippi.

SECTION IV.

THE CATAWBAS.

1. The CATAWBAS occupied lands upon the Yadkin and Catawba rivers, south of the *Tuscaroras*, on both sides of the line between North and South Carolina. They were brave but not warlike, and their conflicts were usually in defense of their territory. They expelled the fugitive *Shawnees* [1672],⁵ but were overmatched and desolated by the warriors of the FIVE NATIONS⁶ [1701]. They assisted the white people of South Carolina against the *Tuscaroras* and confederates, in 1712;⁷ but when, three years afterward, the southern tribes, from the Neuse region to that of the St. Mary's in Florida, and westward to the Alabama, seven thousand strong, confederated in an attempt to exterminate the Carolinians,⁸ the *Catawbas* were among them.

2. In 1760, the CATAWBAS were again the friends of the Carolinians when the *Cherokees* made war upon them,⁹ and they remained true friends of the white people afterward. They joined the Americans during the Revolution,

1. Verse 14, page 136.

4. Verse 23, page 157.

7. Verse 14, page 136.

2. Verse 3, page 20.

5. Verse 9, page 14.

8. Verse 20, page 138.

3. Verse 14, page 136.

6. Verse 4, page 18.

9. Verse 49, page 168.

QUESTIONS.—5. How came the confederacy to be called the SIX NATIONS? What was their position during the American War for Independence? 1. What region did the *Catawbas* inhabit? What was their character? What position did they take in 1715? 2. What was their position after 1760?

The Cherokees.	Their wars and alliances.	Their character.
----------------	---------------------------	------------------

and have ever since experienced the fostering care of the State, in some degree.¹ Their chief village was upon the Catawba river, near the mouth of the Fishing Creek,² and there the remnant of the nation, numbering less than a hundred souls, are now [1857] living upon a reservation a few miles square. Their ancient language is almost extinct.

SECTION V.

THE CHEROKEES.

1. Westward, and joining the *Tuscaroras*³ and *Catawbas*⁴ were the CHEROKEES, the brave and noble mountaineers of the South. Their beautiful land extended from the Carolina Broad river on the east, to the Alabama on the west, including the whole of the upper portion of Georgia from the head waters of the Alatomaha, to those of the Tennessee. It is one of the most delightful regions of the United States.

2. The CHEROKEES were the determined foes of the *Shawnees*,⁵ and finally drove them from the country south of the Ohio river. They joined with the *Catawbas* and the white people against the *Tuscaroras* in 1712,⁶ but were members of the great confederation against the Carolinians, in 1715.⁷

3. The CHEROKEES and the FIVE NATIONS had bloody contests for a long time. A reconciliation was effected by the English about the year 1750, and the *Cherokees* became the allies of the peace-makers, against the French. They assisted in the capture of Fort Du Quesne in 1758,⁸ but their irregularities on their return, along the border settlements of Virginia, gave the white people an apparent excuse for killing two or three warriors. Hatred was engendered, and the *Cherokees* soon afterward retaliated by spreading destruction along the frontiers.⁹ Hostilities continued a greater portion of three years, when peace was established in 1761, and no more trouble ensued.

4. The *Cherokees* adhered to the British during the Revolution; and for eight years afterward they continued to annoy the people of the upper county of the Carolinas. They were reconciled by treaty in 1791. They were friends of the United States in 1812, and assisted in the subjugation of the *Creeks*.¹⁰ Civilization was rapidly elevating them from the condition of roving savages, to agriculturists and artizans, when their removal west of the Mississippi was required. They had established schools, a printing press, and other means for improvement and culture, when they were obliged to leave

1. In 1822, a *Catawba* warrior made an eloquent appeal to the Legislature of South Carolina for aid. "I pursued the deer for subsistence," he said, "but the deer are disappearing, and I must starve. God ordained me for the forests, and my ambition is the shade. But the strength of my arm decays, and my feet fail me in the chase. The hand that fought for your liberties is now open to you for relief." A pension was granted.

2. Yorkville district, South Carolina.

3. Verse 4, page 18.

4. Verse 1, page 19.

5. Verse 9, page 14.

6. Verse 14, page 136.

7. Verse 20, page 133.

8. Verse 34, page 162.

9. Verse 49, page 168.

10. Verse 15, page 290.

QUESTIONS.—1. What regions did the *Cherokees* inhabit? 2. What was their position toward the white people in 1712, and afterward? 3. What was their position during the French and Indian war? 4. Relate the chief events in the history of the *Cherokees* since the beginning of the War for Independence

The Uchees.

The Natchez.

Their collision with the French.

their farms and the graves of their fathers, for a new home in the wilderness. They are in a fertile country, watered by the Arkansas and its tributaries, and are in a prosperous condition. They now [1857] number about fourteen thousand souls.¹

SECTION VI.

THE UCHEES.

1. The UCHEES were but a remnant of a once powerful nation when Europeans discovered them. They were seated in the pleasant country extending from the Savannah river, at Augusta, westward to Milledgeville, and along the banks of the Oconee and the head waters of the Great Ogeechee and the Chattahooche. They claimed to be descendants of the most ancient inhabitants of the country, and had no tradition of their ever occupying any other territory than the domain on which they were found. Their language was exceedingly harsh, and unlike that of any other nation. They, too, have left the land of their fathers, and have become partially absorbed by the *Creeks*, with whom about one thousand souls yet [1857] remain.

SECTION VII.

THE NATCHEZ.

1. The NATCHEZ occupied a small territory on the eastern side of the Mississippi, about as large as that of the *Uchees*. It extended north-easterly from the Mississippi along the valley of the Pearl river to the upper waters of the Chickasaw. For a long time they were supposed to belong to the nation of *Mobilian* tribes by whom they were surrounded, but their language proved them to be a distinct people.² They became jealous of the French on their first appearance upon the Mississippi, and finally they conspired with others to drive the intruders from the country. The French fell upon, and almost annihilated the nation, in 1730. They never recovered from the shock, and after maintaining a feeble nationality for almost a century, they have become merged into the Creek confederacy. They now [1857] number less than three hundred souls, and their language, in its purity, is unknown.

1. Note 1, page 25.

2. The *Natchez* worshiped the sun; and some have supposed that they had once been in communication with the sun-worshippers of Central and South America. Note 1, page 331.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where was the country, and what was the character of the *Uchees*? Where are they now?
1. What region did the *Natchez* inhabit? What was their character? What caused their downfall?

SECTION VIII.

THE MOBILIAN TRIBES.

1. The *MOBILIAN* nation was composed of a great number of tribes, speaking different dialects¹ of the same language. Their territory was next in extent to that of the *ALCONQUINS*.² It stretched along the Gulf of Mexico from the Atlantic to the Mississippi, more than six hundred miles; up the Mississippi as far as the mouth of the Ohio; and along the Atlantic to Cape Fear. It comprised a greater portion of the present State of Georgia, the whole of Florida, Alabama, and Mississippi, and parts of South Carolina, Tennessee, and Kentucky. The nation was divided into three grand confederacies of tribes, namely, *Muscogees* or *Creeks*, *Choctaws*, and *Chickasaws*.



SOUTHERN INDIANS.

2. The *Creek Confederacy* extended from the Atlantic westward to the high lands which separate the waters of the Alabama and Tombigbee rivers, including a great portion of the States of Alabama and Georgia, and the whole of Florida. Oglethorpe's first interviews³ with the natives at Savannah, were with the people of this confederacy.

3. The *Seminoles* of Florida and the *Yamassees* or *Savannahs* of Georgia and South Carolina, were of the *Creek* confederacy. The latter were strong and warlike. They were at the head of the Indian Confederacy in 1715.⁴ When the general dispersion followed, the Yamassees took refuge with the Spaniards of Florida. Small bands often annoyed the white frontier settlements of Georgia, but they were not engaged in general hostilities until the Revolution, when the whole *Creek Confederacy*⁵ took part with the British.

4. The *Seminoles* were always hostile to their white neighbors, and bands of them went out upon the war-path, with the *Yamassees*. They joined the British in 1812-'14; and in 1817 they renewed hostilities.⁶ They were subdued by General Jackson, and afterward remained comparatively quiet until 1835, when they again attacked the white settlements.⁷ They were subjugated in 1842, after many lives and much treasure had been sacrificed.⁸ A few of them yet [1857] remain in the everglades of Florida, but a greater portion of the tribe have gone west of the Mississippi, with the other members of the *Creek Confederacy*. The *Creeks* proper now [1854] number about

1. Note 1, page 9.

2. Verse 1 page 12.

3. Verse 5, page 79.

4. Verse 20, page 138.

5. This confederacy now consists of the *Creeks* proper, *Seminoles*, *Coosadas*, *Natchez*, *Hichitties*, and *Alabamas*. The *Creeks*, like several other tribes, claim to be the original people.

6. Verse 4, page 303.

7. Verse 10, page 311.

8. Verse 6, page 316.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the *Mobilian* tribes? What territory did they inhabit? Name their grand divisions? 2. What region did the *Creek* confederacy inhabit? 3. What other tribes were of the *Creek* confederacy? Who were the *Yamassees*? 4. What are the principal events in the history of the *Seminoles*? What is the present condition of the *Creeks*?

twenty-four thousand souls; the number of the whole confederacy is about thirty thousand. They occupy lands upon the Arkansas and its tributaries.

5. The *Choctaws* inhabited the beautiful country bordering upon the Gulf of Mexico, and extending west of the *Creeks* to the Mississippi. They were an agricultural people when the Europeans discovered them; and, attached to home and their quiet pursuits, they have ever been a peaceful people. Their wars have always been on the defensive, and they never had public feuds with either their Spanish, French, or English neighbors. They, too, have been compelled to abandon their native country for the uncultivated wilderness west of Arkansas, between the Arkansas and Red rivers. They now [1857] number about twenty-three thousand souls.

6. The *Chickasaws* inhabited the country along the Mississippi, from the borders of the *Choctaw* domain, to the Ohio river, and eastward beyond the Tennessee to the lands of the *Cherokees*¹ and *Shawnees*.² This warlike tribe were the early friends of the English, and the most inveterate foes of the French, who had twice [1736-1740] invaded their country. They adhered to the British during the Revolution, but since that time they have held friendly relations with the Government of the United States. The remnant, about six thousand in number, are upon lands almost a hundred leagues westward of the Mississippi.

7. Such is the brief history of the aboriginal nations with whom the first European settlers in the United States became acquainted. They have now no legal habitation eastward of the Mississippi; and the fragments of those powerful tribes who once claimed sovereignty over twenty-four degrees of longitude and twenty degrees of latitude, are now [1857] compressed within a quadrangle of about nine degrees, between the Red and Missouri rivers.³ Whether the grave of the last of those great tribes shall be within their present domain, or in some valley among the crags of the Rocky Mountains, expediency will determine.



SECTION IX.

THE DAHCOTAH OR SIOUX INDIANS.

1. The early French explorers found a great number of tribes west of the Mississippi, who spoke dialects⁴ of the same language. They occupied the vast region from the Arkansas on the south, to the western tributary of Lake Winnipeg on the north, and westward to the eastern slopes of the Rocky

1. Verse 1, page 20.

2. Verse 9, page 14.

3. Bancroft [II. 253] makes the following estimate of the entire aboriginal population in 1650: Algonquins, 90,000; Eastern Sioux, less than 3,000; Iroquois, including their southern kindred, about 17,000; Catawbas, 3,000; Cherokees (now more numerous than ever), 12,000; Mobilian tribes, 50,000; Uchees, 1,000; Natchez, 4,000; in all, 180,000.

4. Note 1, page 9.

QUESTIONS.—5. Where was the dwelling-place of the *Choctaws*? What has always been the character of the *Choctaws*? 6. What region did the *Chickasaws* inhabit? What was their character, and what became their condition? 7. What is the general condition of the Indian tribes, with whom the white people first became acquainted?

Mountains.¹ They have been classed into four grand divisions, namely, the WINNEBAGOES, who inhabited the country between Lake Michigan and the Mississippi, among the ALGONQUINS;² the ASSINIBOINS and SIOUX proper, the most northerly nation; the MINETAREE GROUP in the Minnesota Territory, and the SOUTHERN SIOUX, who dwelt in the country between the Arkansas and Platte rivers, and whose hunting-grounds extended to the Rocky Mountains.

2. The *Winnebagoes* often made war upon the *Sioux* west of the Mississippi. They generally lived on friendly terms with the ALGONQUINS, after their warlike spirit was somewhat subdued by the *Illinois*, who, in 1640, almost exterminated them. They were the enemies to the United States during the second war with Great Britain;³ and they confederated with the *Sacs* and *Foxes* in hostilities against the white people, under Black Hawk, in 1832.⁴ The tribe, now [1857] about four thousand strong, is seated upon the Mississippi, about eighty miles above St. Paul, the capital of Minnesota.

3. The *Assiniboin*s yet inhabit their native country. Having separated from the nation, they are called "rebels." Their neighbors, the *Sioux* proper, were first visited by the French in 1660, and have ever been regarded as the most fierce and warlike people on the continent. They occupy their ancient domain, and are now [1857] about eighteen thousand strong.

4. The *Minetarees*, *Mandans*, and *Crows*, form the MINETAREE GROUP. They are classed with the *Dahcotahs* or *Sioux*, although the languages have only a slight affinity. The *Minetarees* and *Mandans* number about three thousand souls each. They cultivate the soil and live in villages. The *Crows* number about fifteen hundred, and are wanderers and hunters. The *Mandans* are very light-colored. Some suppose them to be descendants of a colony from Wales, which, it is believed, came to America under Madoc, the son of a Welsh prince, in the twelfth century.⁵

5. The SOUTHERN SIOUX tribes are eight in number, namely, *Arkansas*, *Osages*, *Kansas*, *Iowas*, *Missouries*, *Otoes*, *Omahas*, and *Puncaks*. They are cultivators and hunters. They live in villages a part of the year, and are abroad, upon their hunting grounds, during the remainder. Of these tribes, the *Osages* are the most warlike and powerful. All of the *Southern Sioux* tribes are upon lands watered by the Missouri and the Platte, and their tributaries.

1. See picture at the head of this chapter for representation of their costume and general appearance.

2. Verse 6, page 14.

3. Verse, 6 page 280.

4. Verse 5, page 309.

5. It is said that Madoc, son of Prince Owen Gwynedd, sailed from Wales with 10 ships and 300 men, about the year 1170, on an exploring voyage westward, and never returned.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where are the *Sioux* Indians located? Name their grand divisions in the North. 2. What is the character and history of the *Winnebagoes*? 3. What do you know of the *Assiniboin*s? What tribes form the *Minetaree group*? 4. What do you know of the *Minetarees* and *Mandans*? 5. What are the names of the Southern *Sioux* Indians?

SECTION X.

THE EXTREME WESTERN TRIBES.

1. Within our newly acquired possessions on the borders of Mexico and the Pacific coast, and the recently organized territories in the interior of the continent are numerous powerful and warlike tribes,¹ of whom little is known, and whose history has no connection with that of the people of the United States, except the fact that they were original occupants of the soil, and that some of them, especially the *Camanches* and *Apaches* of California are the most warlike. The *Pawnees* upon the Great Plains toward the Rocky Mountains are very numerous, but not so warlike; and the *Utahs*, among the Wasatch and neighboring ranges, are strong in numbers. Further northward and westward are the *Black-Foot*, *Crow*, *Snake*, *Nezperces*, and *Flathead* Indians, whose domains stretch away toward the *Knistenaux* and *Esquimaux* on the extreme north.

2. All of these tribes are destined to annihilation. The scythe of civilization is steadily cutting its swaths over all their lands; and the time is not far distant when the footprints of the Indians will be no more known within the domain of our Republic. In future years the dusky son of an exile, coming from the far-off borders of the Slave Lake, will be gazed at in the streets of a city at the mouth of the Yellow Stone, with as much wonder as the *Oneida* woman, with her blue cloth blanket and bead-work merchandise is now [1857] in the city of New York.

1. The whole number of Indians within the present limits of the United States, in 1853, is reported in the Census to be a little more than 400,000. There are about 17,000 in the States eastward of the Mississippi, principally in New York, Michigan, and Wisconsin; the remainder, consisting of *Cherokees*, *Choctaws*, and *Seminoles*, being in North Carolina, Mississippi, and Florida. The number in Minnesota and along the frontiers of the Western States and Texas (most of them emigrants from the country eastward of the Mississippi), is estimated at 110,000. Those on the plains and among the Rocky Mountains, not within any organized Territory, at 63,000; in Texas, at 29,000; in New Mexico, at 45,000; in California, at 100,000; in Utah, at 12,000; in Oregon and Washington Territories, at 23,000. For more minute accounts of the Indians, see Heckewelder's *History of the Indian Nations*; Schoolcraft's *Algic Researches*; McKenney's *History of the Indian Tribes*; Drake's *Book of the Indians*; Catlin's *Letters and Notes*.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where are other Indian tribes within our territory? Name some of the principal tribes in the territories of our Union. 2. What is probably the ultimate destiny of all the Indian Tribes?



COLUMBUS BEFORE THE COUNCIL OF SALAMANCA.

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERIES.

SECTION I.

SCANDINAVIAN VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.



AMERIGO VESPUCCI.

prove, by the strongest circumstantial evidence, that the New England¹ coast was visited, and that settlements thereon were attempted by Scandinavian navigators,² almost five hundred years before Columbus undertook his first voyage to America.

2. The northern navigators were remarkable for their bold-

1. RECORDS of early voyages from Iceland to a continent south-westward of Greenland, have been found. These, and the results of recent investigations, appear to



NORTHMAN.

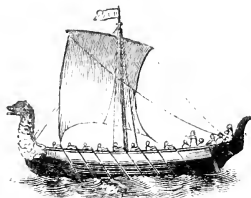
1. The States of our Union, eastward of N. Y., are collectively called New England. See verse 2, p. 58.
2. The ancients called the territory which contains modern Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Lapland, Iceland, Finland, etc., by the general name of Scandinavia.

QUESTIONS.—1. Why is it supposed that America was known to the people of Europe before the time of Columbus?

Voyages of the Northmen.

First Europeans in America.

ness and perseverance. They discovered and colonized Iceland and Greenland; and there was traffic between these colonists and the parent Norwegians and Danes, as early as the year 950. In the year 1002, according to an Icelandic chronicle, a Norwegian vessel, commanded by Captain Lief, sailed from Iceland for Greenland. A gale drove the voyagers to the coast of Labrador. They explored the shores southward to the region of a genial climate and a grape-bearing soil.¹ Other voyages were afterward made by the adventurous Scandinavians, and they appear to have extended their explorations as far as Rhode Island—perhaps as far south as Cape May.



NORMAN SHIP.

3. Settlements in the pleasant climate were attempted; and it is asserted that the child of a Scandinavian mother was born upon the shore of Mount Hope Bay, in Rhode Island.² But they left no traces of their presence here, unless it be conceded that the round tower at Newport,³ about the origin of which history and tradition are silent, was built by the Northmen.

4. Information of these voyages seem not to have spread in Europe, and no records of intercourse with a western continent later than 1120, have been found.

The great discovery was forgotten, or remembered only in dim traditionary tales of the exploits of the old "Sea-Kings"⁴ of the North. When Columbus conceived the grand idea of reaching Asia by sailing westward, no whisper of those Scandinavian voyages was heard in Europe.



TOWER AT NEWPORT.

SECTION II.

SPANISH VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

1. During the first half of the fifteenth century, Spain, Portugal, and France engaged in vigorous efforts to share with Italy the rich commerce of

1. Supposed to be the vicinity of Boston.

2. The old chronicle referred to says that Gudrida, wife of a Scandinavian named Snorre, gave birth to a child in America; and it is further asserted that Thorwaldsen, the great Danish sculptor, was a descendant of this early white American.

3. This structure is of unhewn stone, laid in mortar made of the gravel of the soil around, and oyster-shell lime. It is a cylinder resting upon eight round columns, 23 feet in diameter, and 24 feet in height. It was originally covered with stucco. It stood there when the white people first visited Rhode Island, and the *Narraganset* Indians had no tradition of its origin. There can be little doubt of its having been constructed by those northern navigators, who made attempts at settlement in that vicinity.

4. This name was given to bold adventurers of Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, who rebelled against conquerors, forsook their country, settled upon the islands of the North Sea, and Greenland, and from thence went forth upon piratical expeditions, even as far south as the pleasant coasts of France. They

QUESTIONS.—2. What do you know of the Scandinavian or Norman navigators? 3. Is there any probable evidence of the Scandinavians having been in America? 4. What knowledge of these voyages had the Europeans in the time of Columbus?

Columbus at Lisbon.

His philosophy and religious enthusiasm.

the East Indies. The ocean being the only highway for the rivals, maritime discoveries were prosecuted with untiring zeal. Popular belief pictured an impassable region of fire beyond Cape Bajador, on the coast of Africa; but bold navigators, under the auspices of prince Henry of Portugal, soon penetrated that dreaded latitude, crossed the torrid zone, and, going around the southern extremity of Africa,¹ opened a pathway to the East, through the Indian ocean.



COLUMBUS.

2. Lisbon soon became a point of great attraction to the learned and adventurous. Among others came Christopher Columbus, the son of a wool-carder of Genoa, a mariner of great experience and considerable repute, and then in the prime of life. The rudiments of geometry, which he learned in the university of Pavia, had been for years working out a magnificent theory in his mind, and he came to Lisbon to seek an opportunity to test its truth.

3. While in Lisbon, Columbus loved and married the daughter of Palestrello, a deceased navigator of eminence, and he became possessed of nautical papers of great value. They poured new light upon his mind. He was convinced of the rotundity of the earth, and the necessity of a continent in the Atlantic ocean, to balance the land in the eastern hemisphere; and he believed that Asia could be reached much sooner by sailing westward, than by going around the Cape of Good Hope.²

4. Columbus was imbued with a deep religious sentiment, and he became strongly impressed with the idea that there were people beyond the Atlantic, unto whom he was commissioned by Heaven to carry the Gospel.³ With the lofty aspirations which his theory and his faith gave him, he prosecuted his plans with great ardor. He made a voyage to Iceland, and sailed a hundred leagues beyond, to the ice-fields of the polar circle. He probably heard, there, vague traditions of the early voyages to the western continent,⁴ which gave strength to his own convictions; and on his return, he laid his plans first be-

trafficked, as well as plundered, and finally sweeping over Denmark and Germany, obtained possession of some of the best portions of Gaul. They finally invaded the British Islands, and placed Canute upon the throne of Alfred. It was among these people that chivalry, as an institution, originated; and back to those "Sea-Kings" we may look for the hardest elements of progress among the people of the United States.

1. This point was first discovered by Diaz, a Portuguese navigator, who named it stormy Cape. But King John, believing it to be that remote extremity of Africa so long sought, named it *Cape of Good Hope*. Vasco de Gama passed it in 1497, and made his way to the East Indies beyond.

2. This was 70 years before Copernicus announced his theory of the form of the earth, and 160 before Galileo was persecuted by the Roman Inquisition for declaring that the earth revolved.

3. His name was suggestive of a mission. Christo or Christ, and Colombo, a pigeon—carrier-pigeon. By this combination of significant words in his name, he believed himself to be a *Christ* or *Gospel-bearer*, to the heathen, and often signed his name Christo-ferens, or Christ-bearer.

4. Verse 2, page 26.

QUESTIONS.—1. What motives had the governments of Spain and other countries for making voyages of discovery? What had been done on the ocean? 2. Who was Columbus? 3. What causes and opinions led Columbus to desire a western voyage? 4. What other motives than scientific discovery prompted Columbus? What had been his experience?

The trials of Columbus.

Queen Isabella.

Her noble promises.

fore his countrymen, the Genoese (who rejected them), and then before the monarchs of England¹ and Portugal.

5. King John of Portugal appeared to comprehend the grand idea of Columbus, but it was too lofty for the conceptions of his council and the wise men of Lisbon. For a long time Columbus was annoyed by delays on the part of those to whose judgment the king deferred. While awaiting a decision, his wife died. The last link that bound him to Portugal was broken, and, taking his little son Diego by the hand, he departed on foot, to lay his proposition before Ferdinand and Isabella,² the monarchs of Spain—occupants of the united thrones of Arragon and Castile.

6. Poor and dispirited, Columbus arrived at the gate of a monastery, and begged food for himself and child. The good Father Marchena received him kindly, entered warmly into his plans, and was of essential service to him afterward. Through him Columbus obtained access to the Court; but the war with the Moors, then raging, delayed an opportunity for an audience with the monarchs for a long time. At length a council of the learned men of the nation was convened at Salamanca, to consider his proposition.³ The majority pronounced his scheme vain and impracticable, and unworthy of the support of the government.

7. Still encouraged by Father Marchena (who had been Isabella's confessor⁴), Columbus now obtained a personal interview with the queen. To her he revealed all his plans; told her of the immense treasures that lay hidden in that far distant India⁵ which might be easily reached by a shorter way, and pleaded eloquently for aid in his pious design of carrying the Gospel to the heathen of unknown lands. The last appeal aroused the religious zeal of Isabella, and with the spirit of the Crusaders,⁶ she dismissed Columbus with the assurance that he should have her aid in fitting out an exploring expedition, even if it should require the pawning of her crown jewels to obtain the money.

8. Isabella was faithful to her promise. She fitted out two *caravels* (light coasting ships), and Columbus, by the aid of friends, equipped a third and



ISABELLA.

1. Verse 2, page 35.

2. Isabella was a sister of the profligate Henry the Fourth of Castile and Leon. She was a pious, virtuous, and high-minded woman, then almost a phenomenon in courts.

3. See the picture at the head of this chapter. The Council was composed of the professors of the university, various dignitaries of the Church, and learned friars. They were all prejudiced against the poor navigator, and he soon discovered that ignorance and bigotry would defeat his purposes.

4. All Roman Catholics are obliged to confess their sins to a priest. Rich and titled persons often had a priest confessor for themselves and their families exclusively.

5. Travelers had related wonderful stories of the beauty and wealth of a country beyond the limits of geographical knowledge, and had thus inflamed the avarice and ambition of the rich and powerful. The country was called *Zipangi*, and also *Cathay*. It included China and adjacent islands.

6. About 700 years ago, the Christian powers of Europe fitted out expeditions to conquer Palestine, with the avowed object of rescuing the sepulchre of Jesus, at Jerusalem, from the hands of the Turks. These were called *crusades*—*holy wars*. The lives of 2,000,000 of people were lost in them.

QUESTIONS.—5. What difficulties did Columbus experience in Portugal? 6. Whither did he go from Portugal to obtain aid? What occurred to him at first in Spain? 7. How came Isabella to aid him?

Departure of Columbus.

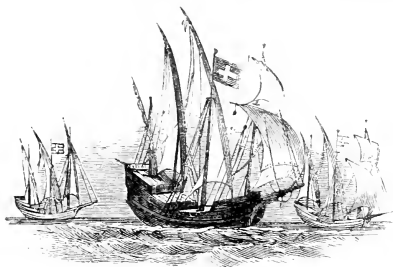
The voyage.

Discovery of land.

larger one. With this little fleet, bearing one hundred and twenty persons, he left Palos, on the Tinto river in Andalusia, on Friday, the 3d of August, 1492, to explore the stormy Atlantic.¹

9. It was a voyage of great trial for the navigator, after leaving the Canary Islands. His theory taught him to believe that he would reach Asia in the course of a few days. But weeks wore away; the needle became unfaithful;²

alarm and discontent prevailed, and several times his followers were on the point of compelling him to turn back.



THE FLEET OF COLUMBUS.

10. On the evening of the 11th of October, the perfumes of flowers came upon the night breeze, as tokens of approach to land. Yet they hesitated to believe, for twice before they had been mocked by other indications of

land being near.³ But at dawn the next morning their delighted eyes saw green forests stretching along the horizon; and as they approached, they were greeted by the songs of birds and the murmur of human voices.

11. Dressed in scarlet, and bearing his sword in one hand, and the banner of the expedition in the other, Columbus landed with his followers, and in the midst of the gorgeous scenery and the incense of myriads of flowers, they all knelt down and chanted a hymn of thanksgiving to God. The natives had gathered in wonder and awe, in the grove near by, regarding the Europeans as children of their great Deity, the Sun.⁴ Little did they comprehend the fatal significance to them, of the act of Columbus, when he set up a rude cross upon the spot where he landed, and took formal



BANNER OF THE EXPEDITION.

1. Columbus was appointed high-admiral of all seas which he might discover, with the attendant honors. Also viceroy of all lands discovered. He was to have one tenth of all profits of the first voyage, and by contributing an eighth of the expense of future voyages, was to have an eighth of all the profits. Although Isabella paid the whole expense, the contract was signed, also, by her husband.

2. Needle, or pointer, of the mariner's compass. This instrument was first known in Europe, at Amalfi, about 1302. The Chinese claim to have possessed a knowledge of it more than 1100 years before the birth of Christ. The needle was supposed to point toward the north star at all times. There is a continual variation from this line, now easily calculated, but unknown until discovered by Columbus. It perplexed but did not dismay him.

3. They had seen birds, but they proved to be the petrel, an ocean fowl. Bits of wood and sea-weeds had also been seen. For an explanation of the latter, see Maury's *Physical Geography of the Sea*.

4. Almost all the natives of the torrid zone of America, worshipped the Sun as their chief visible deity. The great temples of the Sun in Mexico and Peru, were among the most magnificent structures of the Americans, when Europeans came.

QUESTIONS.—8. With what sort of a fleet did Columbus leave Spain? When and from whence did he sail? 9. What occurred during the voyage? 10. What gave indications of land? When was it discovered? 11. Relate the incidents of the landing of Columbus.

possession of the beautiful country in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella.¹

12. The land first discovered by Columbus was one of the Bahamas, now known as Cat Island. The navigator named it San Salvador (holy Saviour); and believing it to be near the coast of farther India, he called the natives *Indians*. This name was afterward applied to all the natives of the adjacent continent.²

13. After spending some time in becoming acquainted with the island, and natives, and unsuccessfully searching for "the gold, and pearls, and spices of Zipangi,"³ he sailed southward, and discovered several other small islands. He finally discovered Cuba and St. Domingo, where he was told of immense gold-bearing regions in the interior. Impressed with the belief that he had discovered *Ophir* of the ancients, he returned to Spain, where he arrived in March, 1493.

14. Columbus was received with great honors,⁴ but considerations of State policy induced the Spanish government to conceal the importance of his discovery from other nations. This policy, and the jealousy which the sudden elevation of a foreigner inspired in the Spaniards, deprived him of the honor of having the New World called by his name. Americus Vesputius,⁵ a Florentine, unfairly won the prize. In company with Ojeda, a companion of Columbus during his first voyage, Americus visited the West Indies, and discovered and explored the eastern coast of South America, north of the Orinoco, in 1499. He published a glowing account [1504] of the lands he had visited,⁶ and that being the first formal announcement to the world of the great discovery, and as he claimed to have first set foot upon the *Continent* of the West, it was called AMERICA, in honor of the Florentine.

15. Columbus made three other voyages to the West Indies,⁷ established settlements, and in August, 1498, he discovered the continent at the mouth of the Orinoco. This, too, he supposed to be an island near the coast of Asia, and he lived and died in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discoveries. During his absence, jealous and unscrupulous men poisoned the minds of the king and queen with false statements concerning the ambitious designs of Columbus, and he was sent back to Spain in chains. Isabella was soon unde-

1. It was a common practice then, as now, for the discoverer of new lands, to erect some monument and to proclaim the title of his sovereign to the territories so discovered. The banner of the expedition borne on shore by Columbus, was a white one, with a green cross. Over the initials, F. and Y. (Ferdinand and Isabella) were golden mural crowns.

2. Verse 2, page 7.

3. Note 5, page 29.

4. Columbus carried back with him several of the natives, and a variety of the animals, birds, and plants of the New World. They excited the greatest astonishment. His journey from Palos to Barcelona, to meet the sovereigns, was like the march of a king. His reception was still more magnificent. The throne of the monarch was placed in a public square, and the great of the kingdom were there to do homage to the navigator. The highest honors were bestowed upon Columbus; and the sovereigns granted him a coat of arms bearing royal devices, and the motto, "To Castile and Leon, Columbus gave a New World."

5. See portrait at the head of this Chapter. The Italians spell his name *Amerigo Vesputici* [Am-e-ree-go Ves-pute-se]. He died while in the service of the king of Spain, in 1514.

6. First in a letter to Lorenzo de Medici, and then [1506] in a volume dedicated to the Duke of Lorraine. These publications revealed what the Spanish government wished to conceal.

7. In his second voyage [1493], Columbus took with him several horses, a bull, and some cows. These were the first animals taken from Europe to America.

QUESTIONS.—12. Where did Columbus first land, and what did he suppose it to be? 13. What did Columbus do, soon after landing? 14. How came Columbus to lose the honor of having his name given to America? Why was it called America?

Other voyages by Columbus.

The Fountain of Youth.

Florida.

ceived, and Columbus was allowed to depart on a fourth voyage. When he returned the queen was dead, his enemies were in power, and he who had shed such luster upon the Spanish name, and added a new hemisphere to the Spanish realm, was allowed to sink into the grave in obscurity and neglect. He died at Valladolid on the 20th of May, 1506. His body was buried in a convent, from which it was afterward carried to St. Domingo, and subsequently to Havana, in Cuba, where it remains.

16. The larger islands of the West India group were soon colonized by the Spaniards; and the happy natives were speedily reduced to slavery. Bending beneath the weight of Spanish cruelty and wrong, they soon sunk into degradation. The women were compelled to intermarry with their oppressors, and from this union came many of the present race of Creoles, who form the numerical strength of Cuba and other West India islands.

17. Tales of gold-bearing regions inflamed the avarice and cupidity of the Spaniards, and exploring voyages from Cuba, St. Domingo, and Porto Rico, were undertaken. The eastern coast of Yucatan was discovered in 1506; and in 1510, Balboa, with a colony, settled upon the Isthmus of Darien. This was the first colony planted on the American continent. Crossing the Isthmus, in search of gold, Balboa¹ saw [1513] the Pacific Ocean in a southerly direction, from the top of a high mountain, and he called it the *South Sea*. In full costume, and bearing the Spanish flag, he entered its waters, and took possession of the "seas, lands," etc., "of the South," in the name of his sovereign.



BALBOA.

18. FLORIDA was discovered in 1512 by John Ponce de Leon, an old visionary who had been governor of Porto Rico. He sailed for the Bahamas in search of a fountain supposed to exist there, and whose waters possessed the quality of restoring old age to the bloom of youth, and making the recipient immortal.

19. On Easter Sunday,² the *Pasquas de Flores*³ of the Spaniards, Ponce de Leon approached the shores of the great southern peninsula of the United States, and landed [March 27, 1512], near the site of St. Augustine.⁴ The forests and the green banks were laden with flowers; and when, soon after landing, Ponce took possession of the country in the name of his sovereign, this fact and the holy day were regarded, and he called the beautiful domain FLORIDA. He continued his searches for the Fountain of Youth all along the

1. The picture gives a correct representation of those armed Spaniards who attempted conquests in the New World. Balboa's fellow adventurers became jealous of his fame, and on their accusations he was put to death by the governor of Darien, in 1517.

2. The day on which is commemorated the resurrection of Christ.

3. Feast of flowers.

4. Verse 15, page 39.

QUESTIONS.—15. Relate the chief incidents of the remainder of his life. Where did he die? Where are his remains? 16. What befell the natives of the islands discovered by Columbus? 17. What other explorations were made? 18. What led to the discovery of Florida? 19. What can you tell of the discovery and naming of Florida?

Discovery of South Carolina.	Discovery of Mexico.	Cortez.
------------------------------	----------------------	---------

coast of Florida, and among the Tortugas Islands, but without success; and he returned to Porto Rico an older, if not a wiser man.

20. During Ponce de Leon's absence in Europe, some wealthy owners of plantations and mines in St. Domingo, sent D'Ayllon, one of their number, with two ships, to seize natives of the Bermudas, and bring them home for laborers. It was an unholy mission. A storm drove the voyagers into St. Helen's Sound, on the coast of South Carolina, and they anchored [1520] at the mouth of the Combahee river. The natives were kind and generous; and, judging their visitors by their own simple standard of honor, they unsuspectingly went upon the ship in crowds, to gratify their curiosity. While below, the hatches were closed, the sails were immediately spread, and those free children of the forest were borne away to work as bond-slaves in the mines of St. Domingo. But the perpetrators of the outrage did not accomplish their designs. One of the vessels was destroyed by a storm; and almost every prisoner in the other refused to take food, and died. This act made the Indians hate the white people intensely.

21. Soon after D'Ayllon's voyage, Ponce de Leon, as governor of Florida, proceeded to plant settlements there. In attempts to do so, the angry natives, who had heard of the treachery of the Spaniards, attacked him furiously. He was mortally wounded, and almost all of his followers were killed. D'Ayllon was then appointed governor of the country which he had discovered and named *Chicora*. He went thither to conquer it, and was received with apparent friendship by the natives on the banks of the Combahee.¹ Many of the men were induced to visit a village in the interior, when the natives practiced the lesson of treachery which D'Ayllon had taught them, and massacred the whole party. The commander himself was attacked upon his own ship, and it was with difficulty that he escaped.

22. In 1517, Cordova commanded an expedition from Cuba, and discovered Mexico. His report of a people half civilized, and possessing treasures in cities, awakened the keenest cupidity of the Spaniards; and the following year Velasquez, the governor of Cuba, sent another expedition to Mexico, under Grijalva. That captain returned with much treasure, obtained by trafficking with the Mexicans.

23. Velasquez now determined to conquer the Mexicans, and possess himself of their sources of wealth. An expedition, consisting of eleven vessels, and more than six hundred armed men, was placed under the command of Fernando Cortez, a brave but treacherous and cruel leader. He landed first at Tobasco, and then at San Juan d'Ulloa,² near Vera Cruz [April 12, 1519], where he received a friendly deputation from Montezuma, the emperor of the nation.³ By falsehood and duplicity, Cortez and his armed companions were

1. D'Ayllon named this river Jordan, for he regarded the country as the new Land of Promise.

2. Pronounced San-whan-da-Ooloo-ah. Verse 24, page 329.

3. The Mexicans, at that time, were making rapid advances in the march of civilization. They were ac-

QUESTIONS.—20. Who else made a voyage to Florida? What was the result? 21. What was the result of efforts to conquer the natives of Florida? 22. When was Mexico discovered, and by whom? 23. What efforts were made to conquer Mexico?

Conquest of Mexico.

Spanish expeditions in Florida.

The Mississippi.

allowed to march to Mexico, the capital. By stratagem and boldness, and the aid of native tribes who were hostile to the Mexican dynasty, Cortez¹ succeeded, after many bloody contests during almost two years, in subduing the people. The city of Mexico surrendered to him [August 23, 1521], and the vast and populous empire of Montezuma became a Spanish province.

24. Seven years later [1528], Narvaez having been appointed governor of Florida, went from Cuba, with three hundred men,² to conquer it. Hoping to find a wealthy empire, like Mexico, he penetrated the unknown interior as far as the southern borders of Georgia. Instead of cities filled with treasures, he found villages of huts, and the monarch of the country living in a wigwam.³ Disappointed, and continually annoyed by hostile savages, who had heard of the treachery at the Combahee,⁴ he turned southward, and reaching the shores of Apallachee Bay, near St. Marks, he constructed rude boats, and embarked for Cuba. The commander and most of his followers perished.

25. The misfortunes of Narvaez did not suppress the spirit of adventure, and FLORIDA (the name applied to all North America), was still regarded by the Spaniards as the new Land of Promise. All believed that in the vast interior were mines as rich, and people as wealthy, as those

of Mexico and Yucatan. Among the most sanguine of these, was De Soto, a brave cavalier who had gained riches and military honors, with Pizarro, in Peru.⁵



DE SOTO.

26. De Soto obtained permission of the Spanish emperor to conquer FLORIDA at his own expense. He was appointed governor of Cuba, and also of Florida, and with ten vessels and six hundred men, all clad in armor, he sailed for the New World. Leaving his wife to govern Cuba, he proceeded to Florida, landed on the shores of

Tampa Bay [June 10, 1539], sent most of his vessels back, and then made his way, among hostile savages, toward the interior of the fancied land of gold.⁶ In the spring they crossed the Apalachian mountains, and penetrated the beautiful country of the *Cherokees*.⁷

27. For several months De Soto and his followers wandered over the hills and valleys of Alabama, in vain searches for treasure, fighting the fierce *Mobilian* tribes,⁸ and becoming diminished in numbers by battle and disease. They passed the winter in the land of the *Chickasaws*;⁹ and in the spring of

quainted with many of the useful arts of enlightened nations, and appear to have been as far advanced in science, law, religion, and domestic and public organization, as were the Romans at the close of the republic. See note 1, page 331.

1. Born, 1485, in Estramadura, Spain. Died in 1554. He committed many crimes in Mexico.

2. They took with them about forty horses, the first ever landed upon the soil of the present United States. These all perished by starvation, or the weapons of the Indians.

3. Verse 7, page 9.

4. Verse 20, page 33.

5. Pizarro was a follower of Balboa. He discovered Peru in 1524, and conquered it in 1532, after much bloodshed. He was born in Estramadura, Spain, in 1475. Was murdered at Lima, in Peru, in 1541.

6. De Soto had a large number of horses. He also landed some swine. These rapidly increased in the forests. They were the first of their species seen in America.

7. Verse 1, page 20.

8. Sec. VIII., page 22.

9. Verse 6, page 13.

QUESTIONS.—24. What can you tell of another Spanish expedition to conquer Florida? 25. What opinion of Florida did the Spaniards possess? 26. What were the principal incidents of the first year of De Soto's expedition to Florida?

End of De Soto's expedition.	Excitement in Europe.	The Cabots.
------------------------------	-----------------------	-------------

1541, they discovered and crossed the Mississippi river. There, in the presence of almost twenty thousand Indians, De Soto erected a cross, made of a huge pine-tree. The ensuing summer and winter were spent in the wilderness watered by the Arkansas and its tributaries, and in the spring they returned to the Mississippi, where De Soto sickened and died, after appointing his successor.¹ They had marched full three thousand miles.

28. The followers of De Soto were now reduced to half their original number, and, after wandering over the prairies watered by the tributary streams of the Red river for many months, they returned to the Mississippi. In rude boats they reached the Gulf of Mexico; and in September, half-naked and starved, they arrived at a Spanish settlement near the mouth of the Panuco, north of Tampico.

29. This was the last attempt of the Spanish cotemporaries of Columbus to explore, or to make settlements within the present territory of the United States, previous to the appearance of the English² in the same field. They were impelled by no higher motive than the acquisition of gold; and treachery and violence were the instruments employed to obtain it. They were not worthy to possess the magnificent country which they coveted only for its supposed wealth in precious metals; and it was reserved for others who came afterward, with loftier aims, better hearts, and stronger hands, to cultivate the soil, and to establish an empire founded upon truth and justice.

SECTION III.

ENGLISH AND FRENCH DISCOVERIES.

1. The Spanish court could not conceal the fact that a new world had been discovered³ and over Continental Europe and the British Isles, were spread the most extravagant tales of gold-bearing regions beyond the Atlantic Ocean. Monarchs and wealthy subjects projected new expeditions. Among those whose zeal in the cause of maritime discovery was newly awakened, was Henry the Seventh of England, who had turned a deaf ear to the appeals of Columbus before his great first voyage.⁴

2. Bristol was then one of the most important maritime towns in England; and among its adventurous seamen, who had penetrated the polar waters, probably as far as Greenland, was Sebastian Cabot, son of a wealthy merchant of Bristol, whose father sought the aid of the king in making a voyage of discovery. Willing to secure a portion of the prize he had lost, Henry readily yielded to the solicitations of Cabot, and gave him and his sons a

1. De Soto's followers sunk the body of their leader deep in the Mississippi, so that the Indians should not find it. 2. Verse 21, page 41. 3. Verse 14, page 31. 4. Verse 4, page 28.

QUESTIONS.—7. What happened during the remainder of De Soto's career? 28. What was the result of De Soto's expedition? 29. What were the chief motives of the Spaniards in making discoveries? What design of Providence do we see in their failure? 1. What was the effect of the Spanish discoveries on other portions of Europe? 2. What movement in the direction of discovery took place in England?

Sebastian Cabot's discoveries.

His subsequent voyages.

Newfoundland

commission of discovery [March 16, 1496] similar, in some respects, to that which Columbus had received from Ferdinand and Isabella.¹



SEBASTIAN CABOT.

3 Young Cabot sailed from Bristol in May 1497, with two vessels, freighted by his father and others of that port, and of London. He steered north-westerly until he encountered immense fields of ice, westward of Cape Farewell, when he turned to the south-west, and on the 3d of July [1497] he saw first the rugged coast of Labrador, and then the shores of Newfoundland. He then hastened to England to announce the fact that he had first discovered a great western continent.

4. The following year, young Cabot,² although only twenty-one years of age, was placed in command of another expedition, fitted out by his father and some Bristol merchants, for the purpose of discovering a north-west passage to India. Ice in the polar seas presented an impassible barrier, and he was compelled to go southward. He explored the coast from the frozen regions of Labrador to the sunny land of the Carolinas. Nineteen years afterward [1517] he navigated the northern waters, as far as the entrance to Hudson's Bay; and nine years later [1526], while in the service of the monarch of Spain,³ he explored the coast of Brazil, and discovered and named the great *Rio de la Plata*. To the Cabots, father and son, belongs the imperishable honor of first discovering the coast of the United States, through, at least, ten degrees of latitude.⁴

5. Cabot perceived the immense numbers and commercial importance of the cod fishes in the vicinity of Newfoundland; and within five or six years after these first voyages, many fishermen went thither from England, Brittany, and Normandy, for those treasures of the deep. Every French vessel that went to America, was on a commercial errand only, until 1523, when

Francis the First sent John Verrazzani, an eminent Florentine navigator, to explore the coasts of the New World. Verrazzani sailed in December, 1523



VERRAZZANI.

1. Note 2, page 19.

2. He was made Grand Pilot of England, and published a Map of the World. Born 1477; died 1557.

3. Charles the First, who was also Emperor of Germany.

4. King John of Portugal, like Henry of England, had refused to aid Columbus, and lost the great prize. After the return of the navigator, he felt a desire to fit out an expedition for discoveries in the New World, but the Pope having given to Spain the whole region westward, beyond an imaginary line three hundred leagues west from the Azores, he dared not interfere with the Spanish mariners. But when the northern voyages of the Cabots became known, King John despatched an expedition in that direction, under Gaspar Cortoreal, toward the close of the year 1500, for the ostensible purpose of seeking a north-west passage to India. Cortoreal coasted along the shores of Labrador several hundred miles, and then freighted his ship with fifty natives whom he had caught, he returned to Portugal, and sold his living cargo, for slaves. Finding the adventure profitable, he sailed for another cargo, but he was never heard of afterward. Almost sixty years later some Portuguese settled on Newfoundland and Nova Scotia, and first introduced cattle and swine there.

QUESTIONS.—3. What discoveries did the Cabots make? 4. What can you tell of the discoveries of Sebastian Cabot? What honor belongs to Italy?

Verrazzani's discoveries.

explore the coasts of the New World. He proceeded due west from the Madeiras [Jan. 27, 1524], and first touched the American Continent [March] near the mouth of the Cape Fear River, in North Carolina. After seeking a good harbor for fifty leagues further south, he sailed northward, and explored the coast from the Carolinas to Newfoundland. He anchored in the bays of Delaware and New York,¹ the harbor of Newport, and probably that of Boston, and held intercourse with the natives, who were sometimes friendly and sometimes hostile. Verrazzani gave the name of **NEW FRANCE** to the vast regions within the latitudes of the coast which he had discovered.

6. The French king was too much engrossed and impoverished by war with the Spanish monarch, to pay much attention to the important discoveries of Verrazzani, or to listen to plans for future expeditions. Ten years elapsed before Admiral Chabon induced Francis to encourage another exploring enterprise, when a plan for making settlements in **NEW FRANCE** was arranged [1534], and James Cartier, a mariner of St. Malo, was appointed to the command of an expedition. He reached Newfoundland early in June, 1534. After exploring its coasts, he passed through the Straits of Belleisle into the Gulf beyond, planted a cross with the arms of France upon it, on the shore of Gaspe inlet, and took possession of the whole country in the name of his king. After discovering the mouth of the great river of Canada, he sailed for France, in time to avoid the Autumn storms on the American coast.



ARMS OF FRANCE.

7. Cartier's success was hailed with great joy. He was commissioned for another voyage; and in May following [1535] he sailed for Newfoundland, accompanied by several young noblemen of France. They passed the straits of Belleisle and entered the Gulf on the day dedicated to St. Lawrence; and Cartier gave the name of the martyr to the broad sheet of water over which they were sailing. They passed up the river which afterward received the same name, and mooring their ships at Quebec,² proceeded in a pinnace and boats to *Hochelaga*, the capital of the Huron king.³ The natives were everywhere friendly and hospitable.

8. Cartier ascended the mountain in the rear of the Indian town; and so impressed was he with the glorious view from its summit, that he called it

1. Heckewelder says that Verrazzani landed where the lower extremity of New York city is.

2. Pronounced Ke-bee.

3. Verse 1, page 17.

QUESTIONS.—5. What commercial discovery did young Cabot make? What did the French do? What can you tell of Verrazzani's voyage? 6. What caused a cessation of French efforts at discovery? What expedition was fitted out in 1534? What discoveries were made? 7. What Europeans first ascended the St. Lawrence? How far did they go?



CARTIER'S SHIP.

Roberval's expedition.

Cartier on the St. Lawrence.

French Reformation.

Mont-Real (royal mountain), which name the fine city at its base yet retains. They returned to Quebec, passed the severe Winter on board their ships, and in the Spring sailed for France. Their departure was disgraced by an act of treachery. The hospitable *Huron* king was decoyed on board one of the vessels, and carried off to France.



FRENCH NOBLEMAN
IN 1540.

9. Four years elapsed before another expedition was planned. At length, Francis de la Roque, better known as Lord of Roberval, in Picardy, obtained permission of the king to make further discoveries, and to plant settlements in NEW FRANCE.¹ The king gave him the empty title of Viceroy, and Cartier was commissioned for a subordinate command in the expedition. He was ready long before Roberval's extensive preparations were completed, and being unwilling to bow to the new Viceroy's authority, he sailed [June, 1541] some months before his official superior.

10. The broken-hearted Indian monarch had died in France. It was an unfortunate occurrence. The natives received Cartier first with coldness, and then showed open hostility. Fearing the Indians, the French built a fort near Quebec. They passed the Winter without accomplishing any important achievement, and in June [1542] following, departed for France, just as Roberval arrived at Newfoundland, with two hundred persons. Roberval passed up the St. Lawrence, built two more forts near Quebec, endured a Winter of great distress, and abandoning the idea of settlement, returned to France in the Spring of 1543. Six years afterward, he again sailed for the St. Lawrence, and was never heard of again.

11. Now was the era of the Reformation in France.² The doctrines and the teachings of Calvin and others, in opposition to the faith and practice of the Roman Catholic Church had already arrayed great masses of the people in violent hostility to each other. The religious war was an absorbing idea, and for fifty years the French government made no further attempts at discovery or colonization. But private enterprise sought to plant a French settlement in the land discovered by D'Ayllon.³

12. The Huguenots, or French Protestants, had a powerful friend in Jasper Coligny, admiral of France, but a weak protector in the reigning monarch, Charles the Ninth. The fires of persecution were continually burning, and Coligny conceived the noble idea of providing a place of refuge for his Protestant brethren, beyond the Atlantic. The king granted him a commission for that purpose, and early in 1562 [Feb. 28], a squadron, under John Ribault, sailed for America.

1. Verse 5, page 36.

2. Note 14, page 48.

3. Verse 21, page 33.

QUESTIONS.—8. What is the origin of the town and name of Montreal? What were the incidents of Cartier's stay at Quebec? 9. What other expedition went to the St. Lawrence? 10. What do you know of the French in Canada in 1542 and 1543? 11. Why did the French cease making voyages of discovery? 12. What French settlement was attempted in America in 1552, and by whom?

The Huguenots in Florida.

Preparations to expel them.

13. The little Huguenot fleet touched first near the harbor of St. Augustine, in Florida.¹ Sailing northward, they saw the mouth of the beautiful St. John's river [May, 1562], and, it being the fifth month of the year, they named it *May*. Making their way along the coast, they discovered Port Royal entrance, were charmed with the beauty of the scene, chose the spot for their future home, and built a small fort, which they named Carolina, in honor of the king. Leaving a garrison to defend it, Ribault went back to France with the ships, for reinforcements. Bitter disappointment ensued. Civil war was raging in France, and Coligny was almost powerless. The reinforcements were not supplied, and the little garrison, in despair, built a frail vessel, and, with insufficient stores, embarked for France. Tempests assailed them, and famine was menacing them with death, when they were picked up by an English bark. Thus perished the first seeds of religious freedom which the storms of persecution bore to the New World.

14. Coligny was not discouraged; and, during a lull in the tempest of civil commotion, another expedition was sent to America, under the command of Laudonniere, who had accompanied Ribault on his first voyage. They arrived in July [1564], pitched their tents on the banks of St. John's, and built another Fort Carolina. There were elements of dissolution among these emigrants. Many were idle, vicious, and improvident; and provisions soon became scarce. Under pretext of returning to France, to escape famine, quite a large party sailed [December] in one of the vessels. They turned pirates, and depredated extensively upon Spanish property in the West Indies. The remainder became discontented, and were about to embark for France, when Ribault arrived with emigrants and supplies, and took command.²

15. When the Spanish monarch heard of the settlement of the French Protestants within his claimed territory, and of the piracies of some of the party, he adopted measures for their expulsion and punishment. Pedro Melendez, a brave but cruel military chief, was appointed governor of Florida, on condition that he should expel the Frenchmen from the soil, conquer the natives, and plant a colony there. He came with a strong armed force, landed in a fine harbor on the coast of Florida, laid the foundations of St. Augustine [Sept. 17th, 1565], and proclaimed the king of Spain to be monarch of all North America.

16. On hearing of the arrival of the Spaniards, a large party of the French proceeded to attack them. A tempest wrecked every vessel; and most of the survivors, who fell into the hands of the Spaniards, were put to death. In the mean while, Melendez made his way through the swamps and forests to the defenseless French settlement, where he massacred about nine hundred

1. Verse 15, page 59.

2. James LeMoyné, a skillful painter, was sent with this expedition, with instructions to make colored drawings of every object worthy of preservation. His illustrations of the costume and customs of the natives are very interesting, because authentic.

QUESTIONS.—13. Can you relate the principal events connected with the attempt to make a Huguenot settlement in America? 14. What was the character and conduct of the people of a second expedition to plant a settlement? 15. What expedition was fitted out against the French Protestants in Florida? 16. What was the fate of the French settlers?

De Gourgès's foray upon the Spaniards.

English navigators.

The Carolina region.

men, women, and children, and over their dead bodies placed an inscription, avowing that he slew them, not "because they were Frenchmen, but Lutherans."¹ Upon that field of blood he erected a cross, and laid the foundation of a church to commemorate the deed.

17. The feeble Charles of France took no steps to avenge this outrage. But one of his subjects, a fiery soldier of Gascony, named De Gourgès, inflicted retribution. He hated the Spaniards, and fitting out three ships at his own expense, he sailed for Florida with one hundred and fifty men. He attacked the Spaniards, made two hundred prisoners, and, hanging his captives upon the trees almost upon the spot where his countrymen had been murdered, he placed over them the inscription—"I do not this as unto Spaniards or mariners, but unto traitors, robbers, and murderers." Too weak to brave the vengeance of Melendez, who was at St. Augustine, De Gourgès immediately left the coast, and returned to France. The natives were delighted at seeing their common enemies thus destroying each other. The Spaniards, however, held possession, and a Spanish settlement was ever afterward maintained at St. Augustine, except during a few years.

18. Although the English seem not to have wholly relinquished the idea of planting settlements in America, it was not until almost eighty years after the discovery of the continent by Cabot,² that healthy efforts to found colonies in the New World, were made by them. Frobisher³ (an eminent navigator) and others had explored the north-western coast of North America, to the dreary region north of Hudson's Bay,⁴ in search of precious metals and a north-west passage to India,⁵ but without beneficial results. Newfoundland was visited every year by numerous English and French fishing vessels, and the neighboring continent was frequently touched by the hardy mariners. Yet no feasible plans for colonization were matured.

19. When the public mind of England was turned from the cold regions of Labrador and the fancied mineral wealth in its rugged mountains, to the milder South, and the more solid benefits to be derived from *plantations* than *mines*, a new and brilliant era in the history of civilization began. This change was produced incidentally by the Huguenot adventurers.⁶ The remnant of Coligny's first colony, who were picked up at sea and sent to England, informed the queen of the glory of the climate and the fertility of the soil, of Carolina. When De Gourgès returned from his foray upon the Spaniards, Walter Raleigh, then a young man of much promise, was learning the art of war with Coligny, in France, and he communicated to his friends in England that Chevalier's account of Florida, which was yet a wil-

1. The Protestants were often called by the general name of *Lutherans*, because the later Reformation was commenced by the bold opposition of Martin Luther to the corrupt practices of the Romish Church. Note 14, page 48.

2. Verse 3, page 36.

3. Born in Yorkshire, England; was trained in the navigator's art, and died of wounds received in a naval battle in 1594.

4. Note 7, page 45.

5. Note 4, page 36.

6. Verse 13, page 39.

QUESTIONS.—17. How did the French retaliate the cruelty of the Spaniards? 18. Where and how did the English attempt settlements in America? 1. What events led to the efforts of England to plant settlements in the middle regions of America?

Scheme of Gilbert and Raleigh.

Roanoke.

Virginia named.

derness free for the sons of toil. The Protestant¹ feeling of England was strongly stirred by the cruelties of Melendez, and soon many minds were employed in planning schemes for the colonizing of the pleasant middle regions of North America.

20. The first healthy plan for settlement was proposed by the learned Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a step-brother of Walter Raleigh. In June, 1578, he obtained a liberal patent from the queen. Raleigh gave him the aid of his hand and fortune; and early in 1579, Gilbert sailed for America, with a small squadron, accompanied by his step-brother. Heavy storms and Spanish war-vessels compelled them to return, and the scheme was abandoned for a time. Four years afterward [1583] Gilbert sailed with another squadron; and after a series of disasters, he reached the harbor of St. John's, in Newfoundland. There he set up a pillar with the English arms upon it,² proclaimed the sovereignty of his queen, and then proceeded to explore the coast southward. After being terribly beaten by tempests off the shores of Nova Scotia and Maine, and losing his largest ship, he turned his vessel toward England. At midnight, during a gale, his own little bark went down, with all on board [Sept.], and only one vessel of the expedition returned to England to relate the dreadful narrative.

21. Raleigh now obtained a patent for himself [April 1584], which made him lord proprietor of all lands that might be discovered by him in America, between the Santee and Delaware rivers. He despatched Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, with two well-furnished ships, to explore the American coast. They approached the shores of Carolina³ in July, and landing upon the islands of Wocoken and Roanoke, in Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds, they took possession of the country in the name of Elizabeth. They remained a few weeks, exploring the Sounds and trafficking with the natives, and then returned to England with two sons of the forest.⁴ The glowing accounts of the newly discovered country filled Raleigh's⁵ heart with joy; and the queen truly declared the event to be one of the most glorious of her reign. In memorial of her unmarried state, she gave the name of VIRGINIA to the enchanting region.

22. Raleigh now indulged in brilliant dreams of wealth and power to be derived from the New World, and he made immediate preparations for



RALEIGH.

1. Note 14, p. 48.

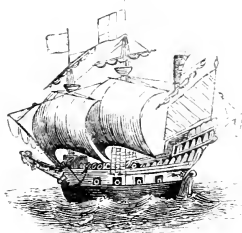
2. Note 1, p. 31.

3. The French Protestants had given the name of Carolina to the region where they attempted settlement, and it has ever since retained it. See verse 13, page 39.

4. *Manteo* and *Wanchese*, natives of the adjacent continent; probably of the *Hatteras* tribe.

5. Born in Devonshire, England, 1552. He wrote a *History of the World* while in prison under a false charge of high treason, for which he was beheaded in London, October 29th, 1628.

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell of the expedition under Sir Humphrey Gilbert? 21. What expeditions did Sir Walter Raleigh fit out? What was the result?



ONE OF RALEIGH'S SHIPS.

planting settlements on his trans-Atlantic domains. He despatched a fleet of seven vessels [April 19, 1585], under the command of Sir Richard Grenville. They narrowly escaped destruction on the Carolina coast [June], and in consequence Grenville named the point where their peril was greatest, Cape Fear. They landed upon the Island of Roanoke, in Albemarle Sound, and there prepared for a permanent residence.

23. Instead of looking to the fruition of seed-time for true riches, the English turned from the wealthy soil upon which they stood, and went upon vain searches for gold in the forests of the adjoining continent. They treated the kind natives with harshness, and made them their enemies; and schemes for the destruction of the white intruders were speedily planned. As soon as Grenville departed with the ships, for England, the natives withheld supplies of food, drew the English into perilous positions by tales of gold-bearing shores along the Roanoke river, and finally reduced the colony to the verge of ruin. At that moment, Sir Francis Drake arrived from the West Indies, with his fleet, and afforded them relief. But they were anxious to leave the country, and were all conveyed to England by Drake in June, 1586. A few days after their departure, a well-furnished vessel, sent by Raleigh, arrived; and a fortnight later, Grenville entered the inlet with three ships well-provisioned. After searching for the departed colony, Grenville sailed for England, leaving fifteen men upon Roanoke.

24. Raleigh now adopted a wiser policy, and instead of sending out mere fortune hunters,¹ he collected a band of agriculturists and artizans, with their families, and despatched them [April 26, 1587] to found an industrial State in Virginia. He gave them a charter; and John White, who accompanied them, was appointed governor of the colony. They reached Roanoke in July. There all was desolation. The bones of the fifteen men left by Grenville lay bleaching on the ground. Their huts were in ruins, and wild deer were feeding in their little gardens. They had been murdered by the Indians.

25. Manteo,² who returned in 1585, did not share in the Indian hatred of the white people, and like Massasoit of New England,³ he remained their friend. By command of Raleigh he received Christian baptism, and was invested, by White, with the title of *Lord of Roanoke*, the first and last peerage created in America. Yet Manteo could not avert nor control the storm that lowered among the Indian tribes, and menaced the English with destruction. The colonists perceived that fearful perils were gathering, and White hastened

1. Verse 16, page 52.

2. Note 4, page 41.

3. Verse 2, page 90.

QUESTIONS.—22. What other efforts did Raleigh make? 23. What ought the English to have sought instead of gold? What befell the English on the island of Roanoke? How were they saved? Who came with relief? 24. What new scheme did Raleigh undertake? What did the new adventurers find on Roanoke? 25. What can you relate of an Indian Sachem? What interesting event occurred in Virginia at that time?

Virginia Dare.

Abandonment of America.

New expeditions.

to England toward the close of the year for reinforcements and provisions, leaving behind him his daughter, Eleanor Dare (wife of one of his lieutenants), who had just given birth to a child [August 18, 1587], whom they named *Virginia*. VIRGINIA DARE was the first offspring of English parents born within the territory of the United States.¹

26. When White reached England, the great Spanish Armada² was preparing for an invasion of Great Britain; and Raleigh, Grenville, and others, were deeply engaged in public affairs. It was not until the following May [1589], that White departed, with two ships, for Virginia. According to custom, he went by the way of the West Indies, and depredated upon Spanish property found afloat. He was beaten in an engagement, lost one of his vessels, and was obliged to return to England. It was not until 1590 that White was allowed to go to Roanoke in search of his daughter and the colony he had left. Both had then disappeared. Roanoke was a desolation; and, though Raleigh, who had abandoned all thoughts of colonization, had five times sent mariners, good and true, to search for the emigrants, they were never found.³ Eighty years later, the *Corees*⁴ told the English settlers upon the Cape Fear river, that their lost kindred had been adopted by the once powerful *Hatteras* tribe,⁵ and became amalgamated with the children of the wilderness. The English made no further attempts at colonization at that time; and so, a century after Columbus sailed for America, there was no European settlement upon the North American continent. Drake had broken up the military post at St. Augustine [1585], and the Red Men⁶ were again sole masters of the vast domain.



ENGLISH GENTLEMAN,
1580.

27. Twelve years after the failure of Raleigh's colonization efforts, his friend, Gosnold, sailed in a small bark [March 26, 1602] directly across the Atlantic for the American coast. After a voyage of seven weeks, he discovered the continent near Nahant [May 14, 1602], and sailing southward, he landed upon a sandy point which he named Cape Cod, on account of the great number of those fishes in that vicinity. Continuing southward, he discovered Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and the group known as Elizabeth

1. Note 2, page 63.

2. This was a great naval armament, fitted out by Spain, for the invasion of England in the summer of 1588. It consisted of 150 ships, 2,650 great guns, and 30,000 soldiers and sailors. It was defeated [July 20] by Admirals Drake and Howard.

3. While Raleigh was making these fruitless searches, the Marquis de la Roche, a wealthy French nobleman, attempted to plant a French colony in America. He was commissioned by the King of France for the purpose, and in 1598 sailed for America with a colony, chiefly drawn from the prisons of Paris. Upon the almost desert island of Sable, near the coast of Nova Scotia, La Roche left forty men, while he returned to France for supplies. He died soon afterward, and for seven years the poor emigrants were neglected. When a vessel was finally sent for them, only twelve survived. They were taken to France, their crimes were pardoned by the king, and their immediate wants were supplied.

4. Verse 11, page 15.

5. Note 10, page 15.

6. Verse 1, page 7.

QUESTIONS—26. What probably became of White's colony? What was the condition of America in regard to settlements a century after the voyage of Columbus? 27. What were the chief incidents of an expedition under Gosnold?

Explorations of the coast of Maine.

De Monts's expedition.

Islands. Upon one of them, which he named Elizabeth, in honor of his sovereign, Gosnold and his company prepared to found a settlement. Upon an islet, in a tiny lake, they built a fort and store-house.¹ Becoming alarmed at the menaces of the Indians and the want of supplies, they freighted their vessel with sassafras roots, and returned to England in June, 1602.

28. The glowing accounts of the country which Gosnold gave, awakened the enterprise of some Bristol merchants,² and the following year [1603] they fitted out two vessels for the purposes of exploration and traffic with the natives. The command was given to Captain Pring, who discovered the shores of Maine, near the mouth of the Penobscot [June], and coasting westward, entered and explored several of the larger rivers of that State. He sailed along the coast to Martha's Vineyard,³ trading with the natives; and from that island he returned to England, after an absence of only six months. Pring made another voyage to Maine in 1606, and more thoroughly explored the country. Maine was also visited in 1605, by Captain Weymouth, who had explored the coast of Labrador in search of a north-west passage to India.⁴ He took formal possession of the country in the name of King James. He decoyed five natives on board his vessel, and then sailed for England. These excited much curiosity; and the narratives of other mariners of the West of England, who visited these regions at about the same time, gave a new stimulus to colonizing efforts.

29. In 1603, De Monts, a wealthy French Huguenot,⁵ obtained a commission of vice-royalty over six degrees of latitude in New France,⁶ extending from Cape May to Quebec. He prepared an expedition for settlement, and arrived at Nova Scotia,⁷ with two vessels, in May, 1604.⁸ He passed the Summer there, trafficking with the natives; and in the Autumn he crossed over to the mouth of the St. Croix (the eastern boundary of Maine), and erected a fort there. He had left a few settlers at Port Royal (now Annapolis) under Poutrincourt. These De Monts joined the following Spring [1605], and organized a permanent colony. He named the place Port Royal; and the territory now included in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the adjacent Islands, he called *ACADIE*.⁹

30. In 1608, De Monts obtained a grant of the monopoly of the fur-trade upon the St. Lawrence, for one year, and a new commission to plant a colony elsewhere in New France. The new expedition was placed under the command of Samuel Champlain, and on the 3d of June, 1608, he arrived, with

1. Dr. Belknap discovered the cellar of this store-house in 1797.

2. Verse 2, page 35.

3. Properly *Martin's Vineyard*.

4. Note 1, page 340.

5. Verse 12, page 38.

6. Verse 5, page 36.

7. Note 3, page 64.

8. De Monts first brought swine, and other domestic animals, into this portion of America. Some were also taken from there to French settlements planted in Canada a few years later. The company of which he was chief, fitted out four vessels. De Monts commanded the two here named, assisted by Champlain and Poutrincourt.

9. In 1613, Samuel Argall made a piratical visit to these coasts, under the direction of the governor of the Virginia colony. He destroyed the remnant of De Monts' settlement at St. Croix, broke up the peaceful colony at Port Royal, and plundered the people of every thing of value.

QUESTIONS.—28. What were the effects of Gosnold's voyage? Relate the incidents of Pring's voyage. Who visited the coast of Maine in 1605? What effects followed? 29. What were the principal incidents of the expedition of De Monts?

Settlement of Quebec.

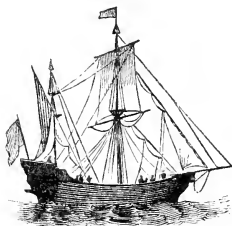
Hudson's exploring voyages.

two vessels, at the mouth of the Saguenay, on the St. Lawrence. They ascended the great river, and on the site of Quebec, near where Cartier built his fort almost seventy years before,¹ they planted the first permanent French settlement in the New World. The following Summer, Champlain ascended the Richelieu or Sorel river, with a war party of Indians, and discovered the beautiful lake which bears his name, in the north-eastern part of the State of New York.²

31. While the French were exploring, and making efforts at settlement in the direction of the St. Lawrence, the English were not idle. Several private enterprises were in progress, among the most important of which was that of a company of London Merchants who sent Henry Hudson, an intimate friend of Captain Smith,³ to search for a supposed north-eastern ocean passage to India. He made two unsuccessful voyages to the regions of polar ice [1607-8], and the attempt was abandoned. Anxious to win the honor of first reaching India by the northern seas, Hudson applied to the Dutch East India Company⁴ for aid. The Amsterdam directors afforded it, and on the 4th of April, 1609, Hudson departed from Amsterdam, in command of the *Half-Moon*, a yacht of eighty tons. He sought a north-eastern passage, but the ice was impassable. Turning his prow, he steered across the Atlantic, and first touching the continent on the shores of Penobscot Bay, he arrived in sight of the Capes of Virginia in August, 1609.



HUDSON.



THE HALF-MOON.

32. Proceeding northward, Hudson entered the mouths of several large rivers, and finally passed the Narrows⁵ and anchored in New York Bay. He proceeded almost sixty leagues up the river that bears his name, and took possession of the country in the name of the States General of Holland.⁶ He returned to Europe⁷ in November 1609, and his report of the goodly land he had discovered

1. Verse 10, page 38.

2. Champlain penetrated southward as far as Crown Point; perhaps south of Ticonderoga. It was at about the same time that Hudson went up the river that bears his name, as far as Waterford; so that these eminent navigators, exploring at different points, came very near meeting in the wilderness. Six years afterward, Champlain discovered Lake Huron, and there he joined some Huron Indians in an expedition against one of the Five Nations in Western New York. They had a severe battle in the neighborhood of the present village of Canandaigua. Champlain died in 1634.

3. Verse 11, page 50.

4. Dutch mariners, following the track of the Portuguese, opened a successful traffic with Eastern Asia, about the year 1594. The various Dutch adventurers in the India trade, were united in one corporate body in 1602, with a capital of over a million of dollars, to whom was given the exclusive privilege of trading in the seas east of the Cape of Good Hope. This was the Dutch East India Company.

5. Entrance to New York Bay between Long and Staten Islands.

6. This was the title of the Government of Holland, answering, in a degree, to our Congress.

7. Hudson, while on another voyage in search of a north-west passage, discovered the great bay in the

QUESTIONS.—30. What did De Monts afterward do? What did Champlain achieve? 31. What were the English doing at this time? For what was Henry Hudson employed? What brought him to America? 32. What were the results of Hudson's voyage to America?

set in motion those commercial measures which resulted in the founding of a Dutch empire in the New World.¹

33. Now commenced the epoch of settlements. The whole Atlantic coast of North America had been thoroughly or partially explored, the general character and resources of the soil had become known, and henceforth the leading commercial nations of Western Europe—England, France, Spain and Holland—regarded the transatlantic continent, not as merely a rich garden without a wall, where depredators from every shore might come, and, without hinderance, bear away its choicest fruit, but as a land where the permanent foundations of vast colonial empires might be laid, from which parent states would receive almost unlimited tribute to national wealth and national glory.

When we contemplate these voyages across the stormy Atlantic and consider the limited geographical knowledge of the navigators, the frailty of their vessels² and equipments, the vast labors and constant privations endured by them, and the dangers to which they were continually exposed, we can not but feel the highest respect and reverence for all who were thus engaged in opening the treasures of the New World to the advancing nations of Europe. Although acquisitiveness, or the desire for worldly possessions, was the chief incentive to action, and gave strength to resolution, yet it could not inspire courage to encounter the great dangers of the deep and the wilderness, nor fill the heart with faith in prophecies of success. These sentiments must have been innate; and those who braved the multitude of perils were men of true courage, and their faith came from the teachings of the science of their day. History and Song, Painting and Sculpture, have all commemorated their deeds. If Alexander the Great was thought worthy of having the granite body of Mount Athos hewn into a colossal image of himself,³ might not Europe and America appropriately join in the labor of fashioning some lofty summit of the Alleghanies⁴ into a huge monument to the memory of the NAVIGATORS who lifted the vail of forgetfulness from the face of the New World?⁵

northern regions, which bears his name. He was there frozen in the ice during the winter of 1610-11. While endeavoring to make his way homeward in the Spring, his crew became mutinous. They finally seized Hudson, bound his arms, and placing him and his son, and seven sick companions, in an open boat, set them adrift upon the cold waters. They were never heard of afterward.

1. Verse 6, page 57.

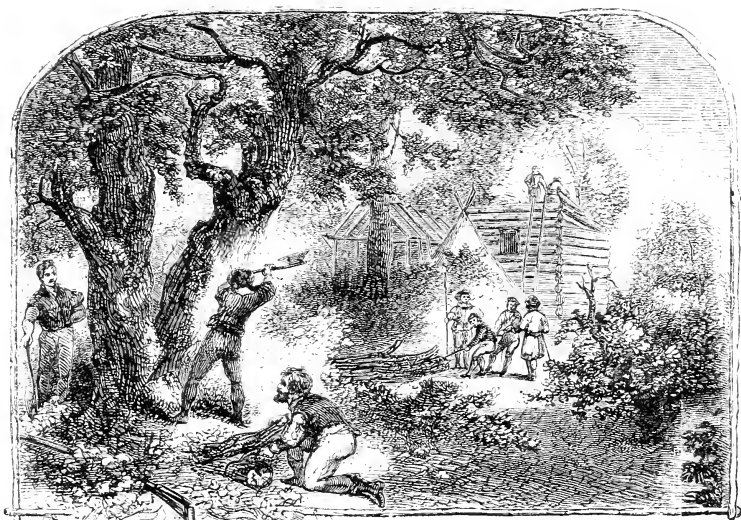
2. The first ships were generally of less than one hundred tons' burden. Two of the vessels of Columbus were without decks; and the one in which Frobisher sailed was of only twenty-five tons' burden.

3. Dinocrates, a celebrated architect, offered to cut Mount Athos into a statue of Alexander the Great so large that it might hold a city in its right hand, and in its left a basin of sufficient capacity to hold all the waters that poured from the mountain.

4. Note 7, page 14.

5. Verse 4, page 37. There has been much discussion concerning the claims of certain navigators to the honor of first discovering the continent of America. A *Memoir of Sebastian Cabot*, illustrated by documents from the Rolls, published in London in 1832, appears to prove conclusively that he, and not his father, was the navigator who discovered North America. A little work entitled *Researches respecting Americus Vespucius, and his Voyages*, prepared by Viscount Santarem, ex-prime minister of Portugal, casts just doubts upon the statements of Vespucius, concerning his command on a voyage of discovery when, he claims, he discovered South America [verse. 14, page 31] in 1499. He was doubtless an officer under Ojeda: and it is quite certain that he got possession of the narratives of Ojeda and published them as his own. The most accessible works on American Discoveries, are Irving's *Life of Columbus*; Prescott's *Ferdinand and Isabella*; Lives of *Cabot and Hudson*, in Spark's *American Biography*, and History of the United States by Bancroft and Hildreth.

QUESTIONS.—3. What epoch in the History of the New World now commenced? How was America regarded? What was the character of the first voyagers to America, and their ships? What reverence is due to them?



BUILDING JAMESTOWN.

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENTS.

SECTION I.

1. THE act of forming a settlement is not equivalent to the establishment of a colony or the founding of a state. It is the initiatory step toward such an end, and may, or may not exhibit permanent results. A colony becomes such only when settlements

assume permanency, and organic laws, subservient to those of a parent government, are framed for the guidance of the people. It seems proper, therefore, to consider the era of *settlements* as distinct from that of *colonial organization*.

2. The period of settlements within the bounds of the thirteen original colonies which formed the Confederacy in the War for Independence,¹ extends from 1607 to 1733. For fifty years previous to the debarkation [1607] at Jamestown,² fishing stations had been established at various points on the Atlantic coast; and at St. Augustine,³ the Spaniards had kept a sort of military post alive.

1. Chap. V., Sec. II.

2. Verse 10, page 50.

3. Verse 15, page 39.

Settlements of the colonies.

Great changes in Europe.

The reformation.

Yet the time of the appearance of the English in the James river, is the true point from which to date the inception or beginning of our great confederacy of free States.

3. Twelve years [1607 to 1619] were spent by English adventurers in efforts to plant a permanent settlement in Virginia.¹ For seventeen years [1609 to 1623] Dutch traders were trafficking on the Hudson river, before a permanent settlement was established in New York.² Fourteen years [1606 to 1620] were necessary to effect a permanent settlement in Massachusetts;³ and for nine years [1620 to 1631] adventurers struggled for a foot-hold in New Hampshire.⁴ The Roman Catholics were only one year [1634-5] in laying the foundation of the Maryland colony.⁵ Seven years [1632 to 1639] were employed in effecting permanent settlements in Connecticut;⁶ eight years [1636 to 1643] in organizing colonial government in Rhode Island;⁷ and about fifty years [1631 to 1682] elapsed from the landing of the Swedes on South river,⁸ before Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania (whose several histories of settlements are interwoven), presented colonial features.⁹ Almost sixty years [1622 to 1680] passed by before the first settlements in the Carolinas became fully-developed colonies;¹⁰ but Georgia, the youngest of the thirteen States, had the foundations of its colonial government laid when Oglethorpe, with the first company of settlers, began to build Savannah in the winter of 1733.¹¹ The first permanent settlement within the bounds of the original colonies was in

VIRGINIA. [1607-1619.]

4. Before the lapse of a century after the discoveries of Columbus [1492],¹² a great social and political revolution had been effected in Europe. Commerce, hitherto confined to inland seas and along the coasts, was sending its ships across oceans. The art of printing had begun its wonderful work;¹³ and, through its instrumentality, intelligence had been generally diffused. Mind thus acting upon mind in vastly multiplied opportunities, had awakened a great moral and intellectual power, whose presence and strength had not been suspected. The Protestant Reformation¹⁴ had weakened the bonds of spiritual dominion, and allowed the moral faculties fuller play; and the shadows of feudal institutions,¹⁵ so chilling to individual effort, were rapidly disappearing before the rising sun of the new era in the history of the world.

1. Verse 20, page 57.

2. Verse 6, page 57.

3. Verse 13, page 63.

4. Verse 2, page 64.

5. Verse 6, page 66.

6. Verse 14, page 70.

7. Verse 7, page 72.

8. Verse 4, page 73.

9. Verse 13, page 76.

10. Verse 6, page 78.

11. Verse 5, page 79.

12. Chap. II., Sec. II.

13. About the year 1450. Rude printing from engraved blocks was done before that time; but when Peter Schœffer cast the first metal types, each letter separately, at about 1450, the art of printing truly had birth. John Faust established a printing office at Mentz, in 1442. John Guttenburg invented cut metal types, and used them in printing a Bible which was commenced in 1445, and finished in 1460. The names of these three men are usually associated as the inventors of printing.

14. Commenced by Wickliffe in England, in 1360; by Huss in Bohemia, in 1405; by Luther in Germany, in 1517. From this period until 1562, the movement was general throughout Europe. It was an effort to purge the Christian Church of great impurities, by reforming its doctrine and ritual. The Reformers protested against the practices of the Roman Catholic Church, and the title of the movement was, therefore, the Protestant Reformation. The name of Protestants was first given to Luther and others, in 1529.

15. The nature of feudal laws may be illustrated by a single example: William, the Norman Conqueror

QUESTIONS.—3. Can you name the time of settlement of each of the thirteen original colonies? 4. What causes had produced a revolution in society in Europe, during a century succeeding the discoveries of Columbus?

Growth of toleration.

Men ready for adventures.

Division of Virginia.

5. Freedom of thought and action expanded the area of ideas, and gave birth to those tolerant principles which lead to brotherhood of feeling. The new impulse developed nobler motives for human action than the acquisition of wealth and power, and these soon engendered healthy schemes for founding industrial empires in the New World. Aspirations for civil freedom, awakened by greater religious liberty, had begun the work, especially in England, where the Protestants were already divided into two distinct parties, called, respectively, Churchmen and Puritans. The former supported the throne and all monarchical ideas; the latter were more republican; and from their pulpits went forth doctrines inimical to kingly power. These religious differences had begun to form a basis of political parties, and finally became prime elements of colonization.

6. A long contest between England and France ceased in 1604. Soldiers, an active, restless class in England, were deprived of employment, and would soon become dangerous to the public peace. While population and general prosperity had greatly increased, there was another large class, who, by idleness and dissipation, had squandered fortunes, and had become desperate men. The soldiers needed employment, either in their own art or in equally exciting adventures; and the impoverished spendthrifts were ready for any thing which promised gain. Such were the men who stood ready to brave ocean perils and the greater dangers of the Western World, when others of enlightened minds devised new schemes for colonization. The weak and timid James the First,¹ who desired and maintained peace with other nations during his reign, was glad to perceive a new field for restless and adventurous men to go to, and he readily granted a liberal patent [April 20, 1606] to the first company formed after his accession to the throne, for planting settlements in Virginia.

7. The English claimed dominion over a belt of territory extending from Cape Fear, in North Carolina, to Halifax, in Nova Scotia, and indefinitely westward. This was divided into two districts. One extended from the vicinity of New York city northward to the present southern boundary of Canada, including the whole of New England, and westward of it, and was called NORTH VIRGINIA. This territory was granted to an association in the west of England, called the *Plymouth Company*.² The other district extended from the mouth of the Potomac southward to Cape Fear, and was called SOUTH

of England, divided the land of that country into parts, called *baronies*, and gave them to certain of his favorites, who became masters of the conquered people on their respective estates. For these gifts, and certain privileges, the *barons*, or masters, were to furnish the king with a stipulated amount of money, and a stated number of men for soldiers, when required. The *people* had no voice in this matter, nor in any public affairs, and were made essentially slaves to the barons. Out of this state of things originated the exclusive privileges yet enjoyed by the nobility of Europe. Except in Russia, the people have been emancipated from this vassalage, and the ancient forms of feudal power have disappeared.

1. He was the sixth James of Scotland, of the house of Stuart, and son of Mary, Queen of Scotland, by Lord Darnley. The crowns of England and Scotland were united by his accession to the throne of the former kingdom, in March, 1603.

2. The chief members of the company were Thomas Hanham, Sir John and Raleigh Gilbert (sons of Sir Humphrey Gilbert), William Parker, George Popham, Sir John Popham (Lord Chief Justice of England), and Sir Fernando Gorges, Governor of Plymouth Port.

QUESTIONS.—5. What causes produced a religious and political revolution in England favorable to colonization? 6. What classes in England needed exciting employment? Who encouraged emigration to America? What made King James favorable to emigration? 7. What territory in America did the English claim? How was it divided? and what were the boundaries?

London and Plymouth companies.	First emigration to Virginia.	Jamestown.
--------------------------------	-------------------------------	------------

VIRGINIA. This was granted to a company, chiefly residents of London, called the *London Company*.¹ The intermediate domain of almost two hundred miles, was a dividing line, so broad that disputes about territory could not occur, as neither company was allowed to make settlements more than fifty miles beyond its own boundary.

8. The political character of this charter was unfavorable to the best interests of all. The king reserved to himself the right of appointing all officers, and of exercising all executive and legislative power. The colonists were to pay homage to the sovereign, and a tribute of one fifth of the net products of gold and silver found in Virginia; yet they possessed no rights of self-government. They were to be governed by a council of seven appointed by the king, who were allowed to choose a president from among themselves. There was also a Supreme Council in England, appointed by the king, who had the general supervision of the colonies, under the direction of the monarch. That charter proved totally inadequate as a constitution of government for a free people.

9. The *Plymouth Company* made the first attempt at settlement, and failed.² The *London Company* sent Captain Christopher Newport with three vessels, and one hundred and five emigrants [Dec. 1606], to make a settlement upon Roanoke Island.³ Among them was Bartholomew Gosnold,⁴ the projector of the expedition. They presented very poor materials for a colony. There was no *family* among them, and only "twelve laborers and a few mechanics." The remainder were "gentlemen,"⁵ many of whom were vicious, dissolute men, totally unfit for such an enterprise, and quite unworthy to be actors in the glorious events anticipated by Gosnold and his enlightened associates at home.

10. Newport did not arrive upon the American coast until April, 1607, when a storm drove his vessels into Chesapeake Bay, where he found a good harbor. He named the capes at the entrance *Charles* and *Henry*, in honor of the king's sons. The noble river which he soon afterward entered he called *James*. Sailing up the broad stream about fifty miles, the immigrants landed upon a beautifully shaded peninsula,⁶ where they chose a site for the capital of the new empire, and called it JAMESTOWN.

11. Disputes had arisen during the long voyage. As the silly king had placed the names of the colonial council in a sealed box, with instructions not to open it until their arrival in Virginia, there was no competent authority on

1. The chief members of the company were Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers, Richard Hakluyt (the historian), and Edward Maria Wingfield, who was the first governor of Virginia.

2. Verse 1, page 58.

3. Verse 21, page 41.

4. Verse 13, page 51.

5. This name was given to wealthy men who were not engaged in any industrial pursuit, and often spent their lives in idleness and dissipation; a class which, in our day and country, number, happily, very few. Labor is worthily honored as more noble than idleness.

6. This may be called an island, for the marsh which connects it with the mainland is often overflowed. The currents of the river have washed away large portions of the original island.

QUESTIONS.—8. What was the political character of the first charter granted for forming settlements in America? 9. Whom did the London Company send to make settlements in America? What was the character of the settlers? 10. Who commanded the expedition? and what occurred when they arrived on the American coast?

Captain John Smith.

Powhatan.

Sufferings of the settlers.

board to restore harmony. Captain Smith,¹ who was the most able man among them, excited the envy of his companions; and being charged with a design to murder the council, usurp government, and proclaim himself king, he was placed in confinement. On opening the sealed box, it was discovered that Smith was one of the council. Then he demanded a trial upon the absurd charges. The accusation was withdrawn, and he took his seat in the council, over which the avaricious Edward Maria Wingfield was chosen to preside.

12. Newport, Smith, and twenty others, ascended the James river to the Falls at Richmond, and visited the emperor of the Powhatans,² whose residence was a mile below the foot of the rapids. The title of the emperor was Powhatan. He was a man of great ability, and commanded the reverence of the whole confederation. He was friendly to the English, notwithstanding his people murmured at their presence; and the visitors returned to Jamestown much gratified.

13. Newport sailed for England in June, 1607, for more settlers and provisions. The little band of immigrants soon perceived the perils of their situation. A large portion of their provisions was spoiled during the voyage. They had not planted, therefore they could not reap. The neighboring tribes evinced hostility, and withheld supplies. Poisonous vapor arose from the marshes; and, before the close of summer, one half of the adventurers perished by disease and famine. Among the victims was Gosnold. Then it was discovered that president Wingfield was living on choice stores, and was preparing to abandon the colony and escape to the West Indies in the pinnace³ left by Newport. He was deposed, and Ratcliffe, a weak and wicked man, was chosen his successor. He, too, was speedily dismissed; and the settlers, with one consent, wisely turned to Smith, as ruler.

14. Smith soon restored order, and by his courage and energy, inspired the Indians with awe, and compelled them to bring him supplies of food. In October, wild game became plentiful; and at the beginning of November, the abundant harvest of Indian corn was gathered by the natives, and they supplied the settlers with all they needed. Having established a degree of comfort and prosperity, Smith started, with some companions, to explore the surrounding country. He ascended the Chickahomminy river, and then, with two companions, penetrated the vast forest that covered the land. Smith's companions were slain by the natives, and he was made a captive. After being exhibited in several villages, he was taken to Opechancanough,⁴ the eldest brother of Powhatan, who, regarding Smith as a superior being,

1. See portrait at the head of this chapter. Smith was one of the most remarkable men of his time. He was born in Lincolnshire, England; and after many adventures in Europe, went to America. He died in 1631. He wrote a *History of Virginia*, etc.

3. A small, light vessel, with sails and oars.

2. Verse 10, page 15.

4. Note 4, page 83.

QUESTIONS.—11. What produced trouble on their arrival? What treatment had Captain John Smith received? 12. What did Smith and others do on their arrival? Who did they visit? 13. What soon occurred to the colonists? 14. What effect did Smith's authority have on the condition of the colonists? Relate the adventures of Smith and his companions. What did Pocahontas do?

Captain Smith and Pocahontas.

More emigrants.

Character of the settlers.



POCAHONTAS.

spared his life, and conducted him to the emperor, then at Weroworomoco, on the York river.¹ A solemn council decided that the captive must die, and Smith was led out to execution. His head was placed upon a stone, and the heavy clubs of the executioners were raised to crush it, when Pocahontas, a child of "ten or twelve years,"² the favorite daughter of Powhatan, rushed from her father's side, and casting herself upon the captive, besought the king to spare his life. Powhatan consented, and Smith was conducted in safety to Jamestown by a guard of twelve men, after an absence of seven weeks.

15. Smith's captivity was a public benefit. He had acquired a knowledge of the Indian character, and of the country and its resources, and also had formed friendly relations with the sachems and chiefs. Had his companions possessed half as much energy and honesty as Smith, all would have been well. But they were idle, improvident, and dissolute. He found every thing in disorder on his return. Only forty men were living, and the greater portion of them were on the point of escaping to the West Indies in the pinnace.

16. Early in 1608 Newport arrived with supplies, and one hundred and twenty immigrants. These were no better than the first adventurers. Instead of agriculturists and mechanics, with families, they were idle "gentlemen," "packed hither," as Smith said, "by their friends, to escape ill destinies." There were also several goldsmiths, the very men least needed in the colony. Some glittering earth in the vicinity of Jamestown,³ was mistaken for gold; and in spite of the remonstrances of Smith, the whole industry of the colony was directed to the supposed treasure. "There was no talk, no hope, no work, but dig gold, work gold, refine gold, load gold." Newport loaded his vessel with the worthless earth and returned to England with the foolish hope that he was exceedingly rich.

17. Smith remonstrated against idleness, and pleaded for industry, but in vain. He implored the settlers to plow and sow, that they might reap and be happy. They refused to listen, and he turned from Jamestown with disgust. With a few sensible men, he went to explore the Chesapeake in an open boat. He went up the Potomac to the falls above Washington city. He entered the Patapsco, and ate Indian corn on the site of Baltimore. He went up the Susquehannah to the beautiful vale of Wyoming.⁴ He penetrated the forests even to the territory of the Five Nations,⁵ and established friendly relations

1. At Shelly, nearly opposite the mouth of Queen's Creek, Gloucester county, Virginia.

2. Verse 27, page 55.

3. Verse 10, page 50.

4. Verse 8, page 228.

5. Verse 2, page 18.

QUESTIONS.—15. What was the effect of Smith's captivity? What continued to be the character of the settlers while Smith was absent? 16. What was the character of the second company of emigrants to Virginia? What chiefly engaged their attention? How did Newport show his folly? 17. Why did Smith leave Jamestown? What places did he visit during an exploring voyage? What was the character of that voyage?

Smith's exploring voyage.

Smith made President.

Commissioners.

with the dusky tribes. Within three months he traveled three thousand miles. It was one of the most wonderful of exploring expeditions, considered in all its aspects, ever recorded by the pen of history. The map of the country which Smith constructed on his return, is yet in existence in England, and is remarkable for its general accuracy.

18. Three days after Smith's return [Sept. 10, 1608], he was formally made president of the settlement. Newport arrived soon afterward, with seventy immigrants, among whom were two females, the first English women seen upon the James river.¹ Smith exerted all his energies to turn the little industry of the settlers to agriculture, and succeeded, in a degree. He wrote to the Supreme Council² to send over a different class of men. "I entreat you," he said, "rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers of trees' roots, well provided, than a thousand such as we have." Yet, with all his exertions, idleness and improvidence prevailed. At the end of two years from the first landing at Jamestown,³ and when the settlement numbered two hundred strong men, not more than forty acres were under cultivation; and to the Indians the white people were compelled to look for their chief supply of food.

19. Disappointed in their expectations, the London Company⁴ sought and obtained a new charter [June 2, 1609], which gave them more ample privileges. The territory of SOUTH VIRGINIA⁵ was extended northward to the head of the Chesapeake. The Supreme Council was vested with power to fill vacancies in its own body, and to appoint a governor for Virginia, whose rule was made absolute. The lives, liberties, and property of the settlers were at his disposal. They were compelled to contribute a certain share of their earnings to the proprietors, and were mere vassals at will, under a petty despotism.

20. Lord De la Warr (Delaware), an enlightened peer, was appointed governor of Virginia, for life, under the new charter; and soon afterward Newport sailed for America [June 12, 1609], with nine ships, and more than five hundred emigrants.⁶ Sir Thomas Gates, the governor's deputy, sailed with Newport, accompanied by Sir George Somers. These three were commissioned to administer the government until the arrival of Delaware. When near the coast, a hurricane dispersed the fleet, and the vessel bearing the commissioners was wrecked on one of the Bermuda Islands. Seven vessels of the squadron reached the James river in safety.

21. A greater portion of the new immigrants were more profligate, if pos-

1. Verse 3, page 82.

2. Verse 8, page 50.

3. Verse 10, page 50.

4. Verse 7, page 49.

5. Verse 7, page 49.

6. Domestic animals were now first taken to Virginia. They consisted of 6 mares, 1 horse, 600 swine, a few sheep and goats, and 500 domestic fowls. Two years later 100 cows and some other cattle were brought over.

QUESTIONS.—18. What happened three days after Smith's return to Jamestown? What did he ask the Council of the London Company to do? What was the condition of the colony at the end of two years? 19. Why did the London Company ask for a new charter? What was the character of the *second* charter? 20. What first took place under the new charter? Who were appointed commissioners to administer the government, and what occurred to them?

Bad conduct of the settlers.

Indian hostilities.

Destitution and relief.

sible, than the first. They were dissolute scions of wealthy families, and many of them came to avoid punishment for crimes at home. They regarded Virginia as a paradise for libertines, and believed the colony to be without a head until the arrival of the governor or his deputy. Smith, on the contrary, boldly asserted his authority as president, and maintained it until an accident in Autumn compelled him to go to England for surgical aid,¹ when he delegated his authority to George Percy, brother of the Duke of Northumberland.

22. Released from the control of Smith, the settlers now gave themselves up to every irregularity of life. Their ample stock of provisions was rapidly consumed. The Indians had great respect for Smith, but after his departure, they openly showed their contempt for the English, withheld supplies of provisions, and conceived a plan for their total extermination. Famine ensued, and the winter and spring of 1610 were long remembered as "the starving time." Those who went to the cabins of the Indians were murdered; and, finally, the time for striking the exterminating blow was fixed. Again Pocahontas performed the part of a guardian angel.² On a stormy night she hastened to Jamestown, revealed the plot, and thus saved the colony.

23. The horrors of destitution increased, and the settlement of five hundred persons, was reduced to sixty within six months after Smith's departure. The commissioners³ constructed a rude vessel upon the barren island where they were wrecked, and in it reached Virginia, in June, 1610. Instead of being greeted by a flourishing people, they were met by a mere remnant, almost famished. Gates determined to sail immediately for Newfoundland,⁴ and distribute the immigrants among the English fishing vessels there. Jamestown was utterly abandoned, and toward Hampton Roads⁵ the dejected settlers sailed in four pinnaces. Early the next morning white sails greeted their visions. Lord Delaware had arrived with provisions and immigrants; and that very night, Jamestown, abandoned to pagans in the morning, was made vocal with hymns of thanksgiving to the true God, by the returned settlers.

24. Lord Delaware was a virtuous and prudent man, and under his administration the colony began to prosper. Failing health compelled him to return to England the following spring [March, 1611]; and he left the government in the hands of Percy, Smith's successor, who managed with prudence until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, with supplies.⁶ Dale assumed the government, and ruled by martial law. Early in September following, Gates arrived with six ships, and three hundred immigrants. A large portion of them were

1. While passing down the James river, in a boat, from the Falls, Smith's bag of powder ignited, and the explosion almost killed him. His wounds were so severe as to require the most skillful surgery.

2. Verse 14, page 51.

3. Verse 20, page 53.

4. Verse 6, page 37.

5. Note 1, page 234.

6. Delaware afterward sailed for Virginia, to resume the reins of government, but died on the voyage.

QUESTIONS.—21. What was the character of the new body of immigrants? How did they regard Virginia? 22. What occurred after Smith sailed for England? What danger threatened the English, and how were they saved? 23. What further occurred to the Colonists? By what means did the commissioners get to Virginia? In what condition did they find the Colonists? What then occurred? 24. What can you tell of Lord Delaware and his successors in office, in Virginia? What was the character of emigrants who came with Sir Thomas Gates?

Change in domestic policy.

Marriage of Pocahontas.

A great want.

sober, industrious men, and their arrival gave great joy to the four hundred colonists at Jamestown. Gates assumed the functions of governor, and Dale went up the river to plant new settlements at the mouth of the Appomattox and near the Falls.¹

25. A wise change in the domestic policy was now made. Hitherto the land had been worked in common, and the product of labor was deposited in public storehouses, for the good of the community. The industrious created food for the indolent, and an incentive to effort was wanting. It was found in the assignment of a few acres of land to each man, to be cultivated for his own private benefit. This regulation gave a powerful impulse to industry. Larger assignments were made, and soon the community system was abandoned, and industry on private account created an ample supply of food for all.²

26. The London Company³ obtained a third charter in 1612 [March 22] by which the control of the king was annulled. The Supreme Council was abolished and the whole company, sitting as a democratic assembly, elected the officers and ordained the laws, for the colony. Yet no political privilege was granted to the settlers. They had no voice in the choice of rulers and the enactment of laws. But they were contented; and at the beginning of 1613 there were a thousand Englishmen in Virginia.

27. At about this time an event occurred which proved of permanent benefit to the settlement. Powhatan had continued to manifest hostile feelings ever since the departure of Smith. Under pretense of extorting advantageous terms of peace from the Indian king, Captain Argall (a sort of buccaneer),⁴ at the head of a foraging party, stole Pocahontas, and carried her on board his vessel. There a mutual attachment grew up between the maiden and John Rolfe, a young Englishman of good family. He instructed her in letters and religion; and, with the consent of Powhatan, she received the rite of Christian baptism, and became the wife of Rolfe in April, 1613. This union brought peace, and Powhatan was ever afterward the friend of the English.

28. The settlement now prospered remarkably, yet the elements of a permanent state were wanting. There were no *families* in Virginia, and all the settlers indulged in anticipations of returning to England. Gates went home in March, 1614, leaving the administration of government with Sir Thomas Dale, who ruled with wisdom and energy for about two years, and then departed, after appointing George Yeardley deputy-governor. During Yeardley's administration, the culture of the tobacco plant⁵ was promoted, and so

1. Near the present City Point and Richmond.

2. A similar result was seen in the operations of the Plymouth colony. See verse 5, page 92.

3. Verse 7, page 49.

4. Note 9, page 44.

5. This plant, yet very extensively cultivated in Virginia and adjoining States, was first discovered by Sir Francis Drake, near Tabaco, in Yucatan; hence its name. Drake and Raleigh first introduced it into England. King James conceived a great hatred of it, and wrote a treatise against its use. He forbade its cultivation in England, but could not prevent its importation from Virginia. It became a very profitable article of commerce, and the streets of Jamestown were planted with it. Other agricultural productions

QUESTIONS.—25. What change took place in the domestic policy of the settlement? 26. What was the character of the *third* charter obtained by the London Company? What was the condition and number of the settlers in 1613? 27. What event favorable to the settlers now occurred? 28. What element of a permanent State was yet wanting? What kind of industry was encouraged by Governor Yeardley, and what was the result?

rapidly did it gain in favor, that it soon became not only the principal article of export, but the *currency* of the colony.¹

29. Argall the buccaneer,² was appointed deputy-governor in 1617. He was a despot in feelings and practice, and soon disgusted the people. He was succeeded by Yeardley, who was appointed governor in 1619; and now dawned the natal morning of Virginia as a Republican State. Yeardley abolished martial law, released the planters from feudal service to the colony,³ and established representative government.⁴ The settlement was divided into eleven boroughs, and two representatives, called burgesses, were chosen by the people for each. These, with the governor and council, constituted the colonial government. The burgesses were allowed to debate all matters pertaining to the good of the colony, but their enactments were not legal until sanctioned by the company in England.

30. On the 28th of June, 1619, the first representative assembly ever convened in America, met at Jamestown. Then and there, the foundations of the VIRGINIA commonwealth were laid. The people now began to regard Virginia as their home, and "fell to building houses and planting corn." Within two years afterward, one hundred and fifty reputable young women were sent over to become wives to the planters.⁵ The tribes of gold-seekers and "gentlemen" were extinct, for "it was not the will of God that the new State should be formed of such material; that such men should be the fathers of a progeny born on the American soil, who were one day to assert American liberty by their eloquence, and defend it by their valor."⁶

SECTION II.

NEW-YORK. [1609-1623.]

1. On his return to England [Nov. 1609], Henry Hudson forwarded to his employers in Amsterdam,⁷ a brilliant account of his discoveries in America. Jealous of the maritime enterprise and growing power of the Dutch, the British king would not allow Hudson to go to Holland, fearing that he might be employed in making further discoveries, or in planting settlements in America. This narrow and selfish policy of James was of no avail, for the ocean pathway to new and fertile regions, once opened, could easily be traversed by inferior navigators.

were neglected, and while cargoes of tobacco were preparing for England, the necessities of life were wanting. The money value of tobacco was about 66 cents a pound.

1. Note 5, page 55.

2. Note 9, page 44.

3. Verse 19, page 53.

4. Yeardley found the people possessed with an intense desire for that freedom which the English constitution gave to every subject of the realm, and it was impossible to reconcile that feeling with the exercise of the arbitrary power which had hitherto prevailed. He, therefore, framed a plan for a popular assembly as similar to the English Parliament as circumstances would allow.

5. Verse 3, page 82.

6. Bancroft.

7. Verse 22, page 45.

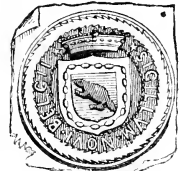
QUESTIONS.—29. What was the character of Argall? What did Yeardley do for the benefit of the settlers? 30. What important events occurred in Virginia in 1619? What other important events occurred soon afterward? What appeared to be the designs of Providence? 1. What did Hudson do? What did King James do?

2. In 1610, some wealthy merchants of Amsterdam, directors of the Dutch East India Company,¹ sent a ship from the Texel, laden with merchandise, to traffic for furs and peltries with the Indians upon the Mauritius,² as the present Hudson river was then called. Hudson's ship (the Half-Moon³) was also sent hither the same year on a like errand, and others soon followed. Among other commanders came Adrian Block, the first navigator of the dangerous strait in the East river called Hell-Gate. Block's vessel was accidentally burned in the Autumn of 1613, when he and his companions erected some rude huts for shelter, near the site of Bowling Green, in New York. These huts formed the germ of our great commercial metropolis. During the winter they constructed a vessel from timber upon Manhattan Island, and early in the spring sailed along the coast to Nahant.

3. Dutch trading vessels now frequently ascended the Mauritius, and a brisk trade was opened with the Indian tribes, almost two hundred miles from the ocean. The traders built a fort and storehouse upon a little island just below Albany [1614], which they called Fort Nassau; and nine years later, Fort Orange was erected on the site of Albany.

4. In the autumn of 1614 [October 11], a special charter was granted to a company of Amsterdam merchants, giving them the monopoly of trade in the New World, from the latitude of Cape May to that of Nova Scotia, for three years. The territory was named NEW NETHERLAND in the charter, which title it held until it became an English province in 1664.⁴ Notwithstanding it was included in the grant of James to the Plymouth Company,⁵ the Dutch were not disturbed in their traffic.⁶

5. The trade in furs and peltries became very lucrative, and the company made an unsuccessful application for a renewal of their charter. More extensive operations were in contemplation; and in 1621 [June 3], the States General of Holland⁷ incorporated the *Dutch West India Company*, and invested it with almost regal powers, for planting settlements in America from Cape Horn to Newfoundland; and in Africa, between the Cape of Good Hope and the Tropic of Cancer. The special object of its enterprise was New Netherland, and especially the region of the Mauritius. The company was not completely organized until the spring of 1623, when it commenced operations with vigor.



SEAL OF NEW NETHERLAND.

6. The first effort put forth by the company was to plant a permanent colony, and thus establish a plausible pretext for territorial jurisdiction, for now the English had built rude cabins on the shores of Massachusetts Bay.⁸ In April [1623] thirty families, chiefly

1. Note 4, page 45.

2. So named from Prince Maurice, of Nassau.

3. Verse 31, page 45.

4. Verse 12, page 115.

5. Verse 7, page 49.

6. See Brodhead's *History of the State of New York*: Appendix E.

7. Note 6, page 45.

8. Verse 13, page 63.

QUESTIONS.—2. What occurred on Manhattan island? 3. What did the Dutch traders now do? 4. How was a new territory formed, and what was its name? What is said of the quiet enjoyed by the Dutch? 5. What did the government of Holland do?

Explorations of the New England coast.

Captain Smith in New England.

Walloons (French Protestants who had fled to Holland), arrived, under the charge of Cornelius Jacobsen May, who was sent to reside in New Netherland, as first director, or governor. Eight of the families went up Hudson's river, and settled at Albany; the remainder chose their place of abode across the channel of the East river, and settled upon lands now covered by the eastern portion of Brooklyn.¹ Then were planted the fruitful seeds of a Dutch colony—then were laid the foundations of the future commonwealth of NEW YORK.² The territory was erected into a province, and the armorial distinction of a *count* was granted.³

SECTION III.

MASSACHUSETTS. [1606–1620.]

1. The PLYMOUTH COMPANY⁴ dispatched an agent to examine North Virginia, soon after obtaining their charter [August 22, 1606]. His vessel was captured by a Spanish cruiser. Another, commanded by Martin Pring, was sent, and reached America. Pring confirmed the accounts of Gosnold and others,⁵ concerning the beauty and fertility of the New England region. The following year [1607] George Popham⁶ came, with one hundred immigrants, and landing at the mouth of the Sagadahoc or Kennebeck [August 21], they erected a small stockade, a storehouse, and a few huts. All but forty-five returned to England in the vessels; these remained, and named their settlement *St. George*. A terrible winter ensued. Fire consumed their storehouse and some of their provisions; and the keen frosts and deep snows locked the waters and the forests against the fisherman and hunter. Famine menaced them, but relief came before any were made victims. Of all the company, only Popham, their president, died. Lacking courage to brave the perils of the wilderness, the settlement was abandoned, and the immigrants went back to England [1608] at the very time when the Frenchmen, who were to build Quebec,⁷ were upon the ocean. Traffic with the Indian tribes was continued, but settlements were not again attempted for several years.⁸

2. The interior of the country, now called NEW ENGLAND, was an unknown land, until Captain John Smith, with the mind of a philosopher and the cour-

1. The first white child born in New Netherland was Sarah Rapelje, daughter of one of the Walloon settlers. Her birth occurred on the 7th of June, 1625. She has a number of descendants on Long Island.

2. Verse 1, page 111

3. Several hundred years ago there were large districts of country in England and on the continent, governed by earls, who were subject to the crown, however. These districts were called counties, and the name is still retained, even in the United States, and indicates certain judicial and other jurisdiction. New Netherland was constituted a county of Holland, having all the individual privileges appertaining to an earldom, or separate government. The armorial distinction of an earl, or count, was a kind of cap, called coronet, seen over the shield in the engraved representation, page 57, of the seal of New Netherland. The figure of a beaver, on the shield, is emblematic of the Hudson river regions, where they abounded, and of one of the grand objects of settlement here, the trade in furs.

4. Verse 7, page 49.

5. Verse 28, page 44.

6. Note 2, page 49.

7. Verse 10, page 38.

8. The celebrated Lord Bacon and others fitted out an expedition to Newfoundland in 1610, but it was unsuccessful.

QUESTIONS.—6. What did the Dutch West India Company do? What emigrants went to New Netherland, and where did they settle? 1. What did the Plymouth Company attempt? What circumstances attended their first efforts at settlement?

New England named.

A new company.

Its material unfavorable.

age of a hero, came in 1614, and explored not only the coasts, but the rivers which penetrated the wilderness. With only eight men, Smith examined the region beyond Cape Cod and the Penobscot, constructed a map of the country, and after an absence of less than seven months, he returned to England, and laid a report before Prince Charles, the heir-apparent to the throne. The delighted prince confirmed the title which Smith had given to the territory delineated on the map, and it was named **NEW ENGLAND**. Crime, as usual, dimmed the luster of the discovery. Hunt, commander of one of the vessels of the expedition, kidnapped twenty-seven of the Indians, with Squanto,¹ their chief, took them to Spain, and sold some of them into slavery.² And now, at various points from Florida to Newfoundland, men-stealers of different nations, had planted the seeds of hatred and distrust,³ whose fruits, in after years, were wars and complicated troubles.

3. The following year the Plymouth Company employed Smith to make further explorations in America, and to plant a colony. He sailed on the 4th of July, 1615, but his vessel was captured by a French pirate, and himself and crew were taken to France. Smith escaped to England in an open boat, and aroused the sluggish energies of the Plymouth Company and others, who planned vast schemes of colonization, and made him admiral for life. Eager for gains, some of the members, joining with others, applied for a new charter. The king, after much delay, granted one on the 3d of November, 1620, to forty of the wealthiest and most powerful men in the realm, who assumed the corporate title of **THE COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH**, and superseded the original **PLYMOUTH COMPANY**.⁴ The vast domain of more than a million of square miles, lying between the 40th and 48th degree of north latitude, and westward to the South Sea,⁵ was conveyed to them, as absolute owners of the soil. It was the finest portion of the continent, and now embraces the most flourishing States and Territories of our confederacy.

4. This vast monopoly was unpropitious, in all its elements, to the founding of an empire. It was composed of speculators and mercenary adventurers, and these were not permitted to people this land. The same year when that monopoly was formed [1620], a company of devout men and women in Holland, who had been driven from England by persecution, came to the wilderness of the New World to erect a tabernacle, where they might worship the Great God in honest simplicity and freedom, and to plant in the wilderness the foundation of a commonwealth, based upon truth and justice. Who were they? Let History answer.

5. Because the Pope of Rome would not sanction one of the most flagrant of his social crimes, Henry the Eighth of England defied the authority of the

1. Verse 2, page 90.

2. When some benevolent friars heard of Hunt's intentions, they took all the Indians not yet sold, to instruct them as missionaries. Among them was Squanto.

3. Verse 20, page 33; also note 4, page 36; verse 8, page 37. 4. Verse 7, page 49. 5. Verse 17, page 32.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did Captain Smith accomplish in 1614? How came our eastern States to be called New England? What outrage did one of Smith's commanders perpetrate? 3. What did Smith attempt, and what befell him? What change in the Plymouth Company was effected? 4. What was the character of the new Company? What other people came to America?

Papal authority defied.

The Puritans.

Persecutions in England.

head of the Church,¹ and by the *Act of Supremacy*,² Parliament also cast off the papal yoke. The people were not benefited, for the king was pope of Great Britain, and they were his slaves. They enjoyed no religious freedom. Heresy was a high crime; and expressions of freedom of thought and opinion were not tolerated. The doctrines and rituals of the Romish Church were enforced, while the *authority* of the pope was denied. The people discovered that in exchanging spiritual masters, they had gained nothing, except that the thunders of excommunication³ had lost their effect upon the public mind, and thus one step toward emancipation was gained.



A PURITAN.

6. Henry's son, Edward, established a more liberal Protestantism in England [1574], and soon the followers of Luther and Calvin⁴ drew the tangible line of doctrinal difference which existed between them. The former retained or allowed many of the ceremonials of the Church of Rome; the latter were more austere, and demanded extreme simplicity in worship, and great purity of life. For this they were called PURITANS, in derision; a name which soon became honorable. When Parliament established a liturgy for the Church, the Puritans refused conformity, for they acknowledged no authority but the Bible in matters of religion. They became a distinct and influential party in the State [1550], and were specially commended by the continental reformers.

7. In 1553, the persecuting Queen Mary, daughter of Henry the Eighth, re-established Romanism, and Lutherans and Calvinists were equally in peril. The fires of persecution were lighted, and the first Protestant martyrs were consumed at the stake.⁵ She was succeeded by her half-sister, Elizabeth [1558], a professed Protestant, and the flames were extinguished. Elizabeth was no Puritan. She endeavored to reconcile the magnificent rituals of the Romish Church with the simple requisitions of the Gospel. There was no affinity, and trouble ensued. The Puritans, struggling for power, asserted, in all its grandeur, the doctrine of private judgment in religious matters, and of untrammelled religious liberty. From this high position it was but a step to the broad rock of civil freedom. The Puritan pulpits be-

1. The vicious king asked Pope Julius III. to divorce him from his queen, Catharine of Arragon, in order that he might marry the beautiful Anne Boleyn. The pope properly refused to give his sanction to the crime; and the licentious monarch, who had been so much of a friend of the Roman pontiff as to receive the title of *Defender of the Faith*, quarreled with the pope, and professed Protestantism. [Note 14, page 48.]

2. An act of Parliament [1534], which declared the king of England the superior head of the Church in that realm, and made Protestantism the established religion of England.

3. The Pope of Rome assumes the right to excommunicate, or expel from Christian communion, whomsoever he pleases. In former times, even kings were not exempt. An excommunicated person lost social caste; and for centuries this was an iron rod in the hand of ecclesiastics to keep the people in submission to spiritual authority. Happily for mankind, this species of despotism has lost its power, and commands the obedience of only the ignorant and enslaved.

4. See note 14, page 48. Calvin was the leading French Reformer.

5. John Rogers, a pious minister, and John Hooper, Bishop of Gloucester.

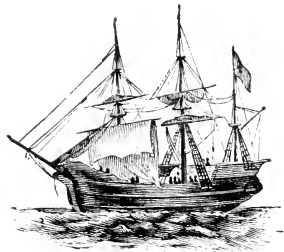
QUESTIONS.—5. Why did King Henry profess Protestantism? What was the condition of his people? and what had they gained? 6. What was the origin of the name of *Puritan*? What was the character and the position of the Puritans? 7. What persecutions occurred? What did Queen Elizabeth attempt? What was the result?

came the tribunes of the common people, and the preachers often promulgated the doctrine, *that the sovereign was amenable to public opinion when fairly expressed*. The jealousy and the fears of the queen were aroused; and after several years of effort, the *Thirty-Nine Articles* of belief, which constitute the rule of faith in the Church of England, were confirmed [1571] by an act of Parliament.

8. In 1583 a court of high commission was established, for the detection and punishment of Non-Conformists,¹ with powers almost as absolute as the Roman Inquisition. Persecution now began its work in earnest, and continued active for twenty years. The Puritans looked to the accession of James of Scotland [1604]² with hope, but were disappointed. When fairly seated on the English throne, he said of them, "I will make them conform, or I will harrie them out of the land." There were then more than thirty thousand of them in England. During the first year of James's reign, three hundred of their ministers were silenced, imprisoned, or exiled. The long struggle of the Established Church with the Roman Catholics on one hand, and the Puritans on the other, was now decided. It had been a struggle of three quarters of a century, not so much for *toleration* as for *supremacy*; and the Church of England was the final victor.

9. Among the devout men who fled from England, was the Reverend John Robinson, pastor of a flock gathered in the northern counties. Informed that there was "freedom of religion for all men in Holland," he fled thither, with his people [1608], and established a church at Leyden. They were soon joined by others from their native country. Their purity of life and lofty independence commanded the admiration of the Dutch; and their loyalty to the country from which they had been driven, was respected as a noble virtue.

10. Charmed by the narratives of the Dutch voyagers to America, the Puritans, who felt that they were only PILGRIMS, resolved to go there, far away from persecutions. A deputation³ went to England [1617], and through the influence of powerful friends,⁴ obtained the consent of the Plymouth Company⁵ to settle in North Virginia,⁶ and also a promise from the king that he would wink at their heresy, and let them alone. They asked no more.



MAY-FLOWER.

1. This was the title of all those Protestants in England who refused to conform to the doctrines and ceremonies of the Established Church. This name was first given in 1572. Ninety years afterward [1662], 2,000 ministers of the Established Church, unwilling to subscribe to the Thirty-Nine Articles, seceded, and were called Dissenters; a name yet applied to all British Protestants who are not attached to the Church of England.

2. See Note 1, page 41.

3. John Carver and Robert Cushman.

4. Sir Edward Sandys [verse 3, p. 82] was one of their chief advocates in England.

5. Verse 7, page 49.

6. Verse 7, page 49.

QUESTIONS.—8. For what purpose was a commission appointed? How were the Puritans disappointed, and treated? What struggle was concluded? 9. Who fled from England? and whither did they go? How were they esteemed abroad?

Departure of the Pilgrims for America.	The May-Flower.	Government.
--	-----------------	-------------

Some London merchants formed a partnership with them, and furnished capital for the expedition.¹ Captain Smith offered his services, but on account of his aristocratic notions, they were declined. Two ships (*Speedwell* and *May-Flower*) were furnished,² and in the summer of 1620, a portion of the *Pilgrims* in Holland—"the youngest and strongest"—embarked from Delft-Haven for England.³ Robinson and the larger portion of his flock remained at Leyden,⁴ and elder Brewster accompanied the voyagers as their spiritual guide.

11. The two ships left Southampton, in England, on the 5th of August, 1620. The courage of the captain and company of the *Speedwell* failed, and the vessels put back to port. The sails of the *May-Flower* were again spread, in the harbor of Plymouth, on the 6th of September, and forty-one men, most of them with families⁵ (one hundred and one in all)—the winnowed remnant of the *PILGRIMS* who left Delft-Haven—crossed the stormy Atlantic. These were they who came to the New World to lay, broad and deep, a portion of the foundations of our happy Republic.

12. After a boisterous passage of sixty-three days, the *May-Flower* anchored within Cape Cod.⁶ Before proceeding to the shore, the *PILGRIMS* agreed upon a form of government, and committed it to writing.⁷ To that *first written constitution of government*, ever subscribed by a whole people, the forty-one men affixed their names, and then elected John Carver to be their governor.⁸ This was done in the cabin of the *May-Flower*, and that

1. The services of each emigrant were valued as a capital of ten pounds, and belonged to the company. All profits were to be reserved till the end of seven years, when all the lands, houses, and every production of their joint industry were to be valued, and the amount divided among the shareholders, according to their respective interests. This was a community of interest, similar, in character, to those which have been proposed and attempted in our day, under the respective titles of Communism, Fourierism, and Socialism. It failed to accomplish its intended purpose, and was abandoned.

2. The *Speedwell* was a vessel of 60 tons : the *May-Flower* of 180 tons.

3. See head of Chapter IV., page 81. That is a copy of Weir's picture of *The Embarkation of the Pilgrims*, in the Rotunda of the Federal capital.

4. Robinson was never permitted to see America. Notes 3 and 5, page 92.

5. The following are their names :—John Carver, William Bradford, Edward Winslow, William Brewster, Isaac Allerton, Captain Miles Standish, John Alden, Samuel Fuller, Christopher Martin, William Mullins, William White, Richard Warren, John Howland, Stephen Hopkins, Edward Tilly, John Tilly, Peter Brown, Richard Britteridge, George Soule, Richard Clark, Richard Gardiner, Francis Cook, Thomas Rogers, Thomas Tinker, John Ridgale, Edward Fuller, John Turner, Francis Eaton, James Chilton, John Crackston, John Billington, Moses Fletcher, John Goodman, Degory Priest, Thomas Williams, Gilbert Winslow, Edward Margeson, John Allerton, Thomas English, Edward Dotey, Edward Leister. Howland was Carver's servant ; Soule was Winslow's servant ; and Dotey and Leister were servants of Hopkins.

6. The foolish statement has often been made, that the *PILGRIMS* intended to land at Manhattan Island (New York), but the commander of the *May-Flower* having been bribed by the Dutch to do so, landed them further east beyond the Dutch possessions. Coppin, the pilot, had been on the coast of New England before, and, in navigating the *May-Flower*, he only followed his old track. The story is a fable.

7. The following is a copy of the instrument : " In the name of God, Amen. We whose names are under-written, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign Lord, King James, by the grace of God, of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, etc. Having undertaken, for the glory of God and the advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia : do, by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and of one another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid ; and by virtue hereof, to enact, constitute, and frame just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions, and offices from time to time, as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general good of the colony ; unto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witness whereof we have hereto subscribed our names, at Cape Cod, the eleventh of November, in the year of the reign of our sovereign Lord, King James of England, France, and Ireland, the Eighteenth, and of Scotland the Fifty-fourth. Anno Domini, 1620."

8. John Carver was born in England, went with Robinson to Holland, and on the 3d of April, 1621, while Governor of Plymouth colony, he died.

QUESTIONS.—10. What did the Puritans resolve to do? What did they accomplish? 11. What occurred after the first departure from England until their arrival in America? 12. What did the *Pilgrims* do before landing? What made the *May-Flower* remarkable?

Landing of the Pilgrims.

Their sufferings.

Laconia.

vessel was truly the cradle of liberty in America, rocked on the free waves of the ocean.

13. After many hardships, exploring parties¹ selected a place for landing, and on the 22d day of December, 1620, the PILGRIM FATHERS first set foot upon a bare rock on the bleak coast of Massachusetts Bay, while all around the earth was covered with deep snow.² They called the landing place New Plymouth, and there a flourishing village is now spread out.³ Dreary, indeed, was the prospect before them. Exposure and privations had prostrated one half of the men before the first blow of the ax had been struck to build a habitation. Faith and hope nerved the arms of the healthy, and they began to build. One by one perished. The governor and his wife died in April 1621; and on the first of that month, forty-six of the one hundred emigrants were in their graves, nineteen of whom were signers of the Constitution. At one time only seven men were capable of assisting the sick. Fortunately the neighboring tribes, weakened by a pestilence,⁵ did not molest them. Spring and Summer came. Game became plenty in the forest, and they caught many fishes from the waters. They sowed and reaped, and soon friends from England joined them.⁶ The settlement, begun with so much sorrow and suffering, became permanent, and then and there the foundations of the commonwealth of MASSACHUSETTS were laid.



GOV. CARVER'S CHAIR. 4

SECTION IV.

NEW HAMPSHIRE. [1622-1680.]

1. Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason (the latter secretary to the Plymouth Council for New England⁷) obtained a grant of land [1622], extending from the Merrimac to the Kennebec, and inland to the St. Lawrence, and named the territory LACONIA. The same year a colony of fishermen, under David Thompson, seated themselves on the Piscataqua river, just below Portsmouth. Another party, under two brothers named Hilton, London

1. Their leader was Miles Standish, a brave soldier, who had served in the Netherlands. He was very active in the colony as military commander-in-chief, in both fighting and treating with the Indians, and is called "The Hero of New England." He was a magistrate many years, and died at Duxbury, Mass., in 1656.

2. While the explorers were searching for a landing place, the wife of William White, a bride but a short time before leaving Holland, gave birth to a son, "the first Englishman born in New England." They named him Peregrine, and the cradle in which he was rocked is yet preserved. He died at Marshfield in 1704.

3. "Plymouth Rock" is famous. It is now [1857] in two pieces. One part remains in its original position at Hedge's Wharf, Plymouth; the other is in the center of the town, surrounded by an iron railing. It was dragged thither in 1774, by twenty yoke of oxen, and over it the *Whigs* [Note 3, page 185.] erected a liberty pole.

4. This was the *throne* upon which sat the first Christian monarch of New England. Governor Carver was at the head of a new State, and, as chief magistrate, held the same relative position as King James of England, whose seat was richly ornamented and covered with a canopy of silk and gold.

5. Verse 1, page 90.

6. Verse 3, page 91.

7. Verse 3, page 59.

QUESTIONS.—13. Where did the Pilgrims land? What then occurred to them? What had happened to the neighboring Indian tribes? How were the *Pilgrims* relieved from want and distress? 1. What settlements were made northward and eastward of Massachusetts?

Founding of New Hampshire.

Coalition with Massachusetts.

Maryland.

fishmongers, commenced a settlement [1623] a few miles above, at Dover; but these were only fishing stations, and did not flourish.

2. In 1629 the Rev. Mr. Wheelwright¹ purchased from the Indians the wilderness between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua, and founded Exeter. The same year Mason obtained from Gorges exclusive ownership of that same portion of LACONIA. He named the domain NEW HAMPSHIRE,² and in 1631 built a house upon the site of Portsmouth, the name which he gave to the spot. Other settlements upon the Piscataqua, and along the present coast of Maine, as far as Portland, were attempted. At the latter place a company had a grant of land forty miles square, and formed an agricultural settlement [1631] called LIGONIA.³ Pemaquid Point was another settlement, which remained an independent community for almost forty years. Trading houses were established as far east as Machias, but they were broken up by the French, and the western limits of Acadie⁴ were fixed at Pemaquid Point, about half way from the Penobscot to the Kennebec.

3. In 1641 the several feeble and scattered settlements in New Hampshire formed a coalition with the flourishing Massachusetts colony, and remained dependencies of that province until 1680, when they were separated by order of the king, and New Hampshire became a royal province. Its first government consisted of a governor and council appointed by the king, and a house of representatives elected by the people. Then was founded the commonwealth of NEW HAMPSHIRE.

SECTION V.

M A R Y L A N D . [1634.]

1. Maryland was first settled by persecuted Roman Catholics from England and Ireland. While King James worried the Puritans on one hand, for non-conformity,⁵ the Roman Catholics, at the other end of the religious scale, were subjected to even more severe penalties. As the Puritans increased in

1. Mr. Wheelwright was a brother-in-law of Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, who was banished from the Massachusetts colony on a charge of sedition. Verse 12, page 94.

2. Mason had been governor of Portsmouth, in Hampshire County, England, and these names were given in memory of his former residence.

3. The people of these eastern settlements which formed the basis of the present commonwealth of MAINE, did not like the government attempted to be established by the proprietor, and, taking political power into their own hands, placed themselves under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts in 1652. The Territory was erected into a county, and called Yorkshire. In 1621, King James, as sovereign of Scotland, placed the Scottish seal to a charter granting to Sir William Alexander, afterward [1633] Earl of Stirling, the whole territory eastward of the State of Maine, under the title of *Nova Scotia*, or New Scotland. The French had already occupied places along the coast, and called the country *Acadie*. The Scotch proprietor never attempted settlements, either in this territory or Canada, which Charles the First had granted to him, and the whole country passed into the hands of the French, by treaty. The earl died in 1640, and all connection of his family with *Nova Scotia* ceased. His title was held afterward by four successors, the last of whom died in 1739. In 1759 William Alexander (General Lord Stirling during our War for Independence) made an unsuccessful claim to the title. The next claimant was Alexander Humphrey, who commenced operations in the Scottish courts in 1815, and by forgeries and frauds was partially successful. The whole was exposed in 1833. Humphrey was in this country in 1853, pressing his claims to the monopoly of the Eastern Fisheries, by virtue of the grants of Kings James and Charles more than 200 years ago!

4. Verse 29, page 44.

5. Note 1, page 61.

QUESTIONS.—2. What efforts at settlement occurred in 1639? What was the origin of New Hampshire? What settlements were made in Maine? What occurred to trading posts there? 3. What did the settlers in New Hampshire do? When was the province of New Hampshire established?

Lord Baltimore.

Maryland charter.

Civil and religious freedom.

numbers and influence, their cry against the Roman Catholics grew louder and fiercer, and while defending themselves from persecution with one hand, they were inflicting as severe a lash upon the Romanists with the other. Thus subjected to twofold opposition, the condition of the Roman Catholics became deplorable, and in common with other sufferers for opinion's sake, their eyes were turned toward free America.

2. Among the most influential professors of Catholicism was George Calvert, an active member of the London Company,¹ and Secretary of State at the time when the PILGRIMS² were preparing to emigrate to America. He was so much more loyal in action to his sovereign than to his faith, that he did not lose the king's favor, although frankly professing to be a Roman Catholic; and for his services he was created an Irish peer [1621], with the title of Lord Baltimore. He also obtained from James a grant [1622] to plant a Roman Catholic colony on a portion of Newfoundland.

3. Lord Baltimore now went to Virginia [1628], with a view of establishing a colony of his brethren there. But he found the Virginians as intolerant as the crown or the Puritans, and he turned his back upon their narrow prejudices and went to examine the beautiful, unoccupied region beyond the Potomac. He was pleased with the country, and applied for a charter to establish a colony there. The London Company was now dissolved,³ and the soil had become the property of the monarch. King Charles readily granted a charter, but before it was completed, Baltimore died [April 25, 1632]. It was soon afterward issued to Cecil, his son and heir [June 20], and in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria,⁴ the province was called MARYLAND. The territory defined in the charter extended along each side of Chesapeake Bay, from the 30th to the 45th degree of north latitude, its western line being the waters of the Potomac.

4. The Maryland charter was drawn, it is believed, by the first Lord Baltimore's own hand. It was the most liberal one yet granted, both in respect of the proprietor and the settlers. The government of the province was independent of the crown, and equality in religious rights and civil freedom, was secured to every Christian sect. The king had no power to levy the smallest tax upon the colonists, and all laws were invalid until sanctioned by a majority of the freemen, or their deputies.



CECIL, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

5. The first company of emigrants, mostly Roman Catholics, sailed for

1. Verse 7, page 49.

2. Verse 10, page 61.

3. Verse 8, page 83.

4. She was a Roman Catholic and sister of Louis the Thirteenth of France.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of Roman Catholics under King James? 2. Who was George Calvert? and what did he do? 3. When Lord Baltimore, how was he received in Virginia? For what territory was a charter given to him? What was the name and extent of the new province? 4. By whom was the Maryland charter drawn? and what was its character?

Settlement of Maryland.

First Legislature.

The Dutch in Connecticut.

America on the 2d of December, 1633, under Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor, and governor of the province. They arrived in March, 1634, and after sailing up the Potomac, as far as Mount Vernon, they descended the stream, almost to its mouth. They landed upon an estuary of the Chesapeake, purchased an Indian village, and laid the foundation of a town [April, 1634], which they named St. Mary.¹ The honesty of Calvert in paying for the land, secured the good will of the Indians; and the settlers experienced no sufferings from want, or the hostilities of the Aborigines.²

6. The first legislative assembly was convened at St. Mary on the 8th of March, 1635. Every freeman being allowed to vote, it was a purely democratic legislature. As the number of colonists increased, this method of making laws was found to be inconvenient, and in 1639, a representative government was established, the people being allowed to send as many delegates as they pleased. The first representative assembly made a declaration of rights, defined the powers of the proprietor, and took measures to secure to the colonists all the civil liberties enjoyed by the people of Old England. Then was founded the commonwealth of MARYLAND.

SECTION VI.

CONNECTICUT. [1632-1639.]

1. The Connecticut river was first explored, as far as Hartford, by Adrian Block,³ in 1614, who named it *Versche*, or *Fresh Water River*.⁴ Soon afterward Dutch traders were upon its banks, and might have carried on a peaceful and profitable traffic with the Indians, had honor and honesty marked their course. But the avaricious agent of the Dutch imprisoned an Indian chief on board his vessel, and would not release him until a ransom of one hundred and forty fathoms of wampum⁵ had been paid. The exasperated Indians menaced the traders, and near the site of Hartford, a place yet known as Dutch Point, the latter commenced the erection of a fort. The Indians were conciliated, and the fort was abandoned for awhile.

2. In 1627, friendly intercourse was opened between the Dutch of New Netherlands and the Puritans.⁶ With the guise of friendship, but really for

1. Trading posts were established a little earlier than this, within the Maryland province. In 1631 William Clayborne obtained a license from the king to traffic with the Indians; and when Calvert and his company came, he had two settlements, one on Kent Island, nearly opposite Annapolis, and another at the present Havre de Grace, at the mouth of the Susquehanna. He refused to acknowledge the authority of Baltimore, and trouble ensued. He collected his people on the eastern shore of Maryland in 1635, with a determination to defend his claims by force of arms; and in May quite a severe skirmish ensued between his forces and those of the colonists. Clayborne's men were taken prisoners, and he fled to Virginia. He was declared guilty of treason, and sent to England for trial. His estates were forfeited; but, being acquitted of the charge, he returned to Maryland and incited a rebellion. See verse 2, page 120.

2. Verse 12, page 15, and verse 19, page 87.

4. *Connecticut* is the English orthography of the Indian word Quon-eh-ta-cut, which signifies "the long river."

5. Probably about \$400. See note 1, page 10.

3. Verse 2, page 57.

6. Verse 6, page 60.

QUESTIONS.—5. What kind of emigrants first settled in Maryland? Can you relate the incidents of their arrival and settlement? 6. Where did the first legislative assembly convene in Maryland? What did it accomplish? 1. By whom was the Connecticut river first explored? What occurred between the Dutch and Indians?

the purpose of strengthening the claims of the Dutch to the Connecticut valley, by having an English settlement there, under the jurisdiction of New Netherland, governor Minuit¹ advised the Puritans to leave the barren land of Massachusetts Bay, and settle in the fertile region of the Fresh Water river. In 1631, a *Mohegan* chief, then at war with the powerful *Pequods*,² desirous of having a strong barrier between himself and his foes, urged the English to come and settle in the Connecticut valley. The Puritans clearly perceived the selfish policy of both parties, and hesitated to leave. The following year [1632], however, Governor Winslow, of the Plymouth colony,³ visited that fertile region, and, delighted with its appearance, resolved to promote emigration thither.

3. In the mean while, the Council of Plymouth⁴ granted the soil of Connecticut [1630] to the Earl of Warwick, who, in 1631, transferred his interest to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, John Hampden, and others. The eastern boundary of the territory was "Narraganset river," and the western (like all other charters at that time) was the Pacific Ocean.⁵ The Dutch became apprized of the movements of the English; and perceiving no advantage (but detriment) to themselves, they purchased of the Indians the land at Hartford and vicinity, completed their fort,⁶ and placed two cannons upon it [1633], with the intention of preventing the English ascending the river.

4. In October [1633], Captain William Holmes and a chosen company arrived in the Connecticut river, in a sloop. Holmes was commissioned to make a settlement, and he brought with him the frame of a house. When he approached the Dutch fort he was menaced with destruction. But he was not intimidated, and sailing by unhurt, he landed at the site of Windsor, and there erected his house. The following year the Dutch made an unsuccessful attempt to drive him from the country.

5. Holmes's colony flourished, and in the Autumn of 1635, a party of sixty men, women, and children, from the Puritan settlements, commenced a journey through the wilderness [Oct. 25] to join him. With their cattle,⁷ they made a slow and dreary journey of a hundred miles through dark forests and dismal swamps; and when they arrived upon the banks of the Connecticut [Nov. 25], the ground was covered with deep snow, and the river was frozen. It was a winter of great trial for them. Many cattle perished.⁸ A vessel bearing food for the colony was lost on the coast, and the settlers were compelled to subsist upon acorns, and scanty supplies of Indian corn from the natives. Many returned to Bos-



FIRST MEETING-HOUSE.

1. Verse 1, page 111.

2. Verse 14, page 16.

3. Verse 13, page 63.

4. Verse 3, page 59.

5. Verse 3, page 59.

6. Verse 1, page 66.

7. This was the first introduction of cattle into Connecticut.

8. The loss in cattle was estimated at about \$1,000.

QUESTIONS.—2. What overtures were made to the Puritans by the Dutch and Indians? What did the Puritans do? 3. To whom was the soil of Connecticut granted? What movements did the Dutch make? 4. Can you relate the adventures of Holmes with the Dutch? 5. What settlers went to the Connecticut river? What occurred to them? What pious act did they perform?

Hooker's emigration to Connecticut. Murders by the Pequods. Williams's interposition.

ton by water. With the opening of Spring the necessities of those who remained were supplied. They erected a small house for worship on the site of Hartford; and in April, 1636, the first court, or organized government, was held there.

6. At about the time when this company departed, a son of governor Winthrop¹ of Massachusetts, Hugh Peters and Henry Vane, arrived at Boston from England, as commissioners for the proprietors of Connecticut, with instructions to build a fort at the mouth of the river of that name, and to plant a colony there. The fort was speedily built, and the settlement was named Saybrook, in honor of the two peers named in the charter.²

7. In June, 1636, Rev. Thomas Hooker, the "light of the western churches," with other ministers, their families, and flocks, in all about one hundred, left the vicinity of Boston for the Connecticut valley. It was a toilsome journey through the swamps and forests. They subsisted upon the milk of their cows which they took with them, and on the 4th of July [1636], they stood upon the beautiful banks of the Connecticut. A great portion of the company settled at Hartford. Some chose Wethersfield for a residence; and others, from Roxbury, went up the river twenty miles, and settled at Springfield. There were now five distinct English settlements upon the Connecticut river.

8. A storm was now gathering. The powerful *Pequod* Indians³ became jealous of the white people, because they appeared to be the friends of their enemies the *Mohegans* on the West, and of their more powerful foes, the *Narragansets*, on the East. They first commenced petty annoyances; then kidnapped children, murdered men in the forests, and attacked families on the outskirts of the settlement at Saybrook. Their allies of Block Island⁴ captured a Massachusetts trading vessel, killed the captain⁵ [July, 1636] and plundered her. An inefficient expedition from Boston and vicinity penetrated the *Pequod* country, which resulted in only increasing the hatred and hostility of the savages. The *Pequods* became bolder, and finally sought an alliance with their enemies, the *Narragansets*, in an effort to exterminate the white people.

9. Roger Williams, who had been banished from Massachusetts,⁶ was now a friendly resident in the country of the *Narragansets*, and heard of the proposed alliance. Forgetting the many injuries he had received, he warned the doomed people of the Bay Colony, of impending danger. At the risk of his own life, he descended Narraganset Bay in an open canoe, on a stormy day, visited Miantonomoh, the *Narraganset* sachem, at his seat near Newport, while the *Pequod* ambassadors were there in council. The latter menaced Williams with death; yet that good man remained three days, and effectually

1. Verse 8, page 93.

2. Verse 3, page 67.

3. Verse 14, page 16.

4. This island, which lies nearly south from the eastern corner of Connecticut, was visited by Adrian Block, the Dutch navigator, and was called by his name. At the time in question it was thickly populated with fierce Indians.

5. John Oldham, the first overland explorer of the Connecticut river.

6. Verse 11, page 94.

QUESTIONS.—6. Who else commenced a settlement? and what was it called? 7. Can you relate incidents of migration to the Connecticut in 1636? 8. What did the Indians do to the settlers? and for what reason? 9. What did Roger Williams do for the English settlers?

War with the Pequods.

Sassacus.

His defeat, flight and death.

prevented the alliance.¹ And more—he induced the *Narragansets* to renew hostilities with the *Pequods*. By this generous service the infant settlements were saved from destruction.

10. During the ensuing Winter, the Indians continued their murderous depredations. In the Spring, the authorities of the English settlements on the Connecticut declared war against the *Pequods* [May, 1637], and the Massachusetts and Plymouth colonies agreed to aid them. Soon Captain Mason, who was in command of the fort at Saybrook² and Captain John Underhill, a brave and restless man, sailed in some pinnaces, with about eighty white men and seventy *Mohegan* Indians under Uncas,³ for Narraganset Bay. There Miantonomoh, with two hundred warriors, joined them, and they marched for the *Pequod* country. Their ranks were swollen by the brave *Niantics* and others, until five hundred “bowmen and spearmen” were in the train of Captains Mason and Underhill.

11. The chief sachem of the *Pequods* was Sassacus, a fierce warrior, and the terror of the New England tribes.⁴ He could summon almost two thousand warriors to the field; and feeling confident in his strength, was not properly vigilant. His chief fort and village on the Mystic river, eight miles north-east of New London, was surprised at dawn [June 5, 1637], and before sunrise more than six hundred men, women and children, perished by fire and sword. Only seven escaped to spread the dreadful intelligence abroad, and arouse the surviving warriors. The *Narragansets* turned homeward, and the English, aware of great peril, pressed forward to Groton on the Thames, and there embarked for Saybrook. They had lost only two killed, and less than twenty wounded.

12. Sassacus had scarcely recovered from this shock, when almost a hundred armed settlers, from Massachusetts, under Captain Stoughton, arrived at Saybrook. The terrified *Pequods* made no resistance, but fled in dismay toward the wilderness westward, hotly pursued by the English. Terrible was the destruction in the path of the pursuers. Throughout the beautiful country on Long Island Sound, from Saybrook to New Haven, wigwams and cornfields were destroyed, and helpless women and children were slain. With Sassacus at their head, the Indians flew like deer before the hounds, and finally took shelter in Sasco swamp, near Fairfield, where, after a severe battle, they all surrendered, except Sassacus and a few followers. These fled to the *Mohawks*,⁵ where the sachem was treacherously murdered, and his people were sold into slavery, or incorporated with other tribes. The blow was one of extermination, relentless and cruel. “A nation had disappeared in a day.” The New England tribes⁶ were filled with awe, and for forty years the colonists were unmolested by them.

1. Verse 5, page 71.

2. Verse 6, page 68.

3. Verse 14, page 16.

4. Verse 15, page 17.

5. Verse 2, page 18.

6. Verse 15, page 17.

QUESTIONS.—10. What preparations were made for war with the Indians? 11. Who was the head of the *Pequods*, and where was his residence? What occurred to his chief fort and village? 12. What did the English do? and what misfortunes befell Sassacus and his tribe?

Settlement of New Haven.

Connecticut colony.

Rhode Island.

13. In the summer of 1637, John Davenport, an eminent Nonconformist minister of London, with Theophilus Eaton and Edward Hopkins, rich merchants who represented a wealthy company, arrived at Boston. They were cordially received, and urgently solicited to settle in that colony. The Hutchinson controversy² was then at its height; and perceiving the religious agitations of the people, they resolved to found a settlement in the wilderness. The sagacious Puritans, while pursuing the *Pequods*, had discovered the beauty and fertility of the country along the Sound from the Connecticut to Fairfield, and Davenport and his companions heard their report with joy. Eaton and a few others explored the coast in autumn, and erecting a hut³ near the Quinipiac creek (the site of New Haven), they passed the winter there, and selected it for a settlement. In the spring [April 13, 1638] Davenport and others followed; and under a wide-spreading oak,⁴ the good minister preached his first sermon. They purchased the lands at Quinipiac, of the Indians, and, taking the Bible for their guide, they formed an independent government, or "plantation covenant," upon strictly religious principles. There they laid the foundations of a city, and called it NEW HAVEN.

14. The following year the settlers at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield, met in convention at Hartford [January 24, 1639], and adopted a written constitution, which contained very liberal provisions. It ordained that the governor and legislature should be elected annually by the people, and they were required to take an oath of allegiance to the commonwealth, and not to the king. The General Assembly, alone, could make or repeal laws; and in every matter the voice of the people was heard. This was termed the CONNECTICUT COLONY; and, notwithstanding it and the New Haven Colony were not united until 1665, now was laid the foundation of the commonwealth of CONNECTICUT, which was governed by the Hartford Constitution for more than a century and a half.

SECTION VII.

RHODE ISLAND. [1636-1643.]

1. The first settler in Rhode Island was William Blackstone, a non-conformist minister,⁵ who was the first resident upon the peninsula of Shawmut, where Boston now stands.⁶ Not liking the "lords brethren" in Massachusetts any more than the "lords bishops" of England, he withdrew to the wilderness. On the banks of the Pawtucket river he planted, and called the place Rehoboth.⁷ Although he was the first *settler*, Blackstone was not the *founder* of Rhode Island.

1. Note 1, page 61. 2. Verse 12, page 94. 3. On the corner of Church and George-streets, New Haven.

4. At the intersection of George and College-streets, New Haven.

5. Note 1, page 61.

6. Verse 8, page 93.

7. Room. The name was significant of his aim—he wanted *room* outside of the narrow confines of what he deemed Puritan intolerance.

QUESTIONS.—13. What circumstances led to the settlement at New Haven? Who were the principal men engaged in the movement? 14. What did the settlers at Hartford and vicinity do? What was the character of their Constitution? 1. Who first *settled* in Rhode Island? and what caused him to do so?

Banishment of Roger Williams.

Settlement at Providence.

Effects of toleration.

2. When Roger Williams was banished from Massachusetts, toward the close of 1635,¹ he left civilization, and found liberty and toleration among the heathen. After his sentence,² his persecutors began to dread the influence of his enlightened principles, if he should plant a settlement beyond the limits of existing colonies, and they resolved to detain him. Informed of their scheme, he withdrew from Salem in the dead of winter [January, 1636], and through deep snows he traversed the forests alone, for fourteen weeks, sheltered only by the rude wigwam of the Indian, until he found the hospitable cabin³ of Massasoit, the chief sachem of the *Wampanoags*,⁴ at Mount Hope. There he was entertained until the buds appeared, when, being joined by five friends from Boston, he seated himself some distance below Blackstone's plantation.

3. Williams being within the territory of the Plymouth Company,⁵ Governor Winslow⁶ advised him to cross into the *Narraganset* country, where he could not be molested. With his companions, he embarked in a light canoe, paddled around to the head of Narraganset Bay, and upon a green slope, near a spring,⁷ they prayed, and chose the spot for a settlement. Williams obtained a grant of land from Canonicus, chief sachem of the *Narragansets*, and in commemoration of "God's merciful providence to him in his distress," he called the place PROVIDENCE.

4. The freedom enjoyed at Providence was soon spoken of at Boston, and persecuted men fled thither for refuge. There men of every creed lived together happily. The same freedom was allowed in politics as in religion; and there was established a pure democracy. Each settler was required to subscribe to an agreement, that he would submit to such rules, "not affecting the conscience," as a majority of the inhabitants should adopt for the public good. Williams reserved no political power to himself, and the leader and follower had equal dignity and privileges.

5. The powerful *Narraganset* chief became much attached to Williams, and his influence among them, as we have seen,⁸ was very powerful. He saved his persecutors from destruction, yet they had not the Christian manliness to remove the sentence of banishment. His settlement was entirely unmolested during the *Pequod* war,⁹ and it prospered wonderfully.

6. Early in 1638, while Mrs. Hutchinson was yet in prison in Boston,¹⁰ her husband, with William Coddington, Dr. John Clarke, and sixteen others, of concurrent religious views,¹¹ accepted the invitation of Roger Williams to settle in his vicinity. Miantonomoh gave them the beautiful island of Aquiday,¹²

1. Verse 11, page 94.

2. Williams was allowed six weeks after the pronouncement of his sentence to prepare for his departure.

3. Massasoit had become acquainted with the manner of building cabins adopted by the settlers at fishing-stations on the coast, and had constructed one for himself. They were much more comfortable than wigwams. See verse 7, page 9.

4. Verse 15, page 17.

5. Verse 7, page 49.

6. Verse 2, page 66.

7. This spring is now beneath some fine sycamores, on the west side of Benefit-street, in Providence.

8. Verse 9, page 68.

9. Verse 10, page 69.

10. Verse 12, page 94.

11. Note 2, page 95.

12. This was the Indian name of Rhode Island. It is a *Narraganset* word, signifying *Peaceable Isle*. It is sometimes spelled Aquitneck, and Aquitnet.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did the persecutors of Roger Williams fear? What did he do? 3. What led to the founding of *Providence*? 4. What kind of government did Williams establish? What was the effect? 5. How was Williams regarded by the Indians?

Settlement of Newport.	Rhode Island and Providence plantations.	Delaware.
------------------------	--	-----------

for forty fathoms of white wampum.¹ They called it Isle of Rhodes, and upon its northern verge they planted a settlement, and named it Portsmouth. A covenant, similar to the one used by Williams,² was signed by the settlers; and, in imitation of the Jewish form of government under the judges, Codrington was chosen judge or chief ruler, with three assistants. Others soon came from Boston; and in 1639, Newport, toward the lower extremity of the island, was founded. Liberty of conscience was absolute; love was the social and political bond; and upon the seal which they adopted was the motto, *Amor vincit omnia*—"Love is all-powerful."

7. Although the *Rhode Island* and the *Providence* plantations were separate in government, they were united in interest and aim. Unwilling to acknowledge allegiance to either Massachusetts or Plymouth,³ they sought an independent charter. For that purpose Roger Williams went to England in 1643. The whole parent country was then convulsed with civil war.⁴ After much delay, he obtained from Parliament (which was then contending fiercely with the king) a free charter of incorporation [March 24, 1644], and all the settlements were united under the general title of *Rhode Island and Providence Plantations*. Then was founded the commonwealth of RHODE ISLAND.

SECTION VIII.

DELAWARE, NEW JERSEY, AND PENNSYLVANIA. [1631-1682.]

1. The first permanent settlements in the provinces of Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, bore such intimate relations to each other, that they may be appropriately considered as parts of one episode in the history of American colonization.

DELAWARE.

2. Cape Henlopen was the south coast-limit of New Netherland.⁵ In 1629, the territory between the Cape and the mouth of the Delaware river was purchased of the natives; and in April, 1631, a vessel from Holland, under the command of Peter Heyes, arrived there with thirty immigrants, with implements and cattle. They seated themselves on the Delaware, near the present village of Lewiston. Heyes returned to Holland, and reported to

1. Note 1, page 10. They also gave the Indians ten coats and twenty hose, on condition that they should leave the island before the next winter.

2. Verse 4, page 71. The following is a copy of the government compact: "We, whose names are underwritten, do swear solemnly, in the presence of Jehovah, to incorporate ourselves into a body politic, and, as He shall help us, will submit our persons, lives, and estates, unto our Lord Jesus Christ, the King of kings, and Lord of Hosts, and to all those most perfect and absolute laws of His, given us in His holy Word of truth, to be guided and judged thereby."

3. This unwillingness caused the other New England colonies to refuse the application of Rhode Island to become one of the confederacy, in 1643. See verse 15, page 96.

4. Note 10, page 84.

5. Verse 4, page 57.

QUESTIONS.—6. What led to a settlement on Rhode Island? What was the result? 7. What did the Rhode Island settlements become? 1. What of the early history of Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania? 2. What was the southern coast-limit of New Netherland? What happened on the shores of the Delaware?

Scheme of Gustavus Adolphus. Swedish West India Company. Jealousy of the Dutch.

Captain De Vries,¹ his employer. That mariner visited America early the following year [1632], but the little colony was not to be found. Difficulties with the Indians had provoked savage vengeance, and they had exterminated the white people.

3. A competitor for a place on the Delaware now appeared. Usselinex, an original projector of the Dutch West India Company,² becoming dissatisfied with his associates, visited Sweden, and laid before the enlightened monarch, Gustavus Adolphus, well-arranged plans for a Swedish colony in the New World. The king was delighted, for his attention had already been turned toward America; and his benevolent heart was full of desires to plant a free colony there, which should become an asylum for all persecuted Christians. While his scheme was ripening, the danger which menaced Protestantism in Germany, called him to the field, to contend for the principles of the Reformation,³ and, with a strong army, he opposed the Imperial hosts marshaled under the banner of the pope on the fields of Germany. Yet the care and tumults of the camp and field did not make him forget his benevolent designs; and only a few days before his death, at the battle of Lutzen [November 6, 1632], Gustavus recommended the enterprise as "the jewel of his kingdom."

4. Christina, the daughter and successor of Gustavus, was then only six years of age. The government was administered by a regency,⁴ at the head of which was Axel, count of Oxenstierna. He was the earliest and most ardent supporter of the great enterprise of Gustavus; and in 1634, he issued a charter for the *Swedish West India Company*. Peter Minuit,⁵ who had been recalled from the governorship of New Netherland, went to Stockholm and offered his services to the new corporation. They were accepted; and toward the close of 1637, he sailed, with fifty emigrants, landed on the site of Newcastle, in Delaware, in April, 1638, and purchased from the Indians⁶ the territory between Cape Henlopen and the Falls of the Delaware, at Trenton. They built a church and fort on the site of Wilmington, called the place Christina, and gave the name of *New Sweden* to the territory.

5. The jealousy of the Dutch was aroused by this "intrusion," and they hurled protests and menaces against the Swedes.⁷ But the latter increased; and upon Tinicum island, a little below Philadelphia, they laid the foundations of a capital for a Swedish province.⁸ The Dutch West India Company⁹ finally resolved to expel or subdue the Swedes. The latter defied the power of the

1. De Vries was an eminent navigator, and friend of the purchasers. To secure his valuable services, the purchasers made him a partner in their enterprise, with patroon (verse 2, page 111) privileges, and the first expedition was arranged by him. He afterward came to America, and was one of the most active men in the Dutch colonies. On his return to Holland, he published an account of his voyages.

2. Verse 5, page 57.

3. Note 11, page 48.

4. A regent is one who exercises the power of a king or emperor during the absence, incapacity, or childhood of the latter. For many years George the Third of England was incapable of ruling, and his son, who was to be his successor at his death, was called the Prince Regent, because Parliament had given him power to act as king, in the place of his father. In the case of Christina, three persons were appointed regents, or rulers.

5. Verse 1, page 111.

6. The *Delawares*.—Verse 13, page 15.

7. Verse 4, page 112.

8. This was done about forty years before William Penn became proprietor of Pennsylvania.

9. Verse 5, page 57.

QUESTIONS.—3. What caused a Swedish emigration to the Delaware? 4. What officer gave a charter to a Swedish company? What was it called? What was done under its direction? 5. What difficulties occurred between the Dutch and Swedes? What was the result?

Conquest of New Sweden.

Settlements in New Jersey.

Colonial organization.

Dutch. The challenge was acted upon; and toward the close of the summer of 1655, Governor Stuyvesant, with a squadron of seven vessels, entered Delaware Bay.¹ In September every Swedish fort and settlement was brought under his rule, and the capital on Tinicum island was destroyed. The Swedes obtained honorable terms of capitulation; and for twenty-five years they prospered under the rule of the Dutch and English proprietors of New Netherland.

NEW JERSEY.

6. The territory of New Jersey was included in the New Netherland charter,² and transient trading settlements were made [1622], first at Bergen, by a few Danes, and then on the Delaware. Early in 1623, the Dutch built a log fort near the mouth of Timber creek, a few miles below Camden, and called it Nassau;³ and in June, four couples, who had been married on the voyage from Amsterdam, seated themselves upon the site of Gloucester, a little below Fort Nassau.

7. In 1630, Michael Pauw bought, from the Indians, the lands extending from Hoboken to the Raritan; and also the whole of Staten Island, and named the territory *Pavonia*.⁴ In this purchase Bergen was included. Other settlements were attempted, but none were permanent. In 1631, Captain Heyes, after establishing the Swedish colony at Lewiston,⁵ crossed the Delaware, and purchased Cape May⁶ from the Indians; and from that point to Burlington, traders' huts were often seen. The English became possessors of New Netherland in 1664, and the Duke of York, to whom the province had been given,⁷ conveyed to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret [June 24, 1664], all the territory between the *North* and *South* (Hudson and Delaware) *Rivers*, and northward to the line of forty-one degrees and forty minutes, under the title of *Nova Cesarea* or NEW JERSEY. Soon afterward several families from Long Island settled at Elizabethtown,⁸ and there planted the first seed of the New Jersey colony. The following year, Philip Carteret, who had been appointed governor of the new province, arrived with a charter, fair and liberal in all its provisions. It provided for a government to be composed of a representative assembly⁹ chosen by the people, and a governor and council. The legislative powers resided in the assembly; the executive powers were intrusted to the governor and his council. Then [1665] was laid the foundation of the commonwealth of NEW JERSEY.

1. Verse 9, page 114.

2. Verse 4, page 57.

3. It was built under the direction of Captain Jacobus May, who had observed attempts made by a French sea captain to set up the arms of France there. The fort was built of logs, and was little else than a rude block-house, with palisades. [See note 2, page 101.] A little garrison, left to protect it, was soon scattered, and the fort was abandoned.

4. Until the period of our war for independence, the point of land on which Jersey City now stands, was called Paulus's Hook. Here was the scene of a bold exploit in 1779. Verse 12, page 235.

5. Verse 2, page 72.

6. Verse 12, page 115.

7. Named in honor of Captain Jacobus May.

8. Verse 2, page 128.

9. Note 2, page 128.

QUESTIONS.—6. When and where were settlements first made in New Jersey? 7. What other purchases and settlements were made in New Jersey? What government was given to the settlers?

The Quakers.

William Penn.

Quakers in New Jersey.

PENNSYLVANIA.

8. At about the commencement of the civil wars [1642-1651] which resulted in the death of Charles the First, a new religious sect arose, called Quakers.¹ Their preachers were the boldest, and and yet the meekest, of all non-conformists.² Purer than all other sects, they were hated and persecuted by all. Those who came to America for "conscience' sake" were persecuted by the Puritans of New England,³ the Dutch of New Amsterdam, and the Churchmen of Virginia and Maryland. Only in Rhode Island did they enjoy freedom, and even there they did not always dwell in peace.



WILLIAM PENN.

9. In 1673, George Fox, the founder of the Quaker sect, visited all his brethren in America. He found them a despised people everywhere, and his heart yearned for an asylum for his brethren. Among the most influential of his converts was William Penn, son of the renowned admiral of that name. Through his influence the Quakers soon possessed the western half of New Jersey, by purchase from Lord Berkeley.⁴ The first company of immigrants landed in the autumn of 1675, and named the place of debarkation *Salem*.⁵ They established a democratic form of government; and in November, 1681, the first legislative assembly of Quakers ever convened, met at Salem.

10. In the mean while, Penn, who had been chief peace-maker when disputes arose among the proprietors and the people, took measures to plant a new colony beyond the Delaware. He applied to Charles the Second for a charter. The king remembered the services of Admiral Penn,⁶ and gave his son a grant [March 14, 1681] of "three degrees of latitude by five degrees of longitude west of the Delaware," and named the province *Pennsylvania*. It included the principal settlements of the Swedes. To these people, and others within the domain, Penn sent a proclamation, filled with the loftiest sentiments of republicanism. William Markham, who bore the proclamation, was appointed deputy governor of the province, and with him sailed [May, 1681] quite a large company of immigrants, who were members or employees of the *Company of Free Traders*,⁷ who had purchased lands of the proprietor.

1. This name was given by Justice Bennet, of Derby, in 1650, who was admonished by George Fox to tremble at the word of the Lord.—HAYDON. See verse 18, page 97.

2. Note 1, page 61.

3. Verse 2, page 128.

3. Verse 18, page 97.

6. He was a very efficient naval commander, and by his skill contributed to the defeat of the Dutch in 1664. The king gave him the title of *Baron* for his services. Note 15, page '8.

7. Lands in the new province were offered for about ten cents an acre. Quite a number of purchasers

QUESTIONS.—8. What was the condition of the Quakers in America? 9. What did their founder do? How came Quakers to possess a part of New Jersey? What did they do? 10. What did William Penn attempt? What territory was granted to him? What inducements were offered to settlers? What company was formed?

Founding of Pennsylvania.

William Penn in America.

The Carolinas.

11. In the spring of 1682 [May], Penn published a frame of government, and sent it to the settlers for their approval. It was not a constitution, but a code of wholesome regulations for the people of the colony.¹ He soon afterward obtained, by grant and purchase [Aug., 1682], the domain of the present State of Delaware, which the Duke of York claimed, notwithstanding it was clearly not his own. It comprised three counties, called *The Territories*.²

12. Toward the close of August, 1682, Penn sailed for America with about one hundred emigrants. When he arrived at Newcastle, in Delaware [Nov. 6], he found almost a thousand new comers. He was joyfully received by the old settlers, who then numbered almost three thousand. The Swedes said, "It is the best day we have ever seen;" and they all gathered like children around a father.



THE ASSEMBLY HOUSE.

13. On the day after his arrival, Penn received from the agents of the Duke of York,³ in the presence of the people, a formal surrender of *The Territories*; and after resting a few days, he proceeded to visit his brethren in New Jersey, and the authorities at New York. On his return, he met the General Assembly of the province, at Chester,⁴ when he declared the union of *The Territories* with Pennsylvania. He also made a more judicious organization of the local government, and then were permanently laid the foundations of the commonwealth of PENNSYLVANIA.

SECTION IX.

THE CAROLINAS. [1622-1680.]

1. We have already considered the unsuccessful efforts at settlement on the coast of Carolina during the sixteenth century.⁵ As early as 1609, some dissatisfied people from Jamestown settled on the Nansemond; and in 1622, Porey, then secretary of Virginia, with a few friends, penetrated the country beyond the Roanoke. In 1630, Charles the First granted a vast domain south of Virginia, from Albemarle Sound to the St. John's river, to Sir

united, and called themselves *The Company of Free Traders*, with whom Penn entered into an agreement concerning the occupation of the soil, laying out of a city, etc.

1. It ordained a General Assembly, or court, to consist of a governor, a council of seventy chosen by the freemen of the colony, and a house of delegates, to consist of not less than two hundred members, nor more than five hundred. These were also to be chosen by the people. The proprietor, or his deputy (the governor), was to preside, and to have a threefold voice in the council; that is, on all questions, he was to have three votes for every one of the councilors.

2. Newcastle, Kent, and Sussex.

3. Verse 12, page 115.

4. The picture is a correct representation of the building at Chester, in Pennsylvania, wherein the Assembly met. It was yet standing in 1850. Not far from the spot, on the shore of the Delaware, at the mouth of Chester Creek, was also a solitary pine-tree, which marked the place where Penn landed.

5. Verse 21, page 33, to verse 27, page 43.

QUESTIONS.—11. What did Penn do in 1682? 12. How was he received in America? 13. What public act did he perform? What did he do on his return from New York? 1. What attempts at settlement in Carolina were made?

Settlements in North Carolina.

Emigration to South Carolina.

Robert Heath, his attorney-general. No settlements were made, and the charter was forfeited.

2. Dissenters or Nonconformists¹ now suffered many disabilities in Virginia, and looked to the wilderness for freedom. In 1653, Roger Green and a few Presbyterians left that colony and settled upon the Chowan River, near the present village of Edenton. Other dissenters soon followed. Governor Berkeley, of Virginia,² wisely organized them into a separate political community [1663], and William Drummond,³ a Scotch Presbyterian minister was appointed their governor. They received the name of *Albemarle County Colony*, in honor of the Duke of Albemarle, who, that year, became a proprietor of the territory. Two years previously [1661], some New England⁴ adventurers settled in the vicinity of Wilmington, on the Cape Fear River, but many of them soon abandoned the country because of its poverty.

3. In 1663, Charles the Second granted the whole territory named in Heath's charter, to eight of his principal friends,⁵ and called it CAROLINA.⁶ As the Chowan settlement was not within the limits of the charter, the boundary was extended northward to the present line between Virginia and North Carolina, and also southward, so as to include the whole of Florida, except its peninsula. The Bahama Islands were granted to the same proprietors in 1667.⁷

4. A company of Barbadoes planters settled [1665] upon the lands first occupied by the New England people, and founded a permanent settlement there. The few settlers yet remaining were treated kindly, and soon an independent colony, with Sir John Yeamans⁸ as governor, was established. It was called the *Clarendon County Colony*, in honor of one of the proprietors. Yeamans managed prudently, but the poverty of the soil prevented a rapid increase in the population.⁹ Now was founded the commonwealth of NORTH CAROLINA.

5. In January 1670, the proprietors sent three ships with emigrants, under the direction of William Sayle¹⁰ and Joseph West, to plant a more southerly colony. They entered Port Royal, landed on Beaufort Island at the spot where the Huguenots built Fort Carolina, in 1564,¹¹ and there Sayle died

1. Note 1, page 61.

3. Drummond was afterward executed on account of his participation in Bacon's revolutionary acts. See Note 7, page 88.

2. Verse 11, page 84.

4. Verse 2, page 78.

5. Lord Clarendon, his Prime Minister; General Monk, just created Duke of Albemarle; Lord Ashley Cooper, afterward Earl of Shaftesbury; Sir George Carteret, a proprietor of New Jersey; Sir William Berkeley, Governor of Virginia; Lord Berkeley, Lord Craven, and Sir John Colleton.

6. It will be perceived [note 3, page 41] that the name of Carolina, given to territory south of Virginia, was bestowed in honor of two kings named Charles, one of France, the other of England.

7. Samuel Stephens succeeded Drummond as governor, in 1667; and in 1668, the first popular Assembly in North Carolina, assembled at Edenton.

8. Yeamans was an impoverished English baronet, who had become a planter in Barbadoes to mend his fortune. He was successful, and became wealthy.

9. The inhabitants turned their attention chiefly to the manufacture of boards and other timber, and also turpentine, from the immense pine forests of the coast regions. Such continues to be the staple trade between the Cape Fear and Roanoke, in the vicinity of the seaboard.

10. Sayle had previously explored the Carolina coast. Twenty years before he had attempted to plant an "Eleutharia," or place dedicated to the genius of Liberty [see *Eleutheria*, Anthon's Classical Dictionary], in the isles near the coast of Florida.

11. Verse 13, page 79.

QUESTIONS.—2. What originated the *Albemarle County Colony*? What had already been done? 3. To whom was Carolina granted? What additions were made to the possessions of the proprietors? 4. What other settlers founded a colony? 5. What efforts were made to plant a new southern colony? What did the immigrants do?

Founding of Charleston.

Settlements in the interior.

Georgia country.

early in 1671. The immigrants soon afterward abandoned Beaufort, and sailing into the Ashley River,¹ seated themselves on its western bank, at a place a few miles above Charleston, now known as Old Town, and there planted the first seeds of a South Carolina colony.

6. West exercised authority until the arrival of Sir John Yeamans [December 1671], who was appointed governor. He came with fifty families, and a large number of slaves.² Representative government was instituted in 1672,³ under the title of the *Carteret County Colony*, so called in honor of one of the proprietors.⁴ Ten years afterward they abandoned the spot; and upon Oyster Point, at the junction of Ashley and Cooper Rivers,⁵ nearer the sea, they founded the present city of Charleston.⁶ Immigrants came from various parts of Europe, and many Dutch families, dissatisfied with the English rule at New York,⁷ went to South Carolina, where lands were freely given to them, and soon, along the Santee and the Edisto, the wilderness began to blossom under the hand of culture. The people would have nothing to do with a government scheme prepared by Shaftesbury and Locke,⁸ but preferred simple organic laws of their own making. Then were laid the foundations of the commonwealth of SOUTH CAROLINA.

SECTION X.

GEORGIA. [1733.]

1. When the proprietors of the Carolinas surrendered their charter⁹ to the Crown [1729], the whole country southward of the Savannah river to the vicinity of St. Augustine, was a wilderness peopled by native tribes,¹⁰ and claimed by the Spaniards as part of their territory of Florida.¹¹ The English disputed this claim, and South Carolina townships were ordered to be marked out as far south as the Alatamaha. The dispute grew warm and warlike, and the Indians instigated by the Spaniards, depredated upon the frontier English settlements.¹²

2. While the clouds of hostility were gathering, and grew darker every hour, it was lighted up by a bright beam of benevolence, which proved the harbinger of a glorious day. It came from England, where, at that time, poverty was often considered a crime, and at least four thousand unfortunate debtors were yearly consigned to loathsome prisons. The honest and true,

1. Verse 6, page 134.

2. This was the commencement of negro slavery in South Carolina. Yeamans brought almost two hundred of them from Barbadoes. From the commencement, South Carolina has been a planting State.

3. Note 2, page 134.

4. He was also one of the proprietors of New Jersey. See verse 7, page 74.

5. These were so called in honor of Ashley Cooper, Earl of Shaftesbury. The Indian name of the former was *Ke-a-wah*, and of the latter, *E-ti-wan*.

6. Charleston was laid out in 1680 by John Culpepper, who had been surveyor-general for North Carolina. See verse 6, page 134.

7. Verse 12, page 116.

8. Verse 1, page 132.

9. Verse 23, page 139.

10. Chap. I., Sec. VIII.

11. Verse 18, page 32.

12. Verse 20, page 138.

QUESTIONS.—6. How was negro slavery first introduced into South Carolina? What change did the settlers make? How was immigration encouraged? 1. What occurred concerning the Georgia country? 2. What now occurred in England?

Prisoners for debt.

New settlement proposed.

Emigration to Georgia.

the noble and the educated, as well as the ignorant and vile, groaned within prison walls. Their wailings at length reached the ears of benevolent men. Foremost among these was James Edward Oglethorpe,¹ a brave soldier, whose voice had been heard often in Parliament against imprisonment for debt.

3. General Oglethorpe was made chairman of a committee of inquiry upon the subject, appointed by Parliament, and his report, embodying a noble scheme of benevolence, attracted attention and admiration. He proposed to open the prison doors to all virtuous men within who would accept the conditions; and with those and other sufferers from poverty and oppression, to go to the wilderness of America, and there establish a colony of freemen, and open an asylum for persecuted Protestants² of all lands. The plan met warm responses in Parliament, and received the hearty approval of George the Second. A royal charter of twenty-one years was granted [June 9, 1732] to a corporation "in trust for the poor," to establish a colony within the disputed territory south of the Savannah, to be called GEORGIA, in honor of the king.³ Individuals subscribed large sums to defray the expenses of emigrants hither; and within two years after the issuing of the patent, Parliament had appropriated one hundred and eighty thousand dollars for the same purpose.⁴

4. Oglethorpe was a practical philanthropist, He offered to accompany the first settlers to the wilderness, and to act as governor of the new province. With one hundred and twenty emigrants he left England [Nov., 1732], and after touching at Charleston [Jan., 1733], he proceeded to Port Royal. There Oglethorpe landed a large portion of his followers, and with a few others, he coasted to the Savannah river. Sailing up that stream as far as Yamacraw Bluff, he landed, and chose the spot whereon to lay the foundation of the capital of a future State.⁵

5. The remainder of the emigrants arrived from Port Royal soon afterward [Feb. 12, 1733]. The Winter air was genial, and they commenced the erection of a town, which they called Savannah, the Indian name of the river.⁶ For almost a year the governor dwelt under a tent, and there he often held friendly intercourse with the chiefs of neighboring tribes. At length when he had

1. See portrait, page 81. Born in Surrey, England, December 21, 1698. He was a soldier by profession. In 1745, was made a brigadier-general, and fought against Charles Edward, the Pretender, who was a grandson of James the Second, and claimed rightful heirship to the throne of England. Oglethorpe refused the supreme command of the British army destined for America in 1775. Died June 30, 1785, aged 87 years.

2. Note 14, page 48.

3. The domain granted by the charter extended along the coast from the Savannah to the Altamaha, and westward to the Pacific ocean. The Trustees appointed by the crown possessed all legislative and executive power; and therefore, while one side of the seal of the new province expressed the benevolent character of the scheme, by the device of a group of toiling silk worms, and the motto, *Non sibi, sed aliis*; the other side bearing, between two urns, the genius of "Georgia Augusta," with a *cap of Liberty* on her head, a spear, and a horn of plenty, was a false emblem. There was no political liberty for the people.

4. Brilliant visions of vast vintages, immense productions of silk for British looms, and all the wealth of a fertile tropical region, were presented for the contemplation of the commercial acumen of the business men of England. These considerations, as well as the promptings of pure benevolence, made donations liberal and numerous.

5. Some historians believe that Sir Walter Raleigh, while on his way to South America, in 1585, went up the Savannah river, and held a conference with the Indians on this very spot.

6. The streets were laid out with great regularity: public squares were reserved; and the houses were all built on one model, 24 by 16 feet, on the ground.

QUESTIONS.—3. What led to a settlement in Georgia? How was the scheme encouraged? 4. What did Oglethorpe do?

Conference with the Indians.

General character of the settlers.

mounted cannons upon the fort, and safety was thus secured, Oglethorpe met fifty chiefs in council [May, 1733], with *To-mo-chi-chi*¹ the chief sachem of the lower *Creek* Confederacy² at their head, to treat for the purchase of lands. Satisfactory arrangements were made, and the English obtained sovereignty over the whole domain [June 1, 1733] along the Atlantic from the Savannah to the St. Johns, and westward to the Flint and the head-waters of the Chatahoochee. The provisions of the charter formed the constitution of government for the people; and there, where the city of Savannah now stands, was laid the foundation of the commonwealth of GEORGIA, in the Summer of 1733. Immigration flowed thither in a strong and continuous stream, for all were free in religious matters; yet for many years the colony did not flourish.³

6. Never in the history of the world was greater heroism displayed than the seaboard of the domain of the United States exhibited during the period of settlements, and the development of colonies. Hardihood, faith, courage, indomitable perseverance, and untiring energy, were requisite to accomplish all that was done in so short a time, and under such unfavorable circumstances. While many of the early emigrants were mere adventurers, and sleep in deserved oblivion, because they were recreant to the great duty which they had self-imposed, there are thousands whose names ought to be perpetuated in brass and marble, for their faithful performance of the mighty task assigned them. They came here as sowers of the prolific seed of human liberty; and during the colonizing period, many of them carefully matured the tender plant, while bursting into vigorous life. We, who are the reapers, ought to reverence the sowers and the cultivators with grateful hearts.

1. *To-mo-chi-chi* was then an aged man, and at his first interview with Oglethorpe, he presented him with a buffalo skin, ornamented with the picture of an eagle. "Here," said the chief, "is a little present; I give you a buffalo's skin, adorned on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle, which I desire you to accept, because the eagle is an emblem of speed, and the buffalo of strength. The English are swift as the bird, and strong as the beast, since, like the former, they flew over vast seas to the uttermost parts of the earth; and, like the latter, they are so strong that nothing can withstand them. The feathers of an eagle are soft, and signify love; the buffalo's skin is warm, and signifies protection; therefore I hope the English will love and protect our little families." Alas! the wishes of the venerable *To-mo-chi-chi* were never realized, for the white people more often plundered and destroyed, than loved and protected the Indians.

2. Verse 2, page 22.

3. Verse 1, page 139, and verse 9, page 142.

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the settlers do on Yamacraw Bluff? What arrangements were made with the Indians? What was the condition of the colonists? 6. What reflections may we indulge?



EMBARKATION OF THE PILGRIMS.

CHAPTER IV.

THE COLONIES.

SECTION I.

1. THE colonial history of the United States is comprised within the period commencing when the several settlements along the Atlantic coasts became organized into political communities, and ending when representatives of these colonies met in general congress in 1774.¹ There was an earlier union



JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE.

of interests and efforts. It was when the English colonies aided the mother country in a long war against the combined hostilities of the French and Indians. As the local histories of the several colonies after the commencement of that war have but little interest for the general reader, we shall trace the progress of each colony only to that period, and devote a section to the narrative of the French and Indian war.²

1. Verse 35, page 15.

2. Sec. XII., page 147.

QUESTIONS.—1. What period comprises the *colonial* history of the United States? What union of efforts was effected previous to 1774?

2. We have observed that a *settlement* acquires the character of a *colony* only when it has become permanent, and the people, acknowledging allegiance to a parent State, are governed by organic laws.¹ According to these conditions, the earliest of the thirteen colonies represented in the Congress of 1774, was

VIRGINIA. [1619].

3. It was a happy day for the six hundred settlers in Virginia, when the gold-seekers disappeared,² and the enlightened George Yeardley became governor, and established a representative assembly [June 28th, 1619]—the first in all America.³ And yet a prime element of happiness and prosperity was wanting. *There were no white women in the colony.* The wise Sandys, the friend of the *Pilgrim Fathers*,⁴ was then treasurer of the LONDON COMPANY,⁵ and one of the most influential and zealous promoters of emigration. During the same year when the Puritans sailed for America [1620], he sent more than twelve hundred emigrants to Virginia, among whom were ninety young women, “pure and uncorrupt,” who were disposed of for the cost of their passage, as wives for the planters.⁶ The following year sixty more were sent. The family relation was soon established; the gentle influence of woman gave refinement to social life on the banks of the Powhatan;⁷ new and powerful incentives to industry and thrift were created, and the mated planters no longer cherished the prevailing idea of returning to England.⁸

4. Vessel after vessel, laden with immigrants, continued to arrive in the James river, and new settlements were planted, even so remote as the Falls,⁹ and on the distant bank of the Potomac. Verbal instructions would no longer serve the purposes of government, and the company granted [August, 1621] the colonists a *written Constitution*,¹⁰ which ratified most of the acts of Yeardley.¹¹ Provision was made for the appointment of a governor and council by the Company, and a popular assembly to consist of two burgesses or representatives from each borough, chosen by the people. This body, and the council, composed the General Assembly, which was to meet once a year and pass laws for the general good.¹² Such laws were not valid, until approved by the company, neither were any orders of the company binding

1. Verse 1, page 47.

2. Verse 16, page 52.

3. Verse 20, page 56.

4. Verse 10, page 61.

5. Verse 7, page 49.

6. Tobacco had already become a circulating medium, or currency, in Virginia. The price of a wife varied from 120 to 150 pounds of this product, equivalent, in money value, to about \$90 and \$112 each. The second “cargo” were sold at a still higher price. By the king’s special order, one hundred dissolute vagabonds, called “jail birds” by the colonists, were sent over the same year, and sold as bond-servants for a specified time. In August, the same year, a Dutch trading vessel entered the James river with negro slaves. Twenty of them were sold into perpetual slavery to the planters. This was the commencement of negro slavery in the English colonies [note 5, page 145]. The slave population of the United States in 1850, was 3,201,313, according to the census.

7. Verse 10, page 50.

8. Most of the immigrants hitherto were possessed of the spirit of mere adventurers. They came to America to repair shattered fortunes, or to gain wealth, with the ultimate object of returning to England to enjoy it. The creation of families made the planters more attached to the soil of Virginia.

9. Near the site of the city of Richmond. The falls, or rapids, extend about six miles.

10. The people of the *Mayflower* formed a *written constitution* for themselves. [Verse 12, page 62.] That of Virginia was modeled after the constitution of England.

11. Verse 29, page 56.

12. This was the beginning of the Virginia House of Burgesses, of which we shall often speak.

QUESTIONS.—2. What constitutes a colony? 3. What was wanting in Virginia? How was the want supplied? What was the effect? 4. What progress did the colony make? What was the character of the constitution? How did the Virginians regard it?

Terrible Indian massacre.

Vengeance of the white people.

upon the colonists, until ratified by the General Assembly. Trial by jury was established, and courts of law conformable to those of England were organized. Ever afterward claiming these *privileges* as *rights*, the Virginians look back to the Summer of 1621 as the era of their civil freedom.

5. Sir Francis Wyatt, who had been appointed governor under the Constitution, and brought the instrument with him, was delighted with the aspect of affairs in Virginia. But a dark cloud soon arose. The neighboring Indian tribes¹ gathered in solemn council. Powhatan, the friend of the English after the marriage of his daughter;² was dead, and an enemy of the white people ruled the dusky nation.³ The English were now four thousand in number, and rapidly increasing. The Indians read their own destiny—annihilation—upon the face of every new comer; and, prompted by the first great law of his nature, self-preservation, the red man resolved to strike a blow for life.

6. An Indian conspiracy to exterminate the white people was formed in the Spring of 1622. At mid-day, on the first of April, the hatchet fell upon all of the more remote settlements; and within an hour, three hundred and fifty men, women and children were slain.⁴ Jamestown⁵ and neighboring plantations were saved by the timely warning of a converted Indian.⁶ The people were on their guard and escaped. Those far away in the forests defended themselves bravely, and then fled to Jamestown. Within a few days, eighty plantations were reduced to eight.

7. Now concentrated at Jamestown, the people prepared for vengeance. A vindictive war ensued, and a terrible blow of retaliation was given. The Indians upon the James and York rivers were slaughtered by scores, or were driven far back into the wilderness. Yet a blight was upon the colony. Sick-ness and famine followed close upon the massacre. Within three months, the colony of four thousand souls was reduced to twenty-five hundred, and at the beginning of 1624, of the nine thousand persons who had been sent to Virginia, from England, only eighteen hundred remained.

8. The holders of the stock of the LONDON COMPANY⁷ had now become very numerous, and their meetings, composed of men of all respectable classes, assumed a political character, in which two distinct parties were represented, namely, the advocates of liberty, and the supporters of the royal prerogatives. The king was offended by the freedom of debates at these meetings, and regarded them as inimical to royalty and dangerous to the stability of his throne.⁸

1. The Powhatans; verse 10, page 15.

2. Verse 27, page 55.

3. Powhatan died in 1618, and was succeeded in office by his younger brother, Opechancanough [verse 12, page 85]. This chief hated the English. He captured Smith.

4. Opechancanough was wily and exceedingly treacherous. Only a few days before the massacre, he declared that "sooner the skies would fall than his friendship with the English should be dissolved." Even on the day of the massacre, the Indians entered the houses of the planters with usual tokens of friendship.

5. Verse 10, page 50.

6. This was Chaneco, who was informed of the bloody design the evening previous. He desired to save a white friend in Jamestown, and gave him the information. It was too late to send word to the more remote settlements. Among those who fell on this occasion, were six members of the council, and several of the wealthiest inhabitants.

7. Verse 7, page 49.

8. These meetings were quite frequent; and so important were the members, in political affairs, that they could influence the election of members of Parliament. In 1623, the accomplished Nicholas Ferrar, an

QUESTIONS.—5. What trouble appeared? 6. What conspiracy was formed? What terrible disaster befell the Virginians? 7. How did they retaliate? What else befell the colony?

He determined to regain what he had lost by granting the liberal third charter¹ to the company. He endeavored to control the elections. Failing in this, he sought a pretense for dissolving the Company. A commission was appointed [May, 1623] to inquire into their affairs. It was composed of the king's pliant instruments, who, having reported in favor of a dissolution of the Company, an equally pliant judiciary accomplished his designs [October, 1623], and a *quo warranto* was issued. The company made but little opposition, for the settlement of Virginia had been an unprofitable speculation from the beginning; and in July, 1624, the patents were canceled,² and Virginia became a royal province again.

9. King James boasted of the beneficent results to the colonists which would flow from this usurpation, by which they were placed under his special care. He appointed Yeardley,⁴ with twelve councilors, to administer the government, but wisely refrained from interfering with the House of Burgesses.⁵ The king lived but a few months afterward, and at his death [April 6, 1625] he was succeeded by his son, Charles the First. That monarch was as selfish as he was weak. He sought to promote the welfare of the Virginia planters, because he also sought to reap the profits of a monopoly, by becoming himself their sole factor in the management of their exports. He allowed them political privileges, because he asked their sanction for his commercial agency.⁶

10. Yeardley died in November, 1627, and was succeeded by Sir John Harvey [1629], a haughty and unpopular royalist. He was a member of the commission appointed by James;⁷ and the colonists so despised him, that they refused the coveted monopoly to the king. After many and violent disputes about land titles, the Virginians deposed him [1635] and appointed commissioners to proceed to England with an impeachment. Harvey accompanied the commission. The king refused to hear complaints against the accused, and he was sent back clothed with full powers to administer the government. He ruled almost four years longer, and was succeeded [November, 1639] by Sir Francis Wyatt.

11. Sir William Berkeley,⁸ an able and elegant courtier, succeeded Wyatt in August, 1641. For ten years he ruled with vigor, and the colony prospered wonderfully.⁹ But, as in later years, commotions in Europe now disturbed the American settlements. The democratic revolution in England,¹⁰ which

active opponent of the court party, was elected to Parliament, by the influence of the London company. This fact, doubtless, caused the king to dissolve the Company the present year.

2. A writ of *quo warranto* is issued to compel a person or corporation to appear before the king, and show by what authority certain privileges are held.

3. The Company had expended almost \$700,000 in establishing the colony, and this great sum was almost a dead loss to the stockholders.

6. In June, 1623, the king, in a letter to the governor and council, asked them to convene an assembly to consider his proposal to contract for the whole crop of tobacco. He thus tacitly acknowledged the legality of the republican assembly of Virginia, hitherto not sanctioned, but only permitted.

8. Was born near London; educated at Oxford; became, by travel and education, a polished gentleman; was governor of Virginia almost 40 years, and died in July, 1677.

9. In 1648 the number of colonists was 20,000. "The cottages were filled with children, as the ports were with ships and immigrants."

10. For a long time the exactions of the king fostered a bitter feeling toward him, in the hearts of the

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell of the London Company and the king? 9. What did the king do? What was the character of his successor? 10. Why did the Virginians hate Governor Harvey? What occurred between him and them?

Loyalty of the Virginians.

Parliamentary authority.

A compromise.

brought Charles the First to the block, and placed Oliver Cromwell in power, now began [1642], and religious sects in England and America assumed political importance. Puritans¹ had hitherto been tolerated in Virginia, but now the Throne and the Church were united in interest, and the Virginians being loyal to both, it was decreed that no minister should preach except in conformity to the constitution of the Church of England.² Many non-conformists³ were banished from the colony.

12. The Indians were again incited to hostilities [April, 1644], by the restless and vengeful Opechancanough,⁴ and for two years a bloody border warfare was carried on. The King of the Powhatans⁵ was finally made captive, and died while in prison at Jamestown. The power of the confederation was completely broken, and after ceding large tracts of land⁶ to the English, the chiefs acknowledged allegiance to the authorities of Virginia.

13. The Virginians remained loyal during the civil war in England⁷ [1641-1649], and when Republican government was proclaimed, they boldly recognized the son of the late king, although in exile, as their sovereign.⁸ The republican Parliament was incensed, and took measures to coerce Virginia into submission to its authority. For that purpose Sir George Ayscue was sent with a powerful fleet, bearing commissioners of Parliament, and anchored in Hampton Roads in March, 1652.

14. Although the Virginians had resolved to submit rather than fight, they made a show of resistance. They declared their willingness to compromise with the invaders, to which the commissioners, surprised at the bold attitude of the colonists, readily consented. Instead of opening their cannons upon the Virginians, they courteously proposed submission to the authority of Parliament upon terms quite satisfactory to the colonists. Liberal political concessions to the people were secured, and they were allowed nearly all those civil rights which the Declaration of Independence,⁹ a century and a quarter later, charged George the Third with violating.

15. Until Charles the Second was restored to the throne of his father [May 29, 1660], Virginia was virtually an independent State, for Cromwell made no appointments except that of governor. Already the people had elected Richard Bennet [1652] to fill Berkeley's place. In 1656, Cromwell appointed Samuel Matthews governor. On the death of the Protector [1658],

people. In 1641 they took up arms against their sovereign. One of the chief leaders of the popular party was Oliver Cromwell. The war continued until 1649, when the royalists were subdued, and the king was beheaded. Parliament assumed all the functions of government, and ruled until 1653, when Cromwell, the insurgent leader, dissolved that body, and was proclaimed supreme ruler, with the title of *Protector* of the Commonwealth of England. He was a son of a wealthy brewer of Huntingdon, England, where he was born in 1599. Died, September, 1658.

2. Verse 7, page 60.

3. Note 1, page 61.

4. Note 4, page 83.

1. Verse 6, page 61.

5. Verse 19, page 15.

6. They relinquished all claim to the beautiful country between the York and James rivers, from the Falls of the latter, at Richmond, to the sea, forever. It was a legacy of a dying nation to their conquerors. After that, their utter destruction was swift and thorough.

7. Note 10, page 84.

8. Afterward the profligate Charles the Second. His mother was sister to the French king, and to that court she fled, with her children. It was a sad day for the moral character of England when he was enthroned.

9. Supplement, page 323.

QUESTIONS.—11. What disturbed the peace of the colonies? 12. What caused the final overthrow of the Powhatans? 13. What was the political character of the Virginians? What did Parliament do? 14. What compromises were made by the Virginians and the commissioners? 15. What course did the Virginians now pursue?

Charles the Second proclaimed King.

The Royalist party.

the Virginians were not disposed to acknowledge the authority of his son Richard,¹ and they *elected* Matthews their chief magistrate, as a token of their independence. Universal suffrage prevailed; all freemen, without exception, were allowed to vote; and white servants, when their terms of bondage ended, had the same privilege, and might become burgesses.

16. When intelligence of the probable restoration of Charles the Second reached Virginia, Berkeley, whom the people had elected governor in 1660, repudiated the popular sovereignty, and proclaimed the exiled monarch "King of England, Scotland, Ireland, and *Virginia*." This happened before he was proclaimed in England.² The Virginia republicans were offended, but being in the minority, could do nothing. A new Assembly was elected and convened, and high hopes of favor from the monarch were entertained by the court party. But these were speedily blasted, and in place of greater privileges, came commercial restrictions to cripple the industry of the colony. The navigation act of 1651 was re-enacted in 1660, and its provisions were rigorously enforced.³

17. The people murmured, but in vain. The profligate monarch, who seems never to have had a clear perception of right and wrong, but was governed by caprice and passion, gave away, to his special favorites, large tracts of the finest portions of the Virginia soil, some of it already well cultivated.⁴

18. The royalist party became more and more despotic, and the members of the Assembly, elected for only two years, assumed to themselves the right of holding office indefinitely. The representative system was thus virtually abolished. The doctrines and rituals of the Church of England having been made the religion of the State, intolerance began to grow. Baptists and Quakers⁵ were compelled to pay heavy fines. The salaries of the royal officers being paid from duties upon exported tobacco, these officials were made independent of the people.⁶ Oppressive and unequal taxes were levied, and the idle aristocracy formed a distinct and ruling class. The "common people"—the men of toil and substantial worth—formed a Republican party, and rebellious murmers were heard on every side.

1. Cromwell appointed his son Richard to succeed him in office. Lacking the vigor and ambition of his father, he gladly resigned the troublesome legacy into the hands of the people, and, a little more than a year afterward, Charles the Second was enthroned.

2. When informed that Parliament was about to send a fleet to bring them to submission, the Virginians sent a message to Charles, then in Flanders, inviting him to come over and be king of Virginia. He had resolved to come, when matters took a turn in England favorable to his restoration. In gratitude to the colonists, he caused the arms of Virginia to be quartered with those of England, Scotland, and Ireland, as an independent member of the empire. From this circumstance Virginia received the name of *The Old Dominion*. Coins, with these quarterings, were made as late as 1773.

3. The first Navigation Act, by the Republican Parliament, prohibited foreign vessels trading to the English colonies. This was partly to punish the sugar-producing islands of the West Indies, because the people were chiefly loyalists. The act of 1660 provided that no goods should be carried to or from any English colonies, but in vessels built within the English dominions, whose masters and at least three fourths of the crews were Englishmen; and that sugar, tobacco, and other colonial commodities should be imported into no part of Europe, except England and her dominions. The trade between the colonies now struggling for prosperous life, was also taxed for the benefit of England.

4. In 1673, the king gave to Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, two of his profligate favorites, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for thirty years. 5. Verse 8, page 75.

6. One of the charges made against the King of England, in the Declaration of Independence, more than a hundred years later, was that he had "made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices and the amount and payment of their salaries."

QUESTIONS.—16. What did Berkeley do? What expectations were disappointed? 17. What did the king do? 18. What did the Virginia royalists do? What caused rebellious feelings?

Indian depredations.

Bacon, the Republican.

Civil war.

19. The menaces of the *Susquehannah* Indians,¹ a fierce tribe of lower Pennsylvania, gave the people a plausible pretense for arming during the summer of 1675. The Indians had been driven from their hunting grounds at the head of the Chesapeake Bay by the *Senecas*,² and coming down the Potomac, made war upon the Maryland settlements.³ They finally committed murders upon Virginia soil, and retaliation⁴ caused the breaking out of a fierce border war.

20. Governor Berkeley's measures for defense were not satisfactory, and Nathaniel Bacon,⁵ an energetic and highly-esteemed republican, acting in behalf of his party, demanded permission for the people to arm and protect themselves.⁶ Berkeley's sagacity perceived the danger of allowing discontented men to have arms, and he refused. The Indians came nearer and nearer, until laborers on Bacon's plantation, near Richmond, were murdered. That leader then yielded to the popular will, and placed himself at the head of four or five hundred men, to drive back the enemy. Berkeley, jealous of Bacon's popularity, proclaimed him a traitor [May, 1676], and sent troops to arrest him. Some of his more timid followers returned, but sterner patriots adhered to his fortunes.

21. The people generally sympathized with Bacon, and in the lower counties they arose in open rebellion. Berkeley was obliged to recall his troops to suppress the insurrection, and in the mean while Bacon drove the Indians⁷ back toward the Rappahannock. He was soon afterward elected a Burgess,⁸ but, on approaching Jamestown, he was arrested. For fear of the people, who made hostile demonstrations, the governor pardoned him and all his followers, and hypocritically professed a personal regard for the bold republican leader.

22. The pressure of public opinion now compelled Berkeley to yield at all points. The long aristocratic Assembly was dissolved; many abuses were corrected; and all the privileges formerly enjoyed by the people were restored.⁹ Fearing treachery in the capital, Bacon withdrew to the Middle Plantation,¹⁰ where he was joined by three or four hundred armed men from the upper counties, and was proclaimed commander-in-chief of the Virginia troops. The governor regarded the movement as rebellious, and refused to sign Bacon's commission. The patriot marched to Jamestown, and demanded

1. Verse 2, page 13.

2. Verse 2, page 18.

3. Verse 5, page 65.

4. John Washington, an ancestor of the commander-in-chief of the American armies a century later, commanded some troops against an Indian fort on the Potomac. Some chiefs, who were sent to his camp to treat for peace, were treacherously slain, and this excited the fierce resentment of the *Susquehannahs*.

5. He was born in England, educated a lawyer, and in Virginia was a member of the council. He was about thirty years of age at that time.

6. King Philip's war was then raging in Massachusetts, and the white people, everywhere, were alarmed. See Verse 21, page 98.

7. The chief leaders of the republican party at the capital, were William Drummond, who had been governor of North Carolina [verse 2, page 77], and Colonel Richard Lawrence.

8. This event was the planting of one of the most vigorous and fruitful germs of American nationality. It was the first bending of power to the boldly-expressed will of the people.

9. Williamsburg, four miles from Jamestown, and midway between the York and James rivers, was then called the *Middle Plantation*. After the accession of William and Mary [see verse 3^d, page 103], a town was laid out in the form of the cipher WM, and was named Williamsburg. Governor Nicholson made it the capital of the province in 1693.

QUESTIONS.—19. What gave the people an excuse for arming? What caused an Indian war? 20. What caused an insurrection? and what was done? 21. How did the rebellion progress? 22. What did the people gain? What more can you tell of the rebellion and of Bacon?

Governor Berkeley humbled.

His bad faith.

Destruction of Jamestown.

it without delay. The frightened governor speedily complied [July 4, 1676], and, concealing his anger, he also, on compulsion, signed a letter to the king, highly commending the acts and motives of the "traitor." The Assembly also gave him the commission of a general of a thousand men.

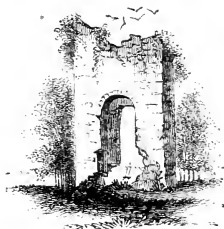
23. On receiving his commission, Bacon marched against the Pamunkey Indians.¹ Berkeley then crossed the York river, and at Gloucester he summoned a convention of royalists. All the proceedings of the Republican Assembly were reversed, and the governor again proclaimed Bacon a traitor [July 29, 1676]. The indignation of the patriot leader was fiercely kindled, and, marching back to Jamestown, he lighted up a civil war. The property of royalists was confiscated, their wives were seized as hostages, and their plantations were desolated. Berkeley fled to the eastern shore of the Chesapeake. Bacon proclaimed his abdication, called an Assembly in his own name, and was about to cast off all allegiance to the British crown, when intelligence was received of the arrival of imperial troops to quell the rebellion.²

24. Berkeley, with some royalists and English sailors under Major Robert Beverly, now [Sept. 7] returned to Jamestown. Bacon collected his troops, and drove the governor down the James river. Informed that a large body of royalists and imperial troops were approaching, the Republicans applied the

torch [Sept. 30] just as the night shadows came over the village.³ When the sun arose on the following morning, the first town built by Englishmen in America⁴ was a heap of smoking ruins. Nothing remained standing but a few chimneys, and that old church tower⁵ which now attracts the eye and heart of the voyager upon the bosom of the James river.

25. Leaving the site of Jamestown, Bacon pressed forward with his little army toward the York, determined to drive the royalists from Virginia. But he was smitten by a deadlier foe than armed men. The malaria of the marshes at Jamestown had poisoned his blood, and he died [Oct. 11, 1676] of malignant fever, on the north bank of the York. There was no man to receive the mantle of his ability and influence, and his departure was a death-blow to the cause he had espoused. Before the 1st of November, Berkeley returned to the Middle Plantation⁶ in triumph.

26. Berkeley signalized his restoration to power by acts of wanton cruelty. Twenty-two of the insurgent leaders had been hanged,⁷ when the more mer-



CHURCH TOWER.

1. This was a small tribe on the Pamunkey river, one of the chief tributaries of the York river.

2. This was an error. The fleet sent with troops to quell the insurrection did not arrive until April the following year. Colonel Jeffreys, the successor of Berkeley, came with the fleet.

3. Besides the church and court-house, Jamestown contained sixteen or eighteen houses, built of brick, and quite commodious, and a large number of humble log cabins.

4. The church, of which the brick tower alone remains, was built about 1620. It was probably the third church erected in Jamestown. The ruin is now [1857] a few rods from the encroaching bank of the river, and is about thirty feet in height. The engraving is a correct representation of its present appearance. In the grave-yard adjoining are fragments of several monuments.

6. Note 10, page 7.

7. The first man executed was Colonel Hansford. He has been justly termed the first martyr in the cause

QUESTIONS.—23. What did Berkeley do? What favored him? What occurred at Jamestown? 25. What calamity befell the patriots?

Berkeley's tyranny.

Firmness of the Republicans.

Profligate governors.

ciful Assembly implored him to shed no more blood. But he continued fines, imprisonments, and confiscations, and ruled with an iron hand, until recalled by the king, in April, 1677.¹ There was no printing-press in Virginia to record current history,² and for a hundred years the narratives of royalists gave hue to the whole affair. Bacon was always regarded as a *traitor*, and the effort to establish a free government is known in history as BACON'S REBELLION. Such, also, would have been the verdict of history had Washington and his compatriots been unsuccessful.

27. The effects of these civil commotions were felt for many years. The people were borne down by the petty tyranny of royal rulers; yet the principles of republicanism grew apace. The popular Assembly became winnowed of its aristocratic elements; and, notwithstanding royal troops were quartered in Virginia,³ to overawe the people, the burgesses were always firm in the maintenance of popular rights.⁴ In reply to Governor Jeffreys, when he appealed to the authority of the Great Seal of England, in defense of an arbitrary act in seizing the books and papers of the Assembly, the burgesses said, "That such a breach of privilege could not be commanded under the Great Seal, because they could not find that any king of England had ever done so in former times." The king ordered the governor to "signify his majesty's indignation at language so seditious;" but the burgesses were as indifferent to royal frowns as they were to the governor's menaces.

28. Lord Culpepper, who, under the grant of 1673,⁵ had been appointed governor for life [1677], arrived in 1680. His profligacy and rapacity disgusted the people. Discontents ripened into insurrections, and the blood of patriots again flowed.⁶ At length the king became incensed against Culpepper, revoked his grant⁷ [1684], and deprived him of office. Yet Effingham, his successor, was equally rapacious, and the people were on the eve of a general rebellion, when King Charles died, and his brother James⁸ was proclaimed [February, 1685] his successor, with the title of James the Second.

29. The people hoped for benefit by the change, but their burdens were increased. Again the wave of rebellion was rising high, when the revolution of 1688⁹ placed William of Orange and his wife Mary upon the throne. Then

of liberty in America. Drummond and Lawrence were also executed. They were considered ringleaders and the prime instigators of the rebellion.

1. Charles said, "The old fool has taken more lives in that naked country than I have taken for the murder of my father."

2. Berkeley was an enemy to popular enlightenment. He said to commissioners sent from England in 1671, "Thank God, there are no free schools nor printing-press; and I hope we shall not have these hundred years; for learning has brought disobedience, and heresy, and sects into the world, and printing has divulged these, and libels against the best government." Despots are always afraid of the printing press, for it is the most destructive foe of tyranny.

3. These troops were under the command of Sir Henry Chicheley, who managed with prudence. They proved a source of much discontent, because their subsistence was drawn from the planters. For the same cause, disturbances occurred in New York ninety years afterward. Verse 16, page 177.

4. Verse 4, page 82.

5. Note 4, page 6.

6. By the king's order, Culpepper caused several of the insurgents, who were men of influence, to be hanged, and a "reign of terror," misnamed *tranquillity*, followed.

7. Arlington [note 4, page 81] had already disposed of his interest in the grant to Culpepper.

8. James, Duke of York, to whom Charles gave the New Netherlands in 1664. See verse 12, page 115.

9. James the Second, by his bigotry (he was a Roman Catholic), tyranny, and oppression, rendered him-

QUESTIONS.—25. What temper did the governor show? and how? How was Bacon long regarded? 27. What were the effects of these commotions? How did the people assert their dignity? 28. What was the character of Culpepper? What bad rulers were in Virginia?

a real change for the better took place. The popular will, expressed by Parliament, became powerful; and this potency of the National Assembly was extended to similar colonial organizations. The powers of governors were defined, and the rights of the people were understood; and, notwithstanding commercial restrictions bore heavily upon the enterprise of the colonies, the diffusion of just political ideas, and the growth of free institutions in America, were rapid and healthful.

30. The history of Virginia, from the revolution of 1688 down to the commencement of the French and Indian war, is the history of the steady, quiet, progress of an industrious people, and presents no prominent events of interest to the general reader.¹

SECTION II.

MASSACHUSETTS. [1620.]

1. "Welcome, Englishmen! welcome, Englishmen!" were the first words which the *Pilgrim Fathers*² heard from the lips of a son of the American forest. It was the voice of Samoset, a *Wampanoag* chief, who had learned a few English words of fishermen at Penobscot. His brethren had hovered around the little community of sufferers at New Plymouth³ for a hundred days, when he boldly approached [March 26, 1621] and gave the friendly salutation. He told them to possess the land, for the occupants had nearly all been swept away by a pestilence. The *Pilgrims* thanked God for thus making their seat more secure, for they feared the hostility of the Aborigines.

2. When Samoset again appeared, he was accompanied by Squanto,⁴ a chief who had recently returned from captivity in Spain; and they informed the white people of Massasoit, the grand sachem of the *Wampanoags*, then residing at Mount Hope. An interview was planned. The old sachem came with barbaric pomp,⁵ and he and Governor Carver⁶ smoked the calumet⁷ to-

self hateful to his subjects. William, Prince of Orange, Stadtholder of Holland, who had married Mary, a Protestant daughter of James, and his eldest child, was invited by the incensed people to come to the English throne. He came with Dutch troops, and landed at Torbay on the 5th of November, 1688. James was deserted by his soldiers, and he and his family sought safety in flight. William and Mary were proclaimed joint monarchs of England on the 13th of February, 1689. This act consummated that revolution which Voltaire styled "the era of English liberty."

1. The population at that time was about 50,000, of whom one half were slaves. The tobacco trade had become very important, the exports to England and Ireland being about 30,000 hogsheads that year. Almost 100 vessels annually came from those countries to Virginia for tobacco. A powerful militia of almost 9,000 men was organized, and they no longer feared their dusky neighbors. The militia became expert in the use of fire-arms in the woods, and back to this period the Virginia rifleman may look for the foundation of his fame as a marksman. The province contained twenty-two counties, and forty-eight parishes, with a church and clergyman in each, and a great deal of glebe land. But there was no printing-press nor book-store in the colony. A press was first established in the colony in 1729.

2. Verse 10, page 61.

3. Verse 13, page 63.

4. Verse 2, page 58.

5. Massasoit approached with a guard of sixty warriors, and took post upon a neighboring hill. There he sat in state, and received Edward Winslow as ambassador from the English. Leaving Winslow with his warriors, as security for his own safety, the sachem went into New Plymouth, and treated with Governor Carver. Note 2, page 11.

6. Verse 12, page 62.

7. Verse 10, page 10.

QUESTIONS.—29. What caused a real change for the better? How did it operate? 30. What more of Virginia history? 1. How were the Pilgrim Fathers received? How was tranquillity secured to them? 2. Who else visited them? What was the result of an interview with Massasoit?

gether. A preliminary treaty of friendship and alliance was formed [April 1, 1621], which remained unbroken for fifty years.¹

3. Governor Carver died [April 3] three days after this interview. William Bradford,² the earliest historian of the colony, was appointed his successor. For thirty years he managed the public affairs of the colony with great sagacity. The settlers endured great trials during the first four years of their sojourn. They were barely saved from starvation in the autumn of 1621, by a scanty crop of Indian corn.³ In November of that year, thirty-five immigrants (some of them their weak brethren of the *Speedwell*)⁴ joined them, and increased their destitution. The winter was severe, and produced great suffering; and the colonists were kept in continual fear by the menaces of Canonicus, the great chief of the *Narragansets*, who regarded the English as intruders. Bradford acted wisely with the chief,⁵ and soon made him sue for peace.⁶ The hatred of the wily Indian was not subdued, but he was compelled to be a passive friend of the English.

4. In July following [1622], sixty-three more emigrants arrived. They had been sent by Weston, a wealthy, dissatisfied member of the Plymouth Company,⁷ to plant a new colony. Many of them were idle and dissolute;⁸ and after living upon the slender means of the Plymouth people for several weeks, they went to Wissagusset (now Weymouth), to commence a settlement. Their improvidence produced a famine; and they exasperated the Indians by begging and stealing supplies for their wants. A plot was devised for their destruction, but through the agency of Massasoit,⁹ it was revealed [March, 1623] to the Plymouth people; and Captain Miles Standish, with eight men, hastened to Wissagusset in time to avert the blow. A chief and several warriors were killed in a battle.¹⁰ The surrounding tribes were terrified, and neighboring chiefs appeared at Plymouth to crave the friendship

1. Verse 22, page 99.

2. Born at Ansterfield, in the north of England, in 1588. He followed Robinson to Holland; came to America in the *May-Flower* [verse 11, page 62]; and was annually elected governor of the colony from 1621 until his death in 1657.

3. While Captain Miles Standish and others were seeking a place to land [verse 13, page 63], they found some *maize*, or Indian corn, in one of the deserted huts of the savages. Afterward, Samoset and others taught them how to cultivate the grain (then unknown in Europe), and this supply serving for seed, providentially saved them from starvation. The grain now first received the name of *Indian corn*. Early in September [1621], an exploring party, under Standish, coasted northward to Shawmut, the site of Boston, where they found a few Indians. The place was delightful, and, for a while, the Pilgrims thought of removing thither.

4. Canonicus dwelt upon Conanicut Island, opposite Newport. In token of his contempt and defiance of the English, he sent [February, 1622], a bundle of arrows, wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, to Governor Bradford. The governor accepted the hostile challenge, and then returned the skin, filled with powder and shot. These substances were new to the savages. They regarded them with superstitious awe, as possessing some evil influence. They were sent from village to village, and excited general alarm. The pride of Canonicus was humbled, and he sued for peace.

5. His example was followed by several chiefs.

6. There were quite a number of indentured servants, and men of no character—a population wholly unfit to found an independent State.

7. In gratitude for attentions and medicine during a severe illness, Massasoit revealed the plot to Edward Winslow a few days before the time appointed to strike the blow.

8. Standish carried the chief's head in triumph to Plymouth. It was borne upon a pole, and was placed upon the palisades [note 2, page 101] of the little fort which had just been erected. The good Robinson [verse 9, page 61], when he heard of it, wrote, "O, how happy a thing it would have been that you had converted some before you killed any."

9. Verse 7, page 49.

QUESTIONS.—3. What changes took place in the government of the colony? What occurred during the first four years after settlement? How did Canonicus regard the English? 4. What was the character of other emigrants who arrived? What did they attempt? What was the result?

Salutary changes.

Representative Government.

Persecutions in England.

of the English. The settlement at Wissagusset was broken up, and most of the emigrants returned to England.

5. The partnership of merchants and colonists¹ was an unprofitable speculation for all. The community system² operated unfavorably upon the industry and thrift of the colony, and the merchants had few or no returns for their investments. Ill feelings were created by mutual criminations, and the capitalists commenced a series of annoyances to force their workers into a dissolution of the league.³ The partnership continued, however, during the prescribed term of seven years, and then [1627] the colonists purchased the interest of the London Merchants. Becoming sole proprietors of the soil, they divided the whole property equally, and to each man was assigned twenty acres of land in fee. New incentives to industry followed, and the blessings of plenty, even upon that unfruitful soil, rewarded them all.⁴

6. The government of the colony now became slightly changed. The only officers, at first, were a governor and assistant. In 1624, five assistants were chosen; and in 1630, when the colony numbered almost five hundred souls, seven assistants were elected. This pure democracy prevailed, both in Church and State, for almost nineteen years, when a representative government was instituted [1639], and a pastor chosen as spiritual guide.⁵

7. King James died in the spring of 1625; and his son and successor, Charles the First, inherited his father's hatred of the Nonconformists.⁶ Many of their ministers were silenced during the first years of his reign, and the uneasiness of the great body of Nonconformists daily increased. Many came to America. Some made a temporary settlement on Cape Anne, in 1624; and a few years afterward [March 29, 1628], a company purchased a tract of land on each side of the Merrimac river, and extending westward to the Pacific Ocean.⁷



FIRST COLONY SEAL.

In the summer of 1628, John Endicot, and a hundred emigrants came over,

1. Verse 10, page 61.

2. Note 1, page 62.

3. The merchants refused Mr. Robinson a passage to America; attempted to force a minister upon the colonists who was friendly to the established Church, and even sent vessels to interfere with the infant commerce of the settlers.

4. The colonists unsuccessfully tried the cultivation of tobacco. They raised enough grain and vegetables for their own consumption, and relied upon traffic in furs with the Indians, for obtaining the means of paying for cloths, implements, etc., from England. In 1627, they made the first step toward the establishment of the cod fishery, since become so important, by constructing a salt work, and curing some fish. In 1624, Edward Winslow imported three cows and a bull, and soon these invaluable animals became numerous in the colony.

5. The colonists considered Robinson (who was yet in Leyden) as their pastor; and religious exercises, in the way of prayer and exhortation, were conducted by Elder Brewster and others. On Sunday afternoons a question would be propounded, to which all had a right to speak. Even after they had adopted the plan of having a pastor, the people were so democratic in religious matters that a minister did not remain long at Plymouth. The doctrine of "private judgment" was put in full practice; and the religious meetings were often the arena of intemperate debate and confusion. In 1629, thirty-five persons, the remainder of Robinson's congregation at Leyden, joined the Pilgrims at Plymouth, among whom was Robinson's family; but the good man never saw New England himself.

6. Note 1, page 61.

7. This was purchased from the *Council of Plymouth*. The chief men of the company were John Humphrey (brother-in-law to the Earl of Lincoln), John Endicot, Sir Henry Roswell, Sir John Young, Thomas Southcote, Simon Whitcomb, John Winthrop, Thomas Dudley, Sir Richard Saltonstall, and others. Eminent men in New England afterward became interested in the enterprise.

QUESTIONS.—5. How did the colonists and the Plymouth Company agree? What happy change and results took place? 6. What change was made in the government of the colony? What change in their religious organization? 7. What occurred in England on the death of King James? What new settlement was unsuccessfully attempted? What one was successful?

Settlement of Charlestown and Boston.

Sufferings of the people.

and at *Naumkeag* (now Salem), they laid the foundations of the *Colony of Massachusetts Bay*. The proprietors received a charter from the king the following year [March 14, 1629], and they were incorporated by the name of "The Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England."¹

8. The new colony increased rapidly, and soon began to spread. In July, 1629, "three godly ministers" (Skelton, Higginson, and Bright), came with two hundred settlers, and a part of them laid the foundations of Charlestown, at *Mishawam*. On the 1st of September, the members of the company, at a meeting in Cambridge, England, signed an agreement to transfer the charter and government to the colonists. It was a wise and benevolent conclusion, for men of fortune and intelligence immediately prepared to emigrate when such a democracy should be established. John Winthrop² and others, with about three hundred families, arrived at Salem, in July [1630] following. Winthrop had been chosen governor before his departure, with Thomas Dudley for deputy, and a council of eighteen. The new emigrants located at, and named Dorchester, Roxbury, Watertown, and Cambridge; and during the summer, the governor and some of the leading men, hearing of a spring of excellent water on the peninsula of *Shawmut*,³ went within, erected a few cottages, and founded Boston, the future metropolis of New England.⁴



JOHN WINTHROP.

9. Many of the settlers, accustomed to ease and luxury in England, suffered much, and before December, two hundred men were in their graves.⁵ Yet the survivors were not disheartened, and during the winter of intense suffering which followed, they applied themselves diligently to the business of founding a State. In May, 1631, it was agreed at a general assembly of the people, that all the officers of the government should thereafter be chosen by the freemen⁶ of the colony; and in 1634, the pure democracy was changed to a representative government, the second in America.⁷ The colony flourished. Chiefs from the Indian tribes dined at Governor Winthrop's

1. The administration of affairs was intrusted to a governor, deputy, and eighteen assistants, who were to be elected annually by the stockholders of the corporation. A general assembly of the freemen of the colony was to be held at least four times a year, to legislate for the colony. The king claimed no jurisdiction, for he regarded the whole matter as a trading operation, not as the founding of an empire. The instrument conferred on the colonists all the rights of English subjects, and afterward became the text for many powerful discourses against the usurpations of royalty.

2. Born in England in 1588. He was one of the most active men in New England from 1620 until his death in 1649. His journal was published.

3. Note 3, page 91.

4. The whole company under Winthrop intended to join the settlers at Charlestown, but a prevailing sickness there, attributed to unwholesome water, caused them to locate elsewhere. The fine spring of water which gushed from one of the three hills of *Shawmut*, was regarded with great favor.

5. Among these were Higginson, Isaac Johnson (a principal leader in the enterprise, and the wealthiest of the founders at Boston), and his wife, the "Lady Arabella," a daughter of the Earl of Lincoln. She died at Salem, and her husband did not long survive her.

6. None were considered freemen, unless they were members of some church within the colony. From the beginning, the closest intimacy existed between the Church and State in Massachusetts, and that intimacy gave rise to a great many disorders. This provision was repealed in 1665.

7. Verses 29, 30, page 56.

QUESTIONS.—8. What progress did the colony of Massachusetts Bay make? What led to the founding of the city of Boston? 9. How did the settlers of Massachusetts suffer? What new change was made in the government? What good omens appeared?

Puritans become persecutors.

Roger Williams's preaching.

His banishment.

table, and made covenants of peace and friendship with the English. Winthrop journeyed on foot to exchange courtesies with Bradford at Plymouth;¹ a friendly salutation came from the Dutch in New Netherland,² and a ship from Virginia, laden with corn [May, 1632], sailed into Boston harbor.

10. The Puritans,³ victims of intolerance, were themselves equally intolerant when clothed with power. Their ideas of civil and religious freedom were narrow, and their practical interpretation of the Golden Rule was contrary to the intentions of HIM who uttered it. Yet they were honest and true men; and out of their love of freedom, and jealousy of their inherent rights, grew their intolerance. They regarded Churchmen and Roman Catholics as their deadly enemies, to be kept at a distance.⁴ A wise caution dictated this course. A consideration of the prevailing spirit of the age, when bigotry assumed the seat of justice, and superstition was the counselor and guide of leading men, should cause us to look with charity upon their faults.

11. Among those who first felt the power of Puritan intolerance, was Roger Williams,⁵ himself a Puritan minister, and victim of persecution in England. He was chosen minister at Salem [1634], and his more enlightened views, freely expressed, soon aroused the civil authorities against him. He denied the right of civil magistrates to control the consciences of the people, or to withhold their protection from any religious sect whatever. He denied the right of the king to require an oath of allegiance from the colonists; and even contended that obedience to magistrates ought not to be enforced. He denounced the charter from the king as invalid, because he had given to the white people the lands of other owners, the Indians.⁶ These doctrines and others more theological⁷ he maintained with vehemence, and soon the colony became a scene of great commotion. He was remonstrated with by the elders, warned by the magistrates, and finally, refusing to cease what was deemed seditious preaching, he was banished [November, 1636] from the colony. In the dead of winter he departed [January, 1635] for the wilderness, and became the founder of Rhode Island.⁸

12. During 1635, full three thousand new settlers came, among whom were men of wealth and influence. The most distinguished were Hugh Peters⁹ (an eloquent preacher), and Henry Vane, an enthusiastic young man

1. Verse 3, page 91.

2. Verse 4, page 57.

3. Verse 6, page 64.

4. Lyford, who was sent out to the *Pilgrims*, by the London partners, as their minister, was refused and expelled, because he was friendly to the Church of England. John and Samuel Browne, residents at Salem, and members of Endicott's Council, were arrested by him, and sent to England as "factious and evil-conditioned persons," because they insisted upon the use of the Liturgy, or printed forms of the English church, in their worship.

5. Verse 15, page 17. This was not strictly true, for, until King Philip's war [verse 21, page 98] in 1675, not a foot of ground was occupied by the New England colonists, "on any other score but that of fair purchase."—*Dr. Dwight*.

6. He maintained that an oath should not be tendered to an unconverted person, and that no Christian could lawfully pray with such an one, though it were a wife or child! In the intemperance of his zeal, Williams often exhibited intolerance himself, and at this day would be called a bigot. Yet his tolerant teachings in general had a most salutary effect upon Puritan exclusiveness.

7. Verse 2, page 71.

8. Verse 2, page 71.

9. Peters afterward returned to England, was very active in public affairs during the civil war, and on the accession of Charles the Second, was found guilty of favoring the death of the king's father, and was executed in October 1660.

QUESTIONS.—10. What was the general character of the New England Puritans? 11. Who first felt the force of intolerance in Massachusetts? What were the teachings of Roger Williams? What their result?

Large emigration.

Anne Hutchinson, and her views.

Alarm in England.

of twenty-five. In 1636, Vane was elected governor, an event which indirectly proved disastrous to the peace of the colony. The banishment of Roger Williams had awakened bitter religious dissensions, and the minds of the people were prepared to listen to any new teacher. As at Plymouth, so in the Massachusetts Bay Colony, religious questions were debated at these meetings.¹ Women were not allowed to engage in these debates, and some deemed this an abridgment of their rights. Among these was Anne Hutchinson, an able and eloquent woman, who established meetings at her own house, for her sex, and there she promulgated peculiar views, which some of the magistrates and ministers pronounced seditious and heretical.² These views were embraced by Governor Vane, several magistrates, and a majority of the leading men of Boston.³ Winthrop and others opposed them, and in the midst of great excitement a synod was called, the doctrines of Mrs. Hutchinson were condemned, and she and her family were first imprisoned in Boston, and then banished [August, 1637] from the colony.⁴ Vane lost his popularity, and failing to be elected the following year, he returned to England.⁵ Some of Mrs. Hutchinson's followers left the colony, and established settlements on Rhode Island.⁶

13. The result of the Pequod war⁷ was favorable to the security of the colony, and it flourished amazingly. Persecution gave it sustenance. The non-conformists in the mother country suffered more and more, and hundreds fled to New England. The Church and the Government became alarmed at the rapid growth of a colony so opposed, in its feeling and laws, to the character of both. Efforts were put forth to stay the tide of emigration. As early as 1633, a proclamation for that purpose had been published, but not enforced; and a fleet of eight vessels, bearing some of the purest patriots of the realm, was detained in the Thames [February, 1634], by order of the Privy council.⁸ Believing that the colonists "aimed not at new discipline, but at sovereignty," a demand was made for a surrender of the patent to the king.⁹ The people were silent, but firm. When a rumor reached them [September 18, 1634]

1. Note 5, page 92.

2. She taught that, as the Holy Spirit dwells in every believer, its revelations are superior to the teachings of men. It was the doctrine of "private judgment," in its fullest extent. She taught that every person had a right to judge of the soundness of a minister's teaching, and this was considered "rebellion against the clergy." She taught the doctrine of *Election*, and averred that the elect saints were sure of their salvation, however vicious their lives might be.

3. Her brother, Rev. John Wheelwright, was an eloquent expounder of her views. The theological question assumed a political phase, and for a long time influenced the public affairs of the colony.

4. Mrs. Hutchinson and her family took refuge within the Dutch domain, near the present village of New Rochelle, in New York. There she and all her family, except a daughter, were murdered by the Indians. Note 5, page 113.

5. Vane was a son of the Secretary of State of Charles the First. He was a republican during the civil war [note 10, page 81], and for this, Charles the Second had him beheaded in June 1662.

6. Verse 6, page 71.

7. [Note 4, page 276.] It was asserted, and is believed, that Oliver Cromwell and John Hampden were among the passengers. There is no positive evidence that such was the fact.

8. The general patent for New England was surrendered by the council of Plymouth in June, 1625, without consulting the colonists. The inflexible courage of the latter prevented the evil that might have ensued by this faithless act of a company which had made extensive grants, and they firmly held the charter given to them by the king.

QUESTIONS.—12. What was the character of settlers who came in 1635? What was the religious condition of the colony? What new doctrines were promulgated, and by whom? What was the result? 13. What fostered the growth of the colony? What did the Church and the State do? What strengthening measures did the colony adopt? What caused persecution to cease?

Defiance of the king.

Mutual interests.

New England confederation.

that an arbitrary commission¹ and a general governor was appointed for all the English colonies in America, the Massachusetts people, poor as they were, raised three thousand dollars to build fortifications for resistance. Even a *quo warranto* [April, 1638],² did not affect either their resolution or their condition. Strong in their integrity, they continued to strengthen their new State by fostering education,³ the "cheap defense of nations," and by other wise appliances of vigorous efforts. The civil war⁴ which speedily involved the Church and the Throne in disaster, withdrew the attention of the persecutors from the persecuted, and the latter had quiet.

14. The struggling colonists of New England were united by ties of interest and the warmest sympathy. Natives of the same country—the offspring of persecution—alike exposed to the weapons of hostile Indians and the depredations of the Dutch and French⁵—and alike menaced with punishment by the parent government, they were as one people. They were now [1643] more than twenty thousand in number, and fifty villages had been planted by them. The civil war in England⁶ threatened a total subversion of the government, and the Puritans began to reflect on the establishment of an independent nation eastward of the Dutch dominions.⁷

15. A union of the New England colonies was proposed [1637] at the close of the Pequod war. It was not consummated until 1643, when the colonies of Plymouth,⁸ Massachusetts,⁹ Connecticut, and New Haven,¹⁰ confederated for mutual welfare. Rhode Island asked for admittance into the Union [1643], but was refused, unless it would acknowledge the authority of Plymouth.¹¹ That Union, like ours, was a confederacy of independent States. The general affairs of the confederacy were managed by a board of commissioners, consisting of two church members from each colony, who were to meet annually, or oftener, if required. Their duty was to consider circumstances, and recommend measures for the general good. They had no executive power. Their propositions were considered and acted upon by the several colonies, each assuming an independent sovereignty. This confederacy remained unmolested more than forty years.¹²

16. Massachusetts was always the leading colony of New England, and assumed to be a "perfect republic." After the Union, a legislative change

1. The Archbishop of Canterbury, and associates, received full power to establish governments and laws over the American settlements; to regulate religious matters, inflict punishments, and even to revoke charters.

2. Note 2, page 81.

3. In 1636 the General Court at Boston appropriated two thousand dollars for the establishment of a college. In 1638 Rev. John Harvard bequeathed more than three thousand dollars to the institution which was then located at Cambridge, and it received the name of "Harvard College," now one of the first seminaries of learning in the United States. In 1647 a law was passed, requiring every township which contained fifty householders, to have a school-house and employ a teacher; and each town, containing one thousand freeholders, to have a grammar-school.

4. Note 10, page 84.

5. The Dutch of New Netherland [verse 4, page 57] still claimed jurisdiction upon the Connecticut river, and the French settlers in Acadie, eastward of New England, were becoming troublesome to the Puritans.

6. Note 13, page 63.

7. Verse 4, page 57.

8. Verse 13, page 63.

9. Verse 7, page 97.

10. Verse 14, page 50.

11. Verse 7, page 72.

12. When James the Second came to the throne, the charters of all the colonies were taken away, or suspended. When local governments were re-established after the revolution of 1688, there no longer existed a necessity for the Union, and the confederacy dissolved.

QUESTIONS.—14. What circumstances made the New England colonies united in interest? 15. What confederation was established? What was the nature of its government?

took place. The representatives had hitherto held their sessions in the same room with the governor and council; now they convened in a separate apartment; and the distinct *House of Representatives*, or democratic branch of the Legislature, still existing in our Federal and State Governments, was established in 1644.

17. Unlike Virginia,¹ the colonists sympathized with the English republicans in their efforts to abolish royalty. Ardently attached to the Parliament, they found in Cromwell,² when he assumed supreme authority, a sincere friend and protector of their liberties. No longer annoyed by the frowns and menaces of royalty, the energies of the people were rapidly developed, and profitable commerce was created between Massachusetts and the West Indies. This trade brought bullion³ into the colony; and in 1652, the authorities exercised a prerogative of independent sovereignty, by establishing a mint, and coining silver money,⁴ the first within the territory of the United States. During the same year, settlements in the present State of Maine, imitating the act of those of New Hampshire⁵ eleven years earlier [1641], came under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts.



FIRST MONEY COINED IN THE UNITED STATES.

18. An important element of trouble and perplexity was now introduced. There arrived at Boston [July, 1656], two zealous religious women,⁶ called Quakers. This was a sect recently evolved from the heaving masses of English society,⁷ claiming to be more rigid Puritans than all who had preceded them. Letters unfavorable to the sect had been received in the colony, and the two women were cast into prison, and confined for several weeks.⁸ With eight others who arrived during the year, they were sent back to England.⁹ Others came, and a special act against the Quakers was put in force [1657], but to no purpose. Opposition increased their zeal, and precisely because they were not wanted, they came. They suffered stripes, imprisonments, and general contempt; and, finally, on the recommendation of the Federal Commissioners,¹⁰ Massachusetts, by a majority of one vote, banished them, on

1. Verse 13, page 85.

2. Note 10, page 84.

3. Uncoined gold and silver.

4. In October, 1651, the General Court or Legislature of Massachusetts ordered silver coins of the values of threepence, sixpence, and a shilling sterling, to be made. The mint-master was allowed fifteen pence out of every twenty shillings, for his trouble. He made a large fortune by the business. From the circumstance that the effigy of a *pine-tree* was stamped on one side, these coins, now very rare, are called *pine-tree money*. The date [1652] was not altered for thirty years. Massachusetts was also the first to issue paper money, in the shape of treasury notes, in 1690. See verse 37, page 105.

5. Verse 3, page 61.

6. Mary Fisher and Ann Austin.

7. The founder of the sect was George Fox, who promulgated his peculiar tenets about 1650. He was a man of education and exalted purity of character, and soon, learned and influential men became his co-workers. They still maintain the highest character for morality and practical Christianity. See note 1, page 75.

8. Their trunks were searched, and the religious books found in them were burned by the hangman, on Boston Common. Suspected of being witches [note 2, page 106], their persons were examined, in order to discover certain marks which would indicate their connection with the Evil One.

9. Mary Fisher went all the way from London to Adrianople, to carry a divine message to the Sultan. She was regarded as insane; and as the Moslems respect such people as special favorites of God, Mary Fisher was unharmed in the Sultan's dominions.

10. Verse 15, page 96.

QUESTIONS.—16. What government change took place in Massachusetts after the Union? 17. What was the political character of the colonists? What progress did they make during Cromwell's rule? 18. What fact gave the colonists trouble? What treatment did the Quakers receive?

Persecution of the Quakers.

Offenses of New England.

Navigation Act.

pain of death [1658]. The excuse pleaded in extenuation of this barbarous law was, that the Quakers preached doctrines dangerous to good government.¹

19. The death penalty did not deter the exiles from returning; and many others came because they courted the martyr's death and reward. Some were hanged, others were publicly whipped, and the prisons were soon filled with the persecuted sect. The severity of the law finally caused a strong expression of public sentiment against it. The Quakers were regarded as true martyrs, and the people demanded of the magistrates a cessation of the bloody and barbarous punishments. The death-penalty was soon [1661] abolished; the fanaticism of the magistrates and the Quakers subsided, and a more Christian spirit of toleration prevailed. No longer sufferers for opinion's sake, the Quakers turned their attention to the Indian tribes, and nobly seconded the efforts of Mahew and Eliot in the propagation of the Gospel among the pagans of the forest.²

20. On the restoration of monarchy [1660], the judges who condemned Charles the First to the block, were outlawed. Two of them (William Goffe and Edward Whalley) fled to America, and were the first to announce at Boston the accession of Charles the Second. Orders were sent for their arrest, and officers were dispatched from England for the same purpose. The colonists effectually concealed them; and for this act, and the general sympathy manifested by New England for the republican party, the king resolved to show them no favor. They had been exempt from commercial restrictions during Cromwell's administration; now these were revived, and the stringent provisions of a new Navigation Act³ were rigorously enforced. The people vainly petitioned for relief; and, finally, commissioners were sent [August, 1644] "to settle the peace and security of the country on a solid foundation."⁴

21. The colonists regarded this measure with indignation, not only as a violation of their charters, but as an incipient step toward establishing a system of domination, destructive to their liberties. Massachusetts boldly protested against the exercise of their authority within her limits, but at the same time asserted her loyalty to the sovereign. The commissioners experienced the opposition of the other New England colonies, except Rhode Island. Their acts were generally disregarded, and after producing a great deal of irritation, they were recalled in 1666. The people of Massachusetts, triumphant in their

1. The Quakers denied all human authority, and regarded the power of magistrates as delegated tyranny. They preached purity of life, charity in its broadest sense, and denied the right of any man to control the opinions of another. Conscience, or "the light within," was considered a sufficient guide, and they deemed it their special mission to denounce "hireling ministers," and "persecuting magistrates," in person. It was this offensive boldness which engendered the violent hatred toward the sect in England and America.

2. John Eliot has been truly called the Apostle to the Indians. He began his labors soon after his arrival in America, and founded the first church among the savages, at Natic, in 1660, at which time there were ten towns of converted Indians in Massachusetts. Thirty-five years later, it was estimated that there were not less than 3,000 adult Christian Indians in the islands of Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket alone.

3. Note 3, page 86.

4. These were Colonel Richard Nicolls, Sir Robert Carr, George Cartwright, and Richard Maverick. They came with a royal fleet, commanded by Colonel Nicolls, which had been sent to assert English authority over the possessions of the Dutch, in New Netherland. See verse 12, page 115.

QUESTIONS.—19. How were the Quakers punished? What effect did the severe punishments have? 20. How did the colonists first hear of the accession of Charles the Second? How were they treated by the king? For what purpose were commissioners sent? 21. How did the colonists regard the commissioners and their duties? In what way did the people gain a triumph? What was the relative condition of England and her colonies?

King Philip and his grievances.

His ire excited.

opposition to royal oppression, ever afterward took a front rank in the march toward complete freedom. The licentious king and his ministers were too much in love with voluptuous ease to trouble themselves with far-off colonies; and while Old England was suffering from bad government, and the puissance of the throne was lessening in the estimation of the nations, the colonies flourished in purity, peace, and strength, until Metacomet, the son of the good Massasoit,¹ kindled a most disastrous Indian war, known in history as

KING PHILIP'S WAR.

22. While he lived, Massasoit kept his treaty with the Plymouth colony² faithfully. Metacomet, or Philip,³ resumed the covenants of friendship, and kept them inviolate for a dozen years. But as spreading settlements were reducing his domains acre by acre, breaking up his hunting-grounds, diminishing his fisheries, and menacing his nation with servitude or annihilation, his patriotism was aroused, and he willingly listened to the hot young warriors of his tribe, who counseled a war of extermination against the English. At Mount Hope,⁴ the seat of the chief sachems of the *Wampanoags*, in the solitudes of the primeval forests, he planned, with consummate skill, an alliance of all the New England tribes⁵ against the European intruders.



KING PHILIP.

23. One of the "praying Indians" (as the converted ones were called),⁶ was a sort of secretary to Philip, and, after becoming acquainted with the plans of the sachem, he revealed them to the authorities at Plymouth. For this he was slain by his countrymen, and three *Wampanoags* were convicted of his murder, on slender testimony, and hanged. The ire of the tribe was fiercely kindled, and they thirsted for vengeance. The cautious Philip was overruled by his fiery young men, and remembering the wrongs and humiliations he had personally received from the English,⁷ he trampled upon solemn treaties, sent his women and children to the *Narragansets* for protection, and kindled

1. Verse 2, page 90.

2. Verse 2, page 90.

3. Massasoit had two sons, whom Governor Prince named Alexander and Philip, in compliment to their bravery as warriors. Alexander died soon after the decease of his father; and Philip became chief sachem of the *Wampanoags*.

4. Mount Hope is a conical hill, 300 feet in height, and situated on the west side of Mount Hope Bay, about two miles from Bristol, Rhode Island. It was called Pokanoket by the Indians.

5. The tribes which became involved in this war numbered, probably, about 25,000. Those along the coast of Massachusetts Bay, who had suffered terribly by a pestilence just before the *PILGRIMS* came [verse 1, page 90], had materially increased in numbers; and other tribes, besides the New England Indians proper [verse 15, page 17], became parties to the conflict.

6. Note 2, page 98. His name was John Sassamon. He had been educated at Cambridge, Massachusetts, and was sent as a missionary among the Indians. He was ardently attached to the white people.

7. In 1671, Philip and his tribe being suspected of secretly plotting the destruction of the English, were deprived of their fire-arms. He never forgot the injury, and long meditated revenge.

QUESTIONS.—22. How long did Philip keep the covenant made with Massasoit? What causes made him violate it? What did he do? 23. What was the immediate cause of war? What, probably, were Philip's feelings, and those of his followers?

Kindling of King Philip's war.

Its terrible effects.

the flame of war. No doubt he commenced hostilities contrary to the teachings of his better judgment, for he was sagacious enough to foresee failure.

24. Philip struck the first blow at Swanze, thirty-five miles south-west from Plymouth. The people were just returning from their houses of worship, for it was a day of fasting and humiliation [July 4, 1675], in anticipation of hostilities. Many were slain and captured, and others fled to the surrounding settlements, and aroused the people. The men of Plymouth, joined by those of Boston and vicinity, pressed toward Mount Hope. Philip was besieged in a swamp for many days, but escaped with most of his warriors, and became a fugitive with the *Nipmucs*,¹ an interior tribe of Massachusetts. These espoused his cause, and with full fifteen hundred warriors, he hastened toward the white settlements in the far-off valley of the Connecticut. In the mean while the little army of white people penetrated the country of the *Narragansets*,² and extorted a treaty of friendship from Canonchet,³ chief sachem of that powerful tribe.

25. Philip and his followers aroused other tribes to a war of extermination, by the secret and efficient methods of treachery, ambush, and surprise. Men in the fields, families in their beds at midnight, and congregations in houses of worship, were attacked and massacred. The Indians hung like the scythe of death upon the borders of the English settlements, and for several months a gloomy apprehension of the extermination of the whole European population in New England, prevailed.⁴

26. From Springfield northward to the present Vermont line, the valley of the Connecticut was a theater of confusion, desolation and death, wherever white settlements existed. Almost the whole of a party of twenty Englishmen⁵ sent to treat with the *Nipmucs*, were treacherously slain by the savages in ambush [Aug. 12, 1675], near Quaboag, now Brookfield. That place was set on fire, when a shower of rain put out the flames, and the Indians were driven away by a relief party of white people.⁶ The village was partially saved, but immediately abandoned. Soon afterward a hot battle was fought near Deerfield⁷ [Sept. 5], and a week later [Sept. 12] that settlement was laid in ashes. On the same day (it was the Sabbath), Hadley, further down the river, was attacked while the people were worshipping. In the midst of the alarm and confusion, a tall and venerable-looking man, with white, flowing hair and beard, suddenly appeared, and brandishing a glittering sword, he

1. Verse 15, page 17.

2. Verse 15, page 17.

3. A son of Miantonomoh, whose residence was upon a hill a little north of the city of Newport, R. I. That hill still bears the name of Miantonomoh, abbreviated to "Tonomy Hill." See Verse 9, page 68.

4. The white population in New England, at this time, has been estimated at fifty-five thousand. Haverhill, on the Merrimac, was the frontier town in the direction of Maine: and Northfield, on the borders of Vermont, was the highest settlement in the Connecticut valley. Westfield, one hundred miles west of Boston, was the most remote settlement in that direction.

5. Captains Wheeler and Hutchinson were sent from Boston to endeavor to reclaim the *Nipmucs*. Apprised of their coming, the Indians lay in ambush, and fired upon them from the thickets of a swamp.

6. Under Major Willard. The Indians set fire to every house except a strong one in which the people had secured themselves and were besieged there two days. The Indians set fire to this last refuge, when rain extinguished the flames.

7. Between 180 white people and about 700 Indians. [See, also, verse 43, page 107.]

QUESTIONS.—24. Relate some of the first incidents of the war. Who opposed Philip? and what did he then do? What did the Plymouth people do? 25. What was the character of the war? 26. Where was the chief theater of desolation? What places were attacked? What happened at Hadley?

Continuation of the war.

Terrible blow upon the Indians.

placed himself at the head of the affrighted people, and led them to a charge which dispersed and defeated the foe. He as suddenly disappeared, and the inhabitants believed that an angel from heaven had been sent to their rescue. It was Goffe, the fugitive English judge,¹ who was then concealed in that settlement.

27. On the 23d of September, the paths of Northfield were wet with the blood of many valiant young men under Captain Beers; and on the 28th, "a company of young men, the very flower of Essex," under Captain Lathrop, were butchered by almost a thousand Indians on the banks of a little stream near Deerfield, which still bears the name of Bloody Brook. Others, who came to their rescue, were engaged many hours in combat with the Indians until crowned with victory.

28. Philip now resolved to attack Hatfield, the chief settlement of the white people above Springfield. The Springfield Indians joined him,² and with almost a thousand warriors, he fell [Oct. 29, 1675], upon the settlement. He was repulsed with such loss that, gathering his broken forces on the eastern bank of the Connecticut,³ he marched toward Rhode Island. The *Narragansets*, in violation of the recent treaty,⁴ received him, became his allies, and went out upon the war-path late in autumn. Fifteen hundred men of New England marched to punish Canonchet and his tribe for their perfidy. The snows of early winter had fallen, and at least three thousand Indians had collected in their chief fort in an immense swamp,⁵ where they were supplied with provisions for the winter. It was a stormy day in December [Dec. 29], when the English stood before the feeble palisades of the savages. They offered but little opposition to the besiegers; and within a few hours, five hundred wigwams, with the winter provisions, were in flames. Hundreds of men, women and children perished in the fire. A thousand warriors were slain or wounded, and several hundreds were made prisoners. The English lost eighty killed, and one hundred and fifty wounded. Canonchet was made prisoner, and slain; but Philip escaped, and with the remnant of the *Narragansets*, took refuge again with the *Nipmucs*.

29. Philip was busy during the winter. He vainly solicited the *Mohawks*⁶ to join him, but he was seconded by the tribes eastward of Massachusetts,⁷ who also had wrongs to redress. The work of desolation began early in the

1. Verse 20, page 18.

2. They had been friendly until now. They plotted the entire destruction of the Springfield settlement; but the people defended themselves bravely within their palisaded houses. Many of the strong houses of frontier settlements were thus fortified. Trunks of trees, eight or ten inches in diameter, were cut in uniform lengths, and stuck in the ground close together. The upper ends were sharpened, and the whole were fastened together with green withes or other contrivances.

3. Verse 1, page 66.

5. This swamp is a small distance S.W. of the village of Kingston, in Washington County, R.I. The fort was on an island which contains about five acres of tillable land, in the north-west part of the swamp. The Stonington and Providence railway passes along the northern verge of the swamp.

6. Verse 2, page 18.

4. Verse 24, page 109.

7. Verse 16, page 17. The tribes of Maine were about 400 strong.

QUESTIONS.—27. Where else did massacres occur? 28. How came Philip's power to be broken? How did the *Narragansets* behave? How were they punished for their perfidy?



PALISADED BUILDING.

Devastations by the Indians.	Death of King Philip.	Territorial accessions.
------------------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------

spring of 1676, and within a few weeks the war extended over a space of almost three hundred miles. Weymouth, Groton, Medfield, Lancaster, and Marlborough, in Massachusetts, were laid in ashes; Warwick and Providence, in Rhode Island, were burned; and everywhere the isolated dwellings of settlers were laid waste. But internal feuds weakened the power of the savages; and both the *Nipmucs*¹ and the *Narragansets*² charged their misfortunes to the ambition of Philip. The cords of alliance were severed. Some surrendered to avoid starvation; other tribes wandered off and joined those in Canada;³ while Captain Church,⁴ the most famous of the partisan officers of the English colonies, went out to hunt and destroy the fugitives. During the year, between two and three thousand Indians were slain or had submitted. Philip was chased from one hiding-place to another, but for a long time he would not yield. He once cleft the head of a warrior who proposed submission.

30. The "last of the *Wampanoags*" at length bowed to the pressure of circumstances. He returned to the land of his fathers⁵ [August, 1676], and soon his wife and son were made prisoners. This calamity crushed him, and he said, "Now my heart breaks; I am ready to die." A few days afterward, a faithless Indian shot him, and Captain Church cut off the dead sachem's head.⁶ His body was quartered; and his little son was sold to be a bond-slave in Bermuda.⁷ So perished the last of the princes of the *Wampanoags*; and thus ended, in the total destruction of the power of the *New England Indians*, the famous "KING PHILIP'S WAR."⁸

31. While the Massachusetts colony was yet weak in resources, from the effects of the Indian war,⁹ and the people were yet engaged in hostilities with the Eastern tribes,¹⁰ it made territorial accessions by purchase, and at the same time boldly asserted its chartered rights. For many years there had been a controversy between the heirs of Sir F. Gorges¹¹ and John Mason and the Massachusetts colony, concerning a portion of the present territory of Maine and New Hampshire, which, by acts of the inhabitants, had been placed [1641 and 1652] under the jurisdiction of the authorities at Boston.¹² The judicial decision was in favor of the heirs [1677], and Massachusetts immediately pur-

1. Verse 15, page 17.

2. Verse 15, page 17.

3. Verse 16, page 17.

4. Benjamin Church was born at Plymouth, Mass., in 1639. He continued hostilities against the eastern Indians until 1704. He fell from his horse, and died soon afterward, at Little Compton, January 17, 1718, aged 77 years.

5. Note 4, page 99.

6. The rude sword, made by a blacksmith of the colony, with which Church cut off Philip's head, is in the possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society.

7. The disposal of the boy was a subject of serious deliberation. Some of the elders proposed putting him to death; others, professing more *mercy*, suggested selling him as a slave. The most *profitable* measure appeared the most *merciful*, and the child was sold into bondage. The head of Philip was carried in triumph to Plymouth, and placed upon a pole.

8. The result of this war was vastly beneficial to the colonists, for the fear of savages, which prevented a rapid spread of settlements, was removed. From this period may be dated the real growth of New England.

9. During the war, New England lost six hundred men; a dozen towns were destroyed; six hundred dwellings were burned; every twentieth family was houseless; and every twentieth man who had served as a soldier, had perished. The cost of the war equaled five hundred thousand dollars; a very large sum at that time.

10. Verse 16, page 17.

11. Verse 1, page 63.

12. Verse 3, page 64, and note 3, page 64.

QUESTIONS.—29. What occurred in the Spring of 1676? How did Philip lose strength and influence? What did Captain Church accomplish? 30. What finally crushed the spirit of Philip? What was the fate of himself and family? 31. How came Massachusetts to increase its territory? How was the first *royal* province in New England made?

Designs of the king.

Colonial charters taken away.

Seizure of Andros.

chased [May 1, 1677] their interest for six thousand dollars.¹ New Hampshire was detached three years afterward [1680], and made a royal province—the first in New England; but Maine, which was incorporated with Massachusetts in 1692, continued a part of that commonwealth until 1820.

32. The profligate king both feared and hated the growing republics in America, especially those in the East. They were ostensibly loyal portions of his realm, but were really independent sovereignties, continually reacting upon the mother country, to the damage of the “divine right” of kings. Charles had long cherished a desire to take their government into his own hands, and he employed the occasion of the rejection of Edward Randolph (a custom-house officer, who had been sent to Boston [1679] to collect the revenues and otherwise exercise authority),² to declare the Massachusetts charter void. He issued a *quo warranto* [1683],³ and procured a decision in his favor in the high-court of chancery [June 28, 1684], but he died [Feb. 26, 1685], before his object was effected.

33. James the Second⁴ continued the oppressive measures of his brother toward the New England colonies. The people petitioned and remonstrated, and were treated with contempt. Their hardships in conquering a wilderness, and their devotion to the English constitution, had no weight with the royal bigot.⁵ He also declared the charter of Massachusetts forfeited, and appointed Joseph Dudley president of the country from Rhode Island to Nova Scotia. Sir Edmund Andros arrived at Boston soon afterward [Dec. 30, 1686], clothed with authority to govern all New England. He soon made bare the rod of oppression, and began to rule with a tyrant's rigor.⁶ The people were about to practice the doctrine that “*resistance to tyrants is obedience to God*,”⁷ when intelligence reached Boston [April 14, 1689], that James was driven from the throne [1688], and was succeeded by William and Mary, of Orange.⁸ The inhabitants of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and fifty of his political associates [April 28, 1689], sent them to England under a just charge of mal-administration of public affairs, and re-established their constitutional government. Again republicanism was triumphant in Massachusetts.

34. The revolution in England⁹ was a cause of war between that country and France. James (who was a Roman Catholic), fled to the court of Louis

1. The portion of Maine then purchased, was the tract between the Piscataqua and the Kennebec. That between the Kennebec and Penobscot belonged to the Duke of York, and the territory between the Penobscot and the St. Croix, was held by the French, pursuant to a treaty.

2. Randolph appears to have been a greedy adventurer, and was, consequently, a faithful servant of his royal master, in oppressing the colonists. He exaggerated the number and resources of the people of New England, and thus excited the king's fears and cupidity. Previous to Randolph's appointment, the colony had despatched agents to England, to settle impending difficulties amicably. They failed, and Randolph came in the same vessel in which they returned.

3. Note 2, page 84.

4. Verse 28, page 89.

5. Note 9, page 89.

6. Among other arbitrary acts, Andros laid restraints upon the freedom of the press, and marriage contracts; and, to use a modern term, he “levied black mail,” that is, extorted money, by menaces, whenever opportunity offered. He advanced the fees of all officers of the government to an exorbitant degree; and finally threatened to make the Church of England the established religion in all America.

7. This was Cromwell's motto; and Thomas Jefferson had it engraved upon his private seal.

8. Note 9, page 89.

9. Note 9, page 89.

QUESTIONS.—32. How did the king regard the American colonies? What act of usurpation did he attempt? 33. How did James the Second treat the colonists? What did Governor Andros do? What happened to him and to his sovereign?

Events on the frontiers.

Destruction of English settlements.

Sir William Phipps.

the Fourteenth, king of France, and that monarch espoused the cause of the fugitive. Hostilities between the two nations commenced the same year, and their quarrel extended to their respective colonies in America. The conflict, which continued more than seven years, is known in history as

KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

35. In this contest, the colonists suffered terribly. The French Jesuits,¹ who had acquired great influence over the eastern tribes,² easily excited them to renew their fierce warfare with the English. They also made the savages their allies; and all along the frontier settlements, the pathway of murder and desolation was seen. Dover, a frontier town, was first attacked by a party of French and Indians [July 7, 1689]; and the venerable Major Waldron³ and twenty others of the little garrison were killed. Twenty-nine of the inhabitants were made captive, and sold as servants to the French in Canada. In August following, an Indian war party, instigated by Thury, a Jesuit, fell [August 12] upon an English stockade⁴ at Pemaquid (built by Andros), and captured the garrison. A few months later, Frontenac⁵ sent a party of three hundred French and Indians from Montreal, to penetrate the country toward Albany. On a gloomy night in winter, when the snow was twenty inches in depth, they fell upon Schenectada [Feb. 18, 1690], a frontier town on the Mohawk, massacred many of the people, and burned the village. Early in the spring, Salmon Falls [March 28], Casco [May 27], and other eastern villages, were attacked by another party of the same mongrel foe, the natural ferocity of the Indians being quickened by the teachings of the Jesuits concerning the proper fate of heretics.⁶

36. These atrocities aroused all the colonies to a sense of their danger in having such foes intent upon their destruction; and the New England people resolved on speedy retaliation. In May, Massachusetts fitted out an expedition, under Sir William Phipps, a native of Pemaquid, consisting of eight or nine vessels, with about eight hundred men. Phipps seized Port Royal,⁷ in Acadie, and obtained sufficient plunder from the inhabitants to pay the expenses of the expedition. In June, Port Royal was again plundered by English privateers from the West Indies.

1. This was a Roman Catholic religious order, founded by Ignatius Loyola, a Spaniard, in 1539. They have ever been remarkable for their great devotion to their cause, their self-denial and masterly sagacity in the acquirement and maintenance of power. Their missionaries preached Christianity in every part of the habitable globe. They came with the first French adventurers to America, and under their influence, whole tribes of Indians eastward of Massachusetts and in Canada, were made nominal Christians. This was one of the ties which made the savages such faithful allies to the French during the contests between them and the English, previous to 1763.

2. Verse 16, page 17.

3. Waldron was eighty years of age. He had played false with the New Hampshire Indians during King Philip's war, and they now sought revenge. They tortured him to death.

4. Note 3, page 150.

5. Governor of Canada.

6. In these massacres, instigated by the Jesuits, we may find a reason for the seeming intolerance of the Protestant majority in Maryland [verse 5, p. 121], the disabilities of Roman Catholics in Virginia, New York, and New England, and their exclusion from the privileges of freemen, in tolerant Rhode Island. The most potent operations of the Jesuits were in secret, and the colonists were compelled to regard every Roman Catholic as the natural enemy of Protestants, and as laboring to destroy every measure tending to human freedom.

7. Verse 29, page 44.

QUESTIONS.—24. What was the effect of the English revolution? 35. What did Jesuit influence effect? What places were attacked by the French and Indians? Relate the circumstances. 36. What effect did these atrocities have? What retaliatory expedition was formed? and what did it effect?

Expedition against Canada.

Union of New England colonies.

A new constitution.

37. Encouraged by the success in Acadie, the colonies of New England and New York coalesced in efforts to conquer Canada.¹ It was arranged to send a land expedition from New York, by way of Lake Champlain, against Montreal,² and a naval expedition against Quebec.³ The command of the former was intrusted to the son of Governor Winthrop of Connecticut,⁴ and the expense was borne jointly by that colony and New York.⁵ Sir William Phipps commanded the latter, which Massachusetts alone fitted out. It consisted of thirty-four vessels, with two thousand men. Both were unsuccessful. Some of Winthrop's troops, with Indians of the FIVE NATIONS,⁶ under Colonel Schuyler, pushed toward the St. Lawrence, and were repulsed [Aug., 1690] by Frontenac, the Governor of Canada. The remainder did not go beyond Wood Creek, now Whitehall, at the head of Lake Champlain, and all returned to Albany.⁷ Phipps reached Quebec about the middle of October, and landed the troops; but the city was too strongly fortified⁸ to promise a successful siege, and he returned to Boston before the winter set in.⁹ Massachusetts was obliged to issue bills of credit, or paper money, to defray the expenses of this expedition.¹⁰

38. Soon after his return, Sir William Phipps was sent to England to solicit aid in further warfare upon the French and Indians, and also to assist in efforts to procure a restoration of the charter of Massachusetts, taken away by King James.¹¹ Assistance was refused; and King William, instead of restoring the old charter, granted a new one, and united under it the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia,¹² by the old name of *Massachusetts Bay Colony*, and made it a royal province. Phipps was appointed governor by the king, and returned to Boston with the charter, in May, 1692.

39. The new constitution was offensive to the people, for they were allowed scarcely any other political privilege except the right to choose representatives. The king reserved the right to appoint the governor, his deputy, and the secretary of the colony, and of repealing the laws within three years after their passage. This abridgment of their liberties produced general dissatisfaction, and alienated the affections of the people from the mother country. Yet one good resulted from the change. The theocratic or religious element in the government, which fostered bigotry and intolerance,

1. Verse 47, page 167.

2. Verse 8, page 37.

3. Verse 7, page 37.

4. Verse 6, page 68.

5. Milborne, son-in-law of Jacob Leisler, the democratic governor of New York [verse 17, page 117], undertook to provide subsistence for the army, which marched from Albany early in July.

6. Verse 2, page 18.

7. Leisler was so much incensed at this failure, that he caused the arrest of Winthrop, at Albany. There had ever been a jealous rivalry between the people of New York and Connecticut, and the feud which prevailed among the mixed troops was the chief cause of the miscarriage of the enterprise.

8. Phipps, having no chart to guide him, was nine weeks cautiously making his way around Acadie and up the St. Lawrence. In the mean while, a swift Indian runner, from Pemaquid, sped across the country, and informed the French, at Quebec, of the approach of Phipps, in time for them to well prepare for defense.

9. This repulse was considered so important by the French, that King Louis had a commemorative medal struck, with the legend—*France victorious in the New World.*

10. Note 4, page 97. The total amount of the issue was \$133,338.

11. Verse 33, page 103.

12. New Scotland, the name given to the country which the French called Acadie. Note 3, page 64.

QUESTIONS.—37. What efforts were made to conquer Canada? What were the results? 38. For what purpose was Phipps sent to England? What did the king do? 39. What was the character of the new charter? What were its effects upon the people?

Witchcraft in Massachusetts.

lost its power, for toleration was guaranteed to all Christian sects, except Roman Catholics; and the right of suffrage was extended to others than members of congregational churches.¹

40. Now occurred a strange episode in the history of Massachusetts. A belief in witchcraft² destroyed the peace of society in many communities, and shrouded the whole colony in a cloud of gloom. This belief had a strong hold upon the minds of the people of old England, and of their brethren in America. Excitement upon the subject suddenly broke out at Danvers [March, 1692] (then a part of Salem), and spread like an epidemic. A niece and daughter of the parish minister exhibited strange conduct; and under the influence of their own superstitious belief, they accused an old Indian servant-woman in the family of bewitching them. Fasting and prayer, to break the "spell," were of no avail, for their malady increased. The alarm of the family spread to the community; and soon a belief prevailed throughout the colony, that evil spirits, having ministering servants among men, overshadowed the land. Old and ill-favored women were first accused of practicing the art of witchcraft; but at length neither age, sex, nor condition afforded protection from the accuser's tongue. Even the lady of Governor Phipps did not escape suspicion. Magistrates were condemned, many pious persons were imprisoned, and Mr. Burroughs, a worthy minister, was executed. For more than six months the awful delusion prevailed; and during that time twenty persons suffered death, fifty-five were tortured or frightened into a confession of witchcraft, and when a special court, or legislature, was convened in October [1692], one hundred and fifty accused persons were in prison. A reaction, almost as sudden as the beginning of the excitement, now took place in the public mind. The prison doors were opened to the accused, and soon many of the accusers shrunk abashed from the public gaze.³

41. "King William's war"⁴ continued until 1697, when a treaty of peace, made at Ryswick [Sept. 20] in the west of Holland, terminated hostilities.⁵ Up to that time, and later, the New England people suffered greatly from their mongrel foe. Remote settlements in the direction of Canada and Nova

1. Note 6, page 93.

2. A belief in witchcraft, or the exercise of supernatural power, by men and women, has been prevalent for ages. Punishment of persons accused of it, was first sanctioned by the Church of Rome a little more than three hundred years ago. Certain tests were instituted, and thousands of innocent persons were burned alive, drowned, or hanged, in Europe. Within three months, in 1515, five hundred persons were burned in Geneva, in Switzerland. In the diocese of Como, 1,000 were burned in one year. In 1520, an incredible number, from among all classes, suffered death in France. And within fifty or sixty years, during the sixteenth century, more than 100,000 persons perished in the flames in Germany alone. Henry the Eighth of England made the practice of witchcraft a capital offense; and a hundred years later, "witch-detectors" traversed the country, and brought many to the stake. Enlightened men embraced the belief; and even Sir Matthew Hale, the most distinguished of England's judges, repeatedly tried and condemned persons accused of witchcraft. The English laws against witchcraft were adopted in New England; and as early as 1648, four persons had suffered death for the alleged offense, in the vicinity of Boston.

3. The belief in witchcraft did not cease with the strange excitement; and Cotton Mather and other popular men, wrote in its defense. Calef, a citizen of Boston, exposed Mather's credulity, which greatly irritated the minister. He first called his opponent "a weaver turned minister;" but as his tormentor's blows fell thick and fast, in a series of letters, Mather called him a "coal from hell," and prosecuted him for slander. The credulous clergyman was glad to withdraw the suit.

4. This war cost England one hundred and fifty millions of dollars, in cash, beside a loan of one hundred millions more. This loan was the commencement of the enormous national debt of England, now [1857] amounting to about four thousand millions of dollars.

4. Page 104.

QUESTIONS.—40. What delusion prevailed in Massachusetts? How did it commence? What were its effects?

Indian depredations.

Treaty of Ryswick.

Queen Anne's war.

Scotia continued to be harassed. Almost a hundred persons were killed or made captive [July 28, 1694] at Oyster river (now Durham), ten miles from Portsmouth, in New Hampshire. Two years later, Baron St. Castine, and a large force of French and Indians, captured [July 25, 1696] the garrison at Pemaquid, and exchanged the prisoners for French soldiers in the hands of the English.¹ In March, 1697, Haverhill, thirty miles from Boston, was attacked, and forty persons were killed or carried into captivity;² and during the following summer, more remote settlers were great sufferers.

42. The treaty at Ryswick produced a lull in the storm of cruel warfare which had so long hung upon the English frontiers, continually menacing the colonists with wide-spread destruction.³ It was very brief, for pretexts for another war were not long wanting. James the Second died in September, 1701, and Louis the Fourteenth, who had sheltered the exile,⁴ acknowledged his son, Charles Edward (commonly known as the Pretender), to be the lawful heir to the English throne. This offended the English, because the crown had been settled upon Anne, second daughter of James, who was a Protestant. These, and some minor causes, impelled England to declare war against France.⁵ Hostilities commenced in 1702, and continued until a treaty of peace was concluded at Utrecht [April 11, 1713], in Holland. The French and English in America were involved in this war; and the latter suffered much from the cruelties of the Indians who were under the influence of the former. This is known in America as

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

43. Fortunately for the people of New York, the FIVE NATIONS had made a treaty of neutrality with the French in Canada [Aug. 4, 1701], and became an impassable barrier against the savage hordes from the St. Lawrence. The tribes from the Merrimac to the Penobscot, had made a treaty of peace with New England [July, 1703], but the French induced them to violate it; and before the close of summer, the hatchet fell upon the people of the whole frontier, from Casco to Wells. Blood flowed in almost every valley; and early the next spring [March, 1704], a large party of



WILLIAMS'S HOUSE.

1. They also took the English fort of St. John's, Newfoundland, and other posts on that island.
2. Among their captives was a Mrs. Dustan, her child and nurse. Her infant was soon killed, and she and her nurse were taken to Canada. A little more than a month afterward, Mrs. D., her companion, and another prisoner, killed ten of twelve sleeping Indians, who had them in custody, and made their way back to Haverhill.
3. Just before the conclusion of this treaty, a *Board of Trade and Plantations* was established by the English government, whose duty it was to have a general oversight of the American colonies. This was a permanent commission, consisting of a president and seven members, called *Lords of Trade*. This commission was always an instrument of oppression in the hands of royalty, and, as will be seen, was a powerful promoter of that discontent which led to the rebellion of the colonies in 1775.
4. Verse 34, page 103.
5. It is known in European history as the *War of the Spanish Succession*.

QUESTIONS.—41. What treaty closed the war? Relate some of the sufferings of the New England people. 42. What caused another war? and what was it called? When did it commence? 43. What secured New York against the French and Indians? What occurred upon the New England frontiers? What can you tell of the Williams family?

Destruction of Deerfield.

Expedition against Acadie.

Expedition against Quebec.

French and Indians destroyed Deerfield, on the Connecticut river,¹ killed forty of the inhabitants, and carried one hundred and twelve away to the wilderness. Among these was Rev. John Williams, the minister.² Similar scenes occurred at intervals during the whole progress of the war. Remote settlements were abandoned, and the people on the frontier collected in fortified houses,³ and cultivated their fields in armed parties of half a dozen or more.

44. In the spring of 1707, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, determined to chastise the French on their eastern borders. Connecticut refused to join in the enterprise, and the three colonies alone prepared an armament. Early in June, a thousand men under Colonel Marsh, sailed from Nantucket for Port Royal,⁴ in Acadie, convoyed by an English man-of-war,⁵ but nothing was effected except the destruction of considerable property outside the fort. Three years later, an armament left Boston [Sept., 1710], and, in connection with a fleet from England under Colonel Nicholson, demanded and obtained a surrender of the fort and garrison [Oct. 13], at Port Royal. The name of the place was changed to Annapolis, in honor of the Queen,⁶ and Acadie was annexed to the English realm under the title of Nova Scotia, or New Scotland.

45. War still continued, and the following summer, Sir Hovenden Walker arrived at Boston [July, 1711], with an English fleet and army, designed for the conquest of Canada. New England promptly raised additional forces, and on the 10th of August, fifteen men-of-war and forty transports, bearing almost seven thousand troops, departed for the St. Lawrence to attack Quebec. Walker, like Braddock,⁷ haughtily refused to listen to experienced subordinates, and lost eight of his ships, and almost a thousand men, on the rocks at the mouth of the river, on the night of the 2d of September. Disheartened by this calamity, Walker returned to England with the remainder of his fleet, and the colonial troops went back to Boston. On hearing of this failure of the naval expedition, a body of troops marching from Albany to attack Montreal, retraced their steps.⁸ Hostilities were now suspended, and in the spring of 1713, a treaty of peace was concluded [April 11], at Utrecht. The Eastern Indians sued for peace; and at Portsmouth the Governor of Massa-

1. The only house that escaped the flames was that of the Rev. John Williams, represented in the engraving on page 107. It stood near the center of the village until within a few years.

2. Mrs. Williams, and other captives who were unable to travel as rapidly as the Indians, were murdered. On his arrival in Canada, Mr. Williams was treated with respect by the French, and after two years of captivity was ransomed, and returned to Massachusetts. The chief object of the expedition to Deerfield, appears to have been to carry off the bell that hung in Williams's church. That bell was purchased the year previous for the church of Saut St. Louis, at Caughnawaga, near Montreal. The vessel in which it was brought from Havre was captured by a New England privateer, and the bell was purchased for the Deerfield meeting-house. Father Nicolas, of the church at Caughnawaga, accompanied the expedition, and the bell was carried in triumph to its original destination, where it still remains.

3. Note 2, page 101.

4. Verse 29, page 44.

5. The common term for a war ship, as distinguished from an armed brig, schooner, or sloop.

6. King William had no children; and Anne, the daughter of James (who was married to Prince George of Denmark), succeeded him as sovereign of England in 1702.

7. Verse 14, page 154.

8. These were four thousand in number, under the command of General Nicholson. They were furnished by New York and Connecticut.

QUESTIONS.—44. What did eastern colonies do? What armaments were fitted out, and what did they effect? 45. What was done toward the conquest of Canada? What of the expedition? What did the Eastern Indians do?

Colonies in repose.

Expedition against Louisburg.

chusetts and New Hampshire entered into a pacific compact [July, 24] with the chiefs of the tribes.

46. For thirty years succeeding the close of *Queen Anne's War*, the colonies enjoyed comparative repose. Then, again, the selfish strifes of European monarchs awakened the demon of discord, and its bloody footsteps were soon apparent along the northern frontiers of the English colonies in America. The interim had been a period of much political agitation in Massachusetts, during which a great stimulus had been given to the growth of republican principles. Disputes, sometimes violent, and sometimes in a conciliatory spirit, had been carried on between the royal governors and the representatives of the people; the former contending for prerogatives and salaries which the people deemed inadmissible.¹ These internal disputes were arrested when they heard that France had declared hostility to England [March 15, 1774] and the colonists cheerfully prepared to commence the contest known in America as

KING GEORGE'S WAR.

47. The principal event of this war² in America, was the capture of the fortress of Louisburg, on the island of Cape Breton. It had been constructed by the French after the treaty at Utrecht, at an expense of five and a half millions of dollars, and because of its great strength was called *The Gibraltar of America*. William Shirley,³ a soldier and energetic statesman, was governor of Massachusetts when hostilities were proclaimed. He immediately perceived the importance of Louisburg in the coming contest, and plans for its capture were speedily perfected by the Legislature of Massachusetts.⁴ Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Connecticut furnished their proper quota of troops. New York sent artillery, and Pennsylvania provisions. Thus common danger was extending the idea of a necessity for a union of the Anglo-American colonies, long before it assumed a practical form in 1754.⁵

48. Disappointed in their expectation of aid from Commodore Warren (then in the West Indies) the colonial forces thirty-two hundred strong, under the general command of William Pepperell,⁶ sailed [April 4, 1745] for Louisburg.⁷ At

1. The chief topic of controversy was the payment of salaries. Governors Shute, Burnet, and Belcher, all contended for a permanent salary, but the people claimed the right to vote such salary, each year, as the services of the governor appeared justly to demand. A compromise was finally effected by an agreement to vote a certain sum each year. The subject of salaries was a cause of contention with the royal governors, until the Revolution.

2. The husband of Queen Anne died several years previous to her death, which occurred in August, 1701. George, Elector of Hanover, in Germany, was immediately proclaimed King of England, by the title of George the First. His son George succeeded him in 1727, and also retained the title and privileges of Elector of Hanover. A contest arose between Maria Theresa, Empress of Austria, and the Elector of Bavaria, for the throne of Austria. The King of England espoused the cause of the empress in 1743, and the King of France took part with her opponent. This led France to declare war against England, a contest known in America as *King George's War*, but in Europe, the *War of the Austrian Succession*.

3. Born in England; made governor of Massachusetts in 1741; was afterward governor of one of the Bahama Islands, and died at Roxbury, near Boston, in 1771.

4. Shirley proposed an expedition, but the Legislature hesitated. The measure was finally agreed upon by a majority of only one vote.

5. Verse 10, page 151.

6. Pepperell was a native of Maine, and a wealthy merchant. He was afterward made a baronet. He died in 1790.

7. Louisburg is on the east side of the island of Cape Breton, with a fine, deep harbor. The landing-place of the British, position of the camp, etc., will be seen by reference to the map. The *Royal battery*

QUESTIONS.—46. How long did the colonies enjoy repose? What caused another war? What caused disputes with royal governors? What ended these disputes? 47. What kind of fortress was at Louisburg? What preparations were made to capture it?

Canseau they were unexpectedly joined by the fleet of Warren [May 9], and on the 11th of May the combined forces, four thousand strong, landed at Gabarus Bay, a short distance from their destination. The sudden appearance of this formidable armament was the first intimation to the French, that an attack was meditated, and great consternation prevailed in the fortress and town.

49. A direct approach to the town was difficult on account of a morass, and a combined attack by sea and land was carefully arranged. The land forces encamped in a curve in rear of the town, and detachments secured the French outposts, one after another. Cannons were dragged on sledges over the morass,¹ trenches were dug, batteries² were erected, and a regular siege was commenced [May 31]. While the siege was in progress, other English vessels of war arrived, and the fleet and army agreed to make a combined attack on the 29th of June. Despairing of successful resistance, the French surrendered the fortress, the city of Louis-
burg, and the island of Cape Breton, on the 28th of June 1745.³

50. This daring and successful expedition greatly mortified the pride of France; and the following year [1746] the Duke D'Anville was sent with a powerful naval armament⁴ to recover the lost fortress, and to desolate the English settlements along the seaboard. Storms wrecked many of his vessels, and disease swept away hundreds of his men; and D'Anville, thoroughly dispirited, abandoned the enterprise without striking a blow.⁵ Two years

was taken by 400 men. When they approached, the French thought the whole English army was upon them. They immediately spiked their guns (that is, drove iron spikes into the touch-holes of the cannons, so as to make them useless), and fled. In the upper part of the map is a profile of the fortifications at Louisburg. It is given here in order to illustrate certain terms which may be used hereafter; *a*, the *glacis*, is the extreme outside slope of the works; *b*, the *banquet*, or step upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet; *c*, a *covered way* into the fort, under the *banquet*; *d*, *counterscarp*, a bank or wall, outside the ditch; *e*, *f*, the *parapet*, a protection for the men and guns from balls from without; *g*, the inner *banquet*; *h*, ramparts,—the most solid embankment of the fortress; *i*, the last slope in the interior of the fort called *talus*.

1. The artillery was commanded by Richard Gridley, who was the engineer of the continental army at Boston in 1775 and 1776. Verse 8, page 190.

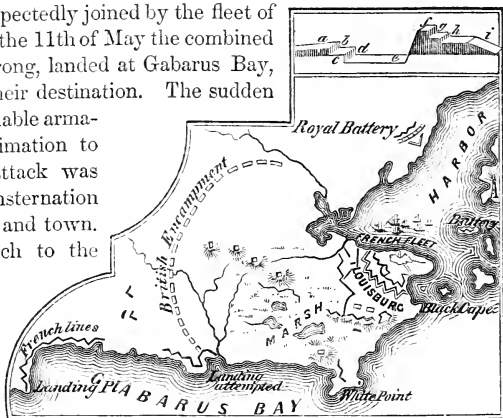
2. A battery is a place raised to the height of an object to be attacked, upon which heavy cannons are placed.

3. The property obtained by the English amounted, in value, to little less than five millions of dollars.

4. It consisted of forty ships of war, fifty-six transports, thirty-five hundred men, and forty thousand muskets for the use of the French and Indians in Canada.

5. D'Anville, with two or three vessels, anchored at Chebucto (now Halifax, Nova Scotia), where he died, it is believed, by poison. His lieutenant also committed suicide, in consequence of mortified pride. These disasters to the French fleet were regarded by the people of New England as special manifestations of Providence in their favor. Public thanksgivings were offered; and no one doubted the right of the English to the whole of Acadie.

QUESTIONS.—48. Describe the expedition against Louisburg, and the effect of its appearance. 49. What was the disposition of the forces before Louisburg? What did the fleet do? What was the result? 50. What preparations were made by the French to retrieve their losses? What was the result? What were the terms of the treaty that was made?



CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG IN 1745.

afterward a treaty of peace was concluded at Aix-la-Chapelle, in western Germany, when it was agreed that all prisoners should be released, and all acquisitions of property or territory, made by either party, were to be restored. Both of the principal parties were heavy losers by the contest;¹ while the strength of the colonists, yet to be called forth in a more important struggle, was revealed and noted.

51. Ancient national animosities, religious differences, and recent causes for irritation, had inspired the English and French with intense mutual hatred, when the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle was signed on the 18th of October, 1748. The allegiance of Massachusetts and its sister colonies to the British crown, restrained the resentment of the people while England and France were at peace. Soon, disputes about local boundaries began,² and it was not long before preparations for war were seen in America. Then came that final bloody struggle between the English and French, for dominion in the New World, known as the *French and Indian War*.³

SECTION III.

NEW YORK. [1623.]

1. Peter Minuit,⁴ recently appointed governor of New Netherland,⁵ arrived at New Amsterdam in May, 1626. He immediately purchased of the Indians, for about twenty-four dollars, the whole of the island of Manhattan, on which the city of New York now stands, and began vigorously to perfect the founding of a state similar to those of Holland. He erected a strong fortification near the site of the present *Battery*, and called it *Fort Amsterdam*.⁶ By conciliatory measures he gained the confidence of the Indians; and he also opened a friendly correspondence with the Puritans at Plymouth.⁷ The English reciprocated the friendly expressions of the Dutch; at the same time they requested the latter not to send their trappers quite so far eastward as Narraganset Bay, to catch otters and beavers.⁸

2. To encourage emigration to New Netherland, the *Dutch West India Company*⁹ offered [1629] large tracts of land and certain privileges to those persons who should lead or send a given number of emigrants to occupy and till

1. Parliament afterward reimbursed to the colonies the cost of their preparations against Canada, amounting to more than a million of dollars. See verse 30, page 160.

2. Verse 4, page 148.

3. Page 147.

4. Verse 4, page 73.

5. Verse 4, page 57.

6. Verse 12, page 62.

7. See picture on page 116.

8. Trade in furs was the chief occupation of the Dutch of New Netherland at this time. They became expert trappers, and were seen as far east as Nantucket, and even Cape Cod. The trade soon became profitable to the Company. The first year's remittance of furs to Amsterdam was valued at \$11,000. This trade greatly increased; and before the troubles with the Indians in 1640, the value of furs sent to Holland annually, was more than \$60,000.

9. Verse 5, page 57.

QUESTIONS.—51. What caused the English and French to hate each other? What restrained the colonists from continuing the war? What was the last great struggle of the two nations in America? 1. What measures were taken by the first Dutch governor for founding a state? What relations subsisted between the Dutch and the English and Indians?

the soil.¹ Directors of the company² availed themselves of the privilege, and sent Wouter Van Twiller to examine the country and select the lands. Immigrants came; and then were laid the foundations of the most noted of the manorial estates of New York.³ The proprietors were called *patroons*, or patrons.

3. Van Twiller was appointed governor in 1633, and in the beginning he had difficulties with the English on the Connecticut river.⁴ He was more distinguished for his marriage connection with Van Rensselaer, one of the *patroons*, than for any administrative qualities. Yet circumstances favored the advancement of the colony, and he ruled quite satisfactorily, especially to the Company, whose interests he faithfully served. He was succeeded in office, in May, 1638, by Sir William Kieft, at the moment when the Swedish colonists⁵ were seating themselves upon the banks of the Delaware.

4. Kieft, the fifth governor or director-general, was a bold, rapacious, and unscrupulous man, and soon brought serious trouble upon the colony. He began a tyrannous rule by concentrating executive power in his own hands; and his administration was a stormy and unfortunate one. The sum of its record is a tale of continual strife with the Swedes on the Delaware,⁶ the English on the Connecticut,⁷ the Indians all around him, and the colonists at his door. His difficulties with the Indians proved the most disastrous of all, and finally wrought his own downfall. Previous to his arrival, the intercourse of the Dutch with the Indians had been quite friendly.⁸ The fur trade was extending, and trappers and traders were all abroad among the native tribes. These carried a demon of discord with them. They furnished the Indians with *rum*, and quarrels and murders ensued. The avaricious Kieft also demanded tribute of wampum⁹ and beaver-skins from the River tribes; and in a short time their friendship for the Dutch became weakened.

5. Some *Raritan*¹⁰ Indians in New Jersey were accused of robbery. Kieft sent an armed force to punish them [July, 1640], and blood flowed. Several Indians were killed, and their crops were destroyed. Savage vengeance did not slumber long. The *Raritans* murdered four planters on Staten Island [June, 1641], and destroyed considerable property.¹¹ An expedition sent to

1. The land was to be fairly purchased of the Indians, and then the title was to be confirmed by the Dutch government. The privileges granted to the purchasers made them, in a degree, feudal lords [note 15, page 43], yet they were exempted from paying tribute to supreme authority.

2. Killian Van Rensselaer, who purchased a tract at Fort Orange (Albany); Samuel Godyn and Samuel Bloemart, who selected land in West Jersey, on the Delaware; and Michael Pauw, whose domain included Jersey City and vicinity. See Verse 7, page 74.

3. Van Rensselaer. Immense tracts of land in Albany and Rensselaer counties, portions of the first Patroons' estates, are yet (1857) in possession of the family. Since 1840, many scenes of violence and bloodshed have been witnessed on those lands, growing out of disputes with tenants, when they have been called upon to pay even the almost nominal rent which is demanded. Social and political questions have arisen, and produced two strong parties. The defense of the tenantry is termed *Anti-Rentism*.

4. Verse 4, page 67.

5. Verse 4, page 73.

6. Verse 5, page 73.

7. Verse 4, page 67.

8. The Dutch had made a settlement, and built a fort at Albany [verse 3, page 57], and made a treaty of friendship with the *Mohawks* [verse 2, page 18]. This the River Indians, in the vicinity of New Amsterdam, did not like, for the *Mohawks* were their oppressors.

9. A tribe of the *Lenni-Lenapes*. Verse 13, page 15.

10. Note 3, page 10.

11. This plantation belonged to De Vries [note 1, page 73], who was a friend of the Indians.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did the *Dutch West India Company* do to encourage emigration? Who were *Patroons*? 3. What marked the beginning of Van Twiller's administration? What was its character? Who succeeded him? 4. What was the character of Kieft? What marked his administration? What caused trouble with the Indians? 5. What causes led to hostilities with the Indians?

Kieft's unpopularity.

First popular Assembly.

Cruel massacre of Indians.

punish the offenders was unsuccessful. Soon afterward, a young Westchester Indian, whose uncle had been murdered by a Hollander, near where the Halls of Justice now stand,¹ revenged the murder, according to the custom of his people,² by killing an inoffensive Dutchman living at Turtle Bay.³ His tribe refused to surrender him on the demand of Kieft, and the governor determined to make war upon all the offending savages.

6. Already the people had begun to murmur at Kieft's course, and charged the troubles with the Indians directly upon him. Unwilling to assume the entire responsibility of a war himself, the governor called a meeting [August 23, 1641] of the heads of families in New Amsterdam, for consultation. These promptly chose "twelve select men" [August 29], with De Vries⁴ at their head, to act for them; and this was the first representative assembly ever formed among Europeans on Manhattan Island. They did not agree with the governor's hostile views; and Kieft finding them not only opposed to his war designs, but that they were also taking cognizance of alleged grievances of the people, dissolved them [February, 1642]. Finally, the commission of other murders by Indians, and the presence of a body of *Mohawks*, who had come down to exact tribute from the River tribes, concurred with the changed opinions of some leading citizens of New Amsterdam, to make Kieft resolved to embrace this opportunity to chastise the savages. A large number of them had fled before the *Mohawks*, and sought shelter with the *Hackensacks*, near Hoboken, and there craved the protection of the Dutch. Now was offered an opportunity for a wise and humane governor to make a covenant of peace and friendship; but Kieft could not be satisfied without a flow of blood. At midnight, in February, 1643, a body of Hollanders and *Mohawks* crossed the Hudson, fell upon the unsuspecting fugitives, and before the dawn, massacred almost a hundred men, women, and children.

7. This massacre aroused the fiery hatred and vengeance of all the surrounding tribes, and a fierce war was soon kindled. Villages and farms were desolated, and white people were butchered wherever found by the incensed Indians.⁵ The Long Island tribes,⁶ hitherto friendly, joined their kindred, and the very existence of the Dutch colony was menaced. Fortunately for the settlers, that eminent peace-maker, Roger Williams,⁷ arrived, to embark for England,⁸ and he pacified the savages [1643], and secured a brief repose for the colony. But the war was soon renewed, and for two years the colony suffered dreadfully. Having no competent leader, they employed Captain John Underhill,⁹ who successfully beat back and defeated the Indians, and

1. On Center-street, New York city. There was once a fresh-water pond there, surrounded by the forest.

2. The Indians had a custom concerning an *avenger of blood*, similar to that of the Jews. It was the duty and the privilege for the next of kin to the murdered man, to avenge his blood by killing the murderer. The Indians took the life of any one of the tribe of the offender.

3. At the foot of Forty-fifth-street, on the East river.

4. Note 1, page 73.

5. It was during this frenzy of revenge that Mrs. Hutchinson, who had been banished from Massachusetts, and had taken up her residence in the present Westchester county, New York, was murdered, with all her family. The stream upon which she lived is yet known as Hutchinson's river.

6. Verse 14, page 16.

7. Verse 9, page 68.

8. Verse 7, page 72.

9. Verse 10, page 69.

QUESTIONS.—6. What made the people murmur? What did the governor do? What outrage was committed? 7. What were the effects of this massacre? Can you relate the circumstances of an Indian war?

Peter Stuyvesant.

His character and government.

Swedes on the Delaware.

hostilities ceased. The *Mohawks* came and claimed sovereignty over the River Indians, and made a treaty of peace with the Dutch.

8. Kieft's conduct was so offensive to the colonists and the company, that he was recalled, and he sailed for Europe in 1647, in a richly-laden vessel. It was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and there the governor perished. He



PETER STUYVESANT.

had already been succeeded in office [May 27, 1647] by Peter Stuyvesant, lately governor of Curagoa, a soldier of eminence, and possessed of every requisite for an efficient administration of government. His treatment of the Indians was very kind and just, and they soon exhibited such friendship for the Dutch, that Stuyvesant was falsely charged with a design to employ them in murdering the English in New England.¹ Long accustomed, as a military leader, to arbitrary rule, he was stern and inflexible, but he had the reputation of an honest man. He immediately commenced much-needed reforms; and

during his whole administration, which was ended by the subjugation of the Dutch by the English,² in 1664, he was the faithful and energetic defender of the integrity of the province against its foes. By prudent management he avoided collisions with the English, and peaceably ended boundary disputes³ with them in the autumn of 1650. He then turned his attention to the growing power of the Swedes, on the Delaware.

9. In 1651, Stuyvesant built Fort Casimer, on the site of the present New Castle, in Delaware. This was soon seized by the Swedes, and the garrison made prisoners. The States-General⁴ resolved to prevent further trouble, and for this purpose, gave Stuyvesant full liberty to subjugate the Swedes. At the head of six hundred men, he sailed for the Delaware in August, 1655, and by the middle of October, he had captured all the Swedish fortresses, and sent the governor (Risingh) and several influential men to Europe. Some of the settlers withdrew to Maryland and Virginia, but the great body of them quietly submitted, took an oath of allegiance to the States-General of Holland, and continued in peaceable possession of their property. Thus, after an existence of about seventeen years, NEW SWEDEN⁵ disappeared by absorption into NEW NETHERLAND.

10. While Stuyvesant and his soldiery were absent on the Delaware, some

1. Verse 15, page 93. This idea prevailed, because during almost the entire winter of 1652-3, *Ninigret* and two *Narraganset* sachems had been in New Amsterdam, and on very friendly terms with Stuyvesant. These sachems, who were true friends of the English, positively disclaimed all bad intentions on the part of Stuyvesant, and yet historians of the present day repeat the slander.

2. Verse 12, page 115.
3. Verse 3, page 67. He went to Hartford, and there made a treaty which fixed the eastern boundary of New Netherland nearly on the line of the present division between New York and Connecticut, and across Long Island, at Oyster Bay, thirty miles eastward of New York. The Dutch claims to lands on the Connecticut river were extinguished by this treaty.

4. Note 4, page 45.

5. Verse 4, page 73.

QUESTIONS.—8. What happened to Governor Kieft? Who was his successor? What was Stuyvesant's character? and what did he accomplish? 9. What measures were adopted by Stuyvesant to humble the Swedes? What occurred to the Swedes in 1655?

Strife between Stuyvesant and the people.

English conquest of New Netherland.

Indians, who were not yet reconciled to the Dutch, menaced New Amsterdam.¹ The return of the governor produced quiet, and, for eight years, the colony was very little disturbed by external causes. Then the Esopus Indians suddenly fell upon the Dutch settlements [June, 1663] at Wiltwyck (now Kingston²), and killed and captured sixty-five of the inhabitants. Stuyvesant promptly sent a sufficient force to chastise them; and so thoroughly was the errand performed, that the Indians sued for peace [May, 1664], and made a treaty of friendship.

11. While the governor had been judiciously removing all causes for trouble with his neighbors, there was a power at work within his own domain which gave him great uneasiness. The democratic seed planted by the Twelve, in Kieft's time,³ had begun to grow vigorously under the fostering care of a few enlightened Hollanders, and some Puritans who had settled in New Netherland. The latter, by their applause of English institutions, had diffused a desire among the people to partake of the blessings of English liberty, as they understood it. Stuyvesant was an aristocrat by birth, education, and pursuit, and vehemently opposed every semblance of democracy. At the beginning he found himself at variance with the people. At length, an assembly of two deputies from each village in New Netherland, chosen by the inhabitants, convened at New Amsterdam [December, 1653], without the approbation of the governor. Their proceedings displeased him; and finding argument of no avail, he exercised his official prerogatives. The people grew bolder at every rebuff, and finally they not only resisted taxation, but openly expressed a willingness to bear English rule for the purpose of enjoying English liberty. The opportunity for change was not long delayed.

12. A crisis in the affairs of New Netherland now approached. Charles the Second of England, without any fair pretense to title, gave the whole territory of New Netherland [March 22, 1664] to his brother James, Duke of York.⁴ The duke sent an English squadron, under the command of Colonel Richard Nicolls,⁵ to secure the gift; and on the 3d of September, 1664, the red cross of St. George⁶ floated in triumph over the fort, and the name of New Amsterdam was changed to New York.⁷ It was an easy conquest, for, while the fortifications and other means of defense were very weak, the people were not unwilling to try English rule. Stuyvesant began to make concessions to the people when it was too late, and when his real strength, the popular will, had departed from him. He hesitated long before he would sign

1. Verse 1, page 111.

2. Near the Hudson river, in the present Ulster county. Verse 27, page 224.

3. Verse 6, page 113.

4. Verse 7, page 74.

5. Note 4, page 98.

6. The royal standard of England is sometimes so named because it bears a red cross, which is called the "cross of St. George," the patron saint of Great Britain. After the Union with Scotland [note 1, page 49], the cross of St. Andrew (in the form of an X) was added, and is now seen on the British flag. In the center are the royal arms. This Union, as the figure is called, was borne upon the American flag, sometimes, until after the Declaration of Independence, in 1776. It was upon the flag of thirteen stripes, alternately red and white, which Washington caused to be unfurled at Cambridge, on the first day of that year. See verse 1, page 197.

7. The name of Fort Orange settlement [note 8, page 112] was changed to Albany, one of the duke's titles.

QUESTIONS.—10. What Indian hostilities occurred on the Hudson? What were the results? 11. What new power appeared in the Dutch colony? How was it fostered? How was it regarded by Stuyvesant? What did the people do? 12. What led to the subjugation of the Dutch by the English? How was it effected? What was Stuyvesant's course?

New York under the English.

Tyranny.

Political changes.

the articles of capitulation; and thus, until the end, he was faithful to his employers, the *Dutch West India Company*.¹ With the capital, the remainder of the province passed into the hands of the English; and early in October, 1664, New Netherland was acknowledged a part of the British realm, and Nicolls the conqueror, became governor.² Let us consider

NEW YORK UNDER THE ENGLISH.

13. The people of New York³ soon perceived that a change of masters did not enhance their prosperity and happiness. They were disappointed in their hope of having a representative government; and their taxes, to support a government in which they had no voice, were increased. Lovelace, the vile successor of Nicolls [1667], increased their burdens; and when they sent a



CITY OF NEW YORK IN 1664.

respectful protest to him, he ordered the paper to be burned by the common hangman.

He was a petty tyrant, and declared that the people should have "liberty for no thought but how to pay their taxes." But the people *did* think on something else, and were on the eve of open rebellion when the clouds of national war overshadowed local difficulties.

14. War again commenced between England and Holland in 1672; and in July the following year, a Dutch squadron sailed up the Bay of New York, and, in the absence of the governor, took possession of the fort and town [August 9, 1673] without firing a shot. The easy conquest was the work of treason; yet the traitor went unpunished.⁴ New Jersey, and the territories of Delaware⁵ yielded; and for sixteen months [July, 1673, to November, 1674] New York was again New Netherland. When the two nations made a treaty of peace, the province was restored to the English, and remained in their possession until our Independence was declared, in 1776.⁶ These changes raised some doubts concerning the validity of the duke's title, and the king gave him another grant in July, 1674. Sir Edmond Andros⁷ was

1. Verse 5, page 57.

2. We have elsewhere noticed the fact, that before Nicolls was dispatched, the duke, being certain of victory, sold that part of New Netherland now included in New Jersey, to other parties. See verse 7, page 74. Long Island, which had been previously granted to the Earl of Stirling, was purchased by the Dutch, in total disregard of the claims of Connecticut. The colonies [verses 4 and 6, pages 73 and 74] on the Delaware remained under the jurisdiction of New York, and were governed by deputies.

3. The above picture is a correct view of the city of New York two hundred years ago. It is now [1857] the largest city on the American continent. On the left of the picture is seen Fort Amsterdam [verse 1, page 111], with the church and governor's house within it, and a windmill.

4. The traitor was Captain John Manning, the commander of the fort. He was, doubtless, bribed by the Dutch commander; and the fact that the king screened him from punishment, gave the color of truth to the charge that the monarch shared in the bribe.

5. Verse 11, page 76.

6. Verse 10, page 202.

7. Verse 33, page 103.

QUESTIONS.—13. How were the people disappointed? What did the English government do? 14. What occurred in New York in 1673? By what means did the Dutch regain the province? How did the English again get possession?

Increase of the popular strength.

Jacob Leisler.

The aristocracy offended.

appointed governor under the new charter, and continued arbitrary rule, with increased vigor.¹

15. Andros returned to England at the close of 1683, when the duke appointed Thomas Dongan, to succeed him. In the mean while, the duke had listened to the judicious advice of William Penn, and instructed Dongan to call an assembly of representatives. They met [October 17, 1683], and with the hearty concurrence of the governor, a CHARTER OF LIBERTIES was established,² and the permanent foundation of a representative government was laid. The people rejoiced in the change, and were heartily engaged in efforts to perfect a wise and liberal government, when the duke was elevated to the throne, as James the Second,³ on the death of Charles, in February, 1685. As king, he refused to confirm the privileges which, as duke, he had granted; and having determined to introduce the Roman Catholic religion into the province as the established church, he commenced by efforts to enslave the people. A direct tax was ordered; the printing-press—the right arm of knowledge and freedom—was forbidden a place in the colony; and the provincial offices were filled by Roman Catholics. These proceedings gave pain to the liberal-minded Dongan; and when the king, in his religious zeal, instructed the governor to introduce French priests among the FIVE NATIONS,⁴ he resisted the measure as highly inexpedient.⁵

16. The people were again on the eve of open rebellion, when the intelligence of the flight of James, and the accession of William and Mary,⁶ reached them. They immediately appointed a committee of safety, and with almost unanimous voice, sanctioned the conduct of Jacob Leisler (an influential merchant, and commander of the militia), who had taken possession of the fort in the name of the new sovereigns, and by order of the people. Afraid of the people, Nicholson, the successor of Dongan, fled on board a vessel and departed, and the people consented to Leisler's assuming the functions of governor until a new one should be appointed. The aristocracy and the magistrates were offended, and denouncing Leisler as an usurper, they accused him of treason, when Governor Sloughter arrived, in 1691.

17. In the mean while, Leisler conducted affairs with prudence, and energy. Having the sanction of the people, he needed no further authority; and when a letter from the British ministers arrived [December, 1689], directed to Gov-

1. The duke claimed the country from the Connecticut river to Cape Henlopen. Andros attempted to exercise authority eastward of the line agreed upon by the Dutch and the Connecticut people [note 3, page 114], and went to Saybrook in the summer of 1676, with an armed party, to enforce the claim. He met with such resistance that he was compelled to return to New York without accomplishing his design. See verse 6, page 6.

2. The Assembly consisted of the governor and ten councilors, and seventeen deputies elected by the freeholders. They adopted a *Declaration of Rights*, and asserted the principle, so nobly fought for a hundred years later, that *taxation and representation* are inseparable—in other words, that taxes can not be levied without the consent of the people, expressed by their representatives. At this time the colony was divided into twelve counties.

3. Verse 28, page 89.

4. Verse 2, page 18.

5. This measure would have given the French, in Canada, an influence over the Indians that might have proved fatal to English power on the continent. The FIVE NATIONS remained the fast friends of the English, and stood as a powerful barrier against the French, when the latter twice invaded the Iroquois territory, in endeavors to reach the English at Albany.

6. Note 9, page 89.

QUESTIONS.—15. What political changes took place in New York? How did a *duke*, made *king*, disappoint the people? What measures did he attempt? 16. What other changes took place in New York? What did the people do? How did the aristocracy regard their movements?

ernor Nicholson, "or, in his absence, to such as, for the time being," conducted affairs, he considered it as fairly addressed to himself. Milborne, his son-in-law, acted as his deputy, and was included in the accusations of the magistrates, who had now retired to Albany. They held Fort Orange¹ until the invasion of the French in February 1690,² when they felt the necessity of claiming the protection of the government at New York. They then yielded, and remained comparatively quiet until the arrival of Richard Ingoldsby, Sloughter's lieutenant, early in 1691.

18. Ingoldsby announced the appointment of Henry Sloughter as governor; and without producing any credentials of authority, he haughtily demanded of Leisler [Feb. 9, 1691] the surrender of the fort. Of course Leisler refused compliance; but as soon as Sloughter arrived [March 29], he sent a messenger to announce his desire to surrender all authority into his hands. Leisler's enemies had resolved on his destruction; and when he came forward to deliver the fort, in person, he and his son-in-law were seized and cast into prison. They were tried on a charge of treason, found guilty, and condemned to suffer death. Sloughter withheld his signature to their death warrant; but, when made drunk at a dinner party prepared for the purpose, he put his name to the fatal instrument. Before he became sober, Leisler and Milborne were suspended [May 26, 1691], upon a gallows.³

19. Sloughter was a weak and dissolute, but honest man. He convened a popular assembly, and formed a liberal constitution. Light was thus dawning hopefully upon the province, when *delirium tremens*, at the close of a drunken revel, ended the administration and the life of the governor [Aug. 2, 1691], in less than three months after the murder of Leisler and Milborne.

20. Sloughter was succeeded by Benjamin Fletcher, a man of violent passions and quite as weak and dissolute. He became the tool of the aristocracy, and was hated by the people. Party spirit, engendered by the death of Leisler, burned intensely during the whole administration of Fletcher; and, at the same time, the French and Indians, under the guidance of Frontenac, the able governor of Canada,⁴ were traversing the northern frontiers of the province. Fletcher prudently listened to the advice of Major Schuyler,⁵ of Albany, respecting the Indians; and under his leadership, the English, and their unwavering allies, the FIVE NATIONS, successfully beat back the foe to the St. Lawrence, and so desolated the French settlements [1692] in the vicinity of Lake Champlain,⁶ that Frontenac was glad to remain quiet at Montreal.

1. Note 8, page 112.

2. At this time Schenectada was desolated. See verse 25, page 174.

3. Their estates were confiscated; but after a lapse of several years, and when the violence of party spirit had subsided, the property was restored to their families.

4. From 1678 to 1682, and again from 1689 to 1698, when he died, at the age of 77.

5. Peter Schuyler. He was mayor of Albany, and acquired unbounded influence over the FIVE NATIONS. Verse 2, page 18.

6. Schuyler's force was about three hundred *Mohawks* and as many English. They slew about three hundred of the French and Indians, at the north end of the lake.

QUESTIONS.—17. How did Leisler manage affairs? What course did the magistrates and others pursue? 18. What circumstances led to the death of Leisler and Milborne? 19. What was the character of Sloughter? What were the promises of his short administration? How did he die? 20. What causes made Fletcher's administration an exciting one? What was done against the French and Indians?

Kidd and his associates.

Misrule of Sir Edward Hyde.

Party newspapers.

21. The Earl of Bellomont, an honest and energetic Irish peer, succeeded Fletcher in 1698; and the following year, New Hampshire,¹ and Massachusetts² were placed under his jurisdiction. He commenced reform with great earnestness, and made vigorous efforts to suppress piracy,³ which had become a fearful scourge to the infant commerce of the colonists. With Robert Livingston⁴ and others, he fitted out an expedition under the famous Captain Kidd, to destroy the buccaneers. Kidd himself was afterward hung for piracy [1701], and the governor and his friends were charged with a participation in his guilt.⁵

22. Death removed Bellomont [March 16, 1701] when his liberal policy was about to bear fruit. He was succeeded by Edward Hyde (afterward Lord Cornbury),⁶ a libertine and a knave, who cursed the province with misrule for seven years. He persecuted all denominations of Christians, except those of the Church of England, embezzled the public moneys, involved himself in heavy debts, and on all occasions was the practical enemy of popular freedom. The people finally demanded and obtained his recall, and the moment his official career ceased [1708], his creditors cast him into prison, where he remained until his accession to the peerage, on the death of his father.⁷ From this period until the arrival of William Cosby, as governor [1732], the royal representatives,⁸ unable to resist the will of the people, as expressed by the Assembly, allowed democratic principles to grow and bear fruit.⁹

23. Rip Van Dam, "a man of the people," was acting governor when Cosby came. They soon quarreled, and two violent parties arose—the Democratic, which sided with Van Dam, and the Aristocratic which supported the governor. Each party had the control of a newspaper,¹⁰ and the war of words raged violently for a long time. The governor, unable to compete with his opponent, finally ordered the arrest of Zenger [Nov., 1734], the publisher of the Democratic paper, on a charge of libel. After an imprison-

1. Verse 2, page 64.

2. Verse 7, page 91.

3. Because Spain claimed the exclusive right to the West India seas, her commerce in that region was regarded as fair plunder. Privateer commissions were readily granted by the English, French and Dutch governments; and daring spirits from all countries were found under their flags. The buccaners, as they were called, became very numerous and powerful, and at length depredated upon English commerce as well as Spanish. *Privateers*, or those legally authorized to seize the property of an enemy, became *pirates*, or sea robbers. Privateering is only legalized piracy.

4. An immigrant from Scotland, and ancestor of the Livingston family in this country. He was connected, by marriage, with the Van Rensselaer and Schuyler families; and in 1685, received from Governor Dongan a grant of a feudal principality (see *patroon*, verse 2, page 111) on the Hudson, yet known as Livingston's Manor.

5. Bellomont and his friends were accused of connivance with Kidd, and sharing the plunder with him. It appears quite certain that Kidd was made a scape-goat for others in high station. King William himself was a shareholder in the enterprise for which Kidd was fitted out. Kidd appeared publicly in Boston, where he was arrested, sent to England, tried, and executed.

6. Verse 7, page 129.

7. According to an unjust law of England, a Peer of the realm (who is consequently a member of the House of Lords, [note 7, page 177]) can not be arrested for debt. This law, enacted in the reign of Henry the Eighth, still prevails.

8. Lord Lovelace, Ingoldshy, Hunter, Schuyler, Burnet, and Montgomerie.

9. We have already noticed [verse 42, page 107] the breaking out of *Queen Anne's War* in 1702, and the successful expeditions fitted out and sent in the direction of Montreal in 1709 and 1711. The debt which these expeditions laid upon New York was felt for many years.

10. *The New York Weekly Journal* (Democratic), by John Peter Zenger; *The New York Gazette* (Aristocratic), by William Bradford. The latter owned the first press ever set up in the province. He commenced printing in New York in 1696. See note 3, page 147.

QUESTIONS.—21. What occurred early in the administration of Bellomont? What expedition was arranged? and for what purpose? What was the result? 22. Who was Bellomont's successor? What caused the people to hate him? What was done to him? What showed the power of the people? 23. What parties were formed in New York? How did they oppose each other? What occurred during their disputes?

Trial of Zenger.	Triumph of Democratic principles.	Events in Maryland.
------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------

ment of thirty-five weeks, Zenger was tried by a jury, and acquitted [July, 1735]. He was defended by Andrew Hamilton, of Philadelphia, who was presented by the magistrates of the city of New York with a gold box, as a token of their esteem for his noble advocacy of popular rights. Then was distinctly drawn the line of demarcation between republicans and royalists.

24. The history of New York from the arrival of Cosby until the commencement of the French and Indian War,¹ is composed chiefly of the records of party strife, and presents very little matter of interest to the general reader. Only one event demands special attention, namely, the supposed conspiracy of negroes in 1741 to burn and plunder the city, murder the inhabitants, and set up a government under a man of their own color. Several incendiary fires had occurred in rapid succession, and a house had been robbed by some slaves. The idea of a regular and horrid conspiracy at once prevailed, and, as in the case of the Salem Witchcraft,² an intense panic pervaded all classes, and many innocent persons suffered. This is known in history as *The Negro Plot*.³

SECTION IV.

MARYLAND. [1639.]

1. Maryland had its colonial birth when the first popular Assembly convened at St. Mary for legislative purposes, on the 8th of March, 1635.⁴ Its sturdy growth began when, in 1639, the more convenient form of representative government was established. It was crude, but it possessed the elements of republicanism. The freemen chose as many representatives as they pleased, and others were appointed by the proprietor. These, with the governor and secretary, composed the legislature. At this first session a Declaration of Rights was adopted; the powers of the governor were defined; and all the privileges enjoyed by English subjects were guaranteed to the colonists.⁵

2. The Indians in the vicinity, becoming jealous of the increasing strength of the white people, began to evince hostility. Frequent collisions occurred; and in 1642, a general Indian War commenced in the region between the Potomac and the Chesapeake. It was terminated in 1645, but the quiet of the province was soon disturbed again. Clayborne had returned from England⁶ [1645], and speedily fanned embers of discontent into a flame of open rebellion. He became too powerful for the local authorities, and Governor Calvert⁷ was obliged to flee to Virginia. During a year and a half, the insurgents held the reins of government, and the horrors of civil war brooded

1. Page 147.

2. Verse 40, page 105.

3. Before the panic was allayed, four white people were hanged; and eleven negroes were burned, eighteen were hanged and fifty were sent to the West Indies and sold.

4. Verse 6, page 66.

5. Verse 6, page 65.

6. Note 1, page 66.

7. Verse 5, page 65.

QUESTIONS.—24. What characteristics does the history of New York present from Cosby to the French and Indian War? Can you relate the particulars of the Negro Plot? 1. When was the birth, and where began the real growth of the Maryland colony? What was the form and character of its government? 2. What events disturbed the tranquillity of the colonists?

Toleration Act.

Troubles in Maryland.

Re-organization of Government.

over the colony. The rebellion was suppressed in the Summer of 1646, and Calvert resumed his office, in August.

3. An important law was enacted by the Assembly in 1649, known as The Toleration Act. Religious freedom was guarantied by the Charter,¹ yet as much animosity existed between the Protestants² and Roman Catholics, the Assembly³ thought proper to give the principle the solemn sanction of law. By that act every professed believer in Jesus Christ was allowed free exercise of his religious opinions. Thither persecuted Churchmen of New England, and oppressed Puritans of Virginia, fled and found an asylum. This act is the pride and glory of the early legislature of Maryland; yet it was not the first instance in America, as is often alleged, when religious toleration received the sanction of law.⁴

4. Favored by events in the mother country, republicanism grew steadily in the new State. Royalty was abolished in England [1649], and for more than ten years the democratic idea was prevalent throughout the realm. Lord Baltimore, the proprietor of Maryland, professed republicanism on the death of the king, but he had been too recently a royalist to secure the confidence of Parliament. Stone, his lieutenant, was removed from office [April 16, 1651] by commissioners (of whom Clayborne was one), who were sent to administer the government of the Colony. He was soon afterward [July 8] restored. On the dissolution of the Long Parliament, [1653]⁵ Cromwell restored full power to the proprietor, but the commissioners, who withdrew to Virginia, returned soon afterward, and compelled Stone to surrender the government into their hands.

5. The colonial government had been re-organized in the meantime. The legislative body was divided into an Upper and Lower House [1650]; the former consisting of the governor and his council, appointed by the proprietor, and the latter of representatives chosen by the people. At the same session, a law was passed prohibiting all taxes unless levied with the consent of the freemen. So great had been the influx of Protestants, that they now [1654] out-numbered the Roman Catholics as voters and in the Assembly. They acknowledged the authority of Cromwell, and boldly questioned the rights and privileges of an hereditary proprietor.⁶ The Roman Catholics adhered to Lord Baltimore, and bitter religious hatred was fostered. The Protestants finally disfranchised their opponents, excluded them from the Assembly, and

1. Verse 4, page 65.

2. Note 14, page 48.

3. Bozman, in his *History of Maryland*, (II. 359-366) maintains that the majority of the members of the Assembly of 1649, were Protestants.

4. In May, 1647, the General Assembly of Rhode Island, convened at Portsmouth, adopted a code of laws which closed with the declaration that "all men might walk as their conscience persuaded them, without molestation, every one in the name of his God." This was broader toleration than the Maryland act contemplated, for it did not restrict men to belief in Jesus Christ.

5. When Charles the First was beheaded [Note 10, page 81], the Parliament assumed supreme authority, and remained in permanent session. Cromwell, with an army at his back, entered that assembly in the Autumn of 1653, ordered them to disperse, and assumed supreme power himself, under the title of Lord Protector. That British legislature is known in history as the Long Parliament.

6. According to the original charter, the successors of Lord Baltimore were to be proprietors forever.

QUESTIONS.—3. What important law was made in 1649? What were its principal features? How should it be regarded? 4. What political changes took place? What course did Lord Baltimore pursue? What did Cromwell effect? 5. What change in government had been effected? What were the religious aspects and general sentiments of the colonists?

Civil war in Maryland.

Anarchy.

Duplicity of Lord Baltimore.

toward the close of 1654 [Nov.], passed an act declaring Roman Catholics not entitled to the protection of the laws of Maryland.

6. Civil war ensued. Stone returned to St. Mary,¹ organized an armed force composed chiefly of Roman Catholics, seized the colonial records, and assumed the office of governor. Skirmishes ensued, and finally a severe battle was fought [April 4, 1655] not far from the site of Annapolis, in which Stone's party was defeated with a loss of about fifty men, killed and wounded. Stone was made prisoner, but his life was spared. Four other leading supporters of the proprietor were tried for treason and executed.

7. Anarchy prevailed in the province for many months, when the discordant elements were brought into comparative order by the appointment of Josiah Fendall [July 20, 1656], as governor. He was suspected of favoring the Roman Catholics, and was soon arrested by order of the Protestant Assembly. For two years bitter strife continued between the people and the agents of the proprietor, when, after concessions by the latter, Fendall was acknowledged governor [April 3, 1658]. His prudence secured the confidence of the people, but the death of Cromwell [Sept. 1658], presaging a change in the English government, gave them uneasiness. After long deliberation, the Assembly determined to avoid all further trouble with the proprietor, by asserting the supreme authority of the people. They accordingly dissolved the Upper House [March 24, 1660],² and assumed the whole legislative power of the State. They then gave Fendall a commission as governor for the people.

8. Monarchy was restored in England in June, 1660,³ and the original order of things was re-established in Maryland. Lord Baltimore having assured the new king that his republican professions⁴ were only temporary expedients, was restored to all his proprietary rights by Charles. Fendall was tried and found guilty of treason, because he accepted a commission from the rebellious Assembly. Baltimore, however, wisely proclaimed a general pardon for all political offenders in Maryland; and for almost thirty years afterward, the province enjoyed repose.

9. Maryland was governed mildly and prudently under the new proprietor, Charles Calvert, and the people were prospering in their political quietude, when the Revolution in England⁵ shook the colonies. The deputy governor of Maryland hesitated to proclaim William and Mary,⁶ and this was made a pretense, by a restless spirit named Coode,⁷ for exciting the people. He gave currency to the absurd report that the local magistrates and the Roman Catholics, had leagued with the Indians⁸ for the destruction of all the Prot-

1. Verse 5, p. 65.

2. Verse 5, p. 121.

3. Note 1, p. 86.

4. Verse 4, p. 121.

5. Note 9, page 89.

6. Verse 29, p. 89.

7. Coode had been a confederate in a former insurrection, but escaped conviction.

8. A treaty with the Indians had just been renewed, and the customary presents distributed among them. This, Coode falsely adduced as evidence of a coalition with the savages.

QUESTIONS.—6. What were the chief events of a civil war in 1655? 7. What state of things existed for three years after the civil war? What did the Assembly do? 8. What political changes now took place? How did they affect the colony? 9. What was the effect of the Revolution in England on Maryland? What rumors were circulated? What commotions ensued?

Coode's insurrection.

Quiet.

Constitutions of settlers in Connecticut.

estants in the colony. A similar actual coalition of Jesuits¹ and savages on the New England frontiers,² gave a coloring of truth to the story, and the old religious feud instantly burned again intensely. The Protestants formed an armed association [Sept., 1689] and, led on by Coode, they took possession of the government, called a Convention, and invested it with legislative powers. Its first acts were to depose the third Lord Baltimore, and to re-assert the sovereign majesty of the people.

10. The Convention managed public affairs until 1691, when the king unjustly deprived Baltimore of all his political privileges as proprietor [June 11], and made Maryland a royal province.³ Lionel Copley was appointed the first royal governor in 1692. New laws were instituted—religious toleration was abolished—the Church of England was made the established religion, to be supported by a tax on the people; and in the State founded by Roman Catholics, the members of that denomination were cruelly disfranchised, with the consent of their sovereign.

11. In 1716, the proprietary rights of Lord Baltimore (now deceased) were restored to his infant heir, and the original form of government was re-established. Such continued to be the political complexion of Maryland until the storm of the Revolution [1776] swept away every remnant of royalty and feudalism.

SECTION V.

CONNECTICUT. [1639.]

1. The example of the CONNECTICUT COLONY¹ in forming a political constitution [January 24, 1639], was speedily followed [June 4] by the settlers of NEW HAVEN.² The religious element was supreme in the new organization, and the Bible was made the Statute Book of the colony; and, in imitation of the constitution of the Plymouth settlers, none but church members were allowed the privileges of freemen.³ A committee of twelve men was appointed, who selected seven of their members to be "pillars" in the New State. These had power to admit as many others as they pleased to take part with them in legislation. Theophilus Eaton was chosen governor.⁴

2. Many of the New Haven settlers being merchants, they sought to found a commercial colony, but heavy losses by the wreck of vessels⁵ discouraged

1. Note 1, page 104.

2. Verse 35, page 104.

3. King William had an exalted idea of royal prerogatives, and was as much disposed as the Stuarts (the kings of England from James the First to James the Second) to suppress democracy in the colonies. He repeatedly vetoed (refused his assent to) Bills of Rights enacted by the colonial Assemblies; refused his assent to local laws of the deepest interest to the colonists; and instructed his governors to prohibit printing in the colonies. Note 2, page 89.

4. Verse 14, page 70.

5. Verse 13, page 70. The people assembled in a barn to form the new constitution.

6. Note 6, page 9^a.

7. He was annually chosen to fill the office, until his death, which occurred in 1657.

8. In 1647, a new ship belonging to the colony foundered at sea. It was laden with a valuable cargo, and the passengers belonged to some of the leading families in the colony. Several smaller vessels were lost during five or six years.

QUESTIONS.—10. How came Maryland to be made a royal province? What changes then took place? What wrong was perpetrated? 11. What was the political condition of Maryland from 1716 until the War for Independence? 1. What was the character of the New Haven Constitution?

them, and they turned their special attention to agriculture. Prudence marked the course of the magistrates of the several colonies in the Connecticut valley,¹ and they were blessed with prosperity. But difficulties with the Dutch respecting territorial boundaries,² and menaces of the neighboring Indians, gave them uneasiness, and made them readily join the New England confederation in 1643.³ The following year the little independent colony at Saybrook⁴ purchased the land of one of the proprietors of Connecticut,⁵ and became permanently annexed to that at Hartford.⁶

3. The treaty made with Governor Stuyvesant at Hartford in 1650,⁷ gave token of future tranquillity. But the repose was soon broken by international war. England and Holland drew the sword against each other in 1652; and because it was reported that Ninigret, the wily sachem of the *Narragansets*⁸ had spent several weeks at New Amsterdam in the winter of 1652-'3,⁹ the belief prevailed in New England, that Stuyvesant had leagued with the Indians for the destruction of the English.¹⁰ Great excitement ensued, and a majority of the commissioners¹¹ decided [1653] upon war with the Dutch. Immediate hostilities were prevented by the refusal of Massachusetts to furnish its quota of supplies. The Connecticut colonies (who were nearest the Dutch) applied to Cromwell for aid, and he sent four ships of war for the purpose. Before their arrival,¹² a treaty of peace had been concluded between the two nations, and blood and treasure were saved. The Assembly at Hartford took possession of all property then claimed by the Dutch; and after that the latter abandoned all claims to possessions in the Connecticut valley.

4. On the restoration of Charles the Second [1660], the *Connecticut colony* expressed its loyalty, and obtained a charter. At first, Charles was disposed to refuse the application of Winthrop,¹³ the agent of the colony, for he had heard of the sturdy republicanism of the petitioners. But when Winthrop presented his majesty with a ring which Charles the First had given to his father, the heart of the king was touched, and he granted a charter [May 30, 1662] which not only confirmed the popular constitution of the colony, but contained more liberal provisions than any yet issued from the royal hand.¹⁴ Its boundary as defined included a portion of Rhode Island, and the whole *New Haven Colony*.¹⁵ The latter gave a reluctant consent to the union in

1. Verse 7, p. 68.

2. Page 67, and note 3, p. 114.

3. Verse 15, p. 96.

4. Verse 6, p. 68.

5. Verse 3, p. 67.

6. Verse 14, p. 70.

7. Note 3, p. 114.

8. Note 1, p. 114.

9. This report was set afloat by Uncas, the mischievous *Mohegan* sachem [verse 10, p. 69], who hated the *Narragansets*. It had no foundation in truth. See also verse 14, page 16.

10. Verse 8, page 114.

11. Verse 15, page 96.

12. Roger Williams, then in England, managed to delay the sailing of the fleet, and thus, again, that eminent peace-maker prevented bloodshed. Verse 9, page 68.

13. John Winthrop, son of Governor Winthrop of Massachusetts. He was chosen Governor of Connecticut in 1657, and held the office several years. Such was his station when he appeared in England to ask a charter of the king. Hopkins (who was one of the founders of the New Haven colony) was chosen the first Governor of the Connecticut colony, and for several years he and Haynes were alternately chosen chief magistrate.

14. This original charter is now [1857], in the office of the Secretary of State of Connecticut. It contains a portrait of Charles the Second, handsomely drawn in India ink, and forming part of an initial letter. This was the instrument afterward hidden in the great oak. See Verse 7, page 125.

15. Verse 13, page 70. Thus the several settlements were united under the general name of Connecticut.

QUESTIONS.—2. Why did the New Haven settlers wish to found a commercial colony? What was the condition of the Connecticut settlements? What annexation took place? 3. What disturbed the tranquillity of the New England colonies? What was the effect and the termination of the disturbance? 4. How did Connecticut obtain a charter from the king? What boundaries did it define? What difficulties ensued?

Andros in Connecticut. Usurpation of authority. Andros and the Connecticut charter.

1665, but Rhode Island positively refused the alliance. The two colonies disputed for more than sixty years concerning the boundary.

5. With the exception of some settlements far up the river, the colony of Connecticut suffered but little during KING PHILIP'S WAR.¹ Yet it furnished its full quota of men and supplies, and its soldiers bore a conspicuous part in breaking the power of the New England Indians.² At the same time the colonists were obliged to defend their liberties against the attempted usurpations of Andros, then Governor of New York.³ He claimed jurisdiction as far as the mouth of Connecticut river; and in July, 1675, he proceeded to Saybrook with a small naval force, to assert his authority. He was permitted to land; but when he ordered the garrison in the fort to surrender, and began to read his commission to the people, Captain Bull, the commander, ordered him to be silent. Perceiving the strength and determination of his adversary, Andros wisely withdrew, and returned greatly irritated to New York.

6. Very little occurred to disturb the quiet and prosperity of Connecticut, for the next dozen years. Edmund Andros again appeared as a usurper of authority. He had been appointed Governor of New England [1686],⁴ and on his arrival, demanded of all the colonies a surrender of their charters. They all complied, except Connecticut. She steadily refused to give up the guaranty of her political rights; and finally Andros proceeded to Hartford with sixty armed men, to enforce obedience. The Assembly were in session when he arrived [Nov. 10, 1687], and received him courteously. He demanded the surrender of the charter, and declared the colonial government dissolved.

7. Already a plan had been arranged for securing the safety of the charter and preserving an appearance of loyalty. The debates were purposely protracted until the candles were lighted, at evening, when the charter was brought in and laid upon the table. Just as Andros stepped forward to take it, the candles were suddenly extinguished. The charter was seized by Captain Wadsworth of the militia, and under cover of the night it was effectually concealed in the hollow trunk of a huge oak, standing not far from the Assembly chamber.⁵ When the candles were relighted, the members were in perfect order, but the charter could not be found. Andros assumed the government, and with his own hand wrote the word FINIS after the last record of the Charter Assembly. The government was administered in his own name until he was driven from Boston in 1689,⁶ when the charter



THE CHARTER OAK.

1. Page 99.

2. Verse 15, p. 17.

3. Verse 14, p. 116.

4. Verse 33, p. 103.

5. That tree remained vigorous until about one o'clock in the morning of the 21st of August, 1856, when it was prostrated during a heavy storm.

6. Verse 33, page 103.

QUESTIONS.—5. How was Connecticut affected by Indian wars? What usurpation did Andros attempt? and what was the result? 6. What exciting scene occurred at Hartford in 1687? 7. How did the Connecticut people preserve their charter? What then occurred?

Governor Fletcher at Hartford.

Firmness of Wadsworth.

Rhode Island.

was taken from the oak [May 19, 1689], a popular Assembly was convened, Robert Treat was chosen governor, and Connecticut again assumed her position as an independent colony.

8. A little more than four years later, the Connecticut people were again compelled to assert their chartered liberties. Colonel Fletcher, then Governor of New York,¹ held a commission which gave him command of the militia of Connecticut.² The Legislature appealed to the charter, and refused to acknowledge Fletcher's authority. In November, 1693, he repaired to Hartford, and ordered the militia to assemble. The Hartford companies, under Captain Wadsworth,³ were drawn up in line; but the moment Fletcher attempted to read his commission, the drums were beaten. His angry order of "Silence!" was obeyed for a moment; but when he repeated it, Wadsworth boldly stepped in front of him and said, "Sir, if they are again interrupted, I'll make the sun shine through you in a moment." Fletcher perceived the futility of further assumption of authority, and returned to New York, greatly chagrined and irritated. The matter on being reported to the king was settled by a compromise.

9. Connecticut had now [1700] a population of about thirty thousand. During *Queen Anne's war*,⁴ and the stirring events in America from that time until the commencement of the French and Indian war,⁵ when her people numbered one hundred thousand, Connecticut went hand in hand with her sister colonies in labors for mutual welfare, and her history is too closely interwoven with theirs to require further separate notice.

SECTION VI.

RHODE ISLAND. [1644.]

1. Rhode Island commenced its independent colonial career in 1644, when the *Providence* and *Rhode Island* plantations were united under the same government.⁶ That charter was confirmed by the Long Parliament⁷ in October, 1652, and this put an end to the persevering efforts of Massachusetts to absorb "Williams's Narraganset Plantations." That colony had always coveted the beautiful Aquiday,⁸ and feared the reaction of Williams's tolerant principles upon the people from whose bosom he had been cruelly expelled.⁹

2. Like other colonies, Rhode Island was disturbed by internal commotions,

1. Verse 20, page 118.

2. The declared object of this commission was to enable Fletcher to call forth the Connecticut militia when proper, to repel an expected invasion of northern New York, by the French and Indians.

3. Verse 7, page 125.

4. Page 107.

5. Page 147.

6. Verse 7, page 72. A general assembly of deputies from the several towns, met at Portsmouth on the 24th of May, 1677, and organized the new government by the election of a president and other officers. At that time a code of laws was adopted, which declared the government to be a democracy, and that "all men might walk as their conscience persuaded them." Verse 3, page 121.

7. Note 5, page 121.

8. Note 12, page 71.

9. Verse 2, page 71.

QUESTIONS.—8. What other attempted usurpation did the Connecticut people repel? How was it done? What was the result? 9. What was the general condition and progress of Connecticut? 1. When did Rhode Island commence its colonial career? What was its relation to Massachusetts?

Rhode Island charter.

Newport.

Berkeley and Smibert.

growing out of religious disputes and personal ambition. These were quieted toward the close of 1653, when Roger Williams was chosen president. Cromwell confirmed the royal charter [May 22, 1655]; and during his administration, the colony prospered. On the accession of Charles the Second,¹ Rhode Island applied for and obtained a new charter [July 8, 1663], highly democratic in its general features, and similar, in every respect, to the one granted to Connecticut.² The first governor elected under this instrument, was Benedict Arnold;³ and by a colonial law, enacted during his first administration, the privileges of freemen were granted only to freeholders and their oldest sons.

3. Rhode Island yielded to Andros⁴ in January, 1687; but the moment intelligence reached the people of the accession of William and Mary⁵ [May 11, 1689], and the imprisonment of Andros at Boston,⁶ they assembled at Newport, resumed their old charter, and re-adopted their seal—an *anchor*, with *Hope* for a motto. Under this charter Rhode Island continued to be governed for one hundred and fifty-seven years, when the people, in representative convention [1842], adopted a constitution.⁷ Newport soon became a thriving commercial town; and when, in 1732, John Franklin established there the first newspaper in the colony, it contained five thousand inhabitants, and the whole province about eighteen thousand.⁸ Near Newport the celebrated Dean Berkeley purchased lands [1729]; and with him came John Smibert, an artist, who introduced portrait-painting into America.⁹ Notwithstanding Rhode Island was excluded from the New England confederacy,¹⁰ it always bore its share in defensive efforts; and its history is identified with that of New England in general, from the commencement of King William's war.¹¹

SECTION VII.

NEW JERSEY. [1664.]

1. We have considered the *settlements* in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, in the same section,¹² as constituting a series of events having inti-

1. Verse 15, page 85.

2. Verse 4, page 124. This charter guaranteed free toleration in religious matters, and the Legislature of the colony re-asserted the principle, so as to give it the popular force of law. The assertion, made by some, that Roman Catholics were excluded from voting, and that Quakers were outlawed, is erroneous.

3. He was governor several times, serving in that office, altogether, about eleven years. He was chief magistrate of the colony when he died, in 1678.

4. Verse 33, page 103.

5. Verse 33, page 103.

6. Verse 33, page 103.

7. Verse 6, page 319.

8. Of these, about 1000 were Indians, and more than 1,600 were negroes.

9. Berkeley preached occasionally in a small Episcopal church at Newport, and presented the congregation with an organ, the first ever heard in America. Smibert was a Scotchman, and married and settled at Boston. His picture of Berkeley and his family is still preserved at Yale College [verse 10, page 146], in New Haven. Berkeley (afterward made bishop of a diocese in Ireland) made great efforts toward the establishment of the arts and learning in America. Failing in his project of founding a new University, he became one of the most liberal benefactors of Yale College. In view of the future progress of the colonies, he wrote that prophetic poem, the last verse of which commences with the oft-quoted line—

“Westward the course of Empire takes its way.”

10. Verse 15, page 96.

11. Verse 34, page 103.

12. Chap. III., Sec. VIII., page 72.

QUESTIONS.—? What disturbed the colony? What was the character of a new charter? What law was enacted? 3. What did the people do when they heard of the imprisonment of Andros? What can you tell of Newport and the population of Rhode Island? For what was it remarkable?

Founding of New Jersey.

Troubles with the settlers.

Sale to Quakers.

mate relations with each other. The history of the colonial organization of the first two is separate and distinct. Delaware was never a separate colony or State until after the Declaration of Independence, in 1776.

2. The founding of the New Jersey colony occurred when, in 1664, the Duke of York sold the territory to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret;¹ and the new proprietors began the work of erecting a State. They published a form of agreement, which they called "Concessions,"² in which liberal offers were made to immigrants who might settle within the territory. Among other provisions, the people were to be exempt from the payment of quit-rents and other burdens, for the space of five years. Allured by the liberality of the "Concessions," as well as by the salubrity of the climate and the fertility of the soil, many families came from Long Island [1664], and settled at Elizabethtown;³ and in August the following year, Philip Carteret (brother of one of the proprietors), was appointed governor, and arrived at Elizabethtown with a number of settlers.

3. Nothing disturbed the repose of the colony during the five years' exemption from rents; but when, in 1670, the specified halfpenny, for the use of each acre of land, was required, murmurs of discontent were loud and universal. Those who had purchased land from the Indians, denied the right of the proprietors to demand rent from them; and some of the towns had even denied the authority of the Assembly, at its first sitting in 1668. The whole people combined in resisting the payment of quit-rents; and after disputing with the proprietors almost two years, they revolted, called a new Assembly, appointed a dissolute, illegitimate son of Sir George Carteret, governor [May, 1672], and soon [July] compelled Philip Carteret to leave the province. Preparations were in progress to coerce the people into submission, when New Jersey, and all other portions of the territory claimed by the Duke of York, fell [August, 1673] into the hands of the Dutch.⁴

4. On the restoration of the territory to the English⁵ [November, 1674], the Duke of York procured a new charter;⁶ and then, regardless of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, he appointed Edmund Andros, "the tyrant of New England,"⁷ governor of the whole domain [July 11, 1674]. Carteret demurred, and the duke partially restored his rights. Berkeley sold his interest in the province [March 28, 1674] to Edward Byllinge, an English Quaker. Pecuniary embarrassment caused Byllinge to assign his interest to William Penn

1. Verse 7, page 74. The province was called New Jersey in honor of Carteret, who was governor of the island of Jersey, in the British Channel, during the civil war. He was a staunch royalist, and was the last commander to lower the royal flag, when the Parliament had triumphed.

2. This was a sort of *constitution*, which provided for a government to be composed of a governor and council appointed by the proprietors, and an assembly chosen by the freeholders of the province. The legislative power resided in the assembly; the executive in the governor. The council and the assembly were each restricted to twelve members.

3. So called, in honor of Elizabeth, wife of Sir George Carteret.

4. Verse 14, page 116.

5. Verse 14, page 116.

6. Verse 14, page 116.

7. Verse 37, page 103.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the difference in the history of the *settlement* and the *colony* of New Jersey? 2. When was the colony founded? What advantages were offered to settlers? What settlers came? 3. How long was the province quiet? What events produced commotion? What ended them temporarily? 4. How did the Duke of York treat the proprietors of New Jersey? How came a portion of the province to change owners? How was it divided?

First Assembly in New Jersey.

Settlement of East Jersey.

Union of the Jerseys.

[1675] and two others.¹ These purchasers, unwilling to maintain a political union with other parties, successfully negotiated with Carteret for a division [July 11, 1676] of the province. Carteret received the eastern portion as his share, and the Quakers the western part. From that time the divisions were known as EAST and WEST JERSEY.

5. The proprietors of WEST JERSEY gave the people a remarkably liberal constitution of government [March 13, 1677]; and in 1677, more than four hundred Quakers came from England and settled below the Raritan. Andros required them to acknowledge the authority of the Duke of York. They refused; and the matter was referred to the eminent Sir William Jones for adjudication, who decided against the claims of the duke. The latter submitted to the decision, released both provinces from allegiance to him, and the JERSEYS became independent of foreign control. The first popular Assembly in West Jersey met at Salem, in November, 1681, and adopted a code of laws for the government of the people.²

6. East Jersey was purchased by William Penn and eleven of his brethren [February 11, 1682], who obtained a new charter, and appointed [July 27, 1683] Robert Barclay,³ a very eminent Quaker preacher from Aberdeen, governor for life. A large number of his sect came from Scotland and England; and others from New England and Long Island settled in East Jersey to enjoy prosperity and repose. But repose, as well as the administration of Barclay, was of short duration; for when James succeeded Charles,⁴ he appeared to consider his contracts made while *duke*, not binding upon his honor as *king*. He sought to annul the American charters, and succeeded, as we have seen, in subverting the governments of several,⁵ through the instrumentality of Andros. The JERSEYS were sufferers in this respect, and were obliged to bow to the tyrant.

7. When Andros was driven from the country in 1689,⁶ the Jerseys were left without regular governments, and for more than twelve years anarchy prevailed in those provinces. The proprietors gladly relinquished the government by surrendering it to the crown,⁷ in April, 1702. In July the two provinces were united as a royal domain, and placed under the government of Sir Edward Hyde, the licentious ruler of New York.⁸

8. New Jersey remained a dependency of New York, with a distinct legislative Assembly of its own, until 1738, when, through the efforts of Lewis

1. These purchasers immediately sold one half of their interest to the Earl of Perth, from whom the present town of Perth Amboy derives a part of its name. Amboy, or *Ambo*, is an Indian name.

2. A remarkable law was enacted at that session. It provided that in all criminal cases, except treason, murder, and theft, the aggrieved party should have power to pardon the offender.

3. He was the author of "An Apology for Quakers," a work highly esteemed by his sect. It was written in Latin, and translated into several continental languages. Barclay and Penn were intimate personal friends, and traveled much together. He died in Ury, in 1690, aged 42 years.

4. Verse 33, page 103; verses 6 and 7, page 125; verse 3, page 127.

5. Verse 22, page 119.

6. Verse 28, page 89.

7. Verse 33, page 103.

8. Their organization has never ceased; and unsold, barren tracts of land in West Jersey are still held by that ancient tenure.

QUESTIONS.—5. What caused the rapid progress of West Jersey? How came a popular assembly to be established in West Jersey? 6. What changes took place in East Jersey? What did James, as *king*, attempt to do? and what did he accomplish? 7. What occurred after the expulsion of Andros? 8. How long was New Jersey a dependency of New York? When was it made an independent royal province?

Morris,¹ the connection was forever severed. Morris was appointed the first royal governor of New Jersey, and managed public affairs with ability and general satisfaction. From that period until the independence of the colonies was declared in 1776, the history of New Jersey presents but few events of interest to the general reader.

SECTION VIII.

PENNSYLVANIA. [1682.]

1. Pennsylvania began its colonial career when, in the Autumn of 1682, William Penn arrived,² and by a surrender by the agents of the Duke of York, the *Territories* which now constitute the State of Delaware, were united with his province.³ Already he had proclaimed his intention of being governed by the law of kindness⁴ in his treatment of the Indians; and when he came, he proceeded to lay the foundation of his new State upon Truth and Justice. He met the Delaware chiefs in council, under a wide-spreading elm⁵ [Nov. 4, 1682], and there made with them a solemn covenant of peace and friendship, and paid them the stipulated price for their lands. "We meet," he said, "on the broad pathway, of good faith and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love." The Indians were delighted, and their hearts melted with good feeling. Such treatment was an anomaly in the history of the intercourse of their race with the white people. Even then the fires of a disastrous war were smouldering on the New England frontiers.⁶ It was wonderful how the savage heart, so lately the dwelling of deepest hatred toward the white man, became the shrine of the holiest attribute of our nature. "We will live in love with William Penn and his children," they said, "as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." They were true to their promise—not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian.

2. Soon after Penn's arrival,⁷ he proceeded to lay out a capital city [Nov. 1682], upon lands purchased from the Swedes, lying between the Delaware and the Schuylkill rivers. The boundaries of streets were marked upon the trunks of the chestnut, walnut, pine, and other forest trees which covered the land,⁸ and the city was named Philadelphia, which signifies *brotherly love*.

1. Son of an officer in Cromwell's army, who purchased an estate near New York, known as Morrisiana. He died in 1746. A part of that estate yet [1857] remains in possession of the Morris family.

2. Verse 12, page 76.

3. By his direction, his agent, William Markham, had opened a friendly correspondence with the Indians, and Penn himself had addressed a letter to them, assuring them of his love and brotherly feelings toward them.

4. The Penn Society of Philadelphia erected a monument upon the spot where the venerable elm stood. The tree was blown down in 1810, and was found to be 283 years old. The monument is near the intersection of Hanover and Beach-streets, Kensington, Philadelphia.

5. King Philip's War, page 99.

6. This fact was the origin of the names of Chestnut, Walnut, Pine, Spruce, and other streets in Philadelphia. For many years after the city was laid out, these street marks remained, and afforded shade to the inhabitants.

7. Verse 12, page 76.

8. QUESTIONS.—1. How was the State of Pennsylvania founded? Can you relate the particulars of Penn's treaty with the Indians? What effect did his kindness have upon them? 2. Relate the circumstances concerning the founding and early growth of Philadelphia. What were the prospects of the new State?

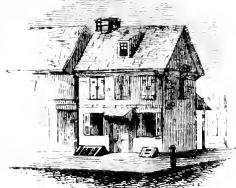
Liberal government of Pennsylvania.

Discontents.

Penn's troubles and triumphs.

Within twelve months almost a hundred houses were erected,¹ and the Indians came daily with wild fowl and venison, as presents for their "good Father Penn." Never was a State blessed with a more propitious beginning, and internal peace and prosperity marked its course while the Quakers controlled its councils.

3. Penn convened a second Assembly at Philadelphia, in March, 1683, and then gave the people a "Charter of Liberties," so ample and just, that the government was really a representative democracy. Free religious toleration was ordained, and laws for the promotion of public and private morality were framed.² Unlike other proprietors, Penn surrendered to the people his rights in the appointment of officers, and until his death, his honest and highest ambition appeared to be to promote the happiness of the colonists.



PENN'S HOUSE.

4. Penn returned to England in August, 1684, leaving five members of the Council, and Thomas Lloyd as president, to administer the government during his absence. Soon afterward, the English Revolution occurred [1688] and King James was driven into exile.³ Penn's personal regard for James continued after his fall; and for that loyalty, which had a deeper spring than mere political considerations, he was accused of disaffection to the new government,⁴ and suffered imprisonments. In the mean while discontent had sprung up in Pennsylvania, and the "three lower counties on the Delaware,"⁵ offended at the action of some of the Council, withdrew [April 11, 1691] from the Union.⁶ Penn yielded to their wishes so far as to appoint a separate deputy-governor for them.

5. Penn's provincial government was taken from him in 1692 [Oct. 31], and Pennsylvania was placed under the authority of Governor Fletcher of New York, who reunited the Delaware counties [May, 1693], to the parent province. All suspicions of Penn's disloyalty having been removed in 1694, his chartered rights were restored to him [Aug. 30], and he appointed his original agent, William Markham, deputy-governor. He returned to America at the close of 1699 and found the people discontented, and clamorous for greater political privileges. He gave them a new frame of government [Nov. 6, 1701], more liberal in its concessions than the former. It was cheerfully accepted by the Pennsylvania people, but those of the Delaware territories,

1. Markham, Penn's agent, erected a house for the proprietor's use, in 1682. Another, and finer house was occupied by Penn in 1700. It yet remains on the corner of Norris's alley and Second street. It was the residence of General Arnold in 1778. Note 5, page 226.

2. It was ordained "that to prevent lawsuits, three arbitrators, to be called Peace Makers, should be appointed by the county courts, to hear and determine small differences between man and man; that children should be taught some useful trade; that factors wronging their employers should make satisfaction and one third over; that all causes for, irreligion and vulgarity should be repressed, and that no man should be molested for his religious opinions."

3. Note 9, page 89.

4. Verse 29, page 89.

5. Verse 11, page 76.

6. Verse 13, page 76.

QUESTIONS.—3. What new form of government was given to the colony? What were Penn's aims? What caused the prosperity of his colony? 4. What occurred soon after Penn's return to England? What was the consequence of his loyalty? What did discontent effect? 5. What occurred in 1792? Why were Penn's rights restored? What concessions did he make to the colonists? What took place in Delaware?

Death of Penn.

Shaftesbury's and Locke's grand scheme of government.

whose delegates had already withdrawn from the Assembly, [Oct. 20], evidently aiming at independence, declined it. Penn acquiesced in their decision, and allowed them a distinct Assembly. This satisfied them, and their first independent legislature was convened at Newcastle in 1703. Although Pennsylvania and Delaware ever afterward continued to have separate legislatures, they were under the same governor until 1776.

6. Penn returned to England in December 1701, and never visited America again. His departure was hastened by the ripening of a ministerial project for abolishing all the proprietary governments in America. His health soon afterward declined, and at his death he left his American possessions to his three sons (Thomas, John, and Richard), then minors, who continued to administer the government, chiefly through deputies, until the War for Independence in 1776. Then the commonwealth of Pennsylvania purchased all the claims of Penn's heirs in the province, for about five hundred and eighty thousand dollars.¹

SECTION IX.

THE CAROLINAS. [1665-1680.]

1. When settlements within the domain of the Carolinas became permanent,² and tides of emigration, from various sources, flowed thitherward, the proprietors began to have gorgeous visions of an empire in America, that should outshine those of the Old World. It then became their first care to frame a constitution of government with functions adequate to the grand design, and to this task, the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the ablest statesmen of his time, and John Locke, the eminent philosopher, were called. They completed their labors in March, 1669, and the instrument was called the *Fundamental Constitutions*.³ It was in the highest degree monarchical in its character and tendency, and contemplated the transplantation, in America, of all the ranks and aristocratic distinctions of European society.⁴ The spirit of the whole thing was adverse to the feelings of the people, and its practical development was an impossibility; so, after a contest between proprietors

1. On account of the expenses incurred in Pennsylvania, Penn was compelled to borrow \$30,000, and mortgage his province as security. This was the commencement of the State debt of Pennsylvania, now (1857) amounting to about \$40,000,000.

2. Verse 4, page 77, and verse 6, page 78.

3. It consists of one hundred and twenty articles, and is supposed to have been the production, chiefly, of the mind of Shaftesbury.

4. There were to be two orders of nobility; the higher to consist of landgraves, or *earls*, the lower of *caciques* or *barons*. The territory was to be divided into counties, each containing 480,000 acres, with one landgrave and two *caciques*. There were also to be lords of manors, who, like the nobles, might hold courts and exercise judicial functions. Persons holding 50 acres, were to be freeholders; the tenants held no political franchise and could never attain to a higher rank. The four estates of Proprietors, Earls, Barons and Commons, were to sit in one legislative chamber. The Proprietors were always to be eight in number, to possess the whole judicial power, and have the supreme control of all tribunals. The Commons were to have four members in the legislature to every three of the nobility. But in aristocratic majority was always secured, and the real representatives of the *people* had no power. Every religion was professedly tolerated, but the church of England only was declared to be orthodox. Such is an outline of the absurd scheme proposed for governing the free colonists of the Carolinas.

QUESTIONS.—6. Why did Penn hasten from America? How did he leave his province at his death, and how was it governed? 1. What did the proprietors of the Carolinas hope for? Who framed a scheme of government? What was its character?

Revolution in North Carolina.

Firmness of the people.

Sothel the plunderer.

and colonists, for twenty years, the magnificent scheme was abandoned, and the people were allowed to govern themselves, in their own more simple way.¹

2. The disorders which prevailed when the first attempts were made to impose Shaftesbury's scheme of government upon the people, soon ripened into rebellion, especially in the *Albemarle* or northern colony.² Excessive taxation and commercial restrictions bore heavily upon the industry of the people, and engendered wide-spread discontent. This was fostered by refugees from Virginia, after "Bacon's rebellion" [1676],³ who sought shelter among the people below the Roanoke. They scattered, broadcast, over a generous soil, vigorous ideas of popular freedom, and a year after Bacon's death⁴ the people of the *Albemarle County Colony*⁵ revolted. The immediate cause of this movement was the attempt of the acting governor to enforce the revenue laws against a New England vessel. Led on by John Culpepper, a refugee from the *Carteret County Colony* of South Carolina,⁶ the people seized the chief magistrate [Dec. 10, 1677] and the public funds, imprisoned him and six of his council, called a new Assembly, appointed a new magistrate and judges, and for two years conducted the affairs of government independent of foreign control.

3. Culpepper went to England to plead the cause of the people, and was arrested and tried on a charge of treason. Shaftesbury procured his acquittal, and he returned to the Carolinas.⁷ Quiet was restored to the colony, and until the arrival of the unprincipled Seth Sothel (one of the proprietors), as governor, the people enjoyed repose. Thus early the inhabitants of that feeble colony practically asserted the grand political maxim, that *taxation without representation, is tyranny*,⁸ for the defense of which our Revolutionary fathers fought, a century afterward.

4. Sothel arrived in North Carolina in 1683. He plundered the people, cheated the proprietors, and on all occasions prostituted his office to purposes of private gain. After enduring his oppression almost six years, the people seized him [1689], and were about sending him to England to answer their accusations before the proprietors, when he asked to be tried by the colonial Assembly. The favor was granted, and he was sentenced to banishment for one year, and a perpetual disqualification for the office of governor. He withdrew to the southern colony, where we shall meet him again.⁹ His successor, Philip Ludwell, an energetic, incorruptible man, soon redressed the wrongs of the people, and restored order and good feelings. Governors Har-

1. A governor with a council of twelve—six chosen by the proprietors, and six by the Assembly—and a House of Delegates chosen by the freeholders.

3. Verse 20, page 87.

4. Verse 25, page 88.

5. Verse 2, page 77.

2. Verse 2, page 77.

6. Verse 6, page 78.

7. Culpepper afterward became surveyor-general of the province, and in 1680, he was employed in laying out the new city of Charleston [verse 6, page 134]. His previous expulsion from the southern colony was on account of his connection with a rebellious movement in 1672.

8. Verse 6, page 173.

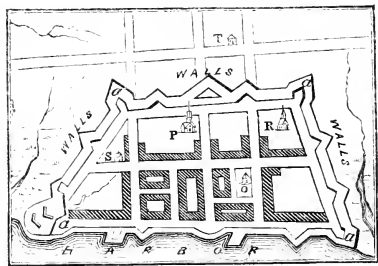
9. Verse 9, page 135.

QUESTIONS.—2. What causes led to disturbances in the northern colony? Who increased the discontents? What did the colonists do? 3. What did Culpepper do? What principle did the people proclaim? 4. What misfortune occurred to the colonists? What did they do with their governor? What restored quiet?

vey and Walker also maintained quiet and good will among the people. And the good Quaker, John Archdale, who came to govern both Carolinas in 1695, placed the colony in a position for attaining future prosperity, hitherto unknown.

5. While these events were transpiring in the northern colony, the people of the *Carteret*¹ or southern colony, were steadily advancing in wealth and numbers. Their first popular legislature of which we have records, was convened in 1674,² but it exhibited an unfavorable specimen of republican government. Jarring interests and conflicting creeds produced violent debates and irreconcilable discord. For a long time the colony was distracted by quarrels, and anarchy prevailed. At length the Stono Indians gathered in bands and plundered the plantations of grain and cattle, and even menaced the settlers with destruction. The appearance of this common enemy healed their dissensions, and the people went out as brothers to chastise the plunderers. They completely subdued the Indians in 1680. Many of them were made prisoners and sold for slaves in the West Indies, and the Stonoes never afterward had a tribal existence.

6. While thus annoyed by the Indians, many English families crossed the Ashley and seated themselves upon the more eligible locality of Oyster Point, where they founded the present city of Charleston,³ in 1680. There a flourishing village soon appeared; and after the subjugation of the Indians,⁴ the old settlement was abandoned. The Dutch settlers⁵ spread over the country along the Edisto and Santee, and planted the seeds of future flourishing communities, while immigrants from different parts of Europe and from New England swelled the population of Charleston and vicinity.



CHARLESTON IN 1680.

7. Another popular legislature convened at Charleston in 1682. It exhibited more harmony than the first, and several useful laws were framed. Immigration was now pouring in a tide of population more rapid than any of

1. Verse 6, page 78.

2. The settlers brought with them an unfinished copy of the "*Fundamental Constitutions*," but they at once perceived the impossibility of conformity to that scheme of government. They held a "parliamentary convention" in 1672, and twenty delegates were elected by the people to act with the governor and council, as a legislature. Thus early, representative government was established, but its operations seem not to have been very successful; and a legislature proper, of which we have any record, was not organized until 1674, when an upper and a lower House were established, and laws for the province were enacted.

3. Note 7, page 133. The above engraving illustrates the manner of fortifying towns, as a defense against foes. It exhibits the walls of Charleston in 1680, and the location of churches in 1704. The points marked *a a a*, etc., are bastions for cannons. *P*, English church; *Q*, French church; *R*, Independent church; *S*, Anabaptist church; and *T*, Quaker meeting-house.

4. Verse 17, page 137.

5. They had founded the village of Jamestown, several miles up the Ashley river.

QUESTIONS.—5. What was doing in the southern colony? What troubles disturbed the people? What did they achieve? 6. Where was a new settlement commenced? What became of the old one? What immigrants came?

Huguenots.

Troubles in South Carolina.

Sothel in that province.

the colonies below New England had yet experienced. Ireland, Scotland,¹ Holland, and France, contributed largely to the flowing stream. In 1686-7, quite a large number of Huguenots, who had escaped from the fiery persecutions which were revived in France by the revocation of the Edict of Nantes,² landed at Charleston. English hatred of the French³ caused the settlers to look with jealousy upon these refugees; and for more than ten years [1686 to 1697] they were denied the rights of citizenship.

8. The people of South Carolina continued restive under the proprietary rule; and, like their brethren of the northern colony, they refused to accept Shaftesbury's complicated scheme of government.⁴ James Colleton, brother of one of the proprietors, was appointed governor in 1686, and was vested with full powers to bring the colonists into submission. His administration of about four years was a very turbulent one. He was in continual collision with the people, and at length drove them to open rebellion. They seized the public records, imprisoned the secretary of the province, and called a new Assembly. Pleading the danger of an Indian or a Spanish invasion,⁵ the governor called out the militia, and proclaimed the province to be under martial law.⁶ This measure only increased the exasperation of the people, and he was impeached, and banished from the province [1690], by the Assembly.

9. It was in the midst of this turbulence and misrule that Sothel arrived from North Carolina, pursuant to his sentence of banishment,⁷ and the people unwisely consented to his assumption of the office of governor.⁸ They soon repented their want of judgment. For two years he plundered and oppressed them, and then the Assembly impeached and banished him [1692]. Then came Philip Ludwell to re-establish the authority of the proprietors, but the people, thoroughly aroused, resolved not to tolerate even so good a man as he, if his mission was to enforce obedience to the absurd *Fundamental Constitutions*.⁹ After a brief and turbulent administration, he gladly withdrew to Virginia, and soon afterward the proprietors abandoned Shaftesbury's scheme [1693], and the good Quaker, John Archdale, was sent [1695] to administer a more simple and republican form of government, for both the Carolinas.

10. Archdale's administration was short, but highly beneficial.¹⁰ He healed

1. In 1684, Lord Cardon, and ten Scotch families, who had suffered persecution, came to South Carolina, and settled at Port Royal. The Spaniards at St. Augustine claimed jurisdiction over Port Royal, and during the absence of Cardon [1683], they attacked and dispersed the settlers, and desolated their plantations.

2. In the city of Nantes, Henry the Fourth of France issued an edict in 1598, in favor of the Huguenots, or Protestants, allowing them free toleration. The profligate Louis the Fourteenth, stung with remorse in his old age, sought to gain the favor of heaven by bringing his whole people into the bosom of the Roman Catholic Church. He revoked the famous edict in 1683, and instantly the fires of persecution were kindled throughout the empire. Many thousands of the Protestants left France and found refuge in other countries.

3. Verse 3, page 148.

4. Verse 1, page 12.

5. The Spaniards at St. Augustine had menaced the English settlements in South Carolina, and, as we have seen (note 1), had actually broken up a little Scotch colony at Port Royal.

6. Note 13, page 138.

7. Verse 4, page 133.

8. On his arrival, Sothel took sides with the people against Colleton, and thus, in the moment of their anger, he unfortunately gained their good-will and confidence.

9. Verse 1, page 132.

10. The culture of rice was introduced into South Carolina during Archdale's administration. Some seed was given to the governor by the captain of a vessel from Madagascar. It was distributed among several planters, and thus its cultivation began.

QUESTIONS.—7. What was done at Charleston in 1782? What immigrants were filling South Carolina? How did the English regard some of them? 8. How did they regard the Constitution made by Shaftesbury? What troubles did efforts to enforce it, effect? 9. What unwise act did the people perform? What was the result? and how were they relieved?

dissensions, established equitable laws, and so nearly effected an entire reconciliation of the English to the French settlers, that in the year succeeding his departure from the province, the Assembly admitted the latter [1697] to all the privileges of citizens and freemen. From the close of Archdale's administration, the progress of the two Carolina colonies should be considered as separate and distinct, although they were not politically separated until 1729.¹

NORTH CAROLINA.

11. The permanent prosperity of North Carolina may be dated from the administration of Archdale,² when the colonists began to turn their attention to the interior of the country, where richer soil invited the agriculturist, and the fur of the beaver and otter allured the adventurous hunter. The Indians along the sea-coast were melting away like frost in the sunbeams. The powerful *Hatteras* tribe,³ which numbered three thousand in Raleigh's time, were reduced to fifteen bowmen; another tribe had entirely disappeared; and the remnants of some others had sold their lands or lost them by fraud, and were driven back to the deep wilderness. Indulgence in strong drinks, and other vices of civilization, had decimated them, and their beautiful land, all the way to the Yadkin and Catawba, was speedily opened to the sway of the white man.

12. In 1705, religion began to exert an influence in North Carolina, and the first Anglican⁴ church edifice was then built in Chowan county. The Quakers⁵ multiplied; and in 1707 a company of Huguenots,⁶ who had settled in Virginia, came and sat down upon the beautiful banks of the Trent, a tributary of the Neuse river. Two years later [1709], a hundred German families, driven from their homes on the Rhine, by persecution, penetrated the interior of North Carolina, and under Count Graffenried, founded settlements along the head waters of the Neuse, and upon the Roanoke.

13. A fearful calamity now fell upon the inhabitants of the interior. The broken Indian tribes made a last effort, in 1711, to regain the beautiful country they had lost. The leaders in the conspiracy to crush the white people, were the *Tuscaroras*⁷ of the inland region, and the *Corees*⁸ further south and near the sea-board. They fell, like lightning from the clouds, upon the scattered German settlements along the Roanoke and Pamlico Sound. In one night [October 2, 1711], one hundred and thirty persons perished by the hatchet. Along Albemarle Sound, the savages swept with the knife of murder in one hand, and the torch of desolation in the other, and for three days they scourged the white people, until disabled by fatigue and drunkenness.

14. The people who escaped the massacre called upon their brethren of the

1. Verse 23, page 139.

2. Verse 9, page 135.

3. Note 10, page 15.

4. The Established Church of England was so called to distinguish it from the Romish Church.

5. Verse 18, page 97.

6. Verse 7, page 134, and page 38.

7. Verse 4, page 18, and verse 5, page 19.

8. Verse 11, page 15.

QUESTIONS.—10. What was the character of Archdale's administration? What public good did it effect? 11. When did the prosperity of North Carolina begin? How were the Indians affected by the white people? 12. What good was manifested in North Carolina? What new immigrants came? 13. What great calamity befell the settlers? Can you relate the circumstances?

Subjugation of the Indians.

Expedition against St. Augustine.

Indians chastised.

southern colony for aid; and Colonel Barnwell, with a party of Carolinians and friendly Indians of the southern nations,¹ marched to their relief. He drove the *Tuscaroras* to their fortified town in the present Craven county, and there made a treaty of peace with them. His troops violated the treaty on their way back, by outrages upon the Indians, and soon hostilities were renewed. Late in the year [December, 1712], Colonel Moore² arrived from South Carolina with a few white men and a large body of Indians, and drove the *Tuscaroras* to their fort in the present Greene county, where he made [March, 1713] eight hundred of them prisoners. The remainder of the *Tuscaroras* fled northward in June, and joining their kindred on the southern borders of Lake Ontario, they formed the sixth nation of the celebrated Iroquois confederacy in the province of New York.³ A treaty of peace was made with the *Corees* in 1715, and North Carolina never afterward suffered from Indian hostilities.⁴

SOUTH CAROLINA.

15. Soon after the commencement of Queen Anne's war⁵ [May, 1702], Governor Moore of South Carolina proposed an expedition against the Spaniards at St. Augustine.⁶ The Assembly assented, and appropriated almost ten thousand dollars for the service. Twelve hundred men (one half Indians) were raised, and proceeded, in two divisions, to the attack. The main division, under the governor, went by sea, to blockade the harbor; and the remainder proceeded along the coast, under the command of Colonel Daniels. The latter arrived first, and attacked and plundered the town. The Spaniards retired within their fortress, with provisions for four months; and as the Carolinians had no artillery, their position was impregnable.

16. Daniels was sent to Jamaica, in the West Indies, to procure battery cannon, but before his return, two Spanish ships had appeared, and so frightened Governor Moore that he raised the blockade, and fled. Daniels barely escaped capture, on his return, but he reached Charleston in safety. This ill-advised expedition burdened the colony with a debt of more than twenty-six thousand dollars, for the payment of which, bills of credit were issued. This was the first emission of paper money in the Carolinas.

17. An expedition against the *Apalachian*⁷ Indians (who were in league with the Spaniards), undertaken by Governor Moore toward the close of the following year [December, 1703], was more successful. Their chief villages were between the Alatomaha and Savannah rivers. These were desolated. Almost eight hundred Indians were taken prisoners, and the whole territory of the *Apalachians* was made tributary to the English.

1. They consisted of *Creeks*, *Cataubas*, *Cherokees*, and *Yamassees*. See pages 19 to 23, inclusive.

2. A son of James Moore, who was governor of South Carolina in 1700.

3. Verse 5, page 19.

4. The province issued bills of credit (for the first time) to the amount of about forty thousand dollars, to defray the expenses of the war.

5. Verse 42, page 107.

6. Verse 15, page 39.

7. A tribe of the *Mobilian* family [verse 1, page 22], situated south of the Savannah river.

QUESTIONS.—14. How were the Indians chastised? Can you relate other hostile events? What led to permanent peace? 15. What expedition was proposed in 1702? How was it attempted? 16. Can you relate the progress and the result of the expedition? 17. What other expedition was undertaken? How did it end?

The Anglican church.

Spanish invasion.

Kindling of an Indian war.

18. The province had scarcely become tranquil after this chastisement of the Indians, when a new cause for disquietude appeared. Some of the proprietors had long cherished a scheme for establishing the Anglican Church,¹ as the State religion, in the Carolinas. Governor Johnson, with a majority of Churchmen in the Assembly, accomplished it, and Dissenters² were excluded from all public offices. This was a usurpation of chartered rights, and the aggrieved party laid the matter before the imperial ministry. Their cause was sustained; and by order of Parliament, the colonial Assembly repealed the law of disfranchisement [November, 1706], but the Church maintained its exalted position until the Revolution.

19. The attack upon St. Augustine³ excited the ire of the Spaniards, and an expedition, composed of five French and Spanish vessels,⁴ with a large body of troops, was sent from Havana to assail Charleston, take possession of the province, and annex it to the Spanish domain of Florida.⁵ The squadron crossed Charleston bar [May, 1706], and about eight hundred troops were landed at different points. The people seized their arms, and led by the governor and Colonel Rhett, they drove the invaders back to their vessels, after killing or capturing almost three hundred men. So the storm which appeared so suddenly and threateningly, was dissipated in a day.

20. A more formidable tempest brooded over the colony a few years later, when a general Indian confederacy was secretly formed, to exterminate the white people by a single blow. Within forty days, in the spring of 1715, the Indian tribes from the Cape Fear to the St. Mary's, and back to the mountains, had coalesced in the conspiracy; and before the people of Charleston had any intimation of danger, one hundred white victims had been sacrificed in the remote settlements. The *Creeks*,⁶ *Yamasees*,⁷ and *Apalachians*⁸ on the south, confederated with the *Cherokees*,⁹ *Catawbias*,¹⁰ and *Congarees*¹¹ on the west, in all six thousand strong; while more than a thousand warriors issued from the Neuse region, to avenge their misfortunes in the wars of 1712-13.¹² It was a cloud of fearful portent, that hung in the sky; and the people were filled with terror, for they knew not at what moment the consuming lightning might leap forth.

21. At this fearful crisis, Governor Craven acted with the utmost wisdom and energy. He took measures to prevent men from leaving the colony; to secure all the arms and ammunition that could be found, and to arm faithful negroes to assist the white people. He declared the province to be under martial law,¹³ and then, at the head of twelve hundred men, black and white,

1. Note 1, page 136.

2. Note 1, page 61.

3. Verse 15, page 39.

4. It will be remembered [verse 42, page 107] that in 1702, England declared war against France, and that Spain was a party to the quarrel.

5. Verse 18, page 32.

6. Verse 2, page 22.

7. Verse 4, page 22.

8. Note 7, page 17.

9. Verse 1, page 20.

10. Verse 1, page 19.

11. This was a small tribe which inhabited the country in the vicinity of Columbia, South Carolina.

12. Verse 14, page 136.

13. Martial law may be proclaimed by rulers, in an emergency, and the civil law, for the time being, is

QUESTIONS.—18. What new cause disturbed the repose of the colonists? What arbitrary measures were adopted? How were they opposed? 19. What effect did the attack on St. Augustine produce? Can you relate the circumstances attending the attempted invasion of South Carolina by the Spaniards? 20. What danger threatened South Carolina? What tribes formed a confederacy?

Close of the Indian war.

The Carolinas become royal provinces.

he marched to meet the foe who were advancing, with the knife, hatchet, and torch in fearful activity. The Indians were at first victorious, but after several bloody encounters, the *Yamassees* and their southern neighbors were driven across the Savannah [May, 1715], and halted not until they found refuge under Spanish guns at St. Augustine. The *Cherokees* and their northern neighbors had not yet engaged in the war, and they returned to their hunting grounds, deeply impressed with the strength and greatness of the white people.

22. The proprietary government was now drawing to a close. While the labors of the people were building up a prosperous state, the proprietors refused assistance to them in times of danger, or reimbursement of money expended in the protection of the province from invasion. The whole burden of debt incurred in the war with the *Yamassees*, was left upon the shoulders of the colonists. The proprietors not only refused to pay any portion of it, but enforced their claims for quit-rents, with great severity. Perceiving no hope in the future, but in the royal rule and protection, the inhabitants met in convention; resolved to forswear all allegiance to the proprietors; and appointed [Dec. 21, 1719], Colonel Moore¹ governor of the colony. The matter was laid before the imperial government, when the colonists were sustained, and South Carolina became a royal province.²

23. The people of the northern province³ also resolved on a change of government; and after a continued controversy for ten years, the proprietors sold all their claims to the soil and incomes in both provinces to the king. North and South Carolina were then separated. George Burrington was appointed the first royal governor over the former, and Robert Johnson over the latter. From that period until the commencement of the French and Indian war,⁴ the general history of the CAROLINAS presents but few features of interest, except the efforts made for defending the colony against the Spaniards and the Indians. The people gained very little by a change of owners; and during forty-five years, until the Revolution made the people independent, there was a succession of disputes with the royal governors.

SECTION X.

GEORGIA. [1732.]

1. Oglethorpe's colony on the Savannah⁵ rapidly increased in numbers, and within eight years, twenty-five hundred emigrants were sent over, at an ex-

made subservient to the military. This object is to allow immediate and energetic action for repelling invasions, or for other purposes.

2. The first governor, by royal appointment, was Francis Nicholson, who had been successively governor of New York [verse 17, page 117], Maryland, Virginia, and Nova Scotia.

3. Verse 4, page 77.

4. Chap. IV., Sec. XII., page 147.

5. Verse 5, page 79.

QUESTIONS.—21. What measures did the governor adopt? Can you relate the incidents and results of the war? What tribes were not engaged? 22. How were the people treated by the proprietors? What did the people do? 23. What changes took place in the two provinces? How did the change affect the people?

The Georgia colony.

Wesley and Whitefield.

Movements of the Spaniards.

pense to the Trustees' of four hundred thousand dollars. Yet prosperity did not bless the enterprise. Many of the settlers were unaccustomed to habits of industry, and were mere drones; and as the use of slave labor was prohibited, tillage was neglected. Even the industrious Scotch, German, and Swiss families who came over previous to 1740, could not give that vitality to industrial pursuits which was necessary to a development of the resources of the country.

2. Oglethorpe went to England, and returned in 1736, with about three hundred immigrants. Among them were one hundred and fifty Highlanders, well skilled in military affairs. These constituted the first army of the colony during its early struggles. John Wesley, founder of the Methodist denomination, also came with Oglethorpe, to make Georgia a religious colony, and to spread the gospel among the Indians. He was unsuccessful; for his strict moral doctrines, and his rigid discipline, made him unpopular among the great mass of the colonists, who winced at restraint. The eminent George Whitefield also visited Georgia [1738], when only twenty-three years of age, and succeeded in establishing an orphan asylum near Savannah, which flourished many years, and was a real blessing. The Christian efforts of those men, prosecuted with the most sincere desire for the good of their fellow-mortals, were not appreciated. Their seed fell upon stony ground, and after the death of Whitefield [1770] his "House of Mercy" in Georgia, deprived of his sustaining influence, became a desolation.

3. The rapid increase of the new colony excited the jealousy of the Spaniards at St. Augustine, and the vigilant Oglethorpe prepared to oppose any hostile movements against his settlements. He established a fort at the site of Augusta, as a defense against the Indians, and he erected fortifications at Darien, on Cumberland Island, at Frederica (St. Simon's Island), and on the north bank of the St. John, the southern boundary of the English claims. Spanish commissioners came from St. Augustine to protest against these preparations, and to demand the immediate evacuation of the whole of Georgia, and of all South Carolina below Port Royal.² Oglethorpe, of course, refused compliance, and the Spaniards threatened him with war.

4. In the winter of 1736-7, Oglethorpe went to England, and returned the following Autumn [Oct. 1737], bearing the commission of a brigadier, and leading a regiment of six hundred well-disciplined troops, for the defense of the whole southern frontier of the English possessions,³ but for two years their services were not much needed. In May, 1740, Oglethorpe marched for St. Augustine, with four hundred of his best troops, some volunteers from

1. Verse 3, page 79.

2. Note 1, page 135.

3. His commission gave him the command of the militia of South Carolina also, and he stood as a guard between the English and Spanish possessions in the southern country.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did Oglethorpe's colony progress? What causes retarded its prosperity? 2. Who came with Oglethorpe on his return from England in 1736? What religious and benevolent efforts were made? How did they succeed? 3. What events troubled the colonists? What preparations for war did Oglethorpe make? What demands were made by the Spaniards? 4. How were the Georgians prepared for defense in 1737? Why was an expedition against Florida planned? How was it begun?

South Carolina, and a large body of friendly *Creek* Indians,¹ in all, more than two thousand men.

5. Oglethorpe captured two forts, one within two miles of the city; but when he appeared before the town and fortress, and demanded instant submission, he was answered by a defiant refusal. A small English fleet blockaded the harbor, and for a time cut off supplies from the Spaniards, but swift-winged galleys² passed through and bore to the garrison several weeks' provisions. Oglethorpe had no artillery with which to attack the fortress, and being warned by the increasing heats of summer, and sickness in his camp, not to wait for their supplies to become exhausted, he raised the siege and returned to Savannah.

6. The Spaniards, in turn, prepared to invade Georgia in the summer of 1742. An armament fitted out at Havana and St. Augustine, consisting of thirty-six vessels, with more than three thousand troops, entered the harbor of St. Simon's, and landed a little above the town of the same name on the 16th of July. Oglethorpe had been apprised of the intentions of the Spaniards, and made his head-quarters at his principal fortress at Frederica. He was at Fort Simon, near the landing-place of the invaders, with less than eight hundred men, exclusive of Indians, when the enemy appeared. He immediately spiked the guns of the fort, destroyed his stores, and retreated to Frederica. There he anxiously awaited hoped-for reinforcements and supplies from Carolina, but in vain.

7. Oglethorpe successfully repulsed several detachments of the Spaniards, who attacked him at Frederica,³ and finally he resolved to make a night assault upon the enemy's battery, at St. Simon's. A deserter (a French soldier) defeated his plan; but the sagacity of Oglethorpe caused the miscreant to be instrumental in driving the invaders from the coast. He bribed a Spanish prisoner to carry a letter to the deserter, which contained information respecting a British fleet that was about to attack St. Augustine.⁴ Of course the letter was handed to the Spanish commander, and the Frenchman was arrested as a spy. The intelligence in Oglethorpe's letter alarmed the enemy; and while some officers were holding a council, some Carolina vessels, with supplies for the garrison at Frederica, appeared in the distance. Believing them to be part of the British fleet alluded to in the letter, the Spaniards determined to attack the Georgians immediately, and then hasten to St. Augustine. On their march to assail Frederica they were ambuscaded in a swamp. Great slaughter of the invaders ensued, and the place is still called *Bloody Marsh*.

1. Verse 2, page 22.

2. A low built vessel propelled by both sails and oars. The war vessels of the ancients were all galleys. See Norman vessel, page 27.

3. The remains of Fort Frederica yet (1857) form a very picturesque ruin on the plantation of W. W. Hazzard, Esq., of St. Simon's Island.

4. Oglethorpe addressed the Frenchman as if he was a spy of the English. He directed the deserter to represent the Georgians as in a weak condition, to advise the Spaniards to attack them immediately, and to persuade the Spaniards to remain three days longer, within which time six British men-of-war, and two thousand men from Carolina would probably enter the harbor of St. Augustine.

QUESTIONS.—5. Can you relate the incidents of this expedition? What was the result? 6. What invasion of Georgia took place? How did Oglethorpe oppose the Spaniards? 7. How did Oglethorpe manage to drive the Spaniards away? Can you relate the incidents of the repulse?

The survivors retreated in confusion to their vessels, and sailed immediately to St. Augustine.¹ On their way, they attacked [July 19] the English fort at the southern extremity of Cumberland Island,² but were repulsed with the loss of two galleys. The whole expedition was so disastrous to the Spaniards, that the commander (Don Manuel de Monteano) was dismissed from the service. Oglethorpe's stratagem saved Georgia, and, perhaps, South Carolina, from utter ruin.

8. Oglethorpe went to England in 1743, and never returned to Georgia, where, for ten years, he had nobly labored to establish an attractive asylum for the oppressed.³ He left the province in a tranquil state. The mild military rule under which the people had lived, was now changed to civil government [1743], administered by a president and council, under the direction of the Trustees;⁴ yet the colony continued to languish. Several causes combined to produce this condition. We have already alluded to the inefficiency of most of the earlier settlers, and the prohibition of slave-labor.⁵ They were also deprived of the privileges of commerce and of traffic with the Indians; and were not allowed the ownership, in fee, of the lands which they cultivated.⁶

9. In consequence of these restrictions, there were no incentives to labor, except to supply daily wants. General discontent prevailed. They saw the Carolinas growing rich by the use of slaves, and by commerce with the West Indies. Gradually the restrictive laws were evaded. Slaves were brought from Carolina, and hired, first for a short period, and then for a hundred years, or for life. The price paid for life service was the money value of the slave, and the transaction was, practically, a sale and purchase. The slave-ships came to Savannah directly from Africa; slave labor was generally used [1750], and Georgia became a planting State. At the expiration of the twenty-one years named in the patent,⁷ the trustees gladly resigned the charter into the hands of the king [1752]; and from that time until the Revolution, Georgia remained a royal province.

SECTION XI.

A RETROSPECT. [1492-1756.]

1. We have now considered the principal events which occurred within the domain of our Republic from the time of first discoveries [1492] to the commencement of the last inter-colonial war,⁸ a hundred years ago, a period of

1. They first burned Fort Simon, but in their haste, they left several of their cannons and a quantity of their provisions behind them.

2. *Fort William*. There was another small fort on the northern end of the island called *Fort Andrew*.

3. Verse 3, page 79.

4. Verse 3, page 79.

5. Verse 1, page 139.

6. Verse 5, page 92.

7. Verse 3, page 79.

8. Chap. IV., Sec. XII., page 147.

QUESTIONS.—8. In what condition did Oglethorpe leave the province? What yet retarded the progress of the colony? 9. How was slave-labor introduced into Georgia? How did it affect its prosperity? What change took place in 1752?

about two hundred and sixty years. During that time, fifteen colonies were planted,¹ thirteen of which were commenced within the space of about fifty-six years [1607 to 1673]. By the union of Plymouth and Massachusetts,² and Connecticut and New Haven,³ the number of colonies was reduced to thirteen, and these were they which went into the revolutionary contest in 1775.

2. Several European nations contributed vigorous materials for these colonies; and people of opposite habits, tastes, and religious faith, became commingled, after making impressions of their distinctive characters where their influence was first felt. England furnished the largest proportion of colonists, and her children always maintained sway in the government and industry of the whole country; while Scotland, Ireland, Germany, Holland, France, Sweden, Denmark, and the Baltic region, contributed large quotas of people. Churchmen and Dissenters,⁴ Roman Catholics and Quakers,⁵ came and sat down beside each other. For a while, the dissonance of nations and creeds prevented entire harmony, but the freedom enjoyed; the perils and hardships encountered and endured; the conflicts with pagan savages on the one hand, and of hierarchical⁶ and governmental oppression on the other, which they maintained for generations, shoulder to shoulder, diffused a brotherhood of feeling throughout the whole social body of the colonists, and resulted in harmony, sympathy, and love. And when, as children of one family, they loyally defended the integrity of Great Britain (then become the "mother country" of nearly all) against the aggressions of the French and Indians⁷ [1756 to 1763], and yet were compelled, by the unkindness of that mother, to sever the filial bond,⁸ [1776] all differences were forgotten, and they struck the dismembering blow as with one hand.

3. The character of the people of the several colonies, differed according to their origin and influence of climate and pursuits. The Virginians and their southern neighbors, enjoying a mild climate, productive of tendencies to voluptuousness and ease, were from those classes of English society where a lack of rigid moral discipline allowed free living and its attendant vices. They generally exhibited less moral restraint, more hospitality, and greater frankness and social refinement than the people of New England. The latter were from among the middle classes, and included a great many religious enthusiasts, possessing more zeal than knowledge. They were extremely strict in their notions; very rigid in their manners, and jealous of strangers. Their early legislation, recognizing, as it did, the most minute regulations of social

1. Virginia, Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, New Hampshire, Connecticut, New Haven, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Pennsylvania, North and South Carolina, and Georgia.

2. Verse 38, page 105.

3. Verse 4, page 124.

4. Note 1, page 61.

5. Note 1, page 98.

6. Hierarchy is, in a general sense, a priestly or ecclesiastical government. Such was the original form of government of the ancient Jews, when the priesthood held absolute rule.

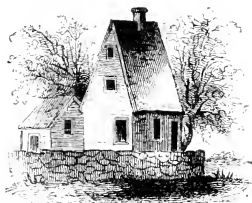
7. Chap. IV., Sec. XII., page 147.

8. Verse 10, page 202.

QUESTIONS.—1. What events have we considered in the preceding pages? What colonies were formed? and what were their names in 1775? 2. What sort of people formed the colonies? Why were they united? How did they manifest unity? 3. What determined the character of the people of the several colonies? Can you give the general characteristics of those of each section of the country?

New Englanders, Dutch, and Marylanders.

life, often presented food for merriment.¹ Yet their intentions were pure; their design was noble; and, in a great degree, its virtuous purposes were accomplished. They aimed to make every member of society a Christian, according to their own pattern; and they erected strong bulwarks against those little vices which compose great private and public evils. Dwelling upon a parsimonious soil, and possessing neither the means nor the inclination for sumptuous living, their dwellings were simple, and their habits frugal.

EARLY N. E. HOUSE.²

4. The manners, customs, and pursuits of the Dutch prevailed in New York, and portions of New Jersey and Pennsylvania, even a century after the English conquest of New Netherland³ [1664], and society had become permeated by English ideas and customs. They were plodding money-getters; abhorred change and innovation, and loved ease. They possessed



DUTCHMAN. [1660.]

few of the elements of progress, but many of the substantial social virtues necessary to the stability of a State and the health of society. From these the Swedes and Finns upon the Delaware⁴ did not differ much; but the habits of the Quakers, who finally predominated in West Jersey⁵ and Pennsylvania,⁶ were different. They always exhibited a refined simplicity and equanimity, without ostentatious displays of piety, that won esteem; and they were governed by a religious sentiment without fanaticism, which formed a powerful safeguard against vice and immorality.

5. The early settlers of Maryland⁷ were also less rigid moralists than the New Englanders, and greater formalists in religion. They were more refined, equally industrious, but lacked the stability of character and perseverance in pursuits, of the people

1. They assumed the right to regulate the expenditures of the people, even for wearing apparel, according to their several incomes. The general court of Massachusetts, on one occasion, required the proper officers to notice the "apparel" of the people, especially their "ribands and great boots." Drinking of healths, wearing funeral badges, and many other things that seemed improper, were forbidden. At Hartford, the general court kept a constant eye upon the morals of the people. Freemen were compelled to vote under penalty of a fine of sixpence; the use of tobacco was prohibited to persons under twenty years of age, without the certificate of a physician, and no others were allowed to use it more than once a day, and then they must be ten miles from any house. The people in Hartford were all obliged to rise in the morning when the watchman rang his bell. These are but a few of the hundreds of similar enactments found on the records of the New England courts. In 1643, the Legislature of Massachusetts passed a law, which imposed the penalty of a flogging upon any one who should kiss a woman in the streets. More than a hundred years afterward, this law was enforced in Boston. The captain of a British man-of-war happened to return from a cruise, on Sunday. His overjoyed wife met him at the wharf, and he kissed her several times. The magistrates ordered him to be flogged. The punishment incurred no ignominy, and he associated freely with the best citizens. When about to depart, the captain invited the magistrates and others on board his vessel, to dine. When dinner was over, he caused all the magistrates to be flogged, on deck, in sight of the town. Then assuring them that he considered accounts settled between him and them, he dismissed them, and set sail.

2. This is a picture of one of the oldest houses in New England, and is a favorable specimen of the best class of frame dwellings, at that time. It is yet standing (1857), we believe, near Medfield, in Massachusetts.

3. Verse 4, page 128.

4. Verse 12, page 115.

5. Verse 10, page 75.

6. Verse 4, page 73.

7. Verse 1, page 64.

QUESTIONS.—4. What do you know about the Dutch, Swedes, and Quakers? 5. What kind of people settled Maryland? How did these several kinds of people agree at the beginning of the war for independence?

of the East. But at the close of the period we have been considering [1756], the peculiarities of the inhabitants of each section were greatly modified by intermigration, and a general conformity to the necessities of their several conditions, as founders of new States in a wilderness. The tooth of religious bigotry and intolerance had lost its keenness and its poison, and when the representatives of the several colonies met in a general Congress,¹ [Sept. 1774] for the public good, they stood as brethren before one altar.

6. Agriculture was necessarily the chief pursuit of the colonists, yet during the time we have considered, manufactures and commerce were not wholly neglected. Necessity compelled the people to make many things which their poverty would not allow them to buy; and manual labor, especially in the New England provinces, was dignified from the beginning. The settlers came where a throne and its corrupting influences were unknown, and where the idleness and privileges of aristocracy had no abiding place. In the magnificent forests of the New World, where a feudal lord² had never stood, they began a life full of youth, vigor, and labor, such as the atmosphere of the elder governments of the earth could not sustain. They were compelled to be self-reliant, and what they could not buy from the workshops of England for their simple apparel, and furniture, and implements of culture, they rudely manufactured,³ and were content.

7. Their commerce, too, had but a feeble infancy, and never, until they were politically separated from Great Britain [1776], could their interchange of commodities be properly dignified with the name of *Commerce*. England early became jealous of the independent career of the colonists in respect to manufactured articles, and navigation acts⁴ and other unwise and unjust restraints upon the expanding industry of the Americans, were brought to bear upon them. As early as 1636, a Massachusetts vessel of thirty tons made a trading voyage to the West Indies; and two years later [1638], another vessel went from Salem to New Providence, and returned with a cargo of salt, cotton, tobacco, and negroes.⁵ This was the dawning of commerce in America. The Eastern people also engaged quite extensively in fishing, and all

1. Verse 35, page 185.

2. Note 15, page 48.

3. From the beginning of colonization there were shoemakers, tailors, and blacksmiths in the several colonies. Chalmers says of New England in 1643: "There be fine iron works which cast no guns; no house in New England has above twenty rooms; not twenty in Boston have ten rooms each; a dancing-school was set up here, but put down; a fencing-school is allowed. There be no musicians by trade. All cordage, sailcloth, and mats, come from England; no cloth made there worth four shillings per yard; no alum, no coppers, no salt, made by their sun."

4. The first navigation act [1651] forbade all importations into England, except in English ships, or those belonging to English colonies. In 1690, this act was confirmed, and unjust additions were made to it. The colonies were forbidden to export their chief productions to any country except to England or its dependencies. Similar acts, all bearing heavily upon colonial commerce, were made law, from time to time. See Note 3, page 86.

5. This was the first introduction of slaves into New England. The first slaves introduced into the English colonies, were those landed and sold in Virginia in 1620. (See Note 6, page 82.) They were first recognized as such, by law, in Massachusetts, in 1641; in Connecticut and Rhode Island, about 1650; in New York in 1656; in Maryland in 1663; and in New Jersey in 1665. There were but few slaves in Pennsylvania, and those were chiefly in Philadelphia. There were some there as early as 1690. The people of Delaware held some at about the same time. The introduction of slaves into the Carolinas, was coeval with their settlement, and into Georgia about the year 1750, when the people generally evaded the prohibitory law. Verse 9, page 142.

QUESTIONS.—6. What was the chief pursuit of the colonists? Why was labor dignified? What gave the colonists success? 7. What was the commerce of the colonies? What hinderances did England make? What commercial efforts did the colonists make? What did Parliament do?

Manufactures and government restrictions.

were looking forward to wealth from ocean traffic, as well as from the land, when the passage [1660] of the second Navigation Act¹ evinced the jealousy of Great Britain. From that period, the attention of Parliament was often directed to the trade and commerce of the colonies; and in 1719, the House of Commons declared "that erecting any manufactories in the colonies, tended to lessen their dependence upon Great Britain."

8. Paper, woolen goods, hemp, and iron were manufactured in Massachusetts and other parts of New England, as early as 1732, and almost every family made coarse cloth for domestic use. Hats were manufactured and carried from one colony to the other in exchange; and at about the same time, brigantines and small sloops were built in Massachusetts and Pennsylvania, and exchanged with West India merchants for rum, sugar, wines, and silks.

9. Unwisely considering the increase of manufactures in the colonies to be detrimental to English interests, greater restrictions were ordained. It was enacted that all manufactories of iron and steel in the colonies, should be considered a "common nuisance," to be abated within thirty days after notice being given, or the owner should suffer a fine of a thousand dollars.² The exportation of hats even from one colony to another was prohibited, and no hatter was allowed to have more than two apprentices at one time. The importation of sugar, rum, and molasses, was burdened with exorbitant duties; and the Carolinians were forbidden to cut down the pine-trees of their vast forests, and convert their wood into staves, and their juice into turpentine and tar, for commercial purposes.³ These unjust and oppressive enactments formed a part of that "bill of particulars" which the American colonies presented in their account with Great Britain, when they gave to the world their reasons for declaring themselves "free and independent States."

10. Education received early and special attention in the colonies, particularly in New England. Schools for the education of both white and Indian children were formed in Virginia as early as 1621; and in 1692, William and Mary College was established at Williamsburg.⁴ The Reformed Dutch Church established a school in New Amsterdam, in 1633. Harvard College, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, was founded in 1637. Yale College, in Connecticut, was established at Saybrook in 1701,⁵ and removed to its present location, in

1. Note 3, page 86.

2. A law was enacted in 1753, which prohibited the "erection or contrivance of any mill or other engine for slitting or rolling iron, or any plating forge to work with a tilt-hammer, or any furnace for making steel in the colonies." Such was the condition of manufactures in the United States, one hundred years ago. Notwithstanding we are eminently an agricultural people, the census of 1850 shows that we have, in round numbers, \$530,000,000 invested in manufactures. The value of raw material is estimated at \$550,000,000. The amount paid for labor during that year, was \$240,000,000, distributed among 1,050,000 operatives. The value of manufactured articles is estimated at more than a thousand millions of dollars!

3. For a hundred years the British government attempted to confine the commerce of the colonies to the interchange of their agricultural products for English manufactures only. The trade of the growing colonies was certainly worth securing. From 1738 to 1748, the average value of exports from Great Britain to the American colonies, was almost three and a quarter millions of dollars annually.

4. The schools previously established did not flourish, and the funds appropriated for their support were given to the college.

5. In 1700, ten ministers of the colony met at Saybrook, and each contributed books for the establishment of a college. It was incorporated in 1701. See note 9, page 127.

QUESTIONS.—8. In what industrial pursuits did New England people engage? 9. What injurious restrictions did the British government impose? What did they lead to? 10. How was education fostered in the colonies? What colleges were formed?

Education.

Common schools.

Books and newspapers.

New Haven, in 1717. It was named in honor of Elihu Yale, president of the East India Company, and one of its most liberal benefactors. The college of New Jersey, at Princeton, called *Nassau Hall*, was incorporated in 1738.

11. But the pride and glory of New England has ever been its common schools. These received the earliest and most earnest attention. In 1636, the Connecticut Legislature enacted a law which required every town that contained fifty families, to maintain a good school, and every town containing one hundred householders, to have a grammar-school.¹ Similar provisions for general education soon prevailed throughout New England; and the people became remarkable for their intelligence. The rigid laws which discouraged all frivolous amusements, induced active minds, during leisure hours, to engage in reading. The subjects contained in books then in general circulation, were chiefly History and Theology, and of these a great many were sold. A traveler mentions the fact that, as early as 1686, several booksellers in Boston had "made fortunes by their business."² But newspapers, the great vehicle of general intelligence to the popular mind of our day, were very few and of little worth, before the era of the Revolution.³

12. Such were the people, and such their political and social condition, at the commencement of the last inter-colonial war, which we are now to consider, during which they discovered their strength, the importance of a continental union, and their real independence of Great Britain.⁴

SECTION XII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR. [1756-1763.]

1. The first three inter-colonial wars, or the conflicts in America between the English and French colonies, already noticed,⁵ originated in hostilities first declared by the two governments, and commenced in Europe. The fourth

1. These townships were, in general, organized religious communities, and had many interests in common.
2. Previous to 1753, there had been seventy booksellers in Massachusetts, two in New Hampshire, two in Connecticut, one in Rhode Island, two in New York, and seventeen in Pennsylvania.

3. The first newspaper ever printed in America was the *Boston News Letter*, printed in 1704. The next was established in Philadelphia in 1719. The first in New York was in 1725; in Maryland, in 1728; in South Carolina, in 1731; in Rhode Island, in 1732; in Virginia, in 1736; in New Hampshire, in 1753; in Connecticut, in 1755; in Delaware, in 1761; in North Carolina, in 1763; in Georgia, in 1763; and in New Jersey, in 1777. In 1850, there were published in the United States, 2,800 newspapers and magazines, having a circulation of 5,000,000 of copies. The number of copies printed in that year was about 423,000,000.

4. We have no exact enumeration of the inhabitants of the colonies; but Mr. Bancroft, after a careful examination of many official returns and private computations, estimates the number of white people in the colonies, at the commencement of the French and Indian war, to have been about 1,165,000, distributed as follows: In New England (N. H., Mass., R. I., and Conn.), 425,000; in the middle colonies (N. Y., N. J., Penn., Del., and Md.), 457,000; and in the southern colonies (Va., N. and S. Carolina, and Ga.), 2-3,000. The estimated number of slaves, 60,000, of whom about 11,000 were in New England; middle colonies, 71,000; and the southern colonies, 178,000. Of the 1,165,000 white people, Dr. Franklin estimated that only about 80,000 were of foreign birth, showing the fact that emigration to America had almost ceased. At the beginning of the Revolution, in 1775, the estimated population of the thirteen colonies was 2,803,000. The documents of Congress in 1775, give the round number of 3,000,000.

5. *King William's war* (page 104); *Queen Anne's war* (page 107); and *King George's war* (page 109).

QUESTIONS.—11. What provisions were made for common education? What effects ensued? How did rigid laws encourage reading? What evidence is given of a prevailing taste for reading? 12. Can you give a general outline of the character, pursuits, and condition of the colonists, as delineated in this section? 1. How did the several inter-colonial wars originate?

and last, which resulted in establishing the supremacy of the English in America, originated here in disputes concerning territorial claims.

2. For a hundred years the colonies of the two nations had been gradually expanding and increasing in importance. The English, more than a million in number, occupied the seaboard from the Penobscot to the St. Mary's, a thousand miles in extent. The French, not more than a hundred thousand strong, made settlements along the St. Lawrence, the shores of the great lakes, on the Mississippi and its tributaries, and upon the borders of the Gulf of Mexico. The English planted agricultural colonies; the French were chiefly engaged in traffic with the Indians. This trade, and the operations of the Jesuit¹ missionaries, who were usually the self-denying pioneers of commerce in its penetration of the wilderness, gave the French great influence over the tribes of a vast extent of country lying in the rear of the English settlements.²

3. The ancient quarrel between the two nations, originating far back in feudal ages, and kept alive by subsequent collisions, burned vigorously in the bosoms of the respective colonists in America, where it was continually fed by frequent hostilities on frontier ground. They had ever regarded each other with extreme jealousy, for the prize before them was supreme rule in the New World. The trading-posts and missionary stations of the French, in the far north-west, and in the bosom of a dark wilderness, several hundred miles distant from the most remote settlement on the English frontier, attracted very little attention, until they formed a part of more extensive operations. But when, after the capture of Louisburg,³ in 1745, the French adopted vigorous measures for opposing the extension of British power in America: when they built strong vessels at the foot of Lake Ontario⁴—made treaties of friendship with the *Delaware*⁵ and *Shawnee*⁶ tribes—strengthened Fort Niagara⁷—and erected a cordon of fortifications, more than sixty in number, between Montreal and New Orleans—the English were aroused to immediate and effective action in defense of the territorial claims given to them in their ancient charters. By virtue of these, they claimed dominion westward to the Pacific Ocean, south of the latitude of the north shore of Lake Erie; while the French claimed a title to all the territory watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries, under the more plausible plea, that they had made the first explorations and settlements in that region.⁸ The claims of the real owner, the Indian, were lost sight of in the discussion.⁹

4. The territorial question was speedily brought to an issue. In 1749, the

1. Note 1, page 104.

3. Verse 48, page 109.

5. Verse 13, page 15.

6. Verse 9, page 14.

2. Chiefly of the *Algonquin* nation. Verse 2, page 13.

4. At Frontenac, now Kingston, Upper Canada.

7. Verse 39, page 164.

8. Verse 2, above.

9. When the agent of the Ohio Company went into the Indian country, on the borders of the Ohio river, a messenger was sent by two Indian sachems to make the significant inquiry, "Where is the Indians' land? The English claim it all on one side of the river, the French on the other; where does the Indians' land lay?"

QUESTIONS.—2. What regions in America did the French and English occupy? What were their pursuits? What gave influence to the French? 3. What made the French and English in America enemies to each other? What circumstances awakened the fears and jealousies of the English? What did they respectively claim?

Troubles in the Ohio region.

Washington's mission.

His journey.

king granted six hundred thousand acres of land, on the south-east bank of the Ohio river, to a company composed of London merchants and Virginia land speculators, with the exclusive privilege of traffic with the Indians. It was called *The Ohio Company*. Surveyors were soon sent to explore, make boundaries, and prepare for settlements; and English traders went even as far as the country of the *Miamies*¹ to traffic with the natives. The French regarded them as intruders, and seized [1753] and imprisoned some of them. Apprehending the loss of traffic and influence among the Indians, and the ultimate destruction of their line of communication between Canada and Louisiana, the French commenced the erection of forts between the Alleghany river and Lake Erie, near the present western line of Pennsylvania.² *The Ohio Company* complained of these hostile movements; and as their grant lay within the chartered limits of Virginia, the authorities of that colony considered it their duty to interfere. Robert Dinwiddie, the lieutenant-governor, sent a letter of remonstrance to M. De St. Pierre, the French commander.³ George Washington was chosen to be the bearer of the dispatch. He was a young man less than twenty-two years of age, possessed much experience of forest life, and was adjutant-general of one of the four militia districts of Virginia. From early youth he had been engaged in land-surveying, and had become accustomed to the dangers and hardships of the wilderness; and was acquainted with the character of the Indians, and of the country he was called upon to traverse.

5. The mission of young Washington involved much personal peril and hardship. The savage tribes through which he had to pass, were hostile to the English, and the French he was sent to meet were national enemies, wily and suspicious. With only two or three attendants,⁴ Washington started from Williamsburg late in autumn [October 31, 1753], and after journeying full four hundred miles (more than half the distance through a dark wilderness), encountering almost incredible hardships, amid snow, and icy floods, and hostile Indians, he reached the French outpost [December 4] at Venango.⁵ He was politely received, and his visit was made the occasion of great conviviality by the officers of the garrison. Wine made the Frenchmen incautious, and they revealed to the sober Washington their hostile designs against the English, which the latter had suspected.

6. After tarrying a day at Venango, Washington pushed forward to the head-quarters of St. Pierre, at Le Bœuf.⁶ That officer entertained him po-

1. Verse 7, page 14.

2. Twelve hundred men erected a fort on the south shore of Lake Erie, at Presque Isle, now Erie: soon afterward, another was built at Le Bœuf, on the Venango (French creek), now the village of Waterford; and a third was erected at Venango, at the junction of French creek and the Alleghany river, now the village of Franklin.

3. Already the governors of Virginia and Pennsylvania had received orders from the imperial government to repel the French by force, whenever they were "found within the undoubted limits of their provinces."

4. He was afterward joined by two others at Wills creek (now Cumberland), in Maryland.

5. Note 2, above.

6. Note 2, above.

QUESTIONS.—4. What brought the question of claims to an issue? What did Dinwiddie do? Whom did he send to the French? 5. What qualities did young Washington's mission require? Can you relate the circumstances of his journey? What folly did the Frenchmen commit?

Result of Washington's mission. Warlike preparations against the French. Bloodshed.

lately during four days, and then gave him a written answer to Dinwiddie's remonstrance, enveloped and sealed. Washington retraced his perilous pathway through the wilderness, and after an absence of eleven weeks, he again stood in the presence of Governor Dinwiddie [January 16, 1754], his mission fulfilled to the satisfaction of all. His judgment, sagacity, courage, and executive force—qualities which eminently fitted him for the more important duties as chief of the Revolutionary armies, more than twenty years afterward [1775]—were nobly developed in the performance of his mission. They were publicly acknowledged, and were never forgotten.

7. During Washington's absence, the Legislature of Virginia had made an appropriation of fifty thousand dollars for the support of troops to be led against the French. The revelations made to Washington confirmed the suspicions of Dinwiddie. St. Pierre said he was acting in obedience to the orders of his superior, the Marquis Du Quesne,¹ at Montreal, and refused to withdraw his troops from the disputed territory. Dinwiddie immediately prepared an expedition against the French, and solicited the co-operation of the other colonies. It was the first call for a general colonial union against a common enemy. All hesitated, except North Carolina. Its legislature promptly voted four hundred men, and they were soon on the march for Winchester, Virginia. Some volunteers from South Carolina and New York, also hastened toward the seat of future war. The Virginians nobly responded to the call, and a regiment was soon organized, with Colonel Joshua Fry as its commander, and Major Washington as his lieutenant. The troops rendezvoused at Alexandria, and from that city, Washington, at the head of the advanced corps, marched [April 2, 1754] toward the Ohio.

8. In the mean while, the *Ohio Company* had sent thirty men to construct a fort at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, now the site of Pittsburg. A party of French and Indians attacked and expelled them [April 18], completed the fortification, and named it Du Quesne, in honor of the governor-general of Canada.² When intelligence of this event reached Washington on his march, he hastened forward, with one hundred and fifty men, to a point on the Monongahela less than forty miles from Fort Du Quesne. There he was informed that a strong force was marching to intercept him, and he cautiously fled back to the Great Meadows, where he erected a stockade,³ and called it Fort Necessity.⁴ Before completing it, a few of his troops attacked an advanced party of the French, under Jumonville. They were surprised at the dead of night [May 28], and the commander and nine of his men were slain. Of the fifty who formed the French detachment, only

1. Pronounced Du Kane.

2. Verse 7, above.

3. Stockade is a general name of structures for defense, formed by driving strong posts in the ground, so as to make a safe inclosure. It is the same as a palisade. See picture on page 101.

4. Near the national road from Cumberland to Wheeling, in the south-eastern part of Fayette county, Pennsylvania. The Great Meadows are on a fertile bottom about four miles from the foot of Laurel Hill, and fifty from Cumberland.

QUESTIONS.—6. What else did Washington do? What did his performance of these duties reveal? 7. What did the Virginia legislature do? What action on the part of the English did the reply of the French commander produce? What expedition was formed? 8. What took place at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers? What did Washington do? What caused the first bloodshed?

First bloodshed.

Capitulation of Fort Necessity.

Colonial Congress at Albany.

about fifteen escaped. This was the first blood-shedding of that long and eventful conflict known as *The French and Indian war*.¹

9. Two days after this event [May 30], Colonel Fry died, and the whole command devolved on Washington. Troops hastened forward to join the young leader at Fort Necessity, and with about four hundred men he proceeded to Fort du Quesne. M. de Villiers, brother of the slain Jumonville, had marched at about the same time, at the head of more than a thousand Indians, and some Frenchmen, to avenge the death of his kinsman. Advised of his approach, Washington fell back to Fort Necessity, and there, on the 3d of July, he was attacked by almost fifteen hundred foes. After a conflict of about ten hours, de Villiers proposed an honorable capitulation.² Washington signed it on the morning of the 4th, and marching out of the stockade with the honors of war, departed, with his troops, for Virginia.

10. During this military campaign, a civil movement of great importance was in progress. The British ministry, perceiving war to be inevitable, advised the colonies to secure the continued friendship of the SIX NATIONS,³ and to unite in a plan for general defense. All the colonies were invited to appoint delegates to meet in convention at Albany, in the summer of 1754. Only seven responded by sending delegates.⁴ The convention was organized on the 19th of June.⁵ Having renewed a treaty with the Indians, the subject of colonial union was brought forward. A plan of confederation, similar to our Federal Constitution, drawn up by Dr. Franklin, was submitted.⁶ It was adopted on the 4th of July [1754], and was ordered to be laid before the several colonial Assemblies, and the imperial Board of Trade,⁷ for ratification.⁸ Its fate was singular. The Assemblies considering it too *aristocratic*—giving the royal governor too much power—refused their assent; and the Board of Trade rejected it because it was too *democratic*.⁹ Although a legal union was not consummated, the grand idea then began to bud. It blossomed in the midst of the heat of the Stamp Act excitement,¹⁰ eleven years later [1765], and its fruit appeared in the great Congress of 1774.

1. It is known in European history as *The Seven Years' War*.

2. A mutual restoration of prisoners was to take place, and the English were not to erect any establishment beyond the mountains, for the space of a year. The English troops were to march, unmolested, back to Virginia.

3. Verse 5, page 19.

4. New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland.

5. James Delancy, of New York, was elected president. There were twenty-five delegates in all.

6. Franklin was a delegate from Pennsylvania. The idea of union was not a new one. William Penn suggested the advantage of a union of all the English colonies, as early as 1700; and Coxe, Speaker of the New Jersey Assembly, advocated it in 1722. Now it first found tangible expression under the sanction of authority.

7. Note 3, page 107.

8. It proposed a general government to be administered by one chief magistrate, to be appointed by the crown, and a council of forty-eight members, chosen by the several Legislatures. This council, answering to our Senate, was to have power to declare war; levy troops, raise money, regulate trade, conclude peace, and many other things necessary for the general good. The delegates from Connecticut alone objected to the plan, because it gave the governor-general veto power, or the right to refuse his signature to laws ordained by the Senate, and thus prevent them becoming statutes.

9. The Board of Trade had proposed a plan which contained all the elements of a system for the utter enslavement and dependence of the Americans. They proposed a general government, composed of the governors of the several colonies, and certain select members of the several Councils. These were to have power to draw on the British Treasury for money to carry on the impending war; the sum to be reimbursed by taxes imposed upon the colonists by Parliament. The colonists preferred to do their own fighting and levy their own taxes, independent of Great Britain.

10. Verse 11, page 175.

QUESTIONS.—9. How came Washington to have chief command? What occurred at Fort Necessity? 10. What important event took place at Albany in 1754? What was the fate of Franklin's plan of union?

Indian hostilities.	Preparations for war.	Braddock.	Plan of campaign.
---------------------	-----------------------	-----------	-------------------

11. Soon after the close of this convention, the Indians commenced murderous depredations upon the New England frontiers [August and September, 1754]; and French emissaries were busy among the tribes west of the Alleghanies, arousing them to engage in a war of extermination against the English. Shirley was putting forth energetic efforts in Massachusetts; New York voted \$25,000 for military service, and Maryland \$30,000 for the same. The English government sent over \$50,000 for the use of the colonists, and with it a commission to Governor Sharpe, of Maryland, appointing him commander-in-chief of all the colonial forces. Soon disputes about military rank and precedence, ran high. Washington resigned his commission, and the year [1754] drew to a close without any efficient preparations for a conflict with the French.

CAMPAIGN OF 1755.

12. War had not yet been declared by the two nations; and for more than a year and a half longer the colonies were in conflict, before England and France formally announced hostility to each other. In the mean while the British government extended its aid to its colonies. Early in 1755 [Feb. 20], Edward Braddock, an Irish officer of distinction, arrived in Chesapeake Bay with two regiments of his countrymen. He had been appointed commander-in-chief of all the British and provincial forces in America; and at his request six colonial governors¹ met in convention at Alexandria [April] to assist in making arrangements for a vigorous campaign. Three separate expeditions were planned; one against Fort du Quesne,² to be led by Braddock; a second against Niagara and Frontenac (Kingston), to be commanded by Governor Shirley; and a third against Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, under General William Johnson,³ then an influential resident among the *Mohawk* nation of the Iroquois confederacy.⁴ Already a fourth expedition had been arranged by Shirley and Governor Lawrence, of Nova Scotia, designed to drive the French out of that province, and other portions of ancient Acadie.⁵ The legislatures of the several provinces, except Pennsylvania and Georgia, voted men and supplies for the impending war. The Quaker Assembly of Pennsylvania was opposed to military movements; the people of Georgia were too poor to contribute.

13. The eastern expedition first proceeded to action. Three thousand men, under General John Winslow,⁶ sailed from Boston on the 20th of May, 1755, and landed at the head of the Bay of Fundy. There they were joined by Colonel Monckton with three hundred British regulars⁷ from the neighboring garri-

1. Shirley, of *Massachusetts*; Dinwiddie, of *Virginia*; Delancy, of *New York*; Sharpe, of *Maryland*; Morris, of *Pennsylvania*; and Dobbs, of *North Carolina*. Admiral Keppel, commander of the British fleet, was also present.

2. Verse 8, page 150.

3. Verse 19, page 155.

4. Verse 2, page 18.

5. Verse 29, page 44.

6. He was a great-grandson of Edward Winslow, the third governor of Plymouth. He was a major-general in the Massachusetts militia, but on this occasion held the office of lieutenant-colonel.

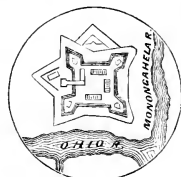
7. This term is used to denote soldiers who are attached to the regular army, and as distinguished from

QUESTIONS.—11. What troubles ensued on the frontier? What preparations were made for war with the French and Indians? What produced feebleness of action? 12. What was done before England and France declared war? What was Braddock's first movement? What expeditions were planned? and what preparations were made?

Desolation of Acadie. Expedition against Fort du Quesne. Battle with French and Indians.

son, and that officer, having official precedence of Winslow, took the command. They captured the forts of the French [June] without difficulty, and placed the whole region under martial rule.¹ This was the legitimate result of war. But the cruel sequel deserves universal reprobation. The total destruction of the French settlements was decided upon. Under the plea that the Acadians would aid their French brethren in Canada, the innocent and happy people were seized in their houses, fields and churches, and conveyed on board the English vessels. Families were broken, never to be united; and to compel the surrender of those who fled to the woods, their starvation was insured by a total destruction of their growing crops. In one short month, their paradise had become a desolation, and a happy people were crushed into the dust.

14. On account of delays in obtaining provisions and wagons, Braddock did not commence his march from Wills Creek (Cumberland), until the 10th of June, 1755. His force consisted of about two thousand men, British and provincial. Anxious to reach Fort du Quesne before the garrison should receive reinforcements, he made forced marches with twelve hundred men, leaving Colonel Dunbar, his second in command, to follow with the remainder, and the wagons. Colonel Washington² had consented to act as Braddock's aid, and to him was given the command of the provincials. Knowing, far better than Braddock, the perils of their march and the kind of warfare they might expect, he ventured, modestly, to give advice, founded upon his experience. But the haughty general would listen to no suggestions, especially from a provincial subordinate. This obstinacy proved his ruin.



FORT DU QUESNE.

15. When within ten miles of Fort du Quesne, and marching at noon-day [July 9], in fancied security on the south side of the Monongahela, a volley of bullets and a cloud of arrows assailed the advanced guard, under Lieutenant-Colonel Gage.³ They came from a thicket and ravine close by, where a thousand dusky warriors lay in ambush. Again Washington asked permission to fight according to the provincial custom, but was refused. Braddock must manœuvre according to European tactics, or not at all. For three hours, deadly volley after volley, fell upon the British columns, while Braddock attempted to maintain order, where all was confusion. The slain soon covered the ground. Every mounted officer but Washington was killed or maimed, and finally the brave Braddock himself, after having several horses shot under

volunteers and militia. The latter term applies to the great body of citizens who are liable to do perpetual military duty only in time of war.

1. Note 13, page 138.

2. Verse 4, page 148.

3. Afterward General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British troops at Boston, at the beginning of the Revolution. Verse 33, page 184.

QUESTIONS.—13. What did the eastern expedition accomplish? What outrages were committed by it? 14. How was Braddock delayed? How did he progress? What did Washington advise? 15. Where did a battle occur? Can you relate the circumstances? What was the principal cause of defeat? How were any saved? How and where was Braddock buried?

Death of Braddock.

Expedition against Niagara.

Johnson's expedition.

him, was mortally wounded.¹ Washington remained unhurt.² Under his direction the provincials rallied, while the regulars, seeing their general fall, were fleeing in great confusion. The provincials covered their retreat so gallantly, that the enemy did not follow. A week afterward [July 15], Wash-



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

ington read, by torch-light, the impressive funeral service of the Anglican Church,³ over the corpse of Braddock. Colonel Dunbar received the flying troops, and marched to Philadelphia [Aug.] with the broken companies. Washington, with the southern provincials, went back to Virginia. Thus ended the second expedition of the campaign of 1755.

16. The expedition against Niagara and Frontenac, under Shirley, though not so disastrous, was quite as unsuccessful. It was late in August before Shirley had collected the main body of his troops at Oswego, whence he intended to go to Niagara, by water. His force was twenty-five hundred strong on the first of September, yet circumstances compelled him to hesitate. The prevalence of storms, and of sickness in his camp, and finally the desertion of the greater part of his Indian allies,⁴ made it perilous to proceed, and he relinquished the design. Leaving sufficient men to garrison the forts which he had commenced at Oswego,⁵ he marched the remainder to Albany [Oct. 24], and returned to Massachusetts.

17. General Johnson's expedition against Crown Point⁶ accomplished more than that of Braddock⁷ or Shirley,⁸ but failed to achieve its main object. In July [1755] about six thousand troops, drawn from New England, New York, and New Jersey, had assembled at the head of boat navigation on the Hudson (now the village of Fort Edward), fifty miles north of Albany. They were under the command of General Lyman⁹ of Connecticut; and before the arrival of General Johnson in August, with cannon and stores, they had erected a strong fortification, which was afterward called Fort Edward.¹⁰ On

1. Braddock was shot by Thomas Fancett, one of the provincial soldiers. His plea was self-preservation. Braddock had issued a positive order, that none of the English should protect themselves behind trees as the French and Indians did. Fancett's brother had taken such position, and when Braddock perceived it, he struck him to the earth with his sword. Thomas, on seeing his brother fall, shot Braddock in the back, and then the provincials, fighting as they pleased, were saved from utter destruction.

2. Dr. Craik, who was with Washington at this time, and also attended him in his last illness, says that while in the Ohio country with him, fifteen years afterward, an old Indian chief came, as he said, "a long way" to see the Virginia colonel at whom he fired his rifle fifteen times during the battle on the Monongahela, without hitting him. Washington was never wounded in battle.

3. Note 4, page 136.

4. Tribes of the SIX NATIONS [verse 5, page 19], and some *Stockbridge* Indians. The latter were called *Housatonics*, from the river on which they were found. They were a division of the *Mohegan* [verse 14, page 16] tribe.

5. Fort *Ontario* on the east and Fort *Pepperell* on the west of Oswego river. Fort *Pepperell* was afterward called Fort Oswego. See map, page 157. The house was built of stone, and the walls were three feet thick. It was within a square inclosure composed of a thick wall, with two strong square towers.

6. Upon this tongue of land on Lake Champlain, the French erected a fortification which they called Fort St. Frederic. On the Vermont side of the lake opposite, there was a French settlement as early as 1731. In allusion to the chimneys of their houses, which remained long after the settlement was destroyed, it is still known as Chimney Point.

7. Verse 15, page 153.

8. Verse 16, page 154.

9. Born in Durham, Connecticut; was a graduate of Yale College, and became a lawyer. He performed important services during the whole war. He died in Florida, in 1775.

10. It was first called Fort Lyman. Johnson, jealous of General Lyman, changed the name to Edward.

QUESTIONS.—16. Can you relate the circumstances of the expedition against Niagara? What did Shirley accomplish? 17. What preparations were made against Crown Point? What was done in the vicinity of Lake George?

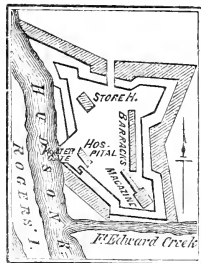
Events near Lake George.

An ambuscade.

Battle at Lake George.

his arrival, Johnson took command, and with the main body of the troops, marched to the head of Lake George, about fifteen miles distant.

18. In the mean while, General Baron Dieskau, with about two thousand men, chiefly Canadian militia and Indians, was approaching from Montreal, by way of Lake Champlain, to meet the English.¹ When Johnson arrived at Lake George [Sept. 7], Indian scouts informed him that Dieskau was disembarking at the head of Lake Champlain (now the village of Whitehall), preparatory to marching against Fort Edward. The next scouts brought Johnson the intelligence that Dieskau's Indians, terrified by the English cannons when they approached Fort Edward, had induced him to change his plans, and that he was marching to attack his camp. Colonel Williams was immediately sent [Sept. 8] with a thousand Massachusetts troops, and two hundred *Mohawks*,² under the famous chief, Hendrick, to intercept the enemy. They met in a narrow defile, four miles from Lake George. The English suddenly fell into an ambuscade. Williams and Hendrick were both killed,³ and their followers fell back in great confusion, upon Johnson's camp, hotly pursued by the victors.



FORT EDWARD.

19. Johnson was assured of Williams's defeat before the flying fugitives made their appearance. He immediately cast up a breastwork of logs and limbs, placed upon it two cannons which he had received from Fort Edward



SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON.

two days before, and when the enemy came rushing on, close upon the heels of the English, he was prepared to receive them. The fugitives had just reached Johnson's camp when Dieskau and his flushed victors appeared. Unsuspicious of heavy guns upon so rude a pile as Johnson's battery exhibited, they rushed forward and made a spirited attack. One volley from the English cannons made the Indians flee in terror to the shelter of the deep forests around. The Canadian militia also fled as General Lyman and a body of troops approached from Fort Edward; and finally, the French troops, after continuing the conflict several hours, and losing their commander,⁴ withdrew, and hastened to

1. Dieskau and his French troops narrowly escaped capture by Admiral Boscawen, on their way from France, off Newfoundland. They eluded his fleet during a fog, and went in safety up the St. Lawrence.

2. Verse 2, page 18.

3. While on his way north, Williams stopped at Albany, made his will, and bequeathed certain property to found a free school for Western Massachusetts. That was the foundation of "Williams's College"—his best monument. The rock near which his body was found, south of the road from Glenn's Falls to Lake George, still bears his name; and a collection of water on the battle ground is called *Bloody Pond*.

4. Dieskau was found mortally wounded, carried into the English camp, and there tenderly treated. He was afterward conveyed to New York, whence he sailed to England, where he died.

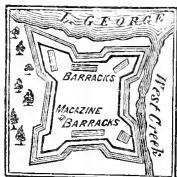
QUESTIONS.—18. What expedition opposed the English? Can you relate the circumstances, and the result?
19. What occurred at the head of Lake George and vicinity?

Fort William Henry.

Plan of the campaign of 1755.

Crown Point. Their baggage was captured by some New Hampshire troops from Fort Edward, and the defeat was complete.

20. Johnson erected a fort on the site of his camp, and called it Fort William Henry; and being informed that the French were strengthening their works at Crown Point, and were fortifying Ticonderoga,¹ he thought it prudent to cease offensive operations. He garrisoned Fort Edward and Fort William Henry, returned to Albany, and as the season was advanced [Oct. 1755], he dispersed the remainder of his troops. For his services in this campaign, the king conferred the honor of knighthood upon him, and gave him twenty-five thousand dollars. This honor and emolument properly belonged to General Lyman, the real hero of the campaign.² Johnson had Sir Peter Warren and other friends at court, and so won the unmerited prize.



FORT WILLIAM HENRY.

CAMPAIGN OF 1756.

21. The campaign of 1755 having assumed all the essential features of regular war, and there appearing no prospect of reconciliation, England formally proclaimed hostilities against France [May 17, 1756], and the latter soon afterward [June 9] reciprocated the action. Shirley, who had become commander-in-chief after the death of Braddock, was superseded by General Abercrombie³ in the spring of 1756. He came as the lieutenant of Lord Loudoun, whom the king had appointed to the chief command in America, and also governor of Virginia. Abercrombie arrived, with several British regiments, early in June. The plan of the campaign for that year had already been arranged by a convention of colonial governors held at New York early in the season. Ten thousand men were to attack Crown Point;⁴ six thousand were to proceed against Niagara;⁵ three thousand against Fort du Quesne;⁶ and two thousand were to cross the country from the Kennebec, to attack the French settlements on the Chaudiere river.



ABERCROMBIE.

1. Verse 32, page 161.

2. Lyman urged Johnson to pursue the French, and assail Crown Point. The *Mohawks* burned for an opportunity to avenge the death of Hendrick. But Johnson preferred ease and safety, and spent the autumn in constructing Fort William Henry. He meanly withheld all praise from Lyman, in his dispatches to government. Johnson was born in Ireland in 1714. He came to America to take charge of the lands of his uncle, Admiral Warren [verse 48, page 109], on the Mohawk river, and gained great influence over the Indians of New York. He died at his seat in the Mohawk valley, in 1774.

3. A strong party in England, irritated by the failures of the campaign of 1755, cast the blame of Braddock's defeat and other disasters, upon the Americans, and finally procured the recall of Shirley. He completely vindicated his character, and was appointed governor of the Bahama Islands.

4. Verse 38, page 164.

5. Verse : 9, page 164.

6. Verse 8, page 150.

QUESTIONS.—20. What course did Johnson pursue? What rewards did he receive? and how were they deserved? 21. When did England and France declare war? Who took the command in America? What was the plan of the campaign of 1756?

Expedition against Crown Point.

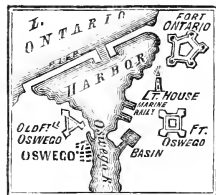
Capture of Oswego.

Defensive operations.

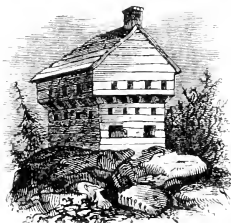
22. General Winslow¹ had been appointed to the command of the expedition against Crown Point, and had collected seven thousand men at Albany, when Abercrombie arrived. Difficulties immediately occurred respecting military rank, and caused delay. They were not adjusted when the tardy Loudoun arrived; and his arrogant assumption of superior rank for the royal officers, increased the irritation and discontent of the provincial troops. When these matters were finally adjusted, in August, the French had gained such positive advantages, that the whole plan of the campaign was disconcerted.

23. The Marquis de Montcalm succeeded Dieskau² in the command of the French troops in Canada. Perceiving the delay of the English, and the inefficiency of their commander-in-chief, he collected about five thousand Frenchmen, Canadians, and Indians, at Frontenac,³ and crossing Lake Ontario, landed, with thirty pieces of cannon, a few miles east of Oswego. Two days afterward, he appeared before Fort Ontario [August 11, 1756], on the east side of the river, then in command of Colonel Mercer. After a short but brave resistance, the garrison abandoned the fort [August 12], and withdrew to an older fortification, on the west side of the river.⁴ Their commander was killed, and they were soon obliged to surrender themselves [August 14] prisoners of war. The spoils of victory for Montcalm were fourteen hundred prisoners, a large quantity of arms and military stores, and several vessels. After securing these, he demolished the forts,⁵ and returned to Canada. The whole country of the Six Nations was now laid open to the incursions of the French.

24. When intelligence of the fall of Oswego reached Loudoun, he recalled the troops then on their way toward Lake Champlain; and all the other expeditions were abandoned. Forts William Henry⁶ and Edward⁷ were strengthened; fifteen hundred volunteers and drafted militia, under Washington, were placed in stockades,⁸ for the defense of the Pennsylvania and Virginia frontiers; and on the western borders of the Carolinas several military posts were established as a protection against the *Cherokees*⁹ and



FORTS AT OSWEGO.



BLOCK-HOUSE.

1. Verse 13, page 152.

2. Verse 18, page 155.

3. Verse 12, page 152.

4. A palisaded block-house built by order of Governor Burnet in 1727, near the spot where Fort Pepperell was erected. A redoubt is a fortified building, of peculiar construction, well calculated for defense. They were generally built of logs, in the form represented in the engraving. They were usually two stories, with narrow openings through which they might fire muskets. They were sometimes prepared with openings for cannons.

5. This was to please the Six Nations, who had never felt contented with this supporter of power in their midst. The demolition of these forts induced the Indians to assume an attitude of neutrality, by a solemn treaty.

6. Verse 20, page 156. It commanded a view of the lake from its head to the Narrows, fifteen miles.

7. Verse 17, page 154. The Hudson is divided at Fort Edward, into two channels, by Roger's Island, on which the provincial troops out of the fort, usually encamped.

8. Note 3, page 150.

9. Verse 1, page 20.

QUESTIONS.—2. What preparations were made against Crown Point? What caused the failure of the expedition? 23. Who commanded the French in 1756? What was done at Oswego by Montcalm and his followers?

Battle of Kittanning. Expedition against Louisburg. Montcalm at Fort William Henry.

Creeks,¹ whom French emissaries were exciting to hostilities against the English. The most important achievement of the provincials during that year, was the chastisement of the Indians at Kittanning, their chief town, situated on the Alleghany river. During several months they had spread terror and desolation along the western frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and almost a thousand white people had been murdered or carried into captivity. Colonel John Armstrong of Pennsylvania,² accompanied by Captain Mercer of Virginia, with about three hundred men, attacked them on the night of the 8th of September [1756], killed their principal chiefs, destroyed their town, and dispersed and completely humbled them.

CAMPAIGN OF 1757.

25. At a military council held at Boston early in 1757 [January 19], Lord Loudoun proposed to confine the operations of that year to an expedition against Louisburg,³ and to the defense of the frontiers. Because he was commander-in-chief, wiser and better men acquiesced in his plans, but deplored his want of judgment and executive force. The people of New England, in particular, were greatly disappointed when they ascertained that the execution of their favorite scheme of driving the French from Lake Champlain, was to be deferred. However, the general ardor of the colonists was not abated, and the call for troops was so promptly responded to, that Loudoun found himself at the head of six thousand provincials on the 1st of June.

26. The capture of Louisburg was the earl's first care. He sailed from New York on the 19th of June, and on arriving at Halifax ten days afterward, he was joined by Admiral Holbourn, with a powerful naval armament and five thousand land troops, from England. They were about to proceed to Cape Breton,⁴ when they were informed that six thousand troops were in the fortress at Louisburg,⁵ and that a French fleet, larger than Holbourn's was lying in that harbor. The enterprise was abandoned, and Loudoun returned to New York [Aug. 31], to hear of defeat and disgrace on the northern frontier, the result of his own ignorance and utter unskillfulness.

27. Toward the close of July, Montcalm left Ticonderoga with about nine thousand men (of whom two thousand were Indians), and proceeded to besiege Fort William Henry, at the head of Lake George.⁶ The garrison of three thousand men was commanded by Colonel Monro, a brave English officer, who felt strengthened in his position by the close proximity of his chief, General Webb, who was at the head of four thousand troops at Fort Edward,⁷ only fifteen miles distant. But his confidence in his commanding general was sadly misplaced. When Montcalm demanded a surrender of the

1. Verse 2, page 22.

2. He was a General in the war for Independence. Note 2, page 201.

4. Note 7, page 109.

5. Verse 48, page 109.

6. Verse 20, page 156.

3. Verse 48, page 109.

7. Verse 17, page 154.

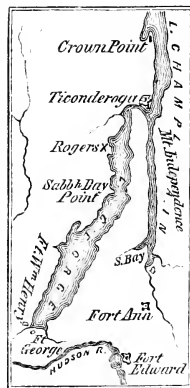
QUESTIONS.—24. How did the fall of Oswego affect Loudoun's movements? What preparations were made for frontier defenses? What did General Armstrong effect? 25. What did Loudoun propose? How were the colonists disappointed? and how were they affected? 26. In what expedition did Loudoun engage? How was it conducted? What was the result? 27. What did Montcalm do in the Summer of 1757? Can you relate the circumstances of the siege of Fort William Henry? How did General Webb behave?

Bad conduct of Webb. Surrender of Fort William Henry. Condition of the colonists.

fort and garrison [Aug. 3, 1757], Monro boldly refused, and sent an express to General Webb for aid. It was not furnished. For six days Montcalm continued the siege, and expresses were sent daily to Webb for reinforcements, but in vain. Even when General Johnson,¹ with a corps of provincials and Putnam's Rangers,² had, on reluctant permission, marched several miles in the direction of the beleaguered fort, Webb recalled them, and sent a letter to Monro, advising him to surrender.

28. Webb's letter was intercepted by Montcalm,³ and he sent it to Monro with a peremptory demand for capitulation. Perceiving further resistance to be useless, Monro yielded. Montcalm was so pleased with the bravery displayed by the garrison, that he agreed upon very honorable terms of surrender, and promised the troops a safe escort to Fort Edward. Montcalm's Indians, expecting blood and booty, were enraged by the merciful terms, and at the moment when the English entered the forests a mile from Fort William Henry, the savages fell upon them with great fury, slaughtered a large number, plundered their baggage, and pursued them to within cannon-shot of Fort Edward. Montcalm declared his inability to restrain the Indians, and expressed his deep sorrow. The fort and all its appendages were burned or otherwise destroyed.⁴ It was never rebuilt, and now [1857] its site is occupied by a hotel for summer visitors. Thus ended the military operations of Lord Loudoun, for 1757.

29. The result of the war, thus far, was humiliating to British pride, while it incited the French to greater efforts in the maintenance of their power in America. In the Anglo-American⁵ colonies there was much irritation. Knowing their own competency, unaided by royal troops, to assert and maintain their rights, they regarded the interferences of the home government, as clogs upon their operations. Some of the royal governors were weak and rapacious, and all were marked by a haughty deportment offensive to the sturdy democracy of the colonists. Their *demands* for men and money, did not always meet with cheerful and ample responses; and the arrogant assumptions of the English officers, disgusted the commanders of the provincial troops, and often



LAKE GEORGE AND VICINITY.

1. Verse 19, page 155.

2. Israel Putnam, afterward a major-general in the army of the Revolution. He now held the commission of major, and with Major Rogers and his Rangers, performed important services during the whole French and Indian war.

3. It is said that Montcalm was just on the point of raising the siege and returning to Ticonderoga, when Webb's cowardly letter fell into his hands. The number and strength of Johnson's troops had been greatly exaggerated, and Montcalm was preparing to flee.

4. Major Putnam visited the ruins while the fires were yet burning, and he described the scene as very appalling. The bodies of murdered Englishmen were scattered in every direction, some of them half consumed among the embers of the conflagration. Among the dead were more than one hundred women, many of whom had been scalped [note 1, page 11] by the Indians.

5. This is the title given to Americans who are of English descent. Those who are descendants of the Saxons who settled in England, are called Anglo-Saxons.

QUESTIONS.—28. How came Monro to surrender? What atrocities were committed? What was done with the fort? 29. What had the war thus far effected? What were the feelings of the colonists? What reasons had they for complaints? What might they have done? What was done in England?

Pitt called to be prime-minister.

His policy.

Campaign of 1758.

cooled the zeal of whole battalions of brave Americans. Untrammelled by the orders, exactions, and control of imperial power, the Americans would probably have settled the whole matter in a single campaign; but at the close of the second year of the war [1756] the result appeared more uncertain and remote than ever. The people of England had perceived this clearly, and clamored for the dismissal of the weak and corrupt ministry then in power. The popular will prevailed, and William Pitt, by far the ablest statesman England had yet produced, was called to the control of public affairs in June, 1757.

30. Energy and good judgment marked every movement of Pitt's administration, especially in measures for prosecuting the war in America. Lord Loudoun was recalled,¹ and General Abercrombie² was appointed to succeed him. A strong naval armament was prepared and placed under the command of Admiral Boscawen; and twelve thousand additional English troops were allotted to the service in America.³ Pitt addressed a circular to the several colonies, asking them to raise and clothe twenty thousand men. He promised in the name of Parliament, to furnish arms and provisions for them; and also to reimburse the several colonies, all the money they should expend in raising and clothing the levies. These liberal offers had a magical effect, and an excess of levies soon appeared. New England alone raised fifteen thousand men;⁴ New York furnished almost twenty-seven hundred, New Jersey one thousand, Pennsylvania almost three thousand, and Virginia over two thousand. Some came from other colonies. Royal American troops organized in the Carolinas, were ordered to the North; and when Abercrombie took command of the army in May, 1758, he found fifty thousand men at his disposal; a number greater than the whole male population of the French dominions in America, at that time.⁵

CAMPAIGN OF 1758.

31. Louisburg,⁶ Ticonderoga,⁷ and Fort du Quesne,⁸ were the principal points of operation specified in the plan of the campaign of 1758. Boscawen arrived at Halifax early in May, with about forty armed vessels bearing a

1. Pitt gave as a chief reason for recalling Loudoun, that he could never hear from him, and did not know what he was about. Loudoun was always arranging great plans, but executed nothing. It was remarked to Dr. Franklin, when he made inquiries concerning him, that he was "like St. George on the signs—always on horseback, but never rides forward."

2. Verse 21, page 156.

3. Pitt had arranged such an admirable militia system for home defense, that a large number of the troops of the standing army could be spared for foreign service.

4. Public and private advances during 1758, in Massachusetts alone, amounted to more than a million of dollars. The taxes on real estate, in order to raise money, were enormous; in many cases equal to two thirds of the income of the tax-payers. Yet it was levied by *their own representatives*, and they did not murmur. A few years later, an almost nominal tax, in the form of duty upon an article of luxury, levied *without their consent*, excited the people of that colony to rebellion. See verse 29, page 182.

5. The total number of inhabitants in Canada, then capable of bearing arms, did not exceed twenty thousand. Of these, between four and five thousand were regular troops.

6. Verse 48, page 109.

7. Note 5, page 161.

8. Verse 8, page 150.

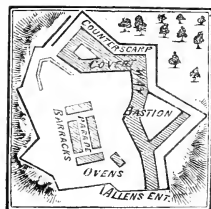
QUESTIONS.—30. What did Pitt exhibit? What preparations were made for war? How did Pitt please the Americans? What were the effects of his liberal policy? 31. What was the plan of the campaign of 1758? Can you relate the circumstances of the capture of Louisburg? What were the spoils? What were the effects of this victory?

Siege and capture of Louisburg. Expedition against Ticonderoga. Death of Lord Howe.

land force of twelve thousand men, under General Amherst¹ as chief, and General Wolfe² as his lieutenant. On the 8th of June the troops landed, without much opposition, on the shore of Gabarus Bay, near the city of Louisburg.³ The French almost immediately deserted their outposts, and retired within the town and fortress. After a vigorous resistance for almost fifty days, and when all their shipping in the harbor was destroyed, the French surrendered [July 26, 1758] the town and fort, together with the island of Cape Breton and that of St. John (now Prince Edward), and their dependencies, by capitulation. The spoils of victory were more than five thousand prisoners, and a large quantity of munitions of war. By this victory, the English became masters of the coast almost to the mouth of the St. Lawrence. From that time the decline of French power in America was continual and rapid.



LORD AMHERST.



TICONDEROGA.

32. While Amherst and Wolfe were conquering in the East, Abercrombie and the young Lord Howe were leading seven thousand regulars, nine thousand provincials, and a heavy train of artillery, against Ticonderoga, then occupied by Montcalm with about four thousand men. Abercrombie's army had rendezvoused at the head of Lake George, and at the close of a calm Sabbath evening [July, 1758] they went down that beautiful sheet of water in flat-boats, and at dawn landed at its northern extremity [July 6].

The whole country from there to Ticonderoga was covered with a dense forest, and tangled morasses lay in the pathway of the English army. Led by incompetent guides they were soon bewildered, and while in this condition, they were suddenly attacked by a French scouting party. The enemy was repulsed, but the victory was at the expense of the life of Lord Howe.⁴ He fell at the head of the advanced guard, and a greater part of the troops, who considered him the soul of the expedition, retreated in confusion to the landing-place.

33. Intelligence reached Abercrombie that a reinforcement for Montcalm was approaching. Deceived concerning the strength of the French lines across the neck of the peninsula on which the fortress stood,⁵ he pressed for-

1. Lord Jeffery Amherst was born in Kent, England, in 1717. He was commander-in-chief of the army in England, during a part of our war for Independence, and afterward. He died in 1797, aged eighty years.

2. Note 3, page 165.

3. Note 7, page 109.

4. Lord Howe was brother of Admiral Lord Howe, who commanded the British fleet on the American coast, in 1776-'77, and of Sir William Howe, the commander of the land forces. He was greatly beloved by the troops, and Mante, who was in the service, remarks: "With him the soul of the expedition seemed to expire." He was only thirty-four years of age when he fell. The legislature of Massachusetts Bay appropriated \$1,250 for a monument to his memory, in Westminster Abbey. His remains were conveyed to Albany by Captain (afterward General) Philip Schuyler, and there placed in a vault.

5. The diagram (page 161) shows the general form of the principal works. The ground on which Ticon-

QUESTIONS.—32. What was occurring at Ticonderoga? Can you relate the circumstances of the advance of the English army? What disasters befell them? What can you tell of Lord Howe?



LORD HOWE.

ward to the attack without his artillery, and ordered his troops to scale the breastworks [July 8], in the face of the enemy's fire. They proved much stronger than he anticipated,¹ and after a bloody conflict of four hours, Abercrombie fell back to Lake George, leaving almost two thousand of his men dead or wounded, in the deep forest.² He hastened to his former camp at the head of the lake, and then, on the urgent solicitation of Colonel Bradstreet, he detached three thousand men under that officer, to attack the French post at Frontenac.³ They captured the fort, garrison, and shipping, without much resistance, on the 27th of August.⁴ Bradstreet lost only three or four men in the conflict, but a fearful sickness broke out in his camp, and destroyed about five hundred. With the remainder, he slowly retraced his steps, and at the carrying place on the Mohawk, where the village of Rome now stands, his troops assisted in building Fort Stanwix.⁵ Abercrombie, in the mean while, after garrisoning Fort George,⁶ returned with the remainder of his troops to Albany.

34. General John Forbes commanded the expedition against Fort du Quesne,⁷ and in July had about nine thousand men at his disposal, including the Virginia troops under Colonel Washington, at Fort Cumberland. Protracted sickness and perversity of will and judgment, caused delays almost fatal to the expedition. Contrary to the advice of Washington, Forbes insisted in constructing a new road, further north, over the mountains, instead of following the one made by Braddock. His progress was so slow, that in September, when it was known that not more than eight hundred men were at Fort du Quesne,⁸ Forbes, with six thousand troops, was yet east of the Alleghanies. Major Grant, at the head of a scouting party of Boquet's advanced corps, was attacked [Sept. 21], defeated, and made prisoner. Still Forbes moved slowly and methodically, and it was the 8th of November before he joined Boquet with the main body, fifty miles from the point of des-

deroga stood is about one hundred feet above the level of the lake. Water is upon three sides, and a deep morass extends almost across the fourth, forming a narrow neck, where the French had erected a strong line of breastworks with batteries. This line was about a mile north-west of the fortress, which occupied the point of the peninsula. The ruins of the fort are yet [1857] quite picturesque. See page 170.

1. The breastworks were nine feet in height, covered in front by sharpened branches of felled trees, pointing outward like a mass of bayonets.

2. Among the wounded was Captain Charles Lee, afterward a general in the army of the Revolution.

3. Verse 12, page 152.

4. They made eight hundred prisoners, and seized nine armed vessels, sixty cannons, sixteen mortars, a large quantity of ammunition and stores, and goods designed for traffic with the Indians. Among Bradstreet's subalterns, was Nathaniel Woodhull, afterward a general at the commencement of the war for Independence [see note 1, page 205]. Stark, Ward, Pomeroy, Gridley, Putnam, Schuyler, and many others who were distinguished in the revolutionary struggle, were active participants in the scenes of the French and Indian War.

5. Verse 22, page 221.

6. Fort George was erected about a mile south-east of the ruins of Fort William Henry, at the head of Lake George. The ruins of the main work, or citadel, are still [1857] quite prominent. 7. Verse 8, p. 150.

8. The capture of Fort Frontenac spread alarm among the French west of that important point, because their supplies from Canada were cut off. It so affected the Indians with fear, that a greater part of those who were allied to the French, deserted them, and Fort du Quesne was feebly garrisoned.

QUESTIONS.—33. What did Abercrombie attempt? What befell him? What other expedition was planned, and how was it executed? 34. What were the operations of the English in Western Pennsylvania, in 1758? How was Fort du Quesne captured? What did Forbes then do?

Capture of Fort du Quesne.

Preparations for the final struggle.

tinuation. The approach of winter, and discontent of the troops, caused a council of war to decide upon abandoning the enterprise, when three prisoners gave information of the extreme weakness of the French garrison. Washington was immediately sent forward, and the whole army prepared to follow. Indian scouts discovered the Virginians when they were within a day's march of the fort, and their fear greatly magnified the number of the provincials. The French garrison, reduced to five hundred men, set fire to the fort [Nov. 24], and fled down the Ohio in boats, in great confusion, leaving every thing behind them. The Virginians took possession the following day. Forbes left a detachment of four hundred and fifty men, to repair and garrison the fort, and then hastened back to go into winter quarters. The name of Fort *du Quesne* was changed to Fort *Pitt*, in honor of the great English statesman.¹

35. The campaign of 1758 resulted in great gain to the English. They had effectually humbled the French, by capturing three of their most important posts,² and by weakening the attachment of their Indian allies. Many of the Indians had not only deserted the French, but at a great council held at Easton, on the Delaware, during the summer [1758], had, with the Six Nations,³ made treaties of friendship or neutrality with the English.⁴

CAMPAIGN OF 1759.

36. The final struggle was now at hand. Encouraged by the success of the campaigns just closed, Pitt conceived the magnificent scheme of conquering all Canada, and destroying, at one blow, the French dominion in America. That dominion was really confined to the region of the St. Lawrence. Pitt had the rare fortune to possess the entire confidence and esteem of the Parliament and the colonists. The former was dazzled by his greatness; the latter were deeply impressed by his justice. He had promptly reimbursed all the expenses incurred by the provincial Assemblies during the campaign,⁵ amounting to almost a million of dollars, and they promptly seconded his scheme of conquest, which had been communicated to them under an oath of secrecy.

37. General Abercrombie⁶ was succeeded by General Amherst;⁷ and early in the spring [1759], the new commander-in-chief found twenty thousand provincial troops at his disposal. A competent land and naval force was also sent from England to co-operate with the Americans, and the campaign opened with brilliant prospects for the colonies. The general plan of operations against Canada, was similar to that of Phipps and Winthrop in 1690.⁸

1. Verse 29, page 159.

2. Louisburg, Frontenac, and Du Quesne. Others, except Quebec, were stockades. Note 3, page 150.

3. Verse 5, page 19.

4. The chief tribes represented, were the *Delawares*, *Shavenees*, *Nanticokes*, *Mohegans*, *Conoys*, and *Monseys*. The *Twightees*, on the Ohio [verse 7, page 14], had always remained the friends of the English.

5. Verse 30, page 160.

6. Verse 21, page 156.

7. Verse 31, page 160.

8. Verse 37, page 105.

QUESTIONS.—35. What was the result of the campaign of 1758? 36. What scheme did Pitt contemplate? What was the extent of the French dominion in America? What caused Pitt to be very popular? 37. What preparations were made for the conquest of Canada? What were the general plans for that purpose?

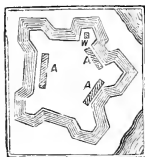
Plans for 1759.

Amherst on Lake Champlain.

Attack on Fort Niagara.

A strong land and naval force, under General Wolfe, was to ascend the St. Lawrence and attack Quebec. Another force, under Amherst, was to drive the French from Lake Champlain, seize Montreal, and join Wolfe at Quebec; and a third expedition, commanded by General Prideaux,¹ was to capture Fort Niagara, and then hasten down Lake Ontario to Montreal.

38. General Amherst appeared before Ticonderoga with eleven thousand men, on the 22d of July, 1759. The French commander had just heard of the arrival of Wolfe at Quebec [June 27], and offered no resistance. Four

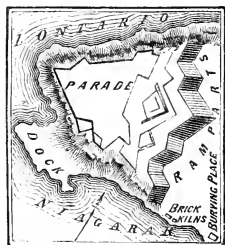


CROWN POINT.

days afterward [July 26], the garrison abandoned the fort, partially demolished it, and fled to Crown Point.² Amherst pursued them, and on his approach, they took to their boats [August 1], and went down the lake to Isle Aux Noix,³ in the Sorel river. Amherst remained at Crown Point long enough to construct a sufficient number of rude boats to convey his troops, artillery, and baggage, and then started to

drive his enemy before him, across the St. Lawrence. It was now mid autumn [October 11], and heavy storms compelled him to return to Crown Point, and place his troops in winter quarters.⁴ While there, they constructed that strong fortress whose picturesque ruins, after the lapse of almost a hundred years, yet [1857] attest its strength.

39. Prideaux, accompanied by Sir William Johnson as his lieutenant, collected his forces (chiefly provincial)⁵ at Oswego, and sailed from thence to Niagara. Landing without opposition [July 17, 1759], he immediately commenced the siege. He was killed the same day by the bursting of a gun, and was succeeded in command by General Johnson. The beleaguered garrison, in daily expectation of reinforcements which had been ordered from the southern and western forts, held out bravely for three weeks, when the expected troops appeared [July 24]. They were almost three thousand strong, one half being French regulars, and the remainder Indians, many of them from the *Creek*⁶ and *Cherokee*⁷ nations. A



FORT NIAGARA.

1. Pronounced *Pre-doh*.

2. The above diagram shows the general form of the military works at Crown Point. These, like the ruins at Ticonderoga, are quite picturesque remains of the post. A A A show the position of the strong stone barracks, portions of which are yet standing. W shows the place of a very deep well, dug through the solid rock. It was filled up, and so remained until a few years ago, when some money-diggers, foolishly believing there was treasure at the bottom, cleaned it out. They found nothing.

3. Pronounced *O Noo-ah*.

4. While at Crown Point, Major Rogers, at the head of his celebrated Rangers, went on an expedition against the St. Francis Indians, who had long been a terror to the frontier settlements of New England. The village was destroyed, a large number of the Indians were slain, and the Rangers were completely victorious. They suffered from cold and hunger while on their return, and many were left dead in the forest before the party reached the nearest settlement at Bellows Falls. Rogers went to England after the war, returned in 1775, joined the British army at New York, and soon went to England again, where he died.

5. Johnson's influence over the Six Nations, made many of them disregard the treaty of neutrality made with Montcalm [note 5, page 157], and a considerable number accompanied him to Niagara.

6. Verse 2, page 22.

7. Verse 1, page 20.

QUESTIONS.—38. What caused the French to leave Lake Champlain? What did Amherst attempt? What did he accomplish? 39. Can you relate the circumstances of the expedition against Niagara? Why did Johnson not proceed to Montreal?

Capture of Fort Niagara.

The English at Quebec.

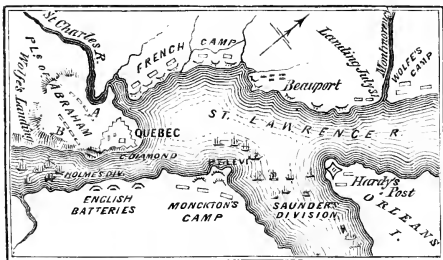
severe conflict ensued. The relief forces were completely routed; and on the following day [July 25], Fort Niagara and its dependencies, and the garrison of seven hundred men, were surrendered to Johnson. The connecting link of French military posts between Canada and Louisiana,¹ was effectually broken, never again to be united. Encumbered with his prisoners, and unable to procure a sufficient number of vessels for the purpose, Johnson could not proceed to Montreal, according to the original plan.² He garrisoned Fort Niagara, and returned home.

40. Wolfe³ left Louisburg with eight thousand troops, under convoy of a large fleet, commanded by Admirals Holmes and Saunders, and on the 27th of June landed upon Orleans Island, a few miles below Quebec. That city then, as now, consisted of an Upper and Lower Town, the former within fortified walls, upon the top and declivities of a high peninsula; the latter lying upon a narrow beach at the edge of the water. Upon the heights, three hundred feet above the water, was a level plateau called the *Plains of Abraham*. At the mouth of the St. Charles, which here enters the St. Lawrence, the French had moored several floating batteries.⁴ The town was strongly garrisoned by French regulars, and along the north bank of the St. Lawrence, from the St. Charles to the Montmorenci river, was the main French army, under Montcalm,⁵ in a fortified camp. It was composed chiefly of Canadian militia and Indians.



GENERAL WOLFE.

41. The English took possession of Point Levi [July 30], opposite Quebec, and throwing hot shot from a battery, they almost destroyed the Lower Town. They could not damage the strong fortifications of the city from that distance, and Wolfe resolved to attack the French camp. He had already landed a large force under Generals Townshend and Murray, and formed a camp [July 10, 1759] below the river Montmorenci. General Monckton, with grena-



MILITARY OPERATIONS AT QUEBEC.

1. Verse 2, page 148.

2. Verse 37, page 163.

3. James Wolfe was the son of a British general, and born in Kent, England, in 1726. Before he was twenty years of age, he was distinguished in battle. He was now only thirty-three years old.

4. These were a kind of flat-boats, with proper breastworks or other defenses, and armed with cannons.

5. He was descended from a noble family. He was appointed Governor of Canada in 1756. His remains are beneath the Ursuline convent at Quebec.

QUESTIONS.—40. What expedition approached Quebec? What was the situation of the city? How was it defended? How was the French army situated?

Events at Quebec.

Decision of a council of war.

English on the Plains of Abraham.

diers,¹ and other troops, crossed from Point Levi, and landed upon the beach [July 31] at the base of the high river bank, just above the stream. Murray and Townshend were ordered to force a passage across the Montmorenci, and co-operate with him, but Monckton was too eager for attack to await their coming. He unwisely rushed forward, but was soon repulsed and compelled to take shelter behind a block-house² near the beach, just as a heavy thunder-storm, which had been gathering for several hours, burst upon the combatants. Night came on before it ceased, and the roar of the rising tide warned the English to take to their boats. Five hundred of their number had perished.

42. Eight weeks elapsed, and yet the English had gained no important advantages. Wolfe had received no intelligence from Amherst, and the future appeared gloomy. The exposure, fatigue, and anxiety which he had endured, produced a violent fever, and at the beginning of September [1759], he lay prostrate in his tent. He called a council of war at his bedside, and on the suggestion of Townshend, it was resolved to scale the heights of Abraham,³ and assail the town on its weakest side. Wolfe heartily approved of the design. A plan was speedily matured, and feeble as he was, the commander-in-chief determined to lead the assault in person. The camp at the Montmorenci was broken up [Sept. 8], and the attention of Montcalm was directed from the real designs of the English, by seeming preparations to again attack his lines. The affair was managed so secretly and skillfully that the French had no suspicions of these movements.

43. On the evening of the 12th of September, the attacking party ascended the river in several vessels of the fleet; and at midnight, they embarked in flat-boats, with muffled oars, and moved silently down to the mouth of a ravine, a mile and a half from the city, and landed.⁴ At dawn [Sept. 13], Lieutenant-Colonel Howe⁵ led the van up the tangled ravine, in the face of a sharp fire from a guard above. He was followed by the generals and the remainder of the troops, with artillery; and at sunrise the whole army stood in battle array upon the Plains of Abraham.⁶ It was an apparition little anticipated by the vigilant Montcalm.

44. The French commander perceived the peril of the city; and marching his whole army immediately from his encampment, crossed the St. Charles, and between nine and ten o'clock in the morning [Sept. 13], confronted the English. A general, fierce, and bloody battle now ensued. Although twice

1. Grenadiers are companies of the regular army, distinguished from the rest by some peculiarity of dress and accoutrements, and always composed of the tallest and most muscular men in the service. They are generally employed in bayonet charges, and sometimes carried grenades, a kind of small bomb-shell.

2. Note 4, page 157.

3. The declivity from Cape Diamond, on which the chief fortress stands, along the St. Lawrence to the cove below Sillery, was called by the general name of the heights of Abraham, the plains of that name being on the top. See map on page 165.

4. This place is known as *Wolfe's Cove*; and the ravine, which here breaks the steepness of the rocky shore, and up which the English clambered, is called *Wolfe's Ravine*.

5. Afterward General Sir William Howe, the commander-in-chief of the English forces in America, when the Revolution had fairly commenced. Verse 10, page 191.

6. Verse 40, page 165.

QUESTIONS.—41. What position did the English army and fleet take before Quebec? What engagement took place, and what was the result? 42. What circumstances discouraged Wolfe? What plan was arranged? What movements were made? 43. How did the English proceed to the attack of Quebec? What difficulties did they overcome? How did they prepare for battle?

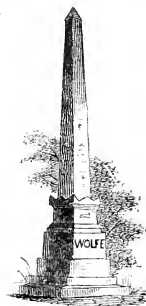
The English victorious.

Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.

Disasters to the English.

severely wounded, Wolfe kept his feet; and as the two armies closed upon each other, he placed himself at the head of his grenadiers, and led them to a charge. At that moment a bullet entered his breast. He was carried to the rear; and a few moments afterward, Monckton, who took the command, also fell, severely wounded. Townshend continued the battle. Montcalm soon received a fatal wound;¹ and the French, terribly pierced by English bayonets, and smitten by Highland broadswords, broke and fled.² Wolfe died just as the battle ended, with a smile upon his lips, because his ears heard the victory-shouts of his army.

45. Townshend now prepared to besiege the city. Threatened famine within aided him; and five days after the death of Wolfe [Sept. 18, 1759], Quebec, with its fortifications, shipping, stores and people, was surrendered to the English, and five thousand troops, under General Murray, immediately took possession. The campaign now ended, yet Canada was not conquered. The French yet held Montreal, and had a considerable land and naval force above Quebec.



MONUMENT TO
WOLFE
AND MONTCALM.

CAMPAIGN OF 1760.

46. Early in the Spring of 1660, Vaudreuil, then Governor-General of Canada, sent M. Levi, the successor of Montcalm, to recover Quebec. He went down the St. Lawrence with six frigates and a strong land force. General Murray marched out, and met him at Sillery, about three miles above Quebec, and there was fought [April 28, 1760] one of the most sanguinary battles of the war. Murray was defeated. He lost all his artillery and about a thousand men, but succeeded in retreating to the city with the remainder. Levi now laid siege to Quebec, and Murray's condition was becoming perilous, from the want of supplies, when an English squadron, with reinforcements and provisions, appeared [May 9] in the St. Lawrence. Levi supposed it to be the whole British fleet, and at once raised the siege [May 10] and fled to Montreal, after losing most of his shipping.

47. The last stronghold of the French was now to be assailed; and Vaudreuil gathered all his forces at Montreal for the final struggle. Amherst made extensive preparations during the Summer; and early in September [Sept. 6, 7] three English armies met before the doomed city. Amherst, at the head of ten thousand troops, and a thousand warriors of the SIX NATIONS, under General Johnson,³ arrived on the 6th, and was joined the same day by

1. He was carried into the city, and when told that he must die, he said, "So much the better; I shall be spared the mortification of seeing the surrender of Quebec?" His remains are yet in Quebec; those of Wolfe were conveyed to England. People of the two nations have long dwelt peaceably together in the ancient city, and they have united in erecting a tall granite obelisk, dedicated to the linked memory of Wolfe and Montcalm. See sketch on page 167.

2. The English lost, in killed and wounded, about six hundred; the French had about five hundred killed, and a thousand, including the wounded, made prisoners.

3. Verse 19, page 155.

QUESTIONS.—44. What did Montcalm do? Can you describe the battle? Relate the circumstance of Wolfe's death. 45. How was Quebec finally captured? What was yet to be done? 46. How did the campaign of 1760 open? What battle occurred? How was Quebec menaced? and how was it relieved?

Capture of Montreal. End of French dominion in America. Troubles with the Indians.

General Murray and four thousand troops from Quebec. The next day, Colonel Haviland arrived, with three thousand troops, from Crown Point,¹ having taken possession of Isle-Aux-Noix,² on the way. Against such a crushing force, resistance would be vain; and Vaudreuil immediately signed a capitulation [Sept. 8, 1760], surrendering Montreal and all other French posts in Canada, into the hands of the English.³ General Gage⁴ was appointed governor at Montreal; and Murray, with four thousand men, garrisoned Quebec.

48. The subjugation of the French produced great joy in the Anglo-American colonies,⁵ and everywhere the people assembled to utter public thanksgivings to HIM who rules the nations. Although the war had ceased in America, the French and English continued it upon the ocean, and among the West India islands, with almost continual success for the latter, until 1763, when a definitive treaty of peace,⁶ agreed upon the year before, was signed at Paris [Feb. 10, 1763], by which France ceded to Great Britain all her claimed possessions in America, eastward of the Mississippi, north of the latitude of Iberville river.⁷ At the same time Spain, with whom the English had been at war for a year previously, ceded [Feb. 10, 1763] East and West Florida to the British crown. And now, England held undisputed possession (except by the Indians) of the whole Continent, from the shores of the Gulf of Mexico to the frozen North, and from ocean to ocean.⁸

49. While the English were crushing the power of the French, on the north, the frontier settlements of the Carolinas were suffering dreadfully from frequent incursions of Indian war parties. French emissaries were busy among the *Cherokees*, hitherto the treaty friends of the English; and their influence, and some wrongs inflicted upon the Indians by some frontier Virginia rangers, produced hostilities, and a fierce war was kindled in March of 1760.⁹ The whole frontier of the Carolinas was desolated in the course of a few weeks. In April, Colonel Montgomery, with some British regulars and provincial troops, marched from Charleston, South Carolina, and laid waste a portion of the *Cherokee* country.¹⁰ Yet those bold aboriginal highlanders were not subdued; but when, the following year, Colonel Grant led a stronger force against them,¹¹ burned their towns, desolated their fields, and killed many of their warriors, they humbly sued for peace [June, 1761], and ever afterward remained comparatively quiet.

1. Verse 17, page 154.

3. The chief posts surrendered were Presque Isle (now Erie, Pennsylvania), Detroit and Mackinaw.

4. Verse 15, page 153, and verse 33, page 184.

6. France and England, Spain and Portugal, were parties to this treaty.

7. New Orleans, with the whole of Louisiana, were ceded by Spain to France at the same time, and she relinquished her entire possessions in North America. In 1800, Spain, by a secret treaty, retroceded Louisiana to France; and in 1803, Napoleon sold it to the United States for \$15,000,000. Verse 2, page 273.

8. The cost to England, of this *Seven Years' War*, as the conflict was called in Europe, was five hundred and sixty millions of dollars.

9. Verse 3, page 20.

10. Verse 1, page 20.

11. Marion, Moultrie, and several other men, afterward distinguished in the war for Independence, accompanied Grant on this occasion.

QUESTIONS.—47. How was Montreal captured? What was surrendered with Montreal? What was done with the conquered people? 48. How did the conquest affect the English colonies? Where did war continue? What did a treaty effect? 49. What English frontiers suffered Indian cruelties? What caused a war? How was it terminated?

Conspiracy of Pontiac.

His subjugation and death.

Condition of the colonies.

50. Scarcely had the storm ceased in the South, when another, more portentous and alarming, gathered in the North-west. Pontiac, a sagacious chief of the *Ottawas*,¹ who had been an early ally of the French, secretly confederated several of the ALGONQUIN tribes [1763], for the purpose of expelling the English from the country west of the Alleghanies.² After the fall of Montreal,³ he had professed an attachment to the English; and as there seemed safety for settlers west of the mountains, emigration began to pour its living streams over those barriers. Like Philip of Mount Hope,⁴ Pontiac saw, in the future, visions of the displacement, perhaps destruction, of his race, by the pale-faces; and he determined to strike a blow for life and country. So adroitly were his plans matured, that the commanders of the western forts had no suspicions of his conspiracy until it was ripe, and the first blow had been struck [June, 1763]. Within a fortnight, all the posts in possession of the English, west of Oswego, fell into his hands, except Niagara,⁵ Fort Pitt⁶ and Detroit. Boquet saved Pittsburg;⁷ Niagara was not attacked; and Detroit, after sustaining a siege of almost twelve months, was relieved by Colonel Bradstreet⁸ [May 1764], with reinforcements. The Indians were now speedily subdued, their power was broken, and the hostile tribes sent their chiefs to ask for pardon and peace. The haughty Pontiac refused to bow. He went to the country of the *Illinois*,⁹ and was murdered [1769]. This was the last act in the drama of the FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.¹⁰

51. We have now arrived at a point in the history of the United States, of great interest and importance. We have traced the growth of the colonies through infancy and youth, their interests and destinies gradually commingling, until they really formed one people,¹¹ strong and lusty, like the mature man, prepared to vindicate natural rights, and to fashion political and social systems adapted to their position and wants. We view them now, conscious of their physical and moral strength, possessing clear views of right and

1. Verse 3, page 13.

2. The confederation consisted of the *Ottawas*, *Miamies*, *Wyandots*, *Chippewas*, *Pottawatomies*, *Mississaguies*, *Shawnees*, *Outagamies*, or *Foxes*, and *Winnebagoes* [section ii, page 12]. The *Senecas*, the most westerly clan of the SIX NATIONS, also joined in the conspiracy.

3. Verse 47, page 167.

4. Verse 22, page 19.

5. Verse 39, page 164.

6. Verse 34, page 162.

7. Henry Boquet was a brave English officer. He was appointed lieutenant-colonel in 1755, and was in the expedition against Fort du Quesne [verse 34, page 162]. In 1763, Amherst sent him from Montreal, with provisions and military stores for Fort Pitt. His arrival was timely, and he saved the garrison from destruction. The following year he commanded an expedition against the Indians in Ohio, and was successful. His journal was published after the war.

8. Verse 33, page 161.

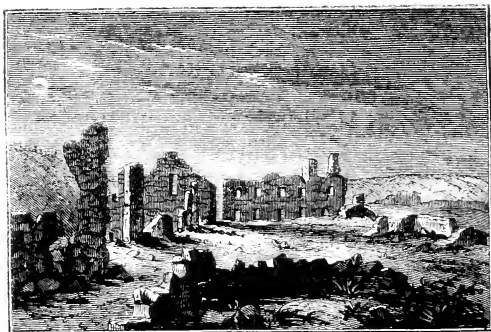
9. An English trader bribed a *Peoria* Indian to murder him, for which he gave him a barrel of rum. The place of his death was Cahokia, a small village on the east side of the Mississippi, a little below St. Louis. Pontiac was one of the greatest of all the Indian chiefs known to the white people, and deserved a better fate. It is said, that during the war of 1763, he appointed a commissary, and issued bills of credit. So highly was he esteemed by the French inhabitants, that these were received by them. Montcalm thought much of him; and at the time of his death, Pontiac was dressed in a French uniform, presented to him by that commander. See verse 3, page 13.

10. The most accessible work in which the details of colonial events may be found, is Graham's *Colonial History of the United States*, in two volumes octavo, published by Blanchard and Lea, Philadelphia.

11. It must not be understood that there was yet a perfect unity of feeling among the various colonists. Sectional interests produced sectional jealousies, and these worked much mischief, even while soldiers from almost every colony were fighting shoulder to shoulder [verse 17, page 206] in the continental army. Burnaby, who traveled in America at this period, expressed the opinion, that sectional jealousy and dissimilarity would prevent a permanent union; yet he avers that the people were imbued with ideas of independence, and that it was frequently remarked among them, that "the tide of dominion was running westward, and that America was destined to be the mistress of the world."

QUESTIONS.—50. What Indian confederacy and conspiracy was formed? Who was the instigator? and what were his motives? What did Pontiac accomplish? How was he crushed?

justice, and prepared to demand and defend both. This is the point in the progress of the new and growing nation to which our observation is now directed, when the great question was to be decided, whether independent self-control should be enjoyed, or continued vassalage to an ungenerous parent should be endured. Our next topic will be the events connected with the settlement of that question.



RUINS OF TICONDEROGA.



PATRICK HENRY BEFORE THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.

CHAPTER V.

THE REVOLUTION. PRELIMINARY EVENTS.
1761-1775.

SECTION I.



JAMES OTIS.

1. THE principles of civil and religious liberty, and the inalienable rights of man which they involve, were recognized and asserted long before Columbus left Palos for the New World.¹ Their maintenance had shaken thrones and overturned dynasties before Charles the First was brought

to the block;² and they had lighted the torch of Revolution long before the trumpet-tones of James Otis³ and Patrick Henry⁴ aroused the Anglo-Americans⁵ to resist British aggression. From the earliest steps in the progress of the American colonies, we have seen the democratic theories of all past reformers developed into sturdy democratic practice; and a love of liberty, which had germinated beneath the heat of persecution in the Old World, budded and blossomed all over the New, wherever English hearts beat, or English tongues gave utterance.

1. Verse 8, page 29.

4. Note 5, page 175.

2. Verse 11, page 84.

3. Verse 9, page 174.

5. Note 5, page 153.

QUESTION.—1. What can you tell of the principles of civil and religious liberty?

2. Nor did English hearts alone cherish the precious seedling, nor English tongues alone utter the noble doctrines of popular sovereignty; but in the homes of all in this beautiful land, whatever country gave the inmates birth, there was a shrine of freedom, and a refuge for the oppressed. Here king-craft and priest-craft never had an abiding-place, and their ministers were always weak in the majestic presence of the popular will.

3. From the beginning, the colonists had evinced an impatience of arbitrary rule; and every manifestation of undue control by local magistrates or distant monarchs—every effort to abridge their liberties or absorb their gains, stimulated the growth of democratic principles. These permeated the whole social and political life in America, and finally evolved from the crude materials of royal charters, religious covenants and popular axioms, that galaxy of representative governments which, having the justice of the English Constitution, the truth of Christian ethics, and the wisdom of past experience for their foundation, were united in “the fullness of time,” in that symmetrical combination of free institutions, the **REPUBLIC OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**.

4. The war of the Revolution was not the violent result of recent discontents, but the culmination of a long series of causes tending to such a climax. The parliamentary enactments which kindled the rebellion, were not oppressive measures entirely novel. They had their counterparts in the British statute-books even as early as the restoration of monarchy [1660],¹ a hundred years before. They were only re-assertions of tyrannical legislative power and royal prerogatives, to which the colonies, in the weakness of their infancy and early youth, were compelled to submit. Now they had grown to maturity, and dared to insist upon receiving exact justice. They had recently emerged from an exhausting war, which, instead of weakening them, had taught them their real moral, political, and physical strength. They had also learned the important lesson of power in union.

5. Having acquired a mastery over the savages of the wilderness, and assisted in breaking the French power on their frontiers into atoms,² the colonists felt their manhood stirring within them, and they tacitly agreed no longer to submit to the narrow and oppressive policy of Great Britain. Their industry and commerce were too expansive to be confined within the narrow limits of those restrictions which the Board of Trade,³ from time to time, had imposed, and they determined to regard them as mere ropes of sand. For long and gloomy years they had struggled up, unaided and alone, from feebleness to strength. They had built fortifications, raised armies, and fought battles for England's glory and their own preservation, without England's aid, and often without her sympathy.⁴ And it was not until the growing import-

1. Verse 15, page 85.

2. Verses 47 and 48, pages 167, 168.

3. Note 3, page 107.

4. Georgia, alone, received parliamentary aid [verse 3, page 79], in the establishment of settlements. In all the other colonies, where vast sums were expended in fitting out expeditions, purchasing the soil of the

QUESTIONS.—2. When and by whom were these principles cherished? What were their effects? 3. What developed democratic sentiments? How were they manifested? What were their results in America? 4. What can you tell of the origin of the war of the Revolution? What remote causes assisted in producing it? 5. What made the colonists feel strong? What was the condition of their commerce? What had they done alone? What caused Britain to be just? What justified rebellion?

The form of British oppression.

ance of the French settlements excited the jealousy of Great Britain, that her ministers perceived the expediency of justice and liberality toward her colonies, in order to secure their loyalty and efficient co-operation.¹ Compelled to be self-reliant from the beginning, the colonists were made strong by the mother's neglect; and when to that neglect she added oppression and scorn, they felt justified in using their developed strength in defense of their rights.

6. The colonists could not complain of the willful exercise of tyrannical power on the part of Great Britain. There was no motive for such a course. They complained of an unjust and illiberal policy, which accomplished all the purposes of absolute tyranny. The rod of iron was often covered with velvet, and was wielded, as often, by ignorant rather than wicked hands. Yet the ignorant hand with the concealed rod, smote as lustily and offensively as if it had been a wicked one, and the rod bare. The first form of governmental and proprietary oppression,² was in the appointment of local rulers. The people were not *represented* in the appointing power. Then came commercial restrictions,³ prohibitions to manufacture,⁴ imposts upon exchanges,⁵ and direct taxation,⁶ by enactments of Parliament, in which the colonists were not *represented*. At the beginning they had asserted, and during their whole progress they had maintained, that important political maxim, that *TAXATION without REPRESENTATION is tyranny*. This was the fundamental doctrine of their political creed—this was the test of all parliamentary measures—this was the strong rock upon which the patriots of the Revolution anchored their faith and hope.

7. When the treaty of Paris [1763] closed the French and Indian war, the colonists looked forward to long years of prosperity and repose. A young monarch,⁷ virtuous and of upright intentions, was just seated [1761] upon the British throne. Having confidence in his integrity, and having recently felt the justice of the government, under the direction of Pitt,⁸ they were disposed to forget their grievances. But the serenity of the colonial sky soon disappeared, and it was not long before violent tempests were raging there. Even before the treaty at Paris, a cloud had arisen which portended future trouble. The war had exhausted the British treasury,⁹ and ministers had devised various schemes for replenishing it. They had observed the resources of the colonists, as manifested by their efforts during the recent struggle,¹⁰ and as they were

Indians, and sustaining the settlers, neither the crown nor Parliament ever contributed a farthing of pecuniary aid. The settling of Massachusetts, alone, cost a million of dollars. Lord Baltimore spent two hundred thousand dollars in colonizing Maryland; and William Penn became deeply involved in debt, in his efforts to settle and improve Pennsylvania.

1. Verse 36, page 163.

2. Three forms of government had existed, namely, *charter*, *proprietary*, and *royal*. The New England governments were based on royal charters; New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and the Carolinas, were owned and governed by individuals or companies; and the remainder were immediately subject to the crown. Notwithstanding this diversity in the source of government, the anti-monarchical spirit pervaded the people of all, from the beginning, and gave birth to popular legislative Assemblies.

3. Note 3, page 86.

4. Verse 9, page 146.

5. Note 1, page 175.

6. Verse 27, page 182.

7. George the Third. He was crowned in 1761, at the age of twenty years. He reigned almost sixty years, and died in 1820. His son was appointed Regent.

8. Verse 26, page 163.

9. Note 8, page 163.

10. French and Indian war. See page 147.

QUESTIONS.—6. Of what did the colonists justly complain? What did a narrow policy accomplish? Of what rights were the colonists deprived? What was their political maxim? 7. What gave the colonists promise of prosperity? In what did they take pride? What caused the government to disappoint them? What did the government do?

Writs of Assistance.

Opposition to them.

James Otis.

relieved from further hostilities by the subjugation of Canada¹ [1759], the government looked to them for aid. Instead of asking it as a *favor*, it was demanded as a *right*; instead of inviting the colonial assemblies to levy taxes and make appropriations, government assumed the right to tax their expanding commerce; and then commenced a vigorous enforcement of existing revenue laws, which had hitherto been only nominally oppressive.²

8. The first act which revealed the intentions of Parliament to tax the colonies by enforcing the revenue laws, was the authorization [1761], of *Writs of Assistance*. These were general search-warrants, which not only allowed the king's officers who held them, to break open any citizen's store or dwelling to search for and seize foreign merchandise, on which a duty had not been paid, but compelled sheriffs and others to assist in the work. The people could not brook such a system of petty oppression. The sanctities of private life might be invaded, at any time, by hirelings.

9. These writs were first issued in Massachusetts, and immediately great excitement prevailed. Their legality was questioned, and the matter was brought before a court held in the old town-hall in Boston. The advocate for the crown (Mr. Gridley) argued, that as Parliament was the supreme legislature for the whole British nation, and had authorized these writs, no subject had a right to complain. He was answered by James Otis,³ the younger, then advocate-general of the province. On that occasion, the intense fire of his patriotism beamed forth with inexpressible brilliancy, and his eloquence was like lightning, far-felt and consuming. On that day the trumpet of the Revolution was sounded. "The seeds of patriots and heroes were then and there sown;" and when the orator exclaimed, "To my dying day I will oppose, with all the power and faculties God has given me, all such instruments of slavery on one hand, and villainy on the other," the independence of the colonies was proclaimed.⁴ From that day began the triumphs of the popular will. Very few writs were issued, and these were ineffectual.

10. The young king unwisely listened to the councils of Bute,⁵ an unprincipled Scotch adventurer, who had been his tutor, and turned his back upon Pitt.⁶ Disastrous consequences ensued. Weak and corrupt men controlled

1. Verse 47, page 167.

2. Commercial restrictions were imposed upon the colonies as early as 1651 [note 3, page 86]. In 1660, 1672, 1676, 1691, and 1692, attempts were made by Parliament to derive a revenue by a tariff-taxation upon the colonies. In 1696, a proposition was made to levy a direct tax upon the colonies. Then, not only in Britain, but in America, the power of Parliament (wherein the colonists were not represented) to tax those colonies, was strenuously denied.

3. James Otis was born at Barnstable, Mass., in 1725. He was the leader of the Revolutionary party in Massachusetts, at the beginning. He was wounded by a British official in 1769, and never fairly recovered. He was killed by lightning in 1772. See portrait at the head of this chapter.

4. Later than this [1768], Otis wrote to a friend in London, and said: "Our fathers were a *good* people; we have been a *free* people, and if you will not let us remain so any longer, we shall be a *great* people, and the present measures can have no tendency but to hasten with great rapidity, events which every good and honest man would wish delayed for ages." He evidently alluded to the future independence of the colonies.

5. Bute was a gay Scotch earl, poor and proud. He became a favorite with the mother of George the Third, was appointed his tutor, and acquired such influence over the mind of the prince, that on his accession to the throne, he made him his chief minister and adviser. The English people were much incensed; and the unwise measures of the early years of George's reign, were properly laid to the charge of Bute. A placard was put up in London, with the words, "No Scotch minister—no petticoat government."

6. Pitt, disgusted by the ignorance and assurance of Bute, and the misplaced confidence of the king, resigned office. QUESTIONS.—8. What measure caused the first resistance? Can you explain its character? What was done in opposition? What was the result? 9. When and where were Writs of Assistance first issued? What occurred in the old town-hall at Boston?

The Stamp Act.

Opposition to it in America.

his cabinet, and Parliament approved of illiberal and unjust measures toward the colonists. The Sugar bill¹ was re-enacted, and at the same time, George Grenville, then prime-minister, proposed "certain stamp duties on the colonies." The subject was left open for consideration almost a year, when, in defiance of the universal opposition of the Americans, the famous Stamp Act, which declared that no legal instrument of writing should be valid, unless it bore a government stamp, became a law.² Now was executed without hesitation, a measure which no former ministry had possessed courage or recklessness enough to attempt.³

11. Intelligence of the passage of the Stamp Act produced general and intense indignation in America. The hearts of the people were yet thrilled by the eloquent denunciations of Otis,⁴ and soon Patrick Henry sent forth a response equally eloquent, from the heaving bosom of the Virginia Assembly.⁵ The people boldly expressed their indignation. The pulpit denounced the scheme, and associations of *Sons of Liberty*⁶ in every colony, put forth their energies in defense of popular freedom. The press, then assuming great power, spoke out like an oracle of Truth. In several cities popular excitement created mobs, and violence ensued. The Stamps were seized on their arrival, and secreted or burned. Stamp distributors⁷ were insulted and despised, and on the day when the law was to take effect [Nov. 1, 1765], there were no officials courageous enough to enforce it.



A STAMP.

signed office, and retired to his country seat at Hayes. The king esteemed him highly, but was too much controlled by Bute to follow his own inclinations.

1. A bill which imposed a duty upon sugar, coffee, indigo, etc., imported into the colonies from the West Indies.

2. The stamps were upon blue paper, in the form seen in the engraving above, and were to be attached to every piece of paper or parchment on which a legal instrument was written. For these stamps, government charged specific prices: for example, for a common property deed, one shilling and sixpence; for a diploma or a certificate of a college degree, two pounds, etc., etc.

3. During Walpole's administration [1732], a stamp duty was proposed. He said, "I will leave the taxation of America to some of my successors, who have more courage than I have." Sir William Keith, Governor of Pennsylvania, proposed such a tax in 1739. Franklin thought it just, when a delegate in the Colonial Congress at Albany, in 1754 [verse 10, p. 151]. But when it was proposed to Pitt in 1759, he said, "I will never burn my fingers with an American Stamp Act."

4. Verse 9, p. 174.
5. He introduced a series of resolutions, highly tinged with rebellious doctrines. He asserted the general rights of all the colonies; then the exclusive right of the Virginia Assembly to tax the people of that province, and boldly declared that the people were not bound to obey any law relative to taxation which did not proceed from their representatives. The last resolution declared that whoever should dissent from the doctrines inculcated in the others, should be considered an "enemy of the colonies." The introduction of these resolutions produced great excitement and alarm. Henry supported them with all the power of his wonderful eloquence. Some rose from their seats, and others sat in breathless silence. At length, when alluding to tyrants, he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—there was a cry of "Treason! treason!" He paused a moment, and said—"may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it." [See picture at the head of this chapter. The head of the speaker is a correct likeness of Patrick Henry.] A part of his resolutions were adopted, and these formed the first gauntlet of defiance cast at the feet of the British monarch. Their power was felt throughout the land.

6. These Associations were composed of popular leaders and others, who leagued with the avowed determination to resist oppression to the uttermost. After their organization in the different colonies, they formed a sort of National league, and by continual correspondence, aided effectually in preparing the way for the Revolution.

7. Men appointed by the crown to sell the government stamps, or stamped paper.

QUESTIONS.—10. What did the young king unwisely do? What consequences ensued? What odious measure did Parliament adopt, and how? 11. What were the effects of the Stamp Act, in America? What associations were formed? What did they do? How was the popular indignation evinced?

12. In the midst of this great excitement, a Congress of Delegates appointed by several colonies, assembled [Oct. 7] at New York.¹ They continued in session fourteen days, and in three well-written documents,² they ably set forth the grievances and the rights of the colonists, and petitioned the king and Parliament for a redress of the former, and acknowledgment of the latter. The proceedings of this *Second Colonial Congress*³ were applauded by all the provincial assemblies, and the people of America were as firmly united in heart and purpose then, as they were after the Declaration of Independence, more than ten years later.

13. The first of November was observed as a day of fasting and mourning. There were funeral processions and tolling of bells. The colors of vessels were placed at half-mast, and the newspapers exhibited the black-line tokens of public grief. The courts were now closed, legal marriages ceased, ships remained in port, and for some time all business was suspended. But the lull in the storm was of brief duration. The people were only gathering strength for more vigorous achievements in defense of their rights. The *Sons of Liberty*⁴ put forth new efforts; mobs began to assail the residences of officials, and burn distinguished royalists in effigy.⁵ Merchants entered into agreements not to import goods from Great Britain while the obnoxious Act remained a law, and domestic manufactures were commenced in almost every family.⁶ The wealthiest vied with the middling classes in economy, and wore clothing of their own manufacture. That wool might not become scarce, the use of sheep flesh for food was discouraged. Soon, from all classes in America, there went to the ears of the British ministry, a respectful, but firm, protest. It was seconded by the merchants and manufacturers of London, whose American trade was prostrated,⁷ and the voice, thus made potential, was heard and heeded in high places.

14. In the mean while, Grenville⁸ had been succeeded in office by the Marquis of Rockingham, a friend of the colonies, and an enlightened statesman.

1. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and South Carolina, were represented. The Assemblies of those not represented, declared their readiness to agree to whatever measures the Congress might adopt. Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts (who afterward commanded a corps of Tories) [note 3, page 185], presided.

2. A *Declaration of Rights*, written by John Cruger, of New York: a *Memorial to both Houses of Parliament*, by Robert R. Livingston, of New York; and a *Petition to the king*, by James Otis, of Massachusetts. 3. Verse 10, page 151.

4. Note 6, page 175.

5. Public indignation is thus sometimes manifested. A figure of a man intended to represent the obnoxious individual, is paraded, and then hung upon a scaffold, or burned at a stake, as an intimation of the deserved fate of the person thus represented. It was a common practice in England at the time in question, and has been often done in our own country since.

6. The newspapers of the day contain many laudatory notices of the conformity of wealthy people to these agreements. On one occasion, forty or fifty young ladies, who called themselves "Daughters of Liberty," met at the house of Rev. Mr. Morehead, in Boston, with their spinning wheels, and spun two hundred and thirty-two skeins of yarn, during the day, and presented them to the pastor. It is said "there were upward of one hundred spinners in Mr. Morehead's Society." "Within eighteen months," wrote a gentleman at Newport, R. I., "four hundred and eighty-seven yards of cloth, and thirty-six pairs of stockings, have been spun and knit in the family of James Nixon, of this town."

7. Half a million of dollars were due to them by the colonists, at that time, not a dollar of which could be collected under the existing state of things. 1. Verse 10, page 174.

QUESTIONS.—12. What Congress assembled at New York? What did the delegates do? What were the effects? 13. What happened on the first of November, 1765? What did the people do in opposition to the Stamp Act? How were they heard? 14. What change in the ministry took place? What was done concerning the Stamp Act? What was the result?

Repeal of the Stamp Act.

The Declaratory Act.

William Pitt, who had been called from his retirement¹ by the voice of the people, hoping much from the new ministry, appeared in Parliament as the earnest champion of the Americans. Justice and expediency demanded a repeal of the Stamp Act,² and early in January, 1766, a bill for that purpose was introduced into the House of Commons, and was warmly supported by Pitt, Barré, and others. Then Edmund Burke first appeared as the champion of right, and during the stormy debates on the subject which ensued, he achieved some of those earliest and most wonderful triumphs of oratory, which established his fame, and endeared him to the American people.³ The obnoxious Act was repealed on the 18th of March, 1766. London warehouses were illuminated, and flags decorated the shipping in the Thames. In America, public thanksgivings, bonfires and illuminations, attested the general joy, and Pitt,⁴ who had boldly declared his conviction that Parliament had no right to tax the colonies without their consent,⁵ was lauded as a political Messiah. Non-importation societies were dissolved, business was resumed, and the Americans confidently expected justice from the mother country, and a speedy reconciliation.



WILLIAM PITT.

15. But another storm soon began to lower. Pitt, himself, tenacious of British honor, and doubtful of the passage of the Repeal Bill without some concessions, had appended to it an act, which declared that Parliament possessed the power "to bind the colonies, in all cases whatsoever." The egg of tyranny which lay concealed in this "declaratory act," as it was called, was not perceived by the colonists, while their eyes were filled with tears of joy; but when calm reflection came, they saw clearly that germ of future oppressions, and were uneasy. They perceived the Repeal Bill to be only a truce in the war upon freedom in America, and they watched every movement of the government party with suspicion. Within a few months afterward, a brood of obnoxious measures were hatched from that egg, and aroused the fiercest indignation of the colonists.

16. A large portion of the House of Lords,⁶ the whole bench of Bishops,⁷

1. Note 6, page 174.

2. Verse 10, page 174.

3. Born in Ireland in 1730. He became a lawyer; was a popular writer as well as speaker; was in office about thirty years, and died in 1797.

4. See portrait on page 177. William Pitt was born in 1708, and held many high offices. During an exciting debate in Parliament, on American affairs, in 1778, he swooned, and died within a month afterward.

5. "Taxation," said Pitt, "is no part of the governing or legislative power. Taxes are the voluntary gift or grant of the Commons alone." "I rejoice," he said, "that America has resisted. Three millions of people, so dead to all the feelings of liberty, as voluntarily to become slaves, would have been fit instruments to make slaves of the rest." And Colonel Barré declared that the colonies were planted by English oppression, grew by neglect, and in all the essential elements of a free people, were perfectly independent of Great Britain. He then warned the government to act justly, or the colonies would be lost to Great Britain forever.

6. Every peer in the British realm is a legislator, by virtue of his title; and when they are assembled for legislative duties, they constitute the House of Lords, or upper branch of the legislature, answering, in some degree, to our Senate.

7. Two archbishops, and twenty-four bishops of England and Wales, have a right to sit and vote in the

QUESTION.—15. What caused new excitements in America?

The mutiny act.

New taxation schemes.

Action of the colonial assemblies.

and many of the Commons, were favorable to coercive measures toward the Americans. Not doubting the power of Parliament to tax them, they prevailed on the Ministry to adopt new schemes for replenishing the exhausted treasury¹ from the coffers of the colonists, and urged the justice of employing arms, if necessary, to enforce obedience. Troops were accordingly sent to America [June, 1766]; and a Mutiny Act was passed, which provided for their partial subsistence by the colonies.² The appearance of these troops in New York, and the order for the people to feed and shelter the avowed instruments of their own enslavement, produced violent outbreaks in that city, and burning indignation all over the land. The Assembly of New York arrayed itself against the government, and refused compliance with the demands of the obnoxious act.

17. Soon after these troops were sent to America, Pitt was called to the head of the Ministry, and was created Earl of Chatham [July 30, 1766]. He opposed the new measures as unjust and unwise. Charles Townshend, the chancellor of the exchequer, coalesced with Grenville³ in bringing new taxation schemes before Parliament. A bill was passed [June, 1767] for levying duties upon tea, glass, paper, painters' colors, etc., imported into the colonies. Another was passed in July for establishing a Board of Trade in the colonies, independent of colonial legislation, and for creating resident commissioners of customs to enforce the revenue laws.⁴ Then another, a few days later, which forbade the New York Assembly to perform any legislative act whatever, until it should comply with the requisitions of the Mutiny Act.⁵

18. This direct blow at popular liberty, and these new taxation schemes, produced excitement throughout the colonies, almost as violent as those on account of the Stamp Act.⁶ The colonial Assemblies boldly protested; new non-importation associations were formed; pamphlets and newspapers were filled with inflammatory appeals to the people, defining their rights, and urging them to a united resistance;⁷ and early in 1768, almost every colonial Assembly had boldly expressed its conviction that Parliament had no right to tax the colonies. These expressions were in response to a circular issued by Massachusetts [Feb. 1768] to the several Assemblies, asking their co-operation in obtaining a redress of grievances. That circular greatly offended the Min-

House of Lords, and have the same political importance as the peers. By the act of union between Ireland and England, four "lords spiritual," from among the archbishops and bishops of the former country, have a seat in the House of Lords. The "lords temporal and the lords spiritual" constitute the *House of Lords*. The *House of Commons* is composed of men elected by the people, and answers to the *House of Representatives* of our Federal Congress.

1. Verse 7, page 173.
2. This act also allowed military officers, possessing a warrant from a justice of the peace, to break into any house where he might suspect deserters were concealed. Like the *Writs of Assistance* [verse 8, page 174, this power might be used for wicked purposes.

3. Verse 10, page 174. In January, 1737, Grenville proposed a direct taxation of the colonies to the amount of twenty thousand dollars.

4. Note 2, page 174, and note 3, page 107.

5. Note 2, page 178.

6. Verse 10, page 174.

7. Among the most powerful of these appeals, were a series of letters, written by John Dickinson of Philadelphia, and entitled, *Letters of a Pennsylvania Farmer*. Like Paine's *Crisis*, ten years later [note 3 page 202], these Letters produced a wide-spread and powerful effect on the public mind. James Otis asserted, in a pamphlet, that "taxes on trade [tariffs], if designed to raise a revenue, were just as much a violation of their rights as any other tax."

QUESTIONS.—16. Who proposed to compel the Americans to submission? What act was passed? What then occurred? 17. What happened to Pitt? What measures were proposed? and by whom? 18. What was now done in America? What publications appeared? What did the Assemblies do?

Ministerial circular.

Commissioners of customs.

Troops at Boston.

istry; and the Governor of Massachusetts was instructed to command the Assembly, in the king's name, to rescind the resolution adopting it. The Assembly passed [June 30, 1768] an almost unanimous vote *not* to rescind,¹ and made this very order an evidence of the intentions of government to enslave the colonists, by restraining the free speech and action of their representatives.

19. The British Ministry continued to disregard the portentous warnings which every vessel from the New World bore to their ears. Having resolved on employing physical force in the maintenance of obedience, and not doubting its potency, they became more regardless of even the forms of justice, and began to treat the colonists as rebellious subjects, rather than as free British brethren. Ministers sent circulars to the colonial Assemblies, warning them not to imitate the factious disobedience of Massachusetts;² and the royal governors were ordered to enforce submission by all means in their power. The effect of these circulars was to disgust and irritate the Assemblies, and to stimulate their sympathy for Massachusetts, now made the special object of royal displeasure.

20. The new commissioners of customs³ arrived at Boston in May, 1768. They were regarded with as much contempt as were the tax-gatherers in Judea, in the time of our Saviour.⁴ It was difficult to restrain the more ignorant and excitable portion of the population from committing personal violence. A crisis soon arrived. In June, 1768, the sloop, *Liberty*, belonging to John Hancock, one of the leaders of the popular mind in Boston,⁵ arrived at that port with a cargo of Madeira wine. The commissioners demanded the payment of duties, and when it was refused, they seized [June 10] the vessel. The news spread over the town, and the people resolved on effectual resistance. The commissioners were assailed by a mob; their houses were damaged; and they were obliged to seek safety in *Castle William*, a small fortress at the entrance to the harbor.⁶

21. Alarmed by these demonstrations of the popular feeling, Governor Bernard unwisely invited General Gage,⁷ then in command of British troops at Halifax, to bring soldiers to Boston to overawe the inhabitants.⁸ They came in September [Sept. 27, 1768], seven hundred in number, and on a quiet Sabbath morning, landed under cover of the cannons of the British ships which brought them, and with drums beating, and colors flying, they marched to the Common,⁹ with all the parade of a victorious army entering a conquered

1. James Otis and Samuel Adams were the principal speakers on this occasion. "When Lord Hillsborough [colonial secretary] knows," said the former, "that we will not rescind our acts, he should apply to Parliament to rescind *theirs*. Let Britons rescind their measures, or the colonies are lost to them forever." 2. Verse 18, page 178.

3. Verse 17, page 178.
4. The *publicans*, or toll-gatherers of Judea, being a standing monument of the degradation of the Jews under the Roman yoke, were abhorred. One of the accusations against our Saviour was, that he did "eat with *publicans* and sinners."

5. Verse 10, page 203.
6. About three miles S.E. from Boston. The fortress was ceded to the U. S. in 1793; and the following year it was visited by President Adams, and named *Fort Independence*, its present title.

7. Verse 47, page 167.

8. Previous to this request, the British ministry had resolved to send troops thither.

9. A large public park, on the southern slope of Beacon Hill.

QUESTIONS.—19. How did the ministry act? What orders were issued? How did these affect the colonists? 20. How were the commissioners of customs regarded? What produced excitement in Boston? What was effected? 21. What insult was offered to the people of Boston? What did British troops do?

Proceedings in parliament.

Disputes with governors.

Quarrel with the troops.

city. Religion, popular freedom, patriotism, were all outraged, and the cup of the people's indignation was full.¹ The colonists were taught the necessary lesson, that armed resistance must oppose armed oppression.²

22. The Assembly of Massachusetts refused to afford food and shelter for the royal troops among them, and for this offense, Parliament, now become the supple instrument of the crown, censured their disobedience, approved of coercive measures, and by resolution, prayed the king to revive a long obsolete statute of Henry the Eighth, by which the Governor of the refractory colony should be required to arrest and send to England for trial, on a charge of treason, the ringleaders in the recent tumults.³ The colonial Assembly indignantly responded by re-asserting the chartered privileges of the people, and denying the right of the king to take an offender from the country, for trial. And in the House of Commons a powerful minority battled manfully for the Americans. Burke pronounced the idea of reviving that old statute as "horrible." "Can you not trust the juries of that country?" he asked. "If you have not a party among two millions of people, you must either change your plans of government, or renounce the colonies forever." But a majority voted [Jan. 26, 1769] in favor of the resolution.

23. For more than a year afterward the colonies were agitated by disputes with the royal governors. The Assembly of Massachusetts, encouraged by the expressed sympathy of the other colonies, firmly refused to appropriate a single dollar for the support of the troops. They even demanded their withdrawal from the city, and refused to transact any legislative business while they remained. Daily occurrences exasperated the people against the troops, and finally led to bloodshed in the streets of Boston.

24. A ropemaker quarreled with a soldier [March 2, 1770], and struck him. Out of this affray grew a fight between several soldiers and ropemakers. The latter were beaten, and this result aroused the vengeance of the more excitable portion of the inhabitants. A few evenings afterward [March 5], about seven hundred of them assembled in the streets for the avowed purpose of attacking the troops.⁴ A sentinel was assaulted near the custom-house, when Captain



SAMUEL ADAMS.

1. As the people refused to supply the troops with quarters, they were placed, some in the State House, some in Faneuil Hall [page 184], and others in tents on the Common. Cannons were planted at different points; sentinels challenged the citizens as they passed; and the whole city had the appearance of a camp.

2. There were, at that time, full two hundred thousand men in the colonies, capable of bearing arms. 3. Verse 20, page 179.

4. These were addressed by a tall man, disguised by a white wig, and a scarlet cloak, who closed his harangue by shouting "To the main guard! To the main guard!" and then disappeared. It was always believed that the tall man was Samuel Adams, one of the most inflexible patriots of the Revolution, and at that time a popular leader. He was a descendant of one of the early Puritans [verse 6, page 60], and was born in Boston in 1722. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; was afterward Governor of Massachusetts, and died in 1803. A purer patriot than Samuel Adams, never lived.

QUESTIONS.—22. What did the Massachusetts Assembly do? What did Parliament do? How were certain measures regarded by the colonists and by Burke in the House of Commons? 23. What continued to disturb the colonists? What did the Massachusetts Assembly do? 24. What quarrel and fight happened in Boston? What sad affair occurred?

Riot and massacre in Boston.

Trial of soldiers.

Duty upon tea.

Preston, commander of the guard, went to his rescue with eight armed men. Irritated and assailed by the mob, the soldiers fired upon the citizens, killed three, and dangerously wounded five.¹ The mob instantly retreated, when all the bells of the city rang an alarm, and in less than an hour several thousands of exasperated citizens were in the streets. A terrible scene of blood would have ensued, had not Governor Hutchinson assured the people that justice should be vindicated in the morning.

25. The people demanded the instant removal of the troops from Boston and the trial of Captain Preston and his men for murder. These demands were complied with. The troops were removed to *Castle William*² [March 12, 1770], and Preston, ably defended by John Adams and Josiah Quincy, two of the popular leaders, was tried and acquitted, with six of his men, by a Boston jury. The other two soldiers were found guilty of manslaughter. This result was a comment on the enforcement of the statute of Henry the Eighth, highly favorable to the Americans.³ It showed that in the midst of popular excitement, the strong conservative principles of justice bore rule. The victims of the riot were regarded as martyrs to liberty,⁴ and for many years, the memory of the "Boston Massacre," as it was called, was kept alive by anniversary orations in the city and vicinity.

26. On the day of the bloody riot in Boston [March 5], Lord North, who was then the English prime minister, proposed to Parliament a repeal of all duties imposed by the act of 1767,⁵ except that upon tea. An act to that effect was passed a month afterward [April 12]. This concession was wrung from the minister by the clamor of English merchants and manufacturers, who again felt severely the operations of the non-importation associations in America. As tea was a luxury, North supposed the colonists would not object to the small duty laid upon that article, and he retained it as a standing assertion of the *right* of Parliament to impose such duties. The minister entirely mistook the character of the people he was dealing with. It was not the petty *amount* of duties of which they complained, for all the taxes yet imposed were not in the least burdensome to them. They were contending for a great *principle* which lay at the foundation of their liberties; and they regarded the imposition of a duty upon one article as much a violation of their sacred rights, as if ten were included. So they continued their non-importation league against the purchase and use of tea.⁶

1. The leader of the mob was a powerful mulatto, named Attucks. He and Samuel Gray, and James Caldwell, were killed instantly; two others received mortal wounds.

2. Note 6, page 179.

3. Verse 22, page 180. It was so regarded in England.

4. They were buried with great parade. All the bells of Boston and vicinity tolled a funeral knell while the procession was moving; and as intended, the affair made a deep impression on the public mind.

5. Verse 17, page 178.

6. Even before North's proposition was made to Parliament, special agreements concerning the disuse of tea, had been made. Already the popular feeling on this subject had been manifested toward a Boston merchant who continued to sell tea. A company of half-grown boys placed an effigy near his door, with a finger upon it pointing toward his store. While a man was attempting to pull it down, he was pelted with dirt and stones. He ran into the store, and seizing a gun discharged its contents among the crowd. A

QUESTIONS.—25. What did the people demand? How were these demands complied with? How did the Americans exhibit justice? How were the victims of riot regarded? 26. What did Lord North propose? What made him do it? How did he mistake the character of the Americans? What were the Americans contending for?

The Regulators of North Carolina.

Capture and destruction of the *Gaspe*.

27. In 1771, the Carolinas, hitherto exempted from violent outbursts of popular indignation, became the theater of great excitement. To satisfy the rapacity and pride of royal governors, the industry of the province of North Carolina, especially, was enormously taxed.¹ The oppression was real, not an abstract principle, as at the North. The people in the interior at length formed associations, designed to resist unjust taxation, and to control public affairs. They called themselves *Regulators*; and in 1771 were too numerous to be overawed by local magistrates. Their operations assumed the character of open rebellion, and Governor Tryon² marched into that region with an armed force, to subdue them. They met him upon the Alamance Creek, in Alamance county [May 16, 1771], and there a bloody skirmish ensued. The Regulators were subdued and dispersed, and Tryon marched back in triumph to the sea-board, after hanging six of the leaders [June 19]. These events aroused, throughout the South, the fiercest hatred of British power, and stimulated that earnest patriotism so early displayed by the people below the Roanoke, when the Revolution broke out.³

28. In June, the following year, an event on Narraganset Bay widened the breach between Great Britain and her colonies. The commander of the British armed schooner *Gaspe*, stationed there to assist the commissioners of customs⁴ in enforcing the revenue laws, annoyed the American navigators by haughtily commanding them to lower their colors when they passed his vessel, in token of obedience. The William Tells of the Bay refused to bow to the cap of this petty Gesler.⁵ For such disobedience, a Providence sloop was chased by the schooner. The latter grounded upon a low sandy point; and on that night [June 9, 1772], sixty-four armed men went down from Providence in boats, captured the people on board the *Gaspe*, and burned the vessel. Although a large reward was offered for the perpetrators (who were well known in Providence),⁶ they were never betrayed.

29. Early in 1773, a new thought upon taxation entered the brain of Lord North.⁷ The East India Company,⁸ having lost their valuable tea customers

boy named Snyder was killed, and Christopher Gore (afterward Governor of Massachusetts), was wounded. The affair produced great excitement. At about the same time three hundred "mistresses of families," in Boston, signed a pledge of total abstinence from the use of tea, while the duty remained upon it. A few days afterward a large number of young ladies signed a similar pledge.

1. Governor Tryon caused a palace to be erected for his residence, at Newbern, at a cost of \$75,000, for the payment of which the province was taxed. This was in 1768, and was one of the principal causes of discontent, which produced the outbreak here mentioned.

2. Verse 5, page 200.

3. Verse 14, page 193.

4. Verse 17, page 178.

5. Gesler was an Austrian governor of one of the cantons of Switzerland. He placed his cap on a pole, at a gate of the town, and ordered all to bow to it, when they should enter. William Tell, a brave leader of the people, refused. He was imprisoned for disobedience, escaped, aroused his countrymen to arms, drove their Austrian masters out of the land, and achieved the independence of Switzerland.

6. One of the leaders was Abraham Whipple, a naval commander during the Revolution [verse 2, page 239]. Several others were afterward distinguished for bravery during that struggle. Four years afterward, when Sir James Wallace, a British commander, was in the vicinity of Newport, Whipple became known as the leader of the attack on the *Gaspe*. Wallace sent him the following letter: "You, Abraham Whipple, on the 9th of June, 1772, burned his majesty's vessel, the *Gaspe*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm." To this Whipple replied: "To Sir James Wallace; Sir: Always catch a man before you hang him. ABRAHAM WHIPPLE."

7. He was also Earl of Guilford. He was an honest, but misguided statesman. He died in 1792, at the age of sixty years. He was prime minister of England during almost the entire period of our war for Independence.

8. The English East India Company was formed and chartered in 1600, for the purpose of carrying on a

QUESTIONS.—27. What happened in North Carolina? Who were the *Regulators*? What did oppressive measures effect? 28. What happened in Narraganset Bay?

New tea act.

The East India company.

Tea-ships sent to America.

in America, by the operation of the non-importation associations,¹ and having more than seventeen millions of pounds of the herb in their warehouses in England, petitioned Parliament to take off the duty of three pence a pound, levied upon the importation of the article into America. The company agreed to pay the government more than an equal amount, in export duty, if the change should be made. Here was an excellent opportunity for the government to act justly and wisely, and to produce a perfect reconciliation; but the stupid ministry, fearing it might be considered a submission to "rebellious subjects," refused the olive branch of peace. But, continuing to misapprehend the real question at issue, North introduced a bill into Parliament, allowing the company to export their teas to America, on their own account, without paying any export duty. As this would make tea cheaper in America than in England, he concluded that Americans would not object to paying the three pence duty. This concession to a commercial monopoly, while spurning the appeals of a great principle, only created contempt and indignation throughout the colonies.



LORD NORTH.

30. The East India Company, blind as the minister, regarded the American market as now open for their tea, and soon after the passage of the bill [May 10, 1773], several large ships, heavily laden with the article, were on their way across the Atlantic. These movements were known in America before the arrival of any of the ships, and the people in most of the sea-board towns resolved that it should not even be landed. The ships which arrived at New York and Philadelphia, returned to England with their cargoes; at Annapolis, it was destroyed; at Charleston it was landed, but was not allowed to be sold; while at Boston, the attempts of the governor and his friends,² who were consignees, to land the tea in defiance of the public feeling, resulted in the destruction of a large quantity of it. On a cold moonlight night [December 16, 1773], at the close of the last of several spirited meetings of the citizens held at Faneuil Hall,³ a party of about sixty persons, some disguised as Indians,

trade by sea between England and the countries lying east of the Cape of Good Hope [note 1, page 28]. It continued prosperous; and about the middle of the last century, the governor of its stations in India, under the pretense of obtaining security for their trade, subdued small territories, and thus planted the foundation of that great British empire in the East, which now comprises the whole of Hindostan, from Cape Comorin to the Himalaya mountains, with a population of more than one hundred and twenty millions of people.

1. Verse 13, page 176.

2. The public mind in Massachusetts was greatly inflamed against Governor Hutchinson at this time, whose letters to a member of Parliament, recommending stringent measures toward the colonies, had been sent to the Speaker of the colonial Assembly, by Dr. Franklin. At about the same time, Parliament had passed a law, making the governor and judges of Massachusetts independent of the Assembly for their salaries, these being paid out of the revenues in the hands of the commissioners of customs. This removal of these officials beyond all dependence upon the people, constituted them fit instruments of the crown for oppressing the inhabitants, and in that aspect the colonists viewed the measure, and condemned it.

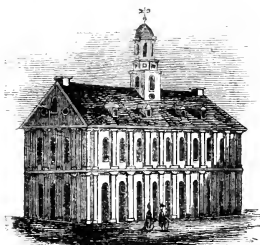
3. Because the Revolutionary meetings in Boston were held in Faneuil Hall, it was (and still is) called *The Cradle of Liberty*. It was built and presented to the town by Peter Faneuil, in 1742. The picture on the next page shows its form during the Revolution.

QUESTIONS.—29. What new scheme was proposed? What did the ministry do? How did the Americans regard the matter? 30. How was the East India Company deceived? What did it do? How were cargoes of tea received in America? What happened in Boston?

Destruction of tea at Boston.

The Boston port bill.

Other oppressive measures.



FANEUIL HALL.

rushed on board two vessels in the harbor, laden with tea, tore open the hatches, and in the course of two hours, three hundred and forty-two chests containing the herb, were broken open, and their contents cast into the water.

31. This event produced a powerful sensation throughout the British realm. All of the American colonies sympathized with the Bostonians, but the exasperated government adopted retaliatory measures, notwithstanding full payment for damage to their property was promised to the East India Company. Parliament, by enactment [March 7, 1774], ordered the port of Boston to be closed against all commercial transactions whatever, and the removal of the custom-house, courts of justice, and other public offices, to Salem. The Salem people patriotically refused the proffered advantage at the expense of their neighbors; and the inhabitants of Marblehead, fifteen miles distant, offered the free use of their harbor and wharves to the merchants of Boston. Soon after the passage of the Boston Port Bill, another act which leveled a blow at the charter of Massachusetts, was made a law [March 28, 1774]. It deprived the people of many of the dearest privileges guaranteed by that instrument.¹ A third retaliatory act was passed on the 21st of April, providing for the trial, in England, of all persons charged in the colonies with murders committed in support of government, giving, as Colonel Barré said, "encouragement to military insolence already so insupportable." A fourth bill, providing for the quartering of troops in America, was also passed by large majorities in both Houses of Parliament; and in anticipation of rebellion in America, a fifth act was passed, making great concessions to the Roman Catholics in Canada, known as the Quebec Act. This excited the animosity of all Protestants. These measures created universal indignation toward the government, and sympathy for the people of Boston.

32. The Port Bill went into operation on the 1st of June, 1774. It was a heavy blow for Boston. Business was crushed, and great suffering ensued. Everywhere, tokens of the liveliest sympathy were manifested. Flour, rice, cereal grains, fuel, and money were sent to the people from the different colonies; and sympathizers in London subscribed one hundred and fifty thousand dollars for the poor of Boston.

33. To enforce these oppressive laws, General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British army in America,² was appointed governor of Massachusetts, and an additional military force was ordered to Boston. These coercive

1. It empowered sheriffs, appointed by the crown, to select juries, instead of leaving that power with the selectmen of the towns, who were chosen by the people. It also prohibited all town meetings and other gatherings. It provided for the appointment of the councils, judges, justices of the peace, etc., by the crown or its representative.
2. Verse 21, page 179.

QUESTIONS.—31. How was the destruction of the tea in Boston harbor regarded? What did the people offer to do? What parliamentary measures did it occasion? 32. What was the effect of the Boston Port Bill? What sympathy was manifested?

Committees of correspondence.

Call for a continental congress.

demonstrations greatly increased the public irritation, and diminished the hopes of reconciliation. Slavish submission or armed resistance was now the alternative presented to the American people. Committees of correspondence which had been formed in every colony in 1773,¹ had been busy in the interchange of sentiments and opinions, and throughout the entire community of Anglo-Americans there was evidently a general consonance of feeling. Yet they hesitated, and resolved to deliberate in solemn council before they should appeal to "the last argument of kings."²

34. The patriots of Massachusetts stood not alone in their integrity, for in all the colonies the Whigs³ were as bold and inflexible. But those of Massachusetts, being the special objects of royal vengeance,⁴ suffered more and required more boldness to act among bristling bayonets and shot-ted cannons. Yet they grew stronger every day under persecution, and bolder as the frowns of British power became darker. Even while troops to overawe them were parading the streets of Boston, sturdy representatives of the people assembled at Salem,⁵ and sent forth an invitation to all the colonies to appoint delegates to meet in a general Congress at Philadelphia on the 5th of September following [1774]. It met with a hearty response from twelve of the thirteen colonies, and the Press seconded the measures with great emphasis. Some newspapers bore a significant device. It was a snake, cut into thirteen parts, each part bearing the initials of a colony upon it, as seen in the engraving. Under these were the significant words, *Unite, or die*.



SNAKE DEVICE.

35. Before the close of August, the delegates were appointed, and the First Continental Congress⁶ assembled in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia [Sept. 5, 1774], on the appointed day. All but Georgia were represented. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was appointed President, and Charles Thomson, of Pennsylvania, Secretary.⁷ The regular business of the Congress commenced

1. At a consultation of leading members of the Virginia House of Assembly in March, 1773, held in the old Raleigh tavern at Williamsburg, at which Patrick Henry, Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and others were present, it was agreed to submit a resolution in the House the following day, appointing a committee of vigilance and correspondence, and recommending the same to the other colonies. The measure was carried, and these committees formed one of the most powerful engines in carrying on the work of the Revolution. Similar committees had already been formed in several towns in Massachusetts.

2. These words, in Latin, were often placed upon cannons.

3. The terms WHIG and TORY, had been long used in England as titles of political parties. The former denoted the opposers of royalty; the latter indicated its supporters. These terms were introduced into America two or three years before the Revolution broke out, and became the distinctive titles of the *patriots* and *loyalists*.

4. Verse 31, page 181.

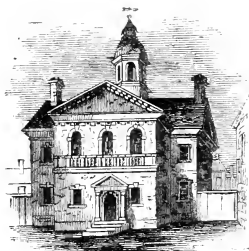
5. At that meeting of the General Assembly of Massachusetts, the patriots matured a plan for a general Congress, provided for munitions of war to resist British power in their own province, and formed a general non-importation league for the whole country. In the midst of their proceedings, General Gage sent his secretary to dissolve them, but the doors of the Assembly chamber were locked, and the key was in Samuel Adams's pocket. Having finished their business, the Assembly adjourned, and thus ended the last session of that body, under a royal governor.

6. This name was given to distinguish it from the two colonial Congresses [pages 151 and 176] already held; one at Albany in 1754, the other at New York in 1765.

7. Thomson was Secretary of Congress perpetually from 1774, until the adoption of the Federal Constitution, and the organization of the new government, in 1789. He was born in Ireland in 1730, came to America when eleven years of age, and died in 1824, at the age of ninety-four years.

QUESTIONS.—33. What was done to enslave the people? What powerful revolutionary measure was now in operation? What was the public feeling? 34. What spirit was visible in all the colonies? What did the Massachusetts people do and suffer? What did the Assembly of that province propose?

on the morning of the 7th, after an impressive prayer for Divine guidance, uttered by the Rev. Jacob Duché,¹ of Philadelphia. They remained in session until the 26th of October, during which time they matured measures for future action, which met with the general approbation of the American people.²

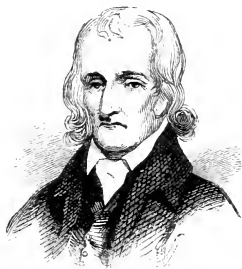


CARPENTER'S HALL.

They prepared and put forth several State papers,³ marked by such signal ability and wisdom, as to draw from the Earl of Chatham, these words in the House of Lords: "I must declare and avow that in all my reading and studying of history—(and it has been my favorite study—I have read Thucydides, and have studied and admired the master States of the world)—that for solidity of reasoning,

force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, under such a complication of circumstances, no nation or body of men can stand in preference to the general Congress at Philadelphia."⁴

36. In all its proceedings Congress manifested decorum, firmness,⁵ moderation and loyalty; and when the delegates resolved to adjourn to meet again at the same place on the 10th of May following [1775], unless the desired redress of grievances should be obtained, they did so with an earnest hope that a reconciliation might speedily take place, and render another national council unnecessary. But they were doomed to bitter disappointment. Great Britain was blind and stubborn still.



CHARLES THOMSON.

1. Duche was a minister of the Church of England, and became a Tory.

2. They prepared a plan for a general commercial non-intercourse with Great Britain and her West Indian possessions, which was called *The American Association*, and was recommended for adoption throughout the country. It consisted of fourteen articles. In addition to the non-intercourse provisions, it was recommended to abandon the slave-trade, to improve the breed of sheep, to abstain from all extravagances in living and indulgence in horse-racing, etc., and the appointment of a committee in every town to promote conformity to the requirements of the *Association*. It was signed by the 52 members present.

3. A Bill of Rights; An Address to the people of Great Britain, written by John Jay; another to the several Anglo-American colonies, written by William Livingston; another to the inhabitants of Quebec, and a petition to the king. In these, the grievances and the rights of the colonies were ably set forth.

4. He also said in a letter to Stephen Sayre, on the 24th of December, 1774, "I have not words to express my satisfaction that the Congress has conducted this most arduous and delicate business, with such manly wisdom and calm resolution, as do the highest honor to their deliberation."

5. On the 8th of October they unanimously Resolved, That this Congress approve the opposition of the inhabitants of the Massachusetts Bay, to the execution of the late acts of Parliament [verse 31, page 184], and if the same shall be attempted to be carried into execution by force, in such case all America ought to support them in their opposition." This resolution, in letter and spirit, was the embodiment of the Revolutionary sentiment.

QUESTIONS.—35. Can you relate the circumstances of the assembling of the first *Continental Congress*? What was done during the session? What opinions did Pitt express concerning its members? 36. What was the character and conduct of the first *Continental Congress*? What was hoped for?

Preparations for war.

Minute-men.

Effects of a rumor.

SECTION II.

FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1775.]

1. During the Summer of 1774, the people commenced arming themselves. They practiced daily in military exercises; the manufacture of arms and gun-powder was encouraged; and throughout Massachusetts in particular, the people were enrolled in companies, and prepared to take arms at a moment's warning. From this circumstance they were called *minute-men*. At the same time, the Massachusetts leaders were laboring, with intense zeal, to place the province in a condition to rise in open and united rebellion when necessity should demand. And all over the land, the provincial assemblies, public speakers and the press, were boldly proclaiming the right of resistance. These demonstrations alarmed General Gage,¹ and he commenced fortifying Boston Neck.² He also seized and conveyed to the city large quantities of ammunition found in the neighboring villages, and employed stringent measures for preventing intercourse between the patriots in the city and in the country. The exasperated people were anxious to attack the soldiers in Boston, but they were restrained by prudent counselors.³

2. On the 3d of September, a rumor went abroad that British ships were cannonading Boston. Within two days, full thirty thousand *minute-men* were under arms, and hastening toward that city. They were met by a contradiction of the rumor; but the event conveyed such a portentous lesson to Gage, that he pushed forward his military preparations with as much vigor as the opposition of the people would allow.⁴ He thought it expedient to be more conciliatory; and he summoned the colonial Assembly to meet at Salem on the 5th of October. Then dreading their presence, he revoked the order. Ninety delegates met, however, and organized by the appointment of John Hancock⁵ president. They then went to Cambridge, where they formed a Provincial Congress, and labored earnestly in preparations for that armed resistance which now appeared inevitable. They made provisions for an army of twelve thousand men; solicited other New England colonies to augment it to twenty thousand; and appointed Jedediah Preble and Artemas Ward,⁶

1. Verse 33, page 184. Thomas Gage was a native of England; was Governor of Montreal [verse 47, page 167] in 1760, and commander-in-chief in 1763. He was Governor of Massachusetts in 1774; left America in 1775; and died in 1787.

2. The peninsula of Boston was originally connected with the main land by a narrow isthmus called the Neck. It has been greatly widened by filling in the marginal morasses; and over it now passes the fine avenue which connects the city with Roxbury, on the main.

3. Many hundreds of armed men assembled at Cambridge. At Charlestown, the people took possession of the arsenal, after Gage had carried off the powder. At Portsmouth, N. H., they captured the fort, and carried off the ammunition. At Newport, R. I., the people seized the powder, and took possession of forty pieces of cannon at the entrance of the harbor. In New York, Philadelphia, Annapolis, Williamsburg, Charleston, and Savannah, the people took active defensive measures, and the whole country was in a blaze of indignation.

4. Carpenters refused to work on the fortifications; and much of the material was destroyed by fire at night in spite of the vigilance of the guards. Gage sent to New York for timber and workmen. The people there would not permit either to leave their port.

5. Verse 20, page 179.

6. Verse 8, page 190.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the people do in 1774? Who were *minute-men*? What alarmed General Gage? What did he do? 2. What rumor went abroad? What were the effects? What did the Massachusetts Assembly do?

Proceedings in Parliament.

The British army in Boston.

March toward Lexington.

men of experience in the French and Indian war,¹ generals of all the troops that might be raised.

3. Such was the condition of affairs in America, when Parliament assembled in 1775. Dr. Franklin and others,² then in England, had given a wide circulation to the Addresses put forth by the Continental Congress;³ and the English mind was already influenced in favor of the Americans. Pitt came on crutches⁴ from his retirement, to speak for them in the House of Lords, and he proposed conciliatory measures [Jan. 7, 1775], which were rejected. In their stead, Parliament struck another severe blow at the industry of New England [March] by prohibiting fishing on the banks of Newfoundland.⁵ The Ministers also endeavored to promote dissensions in America, by crippling the trade of the southern and middle colonies, but exempting New York, Delaware, and North Carolina. The scheme signally failed. Common dangers and common interests, drew the ligaments of fraternity closer than ever, and in the Spring of 1775, all hope of reconciliation had vanished. The people of the colonies, though weak in military resources, were strong in purpose; and, relying upon the justice of their cause, and the assistance of the Lord God Omnipotent, they resolved to defy the fleets and armies of Great Britain.

4. There were three thousand British troops in Boston, on the 1st of April, 1775, and Gage felt certain that he could suppress insurrections. Yet he felt uneasy concerning the gathering of ammunition and stores⁶ by the patriots at Concord, sixteen miles from Boston. Toward midnight, on the 18th, he secretly dispatched eight hundred men, under Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, to destroy them. All his precautions were vain. The vigilant Dr. Warren,⁷ who was secretly watching all the movements of Gage, became aware of the expedition early in the evening; and when it moved, Paul Revere⁸ had landed at Charlestown, and was on his way to Concord to arouse the inhabitants and the minute-men.⁹ Soon afterward, church-bells, muskets, and cannons, spread the alarm over the country; and when at dawn [April 19, 1775], Pitcairn, with the advanced guard, reached Lexington, a few miles from Concord, he found eighty determined minute-men drawn up to oppose him. Pitcairn rode forward, and shouted, "Dis-

1. Sec. XII., page 147.

2. Dr. Franklin had been the agent in England, for several of the colonies, for about ten years.

3. Note 3, page 186.

4. Pitt was greatly afflicted with the gout. Sometimes he was confined to his house for weeks by it; and he was sometimes seen on the floor of Parliament leaning upon crutches, and his legs swathed in flannels.

5. At that time there were employed by the Americans, in the British Newfoundland fisheries, about 400 ships, 2,000 fishing shallops, and 50,000 men. On account of this blow to the fishing trade, a great many inhabitants of Nantucket and vicinity, chiefly Quakers, went to North Carolina, and in Orange and Guilford counties, became planters. Their descendants are yet numerous there.

6. Early in the year secret orders had been sent by the Ministry, to the royal governors, to remove all ammunition and stores out of the reach of the people, if they made any hostile demonstrations.

7. Afterward killed in the battle on Breed's Hill. Verse 11, page 181.

8. Revere was one of the most active of the Sons of Liberty [verse 11, page 175] in Boston. Like Isaac Sears, of New York, his eminent services in the cause of freedom have been overlooked. Their fame is eclipsed by men of greater minds, but no sturdier patriotism.

9. Verse 1, page 187.

QUESTIONS.—3. What occurred in England? What did Pitt attempt? What did Parliament do? How were the Americans affected? 4. What was the condition of the British in Boston? What did Gage attempt to do? and why? How were the people aroused? What occurred at Lexington?

Skirmishes at Lexington and Concord.

Effects of these events.

perse! disperse, you rebels! Down with your arms, and disperse!" They refused obedience, and he ordered his men to fire. That dreadful order was obeyed, and the **FIRST BLOOD OF THE REVOLUTION** flowed upon the tender grass on the Green at Lexington. Eight citizens were killed and several were wounded. The last survivor of that noble band¹ died in March, 1854, at the age of almost ninety-six years.

5. The British now pressed forward to Concord, and destroyed the stores. They were terribly annoyed by the minute-men² on their way, who fired upon them from behind walls, trees, and buildings. Having accomplished their purpose, and killed several more patriots in a skirmish there, the royal troops hastily retreated to Lexington. The country was now thoroughly aroused, and minute-men were gathering by scores. Nothing but the timely arrival of Lord Percy with reinforcements, saved the eight hundred from total destruction. The whole body now retreated. All the way back to Bunker's Hill,³ in Charlestown, the troops were terribly assailed by the patriots; and they lost, in killed and wounded, two hundred and seventy-three. The loss of the Americans was one hundred and three.⁴

6. Intelligence of this tragedy spread over the country like a blaze of lighting from a midnight cloud, and like the attendant thunder-peal, it aroused all hearts. From the hills and valleys of New England, the patriots went forth by hundreds, armed and unarmed; and before the close of the month [April, 1775] an army of twenty thousand men were forming camps and piling fortifications around Boston, from Roxbury to the river Mystic, determined to confine the fierce tiger of war, which had tasted their blood, upon that little peninsula. The provincial Congress,⁵ sitting at Watertown, with Dr. Warren at its head, worked day and night in consonance with the gathering army. They appointed military officers, organized a commissariat for supplies, issued bills of credit for the payment of troops, for which the province was pledged,⁶ and declared [May 5] General Gage to be an "inveterate enemy" of the people.

7. And as the intelligence went from colony to colony, the people were equally aroused. Arms and ammunition were seized by the *Sons of Liberty*, provincial Congresses were formed, and before the close of summer, the power of every royal governor, from Massachusetts to Georgia, was utterly destroyed. Everywhere the people armed in defense of their liberties, and took vigorous measures for future security. Some aggressive enterprises were undertaken by volunteers. The most important of these was the seizure of the strong fortresses of Ticonderoga⁷ and Crown Point,⁸ by Connecticut and

1. Jonathan Harrington, who played the fife for the *minute-men*, on the morning of the battle. The writer visited him in 1848, when he was ninety years of age. He then had a perfect recollection of the events of that morning.

2. Verse 1, page 187.

3. Verse 9, page 190.

4. Appropriate monuments have been erected to the memory of the slain, at Lexington and Concord, and Acton. Davis, the commander of the militia at Concord, was from Acton, and so were most of his men.

5. Verse 2, page 187.

6. The amount issued was three hundred and seventy-five thousand dollars.

7. Verse 32, page 161.

8. Verse 38, page 164.

QUESTIONS.—5. What occurred at Concord? What befell the British troops? 6. What was the effect of the skirmishes at Lexington and Concord? What did New England people do? 7. What effects were seen throughout the colonies? What expeditions were undertaken? What were the results?

Capture of Ticonderoga.

Breed's Hill fortified.

Vermont militia, under the command of Colonels Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold. Ticonderoga and its garrison were taken possession of at dawn, on the 10th of May, 1775; and two days afterward, Colonel Seth Warner, of the expedition, with a few men, captured Crown Point. The spoils of victory, consisting of almost one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of ammunition and stores, were of vast consequence to the Americans. A few months later [Mar. 1776], some of these cannons were hurling death-shots into the midst of the British troops in Boston.¹

8. On the 19th of May [1775], the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts clothed the Committee of Safety, sitting at Cambridge, with full powers to regulate the operations of the army. Artemas Ward was appointed commander-in-chief, Richard Gridley,² chief engineer, and Putnam, Stark, and other veterans, who had served bravely in the French and Indian war,³ were appointed to important commands. The military genius then developed, was now brought into requisition. Day by day the position of the British army became more perilous, when on the 25th of May, large reinforcements, under Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne, arrived. The whole British force in Boston now amounted to about twelve thousand men, besides several well-manned vessels of war, under Admiral Graves; and Gage resolved to attack the Americans and penetrate the country.

9. On the 10th of June, Gage issued a proclamation declaring all Americans in arms to be rebels and traitors, and offering a free pardon to all who should return to their allegiance, except those arch-offenders, John Hancock,⁴ and Samuel Adams.⁵ These he intended to seize and send to England to be hanged. The vigilant patriots, aware of Gage's hostile intentions, strengthened their intrenchments on Boston Neck,⁶ and on the evening of the 16th of June, General Ward sent Colonel Prescott⁷ with a detachment of one thousand men, to take possession of, and fortify Bunker's Hill, which commanded an important part of Boston and the surrounding water. By mistake they ascended Breed's Hill, within cannon-shot of the city, and laboring with pick and spade all that night, they had cast up a strong redoubt⁸ of earth, on the summit of that eminence, before the British were aware of their presence. Gage and his officers were greatly astonished at the apparition of this military work, at the dawn of the 17th.

10. The British generals perceived the necessity for driving the Americans from this commanding position, before they should plant a heavy battery there, for in that event, Boston must be evacuated. Before sunrise [June 17, 1775],

1. Verse 4, page 199.

2. Note 1, page 110.

3. Chapter IV., Sec. XII., page 147.

4. Verse 2, page 187.

5. Note 4, page 180.

6. Note 2, page 109.

7. William Prescott was born at Groton, Massachusetts, in 1726. He was at Louisburg [verse 48, p. 102] in 1745. After the battle of Bunker's Hill, he served under Gates, until the surrender of Burgoyne, when he left the army. He died in 1795.

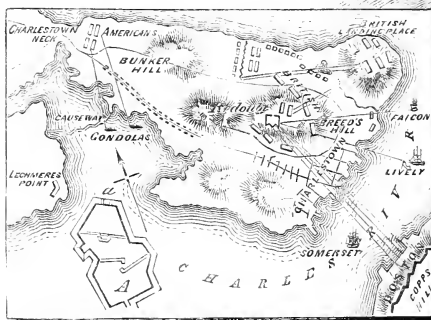
8. A redoubt is a small fortification, generally composed of earth, and having very few features of a regular fort, except its arrangement for the use of cannons and muskets. They are often temporary structures, cast up in the progress of a siege, or a protracted battle. The diagram A, on the map, page 191 shows the form of the redoubt; a, is the entrance.

QUESTIONS.—8. What hostile preparations were made in Massachusetts? What was the condition of the British army in Boston? 9. What did General Gage now do? What defensive measures did the Americans take?

Battle of Bunker's Hill.

a heavy cannonade was opened upon the redoubt, from a battery on Copp's Hill, in Boston,¹ and from shipping in the harbor, but with very little effect. Hour after hour the patriots worked on in the erection of their fort, and at noon-day, their toil was finished, and they laid aside their implements of labor for knapsacks and muskets. General Howe,

with General Pigot, and three thousand men, crossed the Charles river at the same time, to Morton's Point, at the foot of the eastern slopes of



BUNKER'S HILL BATTLE.

MONUMENT.

Breed's Hill, formed his troops into two columns, and marched slowly to attack the redoubt. Although the British commenced firing cannons soon after they had begun to ascend the hill, and the great guns of the ships, and the battery on Copp's Hill, poured out an incessant storm upon the redoubt, the Americans kept perfect silence until they had approached within close musket-shot. Hardly an American could be seen by the slowly-approaching enemy, yet behind those rude mounds of earth lay fifteen hundred determined men.²

11. When the British column was within ten rods of the redoubt, Prescott shouted *Fire!* and instantly whole platoons of the assailants were prostrated by well-aimed bullets.³ The survivors fell back in great confusion, but were soon rallied for a second attack. They were again repulsed, with heavy loss, and while scattering in all directions, General Clinton arrived with a few followers, and joined Howe as a volunteer. The fugitives were rallied, and they rushed up to the redoubt in the face of a galling fire. For ten minutes the battle raged fearfully, and, in the mean while, Charlestown, at the foot of the

1. That portion of Copp's Hill, where the British battery was constructed, is a burial-ground, in which lie many of the earlier residents of that city. Among them, the Mather family, distinguished in the early history of the commonwealth.

2. During the forenoon, General Putnam had been busy in forwarding reinforcements for Prescott, and when the battle began, about five hundred had been added to the detachment.

3. Prescott ordered his men to aim at the waistbands of the British, and to pick off their officers, whose fine clothes would distinguish them.

QUESTIONS.—10. How did the redoubt on Breed's Hill affect the British? What did they do? What movements were made by the British troops? 11. Can you relate the chief incidents of the battle of Bunker's Hill? How were the two armies affected?

Result of the Battle of Bunker's Hill.

Death of General Warren.

eminence, having been fired by a carcass¹ from Copp's Hill,² sent up dense columns of smoke, which completely enveloped the belligerents. The firing in the redoubt grew weaker, for the ammunition of the Americans became exhausted. It ceased, and then the British scaled the bank and compelled the Americans to retreat, while they fought fiercely with clubbed muskets.³ They fled across Charlestown Neck,⁴ gallantly covered by Putnam and a few brave men, and under that commander, took position on Prospect Hill, and fortified it. The British took possession of Bunker's Hill,⁵ and erected a fortification there. There was absolutely no victory in the case. The Americans had lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about four hundred and fifty men. The loss of the British, from like causes, was almost eleven hundred.⁶ This was the first real *battle*⁷ of the Revolution, and lasted almost two hours.

12. That beautiful day in June, bright and cloudless, was a terrible one for Boston and its vicinity. All the morning, and during the fierce conflict, roofs, steeples, and every high place, in and around the city, were filled with anxious spectators. Almost every family had a representative among the combatants; and, in an agony of suspense, mothers, wives, sisters and daughters, gazed upon the scene. Many a loved one perished; and there the country lost one of its most promising children, and freedom a devoted champion. Dr. Warren, who had just been appointed Major-General, had crossed Charlestown Neck in the midst of flying balls from the British shipping, and reached the redoubt on Breed's Hill, at the moment when the enemy scaled its banks. He was killed by a musket-ball, while retreating. Buried where he fell, near the redoubt, the tall Bunker Hill monument of to-day, standing on that spot, commemorates his death as well as the patriotism of his countrymen.⁸



JOSEPH WARREN.

13. While these events were occurring in New England, the Revolution was making rapid progress elsewhere. Late in

1. A *carcass* is a hollow case, formed of ribs of iron, covered with cloth or metal, with holes in it. Being filled with combustibles, and set on fire, it is thrown from a mortar, like a bombshell, upon the roofs of buildings, and ignites them. A bombshell is a hollow ball with an orifice, filled with powder, which is ignited by a slow match when fired, explodes, and its fragments produce terrible destruction.

2. See map on page 191.

3. Most of the American muskets were destitute of bayonets, and they used the large end as clubs.

4. Charlestown, like Boston, is on a peninsula, almost surrounded by water and a marsh. The Neck was a narrow causeway connecting it with the main. Charlestown was a flourishing rival of Boston at the time of the battle. It was then completely destroyed. Six hundred buildings perished in the flames. Burgoyne, speaking of the battle and conflagration, said it was the most awful and sublime sight he had ever witnessed.

5. As the battle took place on *Breed's*, and not on *Bunker's* Hill, the former name should have been given to it, but the name of *Bunker's Hill* is too sacred in the records of patriotism to be changed.

6. The Provincial Congress estimated the loss at about 1,500; General Gage reported 1,054. Of the Americans, only 115 were killed; the remainder were wounded or made prisoners.

7. A *battle* is a conflict carried on by large bodies of troops, according to the rules of military tactics; a *skirmish* is a sudden and irregular fight between a few troops.

8. Joseph Warren was born in Roxbury, in 1740. He was at the head of his profession as a physician when the events of the approaching Revolution brought him into public life. He was thirty-five years of age when he died. His remains rest in St. Paul's church, in Boston. A statue in his honor was inaugurated on the 17th of June, 1857.

Patrick Henry's boldness.

Events in the South.

Second Continental Congress.

March, Patrick Henry¹ had again aroused his countrymen by his eloquence, in the Virginia Assembly at Richmond, when he concluded a masterly speech with that noted sentiment which became the war-cry of the patriots—"GIVE ME LIBERTY, OR GIVE ME DEATH!" When, twenty-six days later [April 20], Governor Dunmore, by ministerial command,² seized and conveyed on board a British vessel of war, a quantity of gunpowder belonging to the colony, that same inflexible patriot went at the head of armed citizens, and demanded and received from the royal representative, full restitution. And before the battle of Bunker's Hill,³ the exasperated people had driven Dunmore⁴ from his palace at Williamsburg [June], and he was a refugee, shorn of political power, on board a British man-of-war in the York river.

14. In the meantime, a still bolder step had been taken in the interior of North Carolina. A convention of delegates, chosen by the people, assembled at Charlotte, in Mecklenberg county [May, 1775], and by a series of resolutions, virtually declared their constituents absolved from all allegiance to the British crown,⁵ organized local government, and made provisions for military defense. In South Carolina and Georgia, also, arms and ammunition had been seized by the people, and all royal authority was repudiated.

15. In the midst of these excitements, the SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS convened [May 10] at Philadelphia. Notwithstanding New England was in a blaze of war, royal authority had virtually ceased in all the colonies, and the conflict for independence had actually begun,⁶ that august body held out to Great Britain a loyal, open hand of reconciliation.⁷ At the same time, they said, firmly, "We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." They did not foolishly lose present advantages in waiting for a reply, but pressed forward in the work of public security. Having resolved on armed resistance, they voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men; and two days before the battle of Bunker's Hill⁸ [June 15, 1775], they elected GEORGE WASHINGTON commander-in-chief of all the forces raised, or to be raised, for the defense of the colonies.⁹ They adopted

1. Born in Hanover county, Virginia, in 1736. He appeared suddenly in public life when almost thirty years of age. He was an active public man during the whole of the Revolution, was Governor of Virginia, and died in 1799. See correct portrait in the picture at the head of this chapter.

2. Note 6, page 188.

3. Page 191.

4. Dunmore was strongly suspected of a desire to have the hostile Indians west of the Alleghenies annihilate the Virginia troops sent against them in the summer of 1774. They suffered terrible loss in a battle at Point Pleasant, on the Ohio, in October of that year, in consequence of the failure of promised aid from Dunmore. They subdued the Indians, however.

5. This declaration of independence was made about thirteen months previous to the general Declaration made by the Continental Congress, and is one of the glories of the people of North Carolina.

6. Verse 5, page 189.

7. In July, Congress sent a most loyal petition to the king, and conciliatory addresses to the people of Great Britain.

8. Verse 11, page 191.

9. Washington was a delegate in Congress from Virginia, and his appointment was wholly unexpected to him. When the time came to choose a commander-in-chief, John Adams arose, and after a brief speech, in which he delineated the qualities of the man whom he thought best fitted for the important service, he nominated Washington. That patriot was gazing intently in the face of Mr. Adams, at the moment, and when his name fell from the lips of the speaker, he rushed into an adjoining room, utterly abashed. Congress immediately adjourned, and the next day Washington was elected commander-in-chief. At the same time Congress resolved that they would "maintain and assist him, and adhere to him, with their lives and fortunes, in the cause of American liberty." When President Hancock announced to Washington his appointment, he modestly and with great dignity, signified his acceptance in the following terms: "Mr.

QUESTIONS.—13. What revolutionary movements occurred in Virginia? 14. What revolutionary movement occurred in North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia? 15. What occurred at Philadelphia? What was the condition of the country? What did the Continental Congress do?

Washington commander-in-chief.

Invasion of Canada.

the troops at Boston¹ as a CONTINENTAL ARMY, and appointed general officers² to assist Washington in its organization and future operations.

16. Washington took command of the army at Cambridge, on the 3d of July, and with the aid of General Gates, order was soon brought out of great confusion, and the Americans were prepared to commence a regular siege of the British army in Boston.³ To the capture or expulsion of those troops, the efforts of Washington were mainly directed during the summer and autumn of 1775. His army, fourteen thousand strong, extended from Roxbury on the right to Prospect Hill, two miles north-west of Breed's Hill, on the left. The right, was commanded by General Ward, the left by General Lee. The center, at Cambridge, was under the immediate control of the commander-in-chief.

17. The Canadians had been cordially invited to join their Anglo-American⁴ neighbors,⁵ in efforts to obtain redress of grievances, but having very little sympathy in language, religion, or social condition with them, they refused, and were necessarily considered positive supporters of the royal cause. The capture of the two fortresses on Lake Champlain⁶ [May, 1775], having opened the way to the St. Lawrence, a well-devised plan to take possession of that province and prevent its becoming a place of rendezvous and supply of invading armies from Great Britain, was matured by Congress and the commander-in-chief.⁷ To accomplish this, a body of New York and New England troops were placed under the command of Generals Schuyler⁸ and Montgomery,⁹ and ordered to proceed by way of Lake Champlain to Montreal and Quebec.

18. The invading army appeared before St. John on the Sorel, the first military post within the Canadian line, at the close of August, 1775. Deceived in regard to the strength of the garrison and the disposition of the Canadians and the neighboring Indians, Schuyler fell back to Isle Aux Noix,¹⁰ and after making preparations to fortify it, hastened to Ticonderoga to urge

President, though I am truly sensible of the high honor done me, in this appointment, yet I feel great distress, from a consciousness that my abilities and military experience may not be equal to the extensive and important trust. However, as the Congress desire it, I will enter upon the momentous duty, and exert every power I possess in their service, and for the support of the glorious cause. I beg they will accept my most cordial thanks for this distinguished testimony of their approbation. But lest some unlucky event should happen, unfavorable to my reputation, I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in this room, that I, this day, declare with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with. As to pay, sir, I beg leave to assure the Congress that, as no pecuniary consideration could have tempted me to accept the arduous employment, at the expense of my domestic ease and happiness, I do not wish to make any profit from it. I will keep an exact account of my expenses; those, I doubt not, they will discharge, and that is all I desire."

2. Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam, *major-generals*; Horatio Gates, *adjutant-general*; and Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Greene (all New England men), *brigadier-generals*.

3. Verse 4, page 188.

5. The Congress of 1774, made an appeal *To the inhabitants of Quebec*, in which was clearly set forth the grievances of the colonists, and an invitation to fraternize with those already in union.

6. Verse 7, page 189.

7. A committee of Congress went to Cambridge in August, and there the plan of the campaign against Canada was arranged.

8. Philip Schuyler was born in Albany, New York, in 1733. He was a captain under Sir William Johnson [verse 17, page 154], in 1755, and was in active public service, in civil affairs, until the Revolution. He was a legislator after the war, and died in 1804. See portrait on page 195.

9. Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland, in 1737. He was with Wolfe at Quebec [verse 40, page 165], and afterward married and settled in the State of New York. He gave promise of great military ability, when death ended his career. See portrait on page 196.

QUESTIONS.—16. What did Washington first do? What was his chief desire? What hostile preparations were made? 17. What of the Canadians? What plans against Canada were formed? and how commenced?

Capture of St. John and Chambly.

Defeat at Montreal.

Arnold's expedition.

forward more troops. Sickness compelled him to return to Albany, and the whole command devolved upon Montgomery. Toward the close of September that energetic officer laid siege to St. John. The garrison maintained an obstinate resistance for more than a month, and Montgomery twice resolved to abandon it.

19. During the siege, small detachments of brave men went out upon daring enterprises. One of eighty men, under Colonel Ethan Allen,¹ pushed across the St. Lawrence, and attacked Montreal [Sept. 25, 1775], then garrisoned by quite a strong force under General Prescott.² Allen and his party were defeated, and he was made prisoner and sent to England in irons. Another expedition under Colonel Bedell, of New Hampshire, captured the strong fort at Chambly on the 30th of October; and at about the same time, Sir Guy Carleton, Governor of Canada, with a reinforcement for the garrison of St. John, was repulsed [Nov. 1] by a party under Colonel Warner, at Longueuil, nearly opposite Montreal. These events alarmed Preston, the commander at St. John, and he surrendered that post to Montgomery, on the 3d of November.



GENERAL SCHUYLER.

20. The Americans now pressed forward to Montreal. Carleton had escaped from thence to Quebec, and the city and garrison were surrendered [Nov. 13], after a feeble resistance. Leaving a garrison there, at St. John and Chambly, Montgomery, with a little more than three hundred ill-clad troops, hurried toward Quebec, for winter frosts were binding the waters, and blinding snow was mantling the whole country.

21. While this expedition, so feeble in numbers and supplies, was on its way to achieve a great purpose, another, consisting of a thousand men under Colonel Benedict Arnold,³ had left Cambridge [Sept. 1775], and was making its way through the wilderness by the Kennebec and Chaudiere⁴ rivers, to join Montgomery before the walls of Quebec. After enduring incredible toils and hardships in traversing dark forests and tangled morasses filled with snow and ice, and exposed to intense cold and biting hunger, they arrived at Point Levi,⁵ opposite Quebec, on the 9th of November. Four days afterward [Nov. 13], the intrepid Arnold,⁶ with only seven hundred and fifty half naked men, not more than four hundred muskets, and no artillery, crossed the St. Lawrence to Wolfe's Cove,⁷ ascended to the plains of Abraham,⁷ and boldly de-

1. Ethan Allen was born in Litchfield county, Conn. He went to Vermont at an early age, and in 1770 was one of the bold leaders there in the opposition of the settlers to the territorial claims of New York. He was never engaged in active military service after his capture. He died in Vermont in February, 1789, and his remains lie in a cemetery two miles from Burlington, near the Winooski.

2. Verse 9, page 215.

3. Verse 7, page 189.

4. Pronounced *Sho-de-are*.

5. Verse 41, page 165.

6. Verse 43, page 165.

7. Verse 40, page 165.

QUESTIONS.—18. Can you relate the first movements of the royal army? 19. What small enterprises were undertaken? What were the results? 20. What occurred between Montreal and Quebec? 21. What other bold expeditions were undertaken? Can you relate some of its incidents? What junction of forces took place?

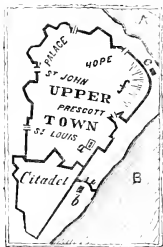
The Americans at Quebec.

Siege.

Death of Montgomery.

manded a surrender of the city and garrison. Soon the icy winds, and intelligence of an intended sortie¹ from the garrison, drove Arnold from his bleak encampment, and he ascended the St. Lawrence, twenty miles above Quebec, and there awaited the arrival of Montgomery. They met on the 1st of December [1775], and woolen clothes which Montgomery had captured at Montreal, were placed on the shivering limbs of Arnold's troops. The united forces, about nine hundred strong, then marched to Quebec.

22. The Americans reached Quebec on the evening of the 5th, and the next morning Montgomery sent a letter to Carleton, by a flag,² demanding an immediate surrender. The flag was fired upon, and the invaders were defied.



WALLS OF QUEBEC.

With a few light cannons and some mortars, and exposed to almost daily snow-storms in the open fields, the Americans besieged the city for three weeks. An assault was finally agreed upon; and before dawn, on the morning of the 31st of December, while snow was falling thickly, the attempt was made. Montgomery had formed his little army into four columns, to assail the city at different points. One of these, under Arnold, was to attack the lower town, and march along the St. Charles to join another division under Montgomery, who was to approach by way of Cape Diamond,³ and the two were to attempt a

forced passage into the city, through Prescott gate.⁴ At the same time, the other two columns, under Majors Livingston and Brown, were to make a feigned attack upon the upper town, from the Plains of Abraham.⁵

23. Montgomery descended Wolfe's ravine,⁶ and marched carefully along the ice-strewn beach, toward a palisade and battery at Cape Diamond. At the head of his men, in the face of the driving snow, he had passed the palisade unopposed, when a single discharge of a cannon from the battery,⁷ loaded with grape-shot,⁸ killed him instantly, and slew several of his officers. His followers instantly retreated. In the mean while, Arnold had been severely wounded, while attacking a barrier on the St. Charles,⁹



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

1. This is a French term, significant of a sudden sally of troops from a besieged city or fortress, to attack the besiegers. See verse 6, page 295.

2. Messengers are sent from army to army with a white flag, indicating a desire for a peaceful interview. These flags, by common consent, are respected, and it is considered an outrage to fire on the bearer of one. The Americans were regarded as rebels, and undeserving the usual courtesy.

3. The high rocky promontory on which the citadel stands.

4. Prescott gate is on the St. Lawrence side of the town, and there bars Mountain-street in its sinuous way from the water up into the walled city. The above diagram shows the plan of the city walls, and relative positions of the several gates mentioned. A is the St. Charles river, B the St. Lawrence, a Wolfe and Montcalm's monument [note 1, page 167], b place where Montgomery fell, c place where Arnold was wounded.

5. Verse 40, page 165.

6. Verse 43, page 166.

7. Note 2, page 110.

8. These are small balls confined in a cluster, and then discharged at once from a cannon. They scatter, and do great execution.

9. This was at the foot of the precipice, below the present *grand battery*, near St. Paul's-street.

QUESTIONS.—22. Can you describe the preparations to besiege Quebec by the Americans? 23. Can you relate the incidents of the siege?

Retreat of the Americans.

Canada abandoned.

War in lower Virginia.

and the command devolved upon Captain Morgan,¹ whose expert riflemen, with Lamb's artillery, forced their way into the lower town. After a contest of several hours, the Americans under Morgan were obliged to surrender themselves prisoners of war.

24. With the remainder of the troops, Arnold retired to Sillery,² where he formed a camp, and passed a rigorous Canadian winter. General Wooster³ came down from Montreal with reinforcements, on the 1st of April, and an ineffectual attempt was then made to capture Quebec. When, in May, 1776, General Thomas took the chief command, Carleton was receiving strong reinforcements from England. The Americans were obliged to retreat so hastily before the overwhelming forces of Carleton, that they left their stores and sick behind them.⁴ Abandoning one post after another, the patriots were driven entirely out of Canada by the middle of June.

25. While the Americans were suffering defeats and misfortunes at the North, their brethren in Virginia were rolling on the car of Revolution with success. After Dunmore's escape [June 8, 1775] to the British man-of-war,⁵ he collected a force of Tories and negroes, and commenced depredations in lower Virginia. With the aid of some British vessels, he attacked Hampton [October 24], and was repulsed. He then declared open war. The Virginia militia flew to arms;⁶ and in a severe battle at the Great Bridge, near the Dismal Swamp, twelve miles from Norfolk, Dunmore was defeated [December 9], and compelled to seek safety with the British shipping in Norfolk harbor. In revenge, he burned Norfolk on the 1st of January [1776].⁷ The city was then in possession of the patriots, under General Robert Howe.⁸ He committed other atrocities on the sea-board, but was finally driven away, and went to England.



CULPEPPER FLAG.

SECTION III.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1776].

1. Washington unfurled the *Union Flag*,⁹ for the first time, over the camp at Cambridge, on the 1st of January, 1776. His army had dwindled to less

1. Afterward the famous General Morgan, whose rifle corps became so renowned, and who gained the victory at *The Clouds*. Verse 6, page 249.

2. Verse 46, page 167.

3. Verse 8, page 214.

4. General Thomas was seized with the small-pox, which had been raging some time in the American camp, and died at Chamblay on the 30th of May. He was a native of Plymouth, Mass., and was one of the first eight brigadiers appointed by Congress [note 2, page 194]. Carleton treated the prisoners and sick with great humanity. He was afterward Lord Dorchester. Died in 1808, aged eighty-three years.

5. Verse 13, page 192.

6. Among the various flags borne by the military companies, that of the men of Culpepper county was the most notable. It bore the significant device of a rattle-snake, and the injunction, *Don't tread on me!* It said to the opposer, Don't tread on me, I have dangerous fangs. It also bore the words of Patrick Henry [verse 13, page 193], *Liberty or Death!*

7. Norfolk then contained a population of about 6,000. The actual loss by the conflagration was estimated at more than \$1,500,000, chiefly private property. Many slaves were carried off.

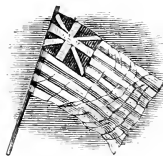
8. Verse 12, page 231.

9. This was a flag composed of thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, symbolizing the thirteen revolted colonies. In one corner was the device of the British *Union Flag*, namely, the cross of St. George, com-

QUESTIONS.—24. What did the American army do after leaving Quebec? What was the final result of the expedition? 25. What important events occurred in Virginia?

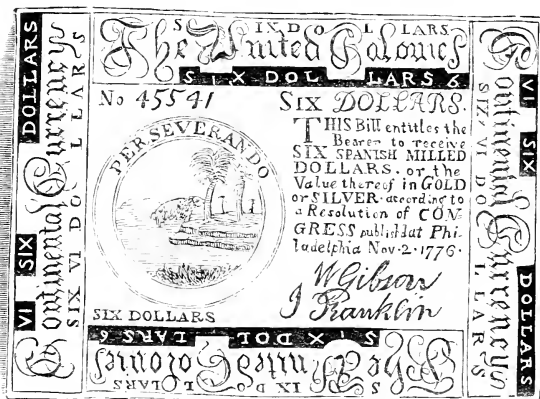
Preparations for the struggle.

Continental money.



UNION FLAG.

than ten thousand effective men, and these were scantily fed and clothed, and imperfectly disciplined. Yet they possessed sufficient strength to continue the imprisonment of the British army in Boston and Charlestown.¹ During the summer and autumn of 1775, the Continental Congress had put forth all its energies in preparations for a severe struggle with British power, now evidently near at hand. Articles of war were agreed to [June 30]; a declaration of the causes for taking up arms was issued [July 6]; and before the close of the year, bills of credit, known as "continental money," representing the



A BILL OF CREDIT, OR CONTINENTAL MONEY.

value of six millions of Spanish dollars, had been issued.² A naval establishment had also been commenced;³ and at the opening of 1776, many expert privateersmen⁴ were hovering along our coasts, to the great terror and annoyance of British merchant vessels.

2. In the mean while Parliament had made extensive arrangements for crushing the rebellion. An act was passed [Nov., 1775], which declared the revolted colonists to be *rebels*; forbade all intercourse with them; authorized

posed of a horizontal and perpendicular bar, and the cross of St. Andrew (representing Scotland), which is in the form of an X. This flag is represented in the sketch. On the 14th of June, 1777, Congress ordered "thirteen stars, white, in a blue field," to be put in the place of the British Union device. Such is the design of our flag at the present day. A star has been added for every new State admitted into the Union.

1. Verse 11, page 191.

2. At the beginning of 1780, Congress had issued two hundred millions of dollars in paper money. After the second year, these bills began to depreciate; and in 1780, forty paper dollars were worth only one in specie. At the close of 1781, they were worthless. They had performed a temporary good, but were finally productive of great public evil, and much individual suffering.

3. See note 1, on page 238.
4. Private individuals, having a license from government to arm and equip a vessel, and with it, to depredate upon the commerce of a nation with which that people are then at war, are called *privateers*. During the Revolution, a vast number of English vessels were captured by American privateersmen. It is, after all, only legalized piracy, and enlightened nations begin to view it so.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the continental army? What did Congress do? What do you know of *continental money*?

Employment of Germans.

Measure censured.

The British driven from Boston.

the seizure and destruction, or confiscation of all American vessels; and placed the colonies under martial law.¹ An aggregate land and naval force of fifty-five thousand men was voted for the American service, and more than a million of dollars were appropriated for their pay and sustenance. In addition to these, seventeen thousand troops were hired by the British government, from the Landgrave of Hesse Cassel and other petty German rulers,² to come hither to butcher loyal subjects, who now, even with arms in their hands, were praying for justice and begging for reconciliation. This last act filled the cup of government iniquity to the brim. It was denounced in Parliament by the true friends of England, as "disgraceful to the British name;" and it extinguished the last hope of reconciliation. The sword was now drawn, and the scabbard thrown away.

3. When intelligence of these parliamentary proceedings reached America [Jan. 1776], Congress perceived the necessity of immediate and efficient efforts for the defense of the extensive sea-coast of the colonies. Washington was urged to attack the British in Boston, immediately; and, by great efforts, the army was augmented to about fourteen thousand men, toward the close of February. Bills of credit, representing four millions of dollars more, were issued; and on the first of March, Washington felt strong enough to attempt a dislodgement of the enemy from the crushed city.³

4. A heavy cannonade was opened upon Boston, from all the American batteries, on the evening of the 2d of March [1776], and was continued, with brief intermissions, until the 4th. On the evening of that day, General Thomas,⁴ with a strong party,⁵ proceeded secretly to a high hill, near Dorchester, on the south side of Boston; and, before morning, they cast up a line of strong entrenchments, and planted heavy cannons there, which completely commanded the city and harbor. These works greatly astonished and alarmed the British. Perceiving the imminent peril of both fleet and army, General Howe prepared an expedition to drive the Americans from their vantage-ground on Dorchester heights. A storm suddenly arose, and made the harbor impassable. The delay allowed the patriots time to make their work almost impregnable, and the British were compelled to surrender as prisoners of war, or to evacuate the city immediately, to avoid destruction. As prisoners they would have been excessively burdensome to the colonies; so Washington informally agreed to allow them to depart without injury, and they left Boston on the 17th of March. Seven thousand soldiers, four thousand seamen, and fifteen hundred families of loyalists,⁶ sailed for Halifax on

1. Note 13, page 138.

2. The Landgrave (or petty prince) of Hesse Cassel, having furnished the most considerable portion of these troops, they were called by the general name of *Hessians*. Ignorant, brutal, and bloodthirsty, they were hated by the patriots, and despised even by the regular English army. They were always employed in posts of greatest danger, or in expeditions least creditable. These troops cost the British government almost eight hundred thousand dollars, besides the necessity, according to the contract, of defending the little principalities thus stripped against their foes.

3. Verse 32, page 184.

4. Verse 24, page 197.

5. Twelve hundred men, with intrenching tools, and a guard of eight hundred.

6. It must be remembered that the Americans were by no means unanimous in their opposition to Great Questions.—2. What arrangements did Parliament make to subdue the Americans? What caused great indignation? 3. What necessity did Congress perceive? What did Congress do? 4. What was done at Boston? What alarmed the British? What did they attempt? What important events happened? and how?

Clinton watched by Lee.

Fortifications on the Hudson.

Parker's fleet.

that day. The Americans immediately marched into the city, with drums beating and banners waving, greeted on every side with demonstrations of joy by the redeemed people.



GENERAL LEE.

5. Washington had been informed, early in January, that General Sir Henry Clinton had sailed from Boston with a considerable body of troops, on a secret expedition. General Charles Lee was immediately dispatched to Connecticut to raise troops, and to proceed to New York to oppose Clinton, if that should be his place of destination. Six weeks before the evacuation of Boston [March 17, 1776], Lee had encamped near New York with twelve hundred militia. Already the *Sons of Liberty*¹ had seized the cannons at Fort George,² and driven Tryon,³ the royal

governor, on board a British armed vessel in the harbor. In March, Clinton arrived at Sandy Hook, just outside New York harbor, and on the same day, Lee⁴ entered the city. The movement was timely, for Clinton was kept at bay. Foiled in his attempt upon New York, that commander sailed southward, where we shall meet him presently.⁵

6. Washington was ignorant of Howe's destination; but supposing he would proceed to New York, he put the main body of his army in motion toward that city, as soon as he had placed Boston in a state of security. He arrived in New York about the middle of April [April 14], and proceeded at once to fortify the town and vicinity, and also the passes of the Hudson Highlands, fifty miles above. In the mean while, General Lee, who had been appointed to command the American forces in the South, had left his troops in the charge of General Lord Stirling [March 7], and was hastening toward the Carolinas to watch the movements of Clinton, and gather an army there.

7. A considerable fleet under Admiral Sir Peter Parker, was sent from England in the spring of 1776, to operate against the sea-coast towns of the southern colonies. Parker was joined by Clinton, at Cape Fear, in May, when the latter took the chief command of all the land forces. The fleet arrived off Charleston bar on the 4th of June, and on the same day, Clinton, with several hundred men, landed on Long Island, which lies eastward of

Britain. From the beginning there were many who supported the crown; and as the colonists became more and more rebellious, these increased. Some because they believed their brethren to be wrong; others through timidity; and a great number because they thought it their *interest* to adhere to the king. The loyalists, or *Tories*, were the worst and most efficient enemies of the *Whigs* [note 3, p. 185] during the whole war. Those who left Boston at this time were afraid to encounter the exasperated patriots, when they should return to their desolated homes in the city, from which they had been driven by military persecution. The churches had been stripped of their pulpits and pews, for fuel, fine shade-trees had been burned, and many houses had been pillaged and damaged by the soldiery.

1. Note 6, page 175.

2. This fort stood at the foot of Broadway, on a portion of the site of the present *Battery*.

3. Verse 27, page 182.

4. Charles Lee was born in Wales, in 1731. He was a brave officer in the British army. He settled in Virginia in 1773, and was one of the first brigadiers of the Continental Army. His ambition and perversity of temper caused his ruin. He died in Philadelphia in 1782. See verse 5, page 226. 5. Verse 7, page 200.

QUESTIONS.—5. What caused Washington to send Lee to New York? What occurred at New York? 6. What measures did Washington adopt? What efforts were made by Lee?

The British at Charleston.

Preparations to receive them.

Battle in the harbor.

Sullivan's Island. Apprized of their hostile designs, and elated by a victory obtained by North Carolina militia, under Colonel Caswell, over fifteen hundred loyalists [Feb. 27, 1776] (chiefly Scotch Highlanders), on Moore's Creek,¹ the southern patriots had cheerfully responded to the call of Governor Rutledge, and about six thousand armed men had collected in and near Charleston, when the enemy appeared.² The city and eligible posts near it had been fortified, and quite a strong fort, composed of palmetto logs and sand, and armed with twenty-six mounted cannons, had been erected upon Sullivan's Island, to command the channel leading to the town. This fort was garrisoned by about five hundred men, chiefly militia, under Colonel William Moultrie.³



GENERAL MOULTRIE.

8. A combined attack, by land and water, upon Sullivan's Island, was commenced by the British, on the morning of the 28th of June, 1776. While the fleet was pouring a terrible storm of iron balls upon Fort Sullivan, Clinton vainly endeavored to force a passage across a narrow creek which divided the two islands, in order to attack the yet unfinished fortress in the rear. But he was repelled, while the cannons of the fort were spreading terrible havoc among the British vessels.⁴ The conflict raged for almost ten hours, and only ceased when night fell upon the scene. Then the British fleet, almost shattered into fragments, withdrew, and abandoned the enterprise.⁵ The slaughter of the British had been frightful. Two hundred and twenty-five had been killed or wounded, while only two of the garrison were killed, and twenty-two wounded.⁶ The British departed for New York three days afterward⁷ [June 31, 1776], and for more than two years the din of war was not heard below the Roanoke.

9. While these events were transpiring in the South, and while Washington

1. In the present New Hanover county, North Carolina.

2. General Armstrong, of Pennsylvania [verse 24, p. 157], had arrived in South Carolina in April, and took the general command. Lee arrived on the same day, when the British, under Clinton, landed on Long Island.

3. Born in South Carolina in 1730. He was in the Cherokee war [verse 49, p. 168], in 1761. He was an active officer until made prisoner in 1780, when for two years he was not allowed to bear arms. He died in 1805. He wrote a very interesting memoir of the War in the South.

4. At one time every man but Admiral Parker was swept from the deck of his vessel. Among those who were badly wounded, was Lord William Campbell, the royal Governor of South Carolina. He afterward died of his wounds.

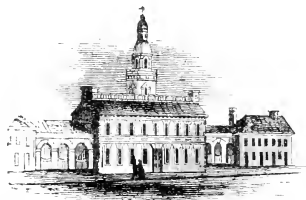
5. The *Acton*, a large vessel, grounded on a shoal between Fort Sullivan and the city, where she was burned by the Americans.

6. The strength of the fort consisted in the capacity of the spongy palmetto logs, upon which cannon-balls would make very little impression. It appeared to be a very insecure defense, and Lee advised Moultrie to abandon it, when the British approached. But that brave officer would not desert it, and was rewarded with victory. The ladies of Charleston presented his regiment with a pair of elegant colors, and the "slaughter pen," as Lee ironically called Fort Sullivan, was named Fort Moultrie. During the action, the staff, bearing a large flag, was cut down by a cannon-ball from the fleet. The colors fell outside the fort. A sergeant named Jasper, leaped down from one of the bastions, and in the midst of the iron hail that was pouring from the fort, coolly picked up the flag, ascended to the bastion, and calling for a sponge-staff, tied the colors to it, stuck it in the sand, and then took his place among his companions in the fort. A few days afterward, Governor Rutledge took his own sword from his side, and presented it to the brave Jasper.

7. Verse 11, page 202.

QUESTIONS.—7. What British forces appeared at Charleston? What did they first do? What had happened in North Carolina? How were the Americans prepared for the enemy? 8. Can you relate the incidents of the battle in Charleston harbor? What were the effects?

was augmenting and strengthening the Continental army at New York, and British troops and German hirelings¹ were approaching by thousands, the Congress, now in permanent session in the State House at Philadelphia, had a question of vast importance under consideration. A few men, looking beyond the storm clouds of the present, beheld bright visions of glory for their country, when the people, now declared to be rebels,² and out of the pro-



STATE HOUSE.

tection of the British king, should organize themselves into a sovereign nation. This grand idea began to flash through the popular mind at the close of 1775; and when, early in 1776, it was tangibly spoken by Thomas Paine, in a pamphlet entitled *Common Sense*,³ and whose vigorous thoughts were borne by the press to every community, a desire for *Independence* filled the hearts of the people. In less than eighty

days after the evacuation of Boston [March 17, 1776], almost every provincial Assembly had spoken in favor of *independence*; and on the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee,⁴ of Virginia, offered to the consideration of the Continental Congress, the following resolution: “*Resolved*, That these united colonies are, and, of right, ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.”⁵

10. This resolution did not meet with general favor in Congress, at first. Many yet hoped, even against hope, for reconciliation, and thought it premature; and there were some timid ones who trembled while standing so near the borders of high treason. After debating the subject for three days, the further consideration of it was postponed until the first of July. A committee⁶ was appointed [June 11], however, to draw up a declaration in accordance with the resolution, and were instructed to report on the same day when the latter should be called up. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, the youngest member of the committee, was chosen its chairman, and to him was assigned

1. Verse 2, page 198.

2. Verse 2, page 198.

3. It is said to have been prepared at the suggestion of Dr. Rush, of Philadelphia. Its chief topic was the right and expediency of colonial independence. Paine also wrote a series of equally powerful papers, called *The Crisis*. The first number was written in Fort Lee, on the Hudson, in December, 1776, and published while Washington was on the banks of the Delaware. See verse 21, page 208. These had a powerful effect in stimulating the people to efforts for independence.

4. Born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, in 1732. He was much in public life, signed the Declaration of Independence, was a United States Senator, and died in 1794.

5. On the 10th of May, Congress had, by resolution, recommended the establishment of independent State governments in all the colonies. This however was not sufficiently national to suit the bolder members of that body, and the people at large. Lee's resolution more fully expressed the popular will.

6. Thomas Jefferson of Va.; John Adams, of Mass.; Benjamin Franklin, of Penn.; Roger Sherman, of Conn.; and Robert R. Livingston, of N. Y. Mr. Lee was summoned home to the bedside of a sick wife, on the day before the appointment of the committee, or he would doubtless have been its chairman.

QUESTIONS.—9. What important subject now occupied the attention of Congress? What had made the people wish for independence? What was done? 10. How did Congress regard the resolution of Lee? What action was taken? What can you tell about the Declaration of Independence?

Declaration of Independence.

Arrival of British and Hessians.

the task of preparing the Declaration.¹ Adams and Franklin made a few alterations in his draft. On the 2d of July the resolution was adopted by a large majority. The Declaration was debated almost two days longer; and finally, at about mid-day, on the 4th of July, 1776, the representatives of thirteen colonies unanimously declared them free and independent States, under the name of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. Only John Hancock,² the President of Congress, signed it on that day, and thus it first went forth to the world. It was ordered to be written on parchment, and on the 2d of August following, the names of all but two of the fifty-six signers,³ were placed upon it. These two were added afterward. It had then been read to the army;⁴ at public meetings; from a hundred pulpits, and in all legislative halls in the land, and everywhere awakened the warmest responses of approval.



JOHN HANCOCK.

11. General Howe left Halifax⁵ on the 11th of June [1776], and arrived at Sandy Hook on the 29th. On the 2d of July he took possession of Staten Island, where he was joined by Sir Henry Clinton [July 11] from the South,⁶ and his brother, Admiral Lord Howe [July 12], with a fleet and a large land force, from England. Before the first of August, other vessels arrived with a part of the Hessian troops,⁷ and on that day, almost thirty thousand soldiers, many of them tried veterans, stood ready to fall upon the Republican army of seventeen thousand men,⁸ mostly militia, which lay entrenched in New York and vicinity, less than a dozen miles distant.⁹ The grand object in view was the seizure of New York and the country along the Hudson, so as to keep open a communication with Canada, separate the patriots of New England from those of the other States, and to overrun the most populous portion of the revolted colonies.

1. He was then boarding at Mrs. Clymer's, on the south-west corner of Seventh and High streets, Philadelphia. See picture on page 353.

2. Born at Quincy, Massachusetts, in 1737. He was an early and popular opponent of British power, and was chosen the second President of Congress. He was afterwards Governor of Massachusetts, and died in 1793.

3. This document, containing the autographs of those venerated fathers of our republic, is carefully preserved in a glass case, in the rooms of the *National Institute*, at Washington city. Not one of that band of patriots now survives. Charles Carroll was the last to leave us. He departed in 1832, at the age of ninety years. It is worthy of remembrance that *not one* of all those signers of the Declaration of Independence died with a tarnished reputation. The memory of *all* is sweet.

4. Washington caused it to be read at the head of each brigade of the army, then in New York city, on the 9th of July. That night citizens and soldiers pulled down the leaden equestrian statue of George III., which stood in the Bowling Green, and it was soon afterward converted into bullets for the use of the Continental army. The statue was gilded.

5. Verse 4, page 199.

6. Verse 8, page 201.

7. Verse 2, page 193.

8. There were about 27,000 men enrolled, but not more than 17,000 men were fit for duty. A great many were sick, and a large number were without arms.

9. Many of the ships passed through the Narrows, and anchored in the Bay. Howe's flag-ship, the *Eagle*, lay near Governor's Island. While in that position, a bold soldier went in a submarine vessel, with a machine for blowing up a ship, and endeavored to fasten it to the bottom of the *Eagle*, but failed. He was discovered, and barely escaped. An explosion took place near the *Eagle*, and she was hastily moved further down the Bay. This was called a *torpedo*.

Folly of the British commanders.

British invasion.

12. Lord Howe,¹ and his brother, the general, were commissioned to treat for peace, but only on terms of absolute submission on the part of the colonies. After making a foolish display of arrogance and weakness, in addressing General Washington as a private gentleman,² and being assured that the Americans would make no such treaty, they prepared to strike an immediate and effective blow. The British army was accordingly put in motion on the morning of the 22d of August [1776]; and during that day, ten thousand effective men, and forty pieces of cannon, were landed on the western end of Long Island, between the present Fort Hamilton, and Gravesend village.

13. Detachments of Americans, under General Sullivan, occupied a fortified camp at Brooklyn, opposite New York, and guarded several passes in a range of hills which extend from the Narrows to the village of Jamaica. When intelligence of the landing of the invading army reached Washington, he sent General Putnam,³ with large reinforcements, to take the chief command on Long Island, and to prepare to meet the enemy. The American troops on the Island now numbered about five thousand [August 26]. The British approached in three divisions. The left, under General Grant, marched along the shore toward Gowanus; the right, under Clinton and Cornwallis, toward the interior of the island, and the center, composed chiefly of Hessians,⁴ under De Heister, marched up the Flatbush road, south of the hills.



GENERAL PUTNAM.

14. Before dawn on the morning of the 27th [August], Clinton gained possession of the Jamaica pass, near the present East New York. At the same time, Grant was pressing forward along the shore of New York Bay, and at day-break encountered Lord Stirling,⁵ where the monuments of Greenwood cemetery now dot the hills. De Heister advanced from Flatbush at the same hour, and attacked Sullivan, who, having no suspicions of the movements of Clinton, was watching the Flatbush pass. A bloody conflict ensued, and while it was progressing, Clinton descended from the wooded hills, by

1. Richard, Earl Howe, was brother of the young Lord Howe [verse 32, page 161], killed at Ticonderoga. He was born in 1725, and died in 1799.

2. The letters of Lord Howe to the American commander-in-chief, were addressed "George Washington, Esq." As that did not express the public character of the chief, and as he would not confer with the enemies of his country in a private capacity, Washington refused to receive the letters. Howe was instructed not to acknowledge the authority of Congress in any way, and as Washington had received his commission from that body, to address him as "general," would have been a recognition of its authority. He meant no disrespect to Washington.

3. Born in Salem, Massachusetts, in 1718. He was a very useful officer during the French and Indian war, and was in active service in the Continental army, until 1779, when bodily infirmity compelled him to retire. He died in 1790, at the age of seventy-two years.

4. Verse 2, page 198.
5. William Alexander, Lord Stirling, was a descendant of the Scotch Earl of Stirling, mentioned in note 3, page 64. He was born in the city of New York, in 1726. He became attached to the patriot cause, and was an active officer during the war. He died in 1783.

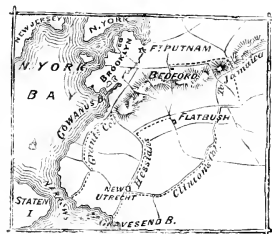
QUESTIONS.—12. What power was given to Lord Howe and his brother? What foolish thing did he do? What military movements were made? 13. What was the position and strength of the American army? How did it prepare for the attack of the British? 14. What can you tell of the early part of the battle on Long Island?

Battle of Long Island.

Remarkable retreat of the Americans.

the way of Bedford, to gain Sullivan's rear. As soon as the latter perceived his peril, he ordered a retreat to the American lines at Brooklyn. It was too late; Clinton drove him back upon the Hessian bayonets, and after fighting desperately hand to hand, with the foe in front and rear, and losing a greater portion of his men, Sullivan was compelled to surrender.

15. While these disasters were occurring on the left, Cornwallis descended the port-road to Gowanus, and attacked Stirling. They fought desperately, until Stirling was made prisoner. Many of his troops were drowned while endeavoring to escape across the Gowanus creek, as the tide was rising, and a large number were made prisoners. At noon the victory for the British was complete. About five hundred Americans were killed or wounded, and eleven hundred made prisoners. These were soon suffering dreadful horrors in prisons and prison-ships at New York.¹ The British loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was three hundred and sixty-seven.



BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

16. Washington had viewed the destruction of his troops with the deepest anguish, yet he dared not weaken his power in the city, by sending reinforcements. He crossed over the following morning [Aug. 28], with Mifflin,² who had come down from the upper end of York Island with a thousand troops, and was gratified to find the enemy encamped in front of Putnam's lines, and delaying an attack until the British fleet should co-operate with him. The delay allowed Washington time to form and execute a plan for the salvation of the remainder of the army, now too weak to resist an assault with any hope of success. Under cover of a heavy fog on the night of the 29th, and morning of the 30th, he silently withdrew them from the camp,³ and, unperceived by the British, they all crossed over to New York in safety, carrying every thing with them but their heavy cannons. When the fog rolled away, and the sunlight burst upon Brooklyn and New York, the last boat-load of patriots had reached the city shore. Howe, who felt sure of his prey, was greatly mortified, and prepared to make an immediate attack upon New York, before the Americans should become reinforced, or should escape from it.⁴

1. Note 4, page 12. Among the prisoners was General Nathaniel Woodhull, late president of the provincial Congress of New York. He was taken prisoner on the 30th, and after being severely wounded at the time, he was so neglected that his injuries proved fatal in the course of a few days. His age was fifty-three. See Onderdonk's *Revolutionary Incidents of Long Island*.

2. Verse 6, page 259.

3. During the night, a woman living near the present Fulton Ferry, where the Americans embarked, sent her negro servant to inform the British of the movement. The negro fell into the hands of the Hessians. They could not understand a word of his language, and detained him until so late in the morning that his information was of no avail.

4. He ordered several vessels-of-war to sail around Long Island, and come down the Sound to Flushing Bay, so as to cover the intended landing of the troops upon the main, in Westchester county [verse 13, page 205]. In the mean while, Howe made an overture for peace, supposing the late disaster would dispose the Americans to listen eagerly to almost any proposition for reconciliation. He paroled General Sullivan, and by him sent a verbal communication to Congress, suggesting a committee for conference. It was appointed, and on the 11th of September they met Lord Howe at the house of Captain Billop, on Staten Island.

QUESTIONS.—15. What events occurred near Gowanus? What was the result of the battle? 16. What did Washington feel and do? What can you tell of the retreat of the Americans?

Condition of the American army.

New York in possession of the British.

17. Sectional differences¹ now weakened the bond of union in the American army, and immorality of every kind prevailed. There was also a general spirit of insubordination, and the disasters on Long Island disheartened the timid. Hundreds deserted the cause and went home. Never, during the long struggle of after years, was the hopeful mind of Washington more clouded by doubts, than during the month of September, 1776. He called a council of war on the 12th, when it was determined to send the military stores to a secure place up the Hudson,² and to retreat to and fortify Harlem Heights,³ near the upper end of York Island.⁴ This was speedily accomplished; and when, on the 15th, a strong detachment of the British army crossed the East river and landed three miles above the town,⁵ without much opposition,⁶ the greater portion of the Americans were busy in fortifying their new camp on Harlem Heights.

18. The British detachment formed a line almost across the island to Bloomingdale, within two miles of the American intrenchments, while the main army on Long Island was stationed at different points from Brooklyn to Flushing.⁷ On the 16th, detachments of the belligerents met on Harlem plains, and a severe skirmish ensued. The Americans were victorious, but their triumph cost the lives of two brave officers—Colonel Knowlton of Connecticut, and Major Leitch of Virginia. The effect of the victory was inspiring; and before Howe could make ready to attack them, they had constructed double lines of intrenchments, and were prepared to defy him.

19. Howe endeavored to gain the rear of the Americans. Leaving quite a strong force in possession of the city⁸ [Sept. 20], he sent three armed vessels up the Hudson, to cut off the American communications with New Jersey, while the great bulk of his army (now reinforced by an arrival of fresh troops from England)⁹ made their way [Oct. 12] to a point in Westchester county,¹⁰ beyond the Harlem river. When Washington perceived the designs of his enemy, he placed a garrison of almost three thousand men, under Colonel

The committee would treat only for *independence*, and the conference had no practical result, except to widen the breach. Franklin was one of the committee, and when Howe spoke patronizingly of *protection* for the Americans, the doctor told him courteously that the Americans were not in need of British protection, for they could protect themselves.

1. The army, which at first consisted chiefly of New England people, had been reinforced by others from New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and Virginia, all of them jealous of their respective claims to precedence, etc.

2. To Dobb's Ferry, twenty-two miles north of the City Hall, New York.

3. These extend from the plain on which the village of Harlem stands, about seven and a half miles from the City Hall, New York, to Two hundred and sixth street, near King's bridge.

4. Also called Manhattan. See verse 1, page 111.

5. At Kipp's Bay, now at the foot of Thirty-fourth street, on the East river.

6. Some Connecticut troops, frightened by the number and martial appearance of the British, fled at their approach. In attempting, in person, to rally them, Washington came very near being lost.

7. Wishing to ascertain the exact condition of the British army, Washington engaged Captain Nathan Hale, of Knowlton's regiment, to visit their camps on Long Island. He was caught, taken to Howe's headquarters at New York, and executed as a spy by the brutal provost-marshal, Cunningham. He was not allowed to have a Bible nor clergyman during his last hours, nor to send letters to friends. His fate and André's [verse 16, page 246] have been compared. See Onderdonk's *Revolutionary Incidents*, etc.

8. At one o'clock on the morning of the 21st, a fire broke out in a small groggery near the foot of Broad-street, and before it was extinguished, about five hundred buildings were destroyed. The British charged the fire upon the Americans. Although such incendiarism had been contemplated, this was purely accidental.

9. The whole British army now numbered about 35,000 men.

10. Throg's Neck, sixteen miles from the city.

QUESTIONS.—17. What was now the character and condition of the American army? What movements were agreed to and accomplished? 18. What did the British army now do? What skirmish ensued? and what were its results?

Operations in Westchester.

Battles of White Plains and Fort Washington.

Magaw, in Fort Washington,¹ and withdrew the remainder of his army² to a position on the Bronx river, in Westchester county, to oppose Howe, or retreat in safety to the Hudson Highlands, if necessary. He established his head-quarters at White Plains village, and there, on the 28th of October, a severe engagement took place. The Americans were driven from their position, and three days afterward [Nov. 1, 1776],³ formed a strong camp on the hills of North Castle, five miles further north. The British general was afraid to pursue them; and after strengthening the post at Peekskill, at the lower entrance to the Highlands, and securing the vantage-ground at North Castle,⁴ Washington crossed the Hudson [Nov. 12] with the main body of his army, and joined General Greene at Fort Lee, on the Jersey shore, about two miles below Fort Washington. This movement was made on account of an apparent preparation by the British to invade New Jersey, and march upon Philadelphia, where the Congress was in session.⁵

20. Previous to the engagement at White Plains, General Knyphausen and a large body of Hessians,⁶ who had arrived at New York, had joined the invading army. After Washington had crossed the Hudson, these German troops and a part of the English army, five thousand strong, proceeded to attack Fort Washington. They were successful, but at a cost to the victors of full one thousand brave men.⁷ More than two thousand Americans were made prisoners of war [Nov. 16], and, like their fellow-captives on Long Island, were crowded into loathsome prisons and prison-ships.⁸ Two days afterward [Nov. 18], Cornwallis, with six thousand men, crossed the Hudson at Dobb's Ferry,⁹ and took possession of Fort Lee, which the Americans had

1. Fort Washington was erected early in 1776, upon the highest ground on York Island, ten miles from the city, between One hundred eighty-first and One hundred eighty-sixth streets, and overlooking both the Hudson and Harlem rivers. There are a few traces of its embankments yet (1857) visible.

2. Nominally, nineteen thousand men, but actually effective, not more than half that number.

3. The combatants lost about an equal number of men—not more than three hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

4. General Heath was left in command in the Highlands, and General Lee in North Castle.

5. Verse 9, page 201. Afterward adjourned to Baltimore. Verse 24, page 209.

6. Verse 2, page 138.

7. The loss of the Americans, in killed and wounded, did not exceed one hundred.

8. Nothing could exceed the horrors of these crowded prisons, as described

by an eye-witness.

The sugar-houses of

New York being large, were used for the purpose,

and therein scores suffered and died. But the

most terrible scenes occurred on board several

old hulks, which were anchored in the waters

around New York, and used for prisoners. Of

them the *Jersey* was the most famous for the

sufferings it contained, and the brutality of its

officers. From these vessels, anchored near the

present Navy Yard at Brooklyn, almost eleven

thousand victims were carried ashore during the

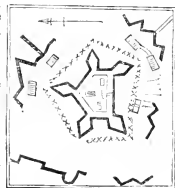
war, and buried in shallow graves in the sand.

Their remains were gathered in 1808, and put in

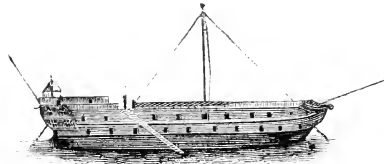
a vault situated near the termination of Front-

street, at Hudson avenue, Brooklyn. See *Order-*

book, supplement. 9. Note 2, page 206.



FORT WASHINGTON.



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.

donk's *Revolutionary Incidents of Long Island*; Lossing's *Field-Book*, supplement. 9. Note 2, page 206.

QUESTIONS.—19. What did Howe attempt to do? What movements did Washington make? What occurred at White Plains? What did Washington then do? 20. What did the English and Hessian troops accomplish? How did the Americans suffer? What did Cornwallis do?

Flight of the Americans across New Jersey.

Capture of General Lee.

abandoned on his approach, leaving all the baggage and military stores behind them.

21. Now was opened both a melancholy and a brilliant chapter in the history of the War for Independence. For three weeks, Washington, with his shattered and daily-diminishing army, was flying before an overwhelming force of Britons. Newark, New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton, successively fell into the power of Cornwallis. So close were the British vanguards upon the rear of the Americans, sometimes, that each could hear the music of the other. Day after day, the militia left the army as their terms of enlistment expired, and many of the regulars¹ deserted. Royalists were swarming all over the country through which they passed,² and when, on the 7th of December, Washington reached the frozen banks of the Delaware, at Trenton, he had less than three thousand men, most of them wretchedly clad, half-famished, and without tents to shelter them from the biting winter air. On the 8th, that remnant of an army crossed the Delaware in boats, and sat down, almost in despair, upon the Pennsylvania shore.

22. During his flight, Washington had sent repeated messages to General Lee,³ urging him to leave North Castle,⁴ and reinforce him. That officer, hoping to strike a blow against the British that might give himself personal renown, was so tardy in his obedience, that he did not enter New Jersey until the Americans had crossed the Delaware. He was soon afterward made prisoner [Dec. 13, 1776], and his command devolved upon General Sullivan.⁵ At about the same time intelligence reached the chief that the British had taken possession of Rhode Island,⁶ and blockaded the little American fleet, under Commodore Hopkins,⁷ then lying near Providence. This intelligence, and a knowledge of the failure of operations on Lake Champlain,⁸ coupled with the sad condition of the main army of patriots, made the future appear gloomy indeed.

23. Fortunately for the patriot cause, General Howe was excessively cautious and indolent. Instead of allowing Cornwallis to construct boats,⁹ cross

1. Note 7, page 152.

2. General Howe had sent out proclamations through the country, offering pardon and protection to all who might ask for mercy. Perceiving the disasters to the American arms during the summer and autumn, great numbers took advantage of these promises, and signed petitions. They soon found that *protection* did not follow *pardon*, for the Hessian troops, in their march through New Jersey, committed great excesses, without inquiring whether their victims were *Whigs* or *Tories*. Note 3, page 155.

3. Note 4, page 200.

4. Both Sullivan and Stirling, who were made prisoners on Long Island [verses 14, 15, pages 204, 205], had been exchanged, and were now again with the army. Lee was captured at Baskingridge, where Lord Stirling resided, and remained a prisoner until May, 1778, when he was exchanged for General Prescott, who was captured on Rhode Island. See verse 9, page 215.

5. A British squadron, under Sir Peter Parker, who, as we have seen [verse 7, page 200] was defeated at Charleston, sailed into Narraganset Bay early in December, and took possession of the island.

6. Note 1, page 238.

7. General Gates was appointed to the command of the army at the north, after the death of General Thomas [note 4, page 197]; and during the summer and autumn of 1776, Colonel Arnold became a sort of Commodore, and commanded flotillas of small vessels in warfare with others prepared by General Carleton, on Lake Champlain. He had two severe engagements (11th and 13th of October), in which he lost about ninety men; the British about forty. These operations were disastrous, yet they resulted in preventing the British forces in Canada uniting with those in New York.

8. The Americans took every boat they could find at Trenton, and cautiously moved them out of the river after they had crossed.

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell of Washington's retreat toward the Delaware? What was then the condition of the American army? 22. How did General Lee behave? What happened to him? What occurred in Rhode Island and on Lake Champlain?

The Americans on the Delaware.

Washington's bold plan.

March upon Trenton.

the Delaware at once, overwhelm the patriots, and push on to Philadelphia, as he might have done, he ordered him to await the freezing of the waters, so as to cross on the ice. He was also directed to place four thousand German troops in cantonments along the Jersey shore of the river, from Trenton to Burlington, and to occupy Princeton and New Brunswick with strong British detachments. Both Congress and Washington profited by this delay. Measures for reorganizing the army, already planned, were put in operation, and a loan of a large sum, in hard money, with which to pay the troops, was authorized. By the offer of liberal bounties,¹ and the influence of a stirring appeal put forth by Congress, recruits immediately flocked to Washington's standard at Newtown.² Almost simultaneously, Lee's detachment, under Sullivan, and another from Ticonderoga,³ joined him; and on the 24th of December, he found himself in command of almost five thousand effective troops, many of them fresh and hopeful.⁴

24. During all the gloom of the past month, hope had beamed brightly upon the heart of the commander-in-chief. Although Congress had adjourned to Baltimore⁵ [Dec. 12, 1776], and the public mind was filled with despondency, his reliance upon Providence in a cause so just, was never shaken; and his great soul conceived, and his ready hand planned, a bold stroke for deliverance. The Christmas holiday was at hand—a day when Germans, especially, indulge in convivial pleasures. Not doubting that the Hessians would pass the day in sports and drinking, he resolved to profit by their condition, by falling suddenly upon them while they were in deep slumber after a day and night of carousal. His plan was to cross the Delaware in three divisions, in the vicinity of Trenton.

25. Washington gathered twenty-four hundred men, with some heavy artillery, at McConkey's Ferry, eight or nine miles above Trenton, on the evening of Christmas day.⁶ The river was filled with floating ice, and sleet and snow were falling fast. The passage was made in flat boats; and so difficult was the navigation, that it was almost four o'clock in the morning [Dec. 12, 1776], when the troops were mustered on the Jersey shore. They were arranged in two divisions and approached Trenton by separate roads. Rall, the Hessian commander, was yet indulging in wine at the end of a night spent in card-playing, when the Americans approached, a little after sunrise; and while

1. Each soldier was to have a bounty of twenty dollars, besides an allotment of land at the close of the war. A common soldier was to have one hundred acres, and a colonel five hundred. These were given to those only who enlisted to serve "during the war."

2. A small village about two miles from the Delaware, north of Bristol.

3. Verse 32, page 161.

4. By the adjutant's return to Washington, on the 22d of December, the American army numbered 10,106 men, of whom 5,309 were sick, on command elsewhere, or on furlough.

5. Alarmed at the approach of the British, Congress thought it prudent to adjourn to Baltimore. A committee to represent that body was left in Philadelphia to co-operate with the army. Congress assembled at Baltimore on the 20th.

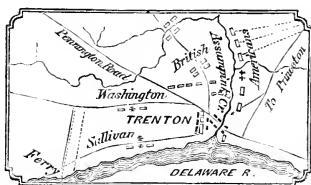
6. Taylorsville is the name of the little village at that place. The river there, now spanned by a covered bridge, is about six hundred feet in width, and has a considerable current.

QUESTIONS.—23. What did the British commander-in-chief do? How was his army disposed? How was Washington's army increased? 24. How did the circumstances affect Washington? What plan did he arrange? 25. What movement did he make? What can you tell of the march to, and attack upon the enemy at Trenton?

Battle of Trenton.

Its effects.

Washington's determination.



BATTLE AT TRENTON.

endeavoring to rally his affrighted troops, he fell, mortally wounded, in the streets of Trenton. Between forty and fifty of the Hessians were killed and fatally wounded, and more than a thousand, with arms, ammunition, and stores, were made prisoners, and spoils of victory. Five hundred British cavalry barely escaped, and fled to Bordentown. Generals Ewing and Cadwallader,

who commanded the other two divisions, were unable to cross the river, on account of the ice, to co-operate with Washington. Thinking it imprudent to remain on the Jersey shore, the victor, with his prisoners and booty, re-crossed the Delaware on the evening of the same day.

26. It was indeed a victory in more respects than that of a skillful military operation. The Germans on the river, thoroughly alarmed, fled into the interior. The Tories and pliant Whigs¹ were abashed; the friends of liberty, rising from the depths of despondency, stood erect in the pride and strength of their principles; the prestige of the Hessian name, lately so terrible, was broken, and the faltering militia, anxious for bounties and honors, flocked to the victorious standard of Washington. Fourteen hundred soldiers, whose terms of enlistment would expire with the year, agreed to remain six weeks longer. The victory was also productive of more vigilant efforts on the part of the invaders. Believing the rebellion to be at an end, and the American army hopelessly annihilated, when Washington, with his shivering, half-starved troops, fled across the Delaware, Cornwallis had returned to New York, to embark for England. The contempt of the British for the "rebels" was changed to respect and fear; and when intelligence of the affair at Trenton reached Howe, he ordered Cornwallis back with reinforcements, to gain the advantage lost. Congress, in the mean while, perceiving the necessity of giving more power to the commander-in-chief, wisely clothed him [Dec. 27] with all the strength of a military dictator for six months, and gave him absolute control of all the operations of war for that period.²

27. Encouraged by his success at Trenton, and its results, Washington resolved to act on the offensive. He ordered General Heath, who was with quite a large number of New England troops at Peekskill,³ to move into New Jersey with his main force, and the new militia levies were directed to annoy the flank and rear of the British detachments, and make frequent attacks upon their outposts. In the meantime, he again crossed the Delaware with his

1. Note 3, page 185.

2. When Congress adjourned on the 12th, to meet at Baltimore, almost equal powers were given to Washington, but they were not then defined. Now they were so, by resolution. At that time Congress had given General Putnam almost unlimited command in Philadelphia. All munitions of war there were placed under his control. He was also authorized to employ all private armed vessels in the Delaware, in defense of Philadelphia. See note 4, page 198.

3. On the east bank of the Hudson, between forty and fifty miles above New York. See verse 7, page 214.

QUESTIONS.—26. What were the effects of Washington's victory? How were the British officers affected? What did Congress do? 27. What did Washington do?

whole army, and took post at Trenton, while the British and German troops were concentrating at Princeton, only ten miles distant. Such was the position and the condition of the two armies at the close of the second year of the war.

SECTION IV.

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1777.]

1. A strange apathy seemed to pervade the councils of the British government during 1776, even while the public mind of England was filled with the subject of the American rebellion. Notwithstanding an army had been driven from one city¹ [March, 1776], a fleet expelled from another² [June], their colonies declared independent³ [July 4], and almost thirty thousand of their choice troops and fierce hirelings had been defied and combated⁴ [August], Parliament did not assemble until the last day of October, to deliberate on these important matters. Then the king, in his speech, congratulated them upon the success of the royal troops in America, and hypocritically assured them that most of the continental powers entertained friendly feelings toward Great Britain. During a dull session of six weeks, new supplies for the American service were voted, while every conciliatory proposition was rejected; and when Parliament adjourned [Dec.] to keep the Christmas holidays, the members appeared to feel that their *votes* had crushed the rebellion, and that on their re-assembling in January, they would be invited to join in a *Te Deum*⁵ at St. Paul's, because of submission and peace in America. At that very moment, Washington was planning his brilliant achievement on the banks of the Delaware.⁶

2. The members of the Continental Congress, on the contrary, were always vigilant and active. Their perpetual session was one of perpetual labor. Early in the year [March, 1776], they had appointed Silas Deane⁷ to proceed to France, as their agent, with general powers to solicit the co-operation of other governments. Even those remote colonists knew that France, Spain, and Holland, instead of being friendly to Great Britain, were anxious to humble her pride. Deane was successful in his embassy; and during the Summer of 1776, he obtained fifteen thousand muskets from the French arsenals, and abundant promises of men



SILAS DEANE.

1. Verse 4, page 199. 2. Verse 8, page 201. 3. Verse 10, page 202. 4. Verse 13, page 204.
 5. The *Te Deum Laudamus* (*We praise thee, O God*) was always chanted in churches in England, and on the continent, after a great victory, great deliverance, etc.
 6. Verse 25, page 209.
 7. Silas Deane was a native of Connecticut. His public life ended before the close of the Revolution, and he died in England in 1789.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did the British Parliament act? What folly did the king and Parliament exhibit?
 2. How did the Continental Congress act? What agent was appointed, and what did he accomplish? What bond of union was made?

and money. And when the Declaration of Independence [July 4] was made, Congress appointed a regular embassy¹ [Sept. 22] to the court of France, and finally sent agents to other foreign courts.² They also planned, and finally executed measures for strengthening the bond of union between the several colonies, already made powerfully cohesive by common dangers and common



DR. FRANKLIN.

hopes. *Articles of Confederation*, which formed the organic laws of the nation until the adoption of the Federal Constitution, were, after more than two years' consideration, approved by Congress,³ and produced vastly beneficial results during the remainder of the struggle.

3. Congress, we have observed,⁴ delegated all military power to Washington, and he used it with energy and discretion. We left him at Trenton, prepared to act offensively or defensively, as circumstances should require. He was joined by some troops under Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader, on the night of the 1st of January. Yet with these, his effective force did not exceed five thousand men. Toward the evening of the 2d of January, 1777, Cornwallis, with a strong force, approached from Princeton, and after some skirmishing, the two armies encamped on opposite sides of a small stream which runs through the town, within pistol-shot of each other. Washington commenced intrenching his camp, and Cornwallis, expecting reinforcements in the morning, felt sure of his prey, and deferred an attack for the night.

4. The Americans were in a most perilous situation. A conflict with such an overwhelming force as was gathering, appeared hopeless, and the Delaware, becoming more obstructed by ice every hour, rendered a retreat across

1. The embassy consisted of Dr. Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. Franklin and Lee joined Deane at Paris, in the middle of December, 1776. Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston in 1706. He was a printer, established himself in Pennsylvania, and, for many years before the Revolution, was an active public man, and noted philosopher. He was in Europe during most of the Revolution. On his return he was elected Governor of Pennsylvania. He died in 1790. Arthur Lee was born in Virginia in 1740, and was a brother of Richard Henry Lee [verse 9, page 211]. He was a fine writer, and warm patriot. He died in 1782.

2. Holland, Spain, and Prussia. On the 11th of June, 1776, a committee was appointed to draw up a plan. Their report was laid aside, and not called up until April, 1777. From that time until the 15th of November following, the subject was debated two or three times a week, when thirteen *Articles of Confederation* were adopted. The substance was that the thirteen confederated States should be known as the *United States of America*; that all engage in a reciprocal treaty of alliance and friendship, for mutual advantage, each to assist the other when help should be needed; that each State should have the right to regulate its own internal affairs; that no State should separately send or receive embassies, begin any negotiations, contract engagements or alliances, or conclude treaties with any foreign power, without the consent of the general Congress; that no public officer should be allowed to accept any presents, emoluments, office, or title from any foreign power; and that neither Congress nor State governments should possess the power to confer any title of nobility; that none of the States should have the right to form alliances among themselves, without the consent of Congress; that they should not have the power to levy duties contrary to the enactments of Congress; that no State should keep up a standing army or ships of war, in time of peace, beyond the amount stipulated by Congress; that when any of the States should raise troops for the common defense, all the officers of the rank of colonel and under, should be appointed by the legislature of the State, and the superior officers by Congress; that all the expenses of the war should be paid out of the public Treasury; that Congress alone should have power to coin money, and that Canada might at any time be admitted to the confederacy when she felt disposed. The last clauses were explanatory of the power of certain governmental operations, and contained details of the same. Such was the form of government which existed as the basis of our Republic, for almost twelve years.

4. Verse 26, page 210.

Cornwallis outgeneraled.

Battle of Princeton.

Flight of the Americans.

it, in the event of a surprise, almost impossible. An escape under cover of the night was the only chance of safety, but the ground was too soft to allow the patriots to drag their heavy cannons with them; and could they withdraw unobserved by the British sentinels, whose hourly cry could be heard from the camp? Toward midnight the wind changed, and the ground was soon hard frozen. Leaving a few to keep watch and feed the camp-fires to allay suspicion, Washington silently withdrew, with all his army, artillery, and baggage; and at dawn [Jan. 3, 1777], he was in sight of Princeton, prepared to fall upon Cornwallis's reserve there.¹ The British general had scarcely recovered from his surprise and mortification, on seeing the deserted camp of the Americans, when the distant booming of cannons, borne upon the keen winter air, fell ominously upon his ears. Washington and the British reserve were combating.

5. Washington did not reach Princeton as early as he expected, and instead of surprising the British, and then pushing forward to capture or destroy the enemy's stores at New Brunswick, he found a portion of the troops already on their march to join Cornwallis at Trenton. A severe encounter occurred, when the American militia giving away, the British, with a victorious shout, rushed forward, expecting to produce a general rout. At that moment Washington advanced with a select corps, brought order out of confusion, and leading on his troops with waving sword and cheering voice, turned the tide of battle and achieved a victory. The brave General Mercer,² while fighting at the head of his men, was killed, and many other beloved officers were lost on that snowy battle-field.³ Nor was the conflict of that morning yet ended. When Cornwallis perceived the desertion of the American camp, and heard the firing at Princeton, he hastened, with a greater portion of his troops, to the aid of his reserve, and to secure his stores at New Brunswick. The Americans, who had not slept nor scarcely tasted food for thirty-six hours, were compelled, just as the heat of the first battle was over, to contest with fresh troops, or fly with the speed of strong men. Washington chose the latter alternative, and when Cornwallis entered Princeton, not a "rebel" was to be found.



BATTLE AT PRINCETON.

1. A brigade under Lieutenant-Colonel Mawhood, consisting of three regiments and three troops of dragoons, were quartered there.

2. Mercer's horse had been shot under him, and he was on foot at the head of his men, when a British soldier felled him with a clubbed musket [note 3, p. 192]. Hugh Mercer was a native of Scotland. He was a surgeon on the field of Culloden, and was practicing medicine in Fredericksburg, Virginia, when the Revolution broke out. He was with Washington in the French and Indian war. He was made commander of the flying camp in 1776, and at the time of his death was about fifty-six years of age.

3. The chief of these were Colonels Haslet and Potter, Major Morris, and Captains Shippen, Fleming, and Neal.

QUESTIONS.—4. What was the situation of the Americans? How did they escape? What surprised Cornwallis? 5. What occurred at Princeton? What did Cornwallis do? What was the condition of the American troops?

The British driven out of New Jersey. The summer campaign. Tryon's depredations.

6. Too weak to attempt the capture of the British stores at New Brunswick, Washington retreated rapidly toward the hill country of East Jersey.¹ Allowing time only to refresh his troops at Pluckemin, he pressed forward to Morristown, and there established his winter quarters. But he did not sit down in idleness. After establishing small cantonments² at different points from Princeton to the Hudson Highlands, he sent out detachments to harass the thoroughly perplexed British. These expeditions were conducted with so much skill and spirit, that on the 1st of March [1777], not a British nor a Hessian soldier could be found in New Jersey, except at New Brunswick and Amboy.³ Those dreaded battalions which, sixty days before, were all-powerful in New Jersey, and had frightened the Continental Congress from Philadelphia, were now hemmed in upon the Raritan, and able to act only on the defensive. Considering the attending circumstances, this was a great triumph for the Americans. It revived the martial spirit of the people and the hopes of all good patriots; and hundreds in New Jersey, who had been deceived by Howe's proclamation, and had suffered Hessian brutality, openly espoused the Whig cause. Congress had returned to Philadelphia,⁴ and commenced its labors there with renewed vigor.

7. The main body of the two armies did not commence the summer campaign until almost the first of June. In the mean while, smaller detachments were in motion at various points. A strong armament was sent up the Hudson, in March, to destroy American stores at Peekskill. The Americans there, under the command of General McDougal,⁵ perceiving a defense of the property to be futile, set fire to the stores and retreated to the hills in the rear. The British returned to New York the same evening [March 23, 1777]. Almost a month afterward [April 13], Cornwallis went up the Raritan from New Brunswick, to surprise the Americans under General Lincoln, at Boundbrook. The latter escaped, with difficulty, after losing about sixty men and a part of his baggage.

8. Toward the close of April [April 25], Governor Tryon,⁶ at the head of two thousand British and Tories, went up Long Island Sound, landed at Compo [April 26], between Norwalk and Fairfield, marched to Danbury, destroyed a large quantity of stores belonging to the Americans, burned the town, and cruelly treated the inhabitants. Perceiving the militia to be gathering in great numbers, he retreated rapidly the next morning, by way

1. Verse 4, page 128.

2. Permanent stations for small bodies of troops.

3. The Americans went out in small companies, made sudden attacks upon pickets, outposts, and foraging parties, and in this way frightened the detachments of the enemy, and drove them in to the main body on the Raritan. At Springfield, a few miles from Elizabethtown, they attacked a party of Hessians, who were penetrating the country from Elizabethtown [Jan. 7, 1777], killed between forty and fifty of them, and drove the remainder in great confusion back to Staten Island. A larger foraging party was defeated near Somerset court house [Jan. 20] by about five hundred New Jersey militia under General Dickinson; and Newark, Elizabethtown, and Woodbridge, were taken possession of by the patriots.

4. Verse 24, p. 200.

5. Born in Scotland, and came to America in early childhood. He was a zealous Whig and active officer. He rose to the rank of major-general, was a New York State senator, and died in 1786.

6. Verse 27, page 182. Tryon now held the commission of brigadier in the British army. He was particularly distinguished for his cruelty in several marauding expeditions. We shall meet him again.

QUESTIONS.—6. What did the Americans do when they left Princeton? What did the Americans do during the winter? What were the effects of the American victories? 7. What movements were made in the spring of 1777? What can you tell of an expedition up the Hudson? What of another in New Jersey?

Exploits of the Americans.

Perplexing movements of the British.

of Ridgefield. Near that village, he had some severe skirmishing with the militia under Generals Wooster, Arnold,¹ and Silliman. Wooster was killed,² Arnold narrowly escaped, but Silliman, keeping the field, harassed the British all the way to the coast. At Compo, and while embarking, they were terribly galled by artillery under Lamb.³ Tryon lost almost three hundred men during this expedition, and killed or wounded about half that number of Americans.

9. The British were not always the aggressors. Toward the close of May [May 22], Colonel Meigs, with one hundred and seventy men, crossed Long Island Sound in whale-boats, from Guilford, Connecticut, and at two o'clock in the morning of the 23d of May, attacked a British provision post at Sag Harbor, on the eastern extremity of Long Island. They burned a dozen vessels, the store-houses and contents, and secured ninety prisoners, without losing a man of their own party. For this exploit Congress voted thanks and a sword to Colonel Meigs. A little later in the season, an equally bold exploit was performed on Rhode Island. On a dark night in July [July 10], Colonel William Barton, with a company of picked men, crossed Narraganset Bay in whale-boats in the midst of the British fleet, stole cautiously to the quarters of General Prescott,⁴ the British commander on Rhode Island, seized him while in bed, and carried him across the bay to Warwick, and then to Providence.⁵ Congress voted Barton an elegant sword.

10. Washington continued his head-quarters at Morristown until near the last of May. During the Spring he had inoculated a large portion of his troops for the small-pox;⁶ and when the leaves put forth, a fair degree of health prevailed in his camp, and his army had increased by recruits to almost ten thousand men. The movements of the British perplexed him. Burgoyne was assembling an army at St. John⁷ and vicinity, preparatory to an invasion of New York by way of Lake Champlain, to achieve the darling object of the British ministry, the occupation of the country on the Hudson.⁸ But whether Howe was preparing to co-operate with Burgoyne, or to make another attempt to seize Philadelphia,⁹ Washington could not determine. He prepared for both events by stationing Arnold with a strong detachment on the west side of the Delaware, concentrating a large force on the Hudson, and moving the main body of his army to Middlebrook, within ten miles of the British camp at New Brunswick.

1. He was one of the most daring of the American officers. For his gallantry on this occasion, Congress ordered a horse, richly caparisoned, to be presented to him.

2. David Wooster was born in Stratford, Conn., in 1710. He was at Louisburg in 1745, became a captain in the British army, and was in the French and Indian war. His loss was much deplored.

3. Verse 23, page 196.

4. Verse 19, page 195. Prescott's quarters were at a house yet [1857] standing, a short distance above Newport, and about a mile from the bay.

5. Prescott was afterward exchanged for General Charles Lee. Note 4, page 200; also verse 5, page 226.

6. The common practice of vaccination at the present day, was then unknown in the country. Indeed, the attention of Jenner, the father of the practice, had then just been turned to the subject. It was practiced here a year after the close of the war.

7. Verse 18, page 194.

8. Verse 27, page 224.

9. Verse 23, page 208.

QUESTIONS.—8. Can you relate the circumstance of Tryon's expedition to Connecticut? 9. What can you tell of an expedition to Sag Harbor? What of an exploit on Rhode Island? 10. What was the position and condition of the American army in May, 1777? How was Washington perplexed? and what did he do?

Howe and Washington in New Jersey.

Washington in Philadelphia.

La Fayette.

11. On the 12th of June [1777], Howe passed over from New York, where he had made his head-quarters during the Winter, concentrated the main body of his army at New Brunswick, and tried to draw Washington into an engagement by a feigned movement [June 14, 1777] toward the Delaware. The chief remained in his strong position at Middlebrook until Howe suddenly retreated [June 19], and appeared to be evacuating New Jersey. Washington was deceived. He ordered strong detachments in pursuit, and advanced several miles in the same direction, with his whole army. Howe suddenly changed front [June 25], and attempted to gain the rear of the Americans; but, after Stirling's brigade had maintained a severe skirmish with a corps under Cornwallis [June 26], the Americans regained their camp without much loss. Five days afterward [June 30], the whole British army crossed over to Staten Island, and left New Jersey in the complete possession of the patriots.

12. On the 12th of July, Burgoyne, with a powerful army,¹ took possession of Crown Point² and Ticonderoga,³ and spread terror over the whole North. At the same time the British fleet at New York took such a position as induced the belief that it was about to pass up the Hudson and co-operate with the victorious invader. Finally, Howe left General Clinton in command at New York, and embarking on board the fleet with eighteen thousand troops [July 23], he sailed for the Delaware. When Washington comprehended this movement he left a strong force on the Hudson, and with the main body of his troops pushed forward to Philadelphia. There he was saluted by a powerful ally, in the person of a stripling, less than twenty years of age. He was a wealthy French nobleman, who, several months before, while at a dinner with the Duke of Gloucester,⁴ first heard of the struggle of the Americans,



GENERAL LA FAYETTE.

their Declaration of Independence, and the preparations made to crush them. His young soul was fired with aspirations to give them his aid; and quitting the army he hurried to Paris. Although he had just married a young and beautiful girl, and a bright career was opened for him in his own country, he left all, and hastened to America in a vessel fitted out at his own expense. He offered his services to the Continental Congress,⁵ and that body gave him the commission [July 31] of a major-general. Three days afterward [Aug. 3], he was introduced to Washing-

ton at a public dinner, and within less than forty days he was gallantly fighting [Sept. 11] for freedom in America, on the banks of the Brandywine. That

1. Burgoyne's army consisted of about seven thousand British and German troops, and a large body of Canadians and Indians.

2. Verse 38, page 184.

3. Verse 32, page 161.

4. The Duke was the brother of the King of England, and at the time in question, was dining with some French officers, in the old town of Mentz, in Germany.

5. Verse 35, page 185.

QUESTIONS.—11. What movements were made by the British? How was Washington deceived? What then happened? 12. What was done on Lake Champlain? How did the British fleet maneuver? What did the two armies do? Who joined the Americans at Philadelphia? and what of his history?

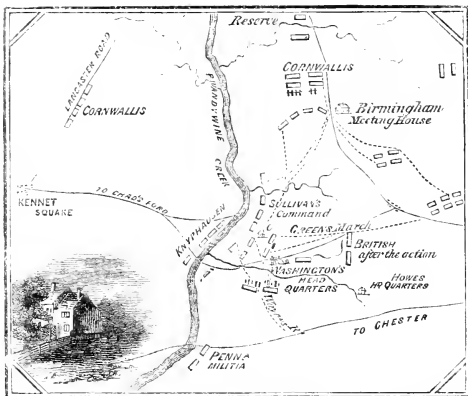
Battle of Brandywine.

young general was the Marquis de LA FAYETTE,¹ whose name is forever linked with that of Washington and Liberty.

13. Howe did not go up the Delaware, but ascended Chesapeake bay, and at its head, he disembarked [Aug. 25], and marched toward Philadelphia. Washington had advanced beyond the Brandywine creek, and took post a few miles from Wilmington. Howe's superior force compelled him to fall back to the east side of the Brandywine; and at Chad's Ford, several miles above Wilmington, he made a stand

for the defense of Philadelphia. At that point the Hessians, under Knyphausen,² attacked the left wing of the Americans [Sept. 11, 1777], commanded by Washington in person; while Howe and Cornwallis, crossing the stream several miles above, fell upon the American right, under General Sullivan, near the Birmingham meeting-house.³ The contest raged fearfully during the whole day. At night the shattered and defeated battalions of patriots retreated to Chester, and the following day [Sept. 12] to Philadelphia. Many brave men were killed or disabled on that sanguinary field. La Fayette was severely wounded;⁴ and the patriots lost full twelve hundred men, killed, wounded, and made prisoners. The British lost almost eight hundred.⁵

14. Having rested a few days, Washington crossed the Schuylkill, and proceeded to confront Howe, who was making slow marches toward Philadelphia. They met [Sept. 16] twenty miles west of that city, and some skirmishing ensued; but a heavy rain prevented a general battle, and the



BATTLE AT THE BRANDYWINE.

1. He was born on the 6th of September, 1757. He married the daughter of the Duke de Noailles, a beautiful heiress, at the age of eighteen years. He first landed on the coast of South Carolina, and made a long journey to Philadelphia. His application was not received at first, by the Continental Congress, but when his true character and design were known, they gave him a major-general's commission. He was afterward an active patriot in his own country in many perilous scenes. He visited America in 1784 [verse 11, page 304], and died in 1834, at the age of seventy-seven years. The Baron de Kalb [verse 8, page 242] and eleven other French and Polish officers, came to America in La Fayette's vessel.

2. Verse 20, page 207.

3. This was (and is yet) a Quaker meeting-house, situated a few miles from Chad's Ford, on the road from Jefferis's Ford (where Howe and Cornwallis crossed) to Wilmington.

4. A bullet passed through his leg. He was conveyed to Bethlehem, Pennsylvania, where the Moravian sisters nursed him during his confinement. Count Pulaski began his military career in the American army, on the field of Brandywine, where he commanded a troop of horse, and after the battle he was promoted to the rank of Brigadier. He was slain at Savannah. See note 1, page 237.

5. The building seen in the corner of the map, is a view of the head-quarters of Washington, yet [1857] standing, a short distance from Chad's Ford.

QUESTIONS.—13. What course did the British take? What happened near the Brandywine creek? What can you tell of the battle?

Surprise of Wayne at Paoli.

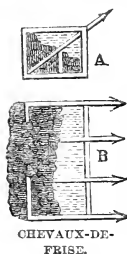
Movements in Pennsylvania.

Battles at the Delaware forts.

Americans withdrew toward Reading. General Wayne, in the mean while, was hanging upon the rear of the enemy with about fifteen hundred men. On the night of the 20th, he was surprised by a party of British and Hessians, under General Grey, near the Paoli Tavern, and lost about three hundred of his party.¹ With the remainder he joined Washington, then near Valley Forge.

15. The Americans had collected a large quantity of ammunition and military stores at Reading; and as the movement of Howe indicated an intention to seize them, Washington abandoned Philadelphia, and took position at Pottsgrove, thirty-five miles distant, to protect those indispensable materials for his army. Howe crossed the Schuylkill [Sept. 23, 1777] near Norristown, and marched to the federal city² [Sept. 26], without opposition. Congress fled at his approach, first to Lancaster [Sept. 27], and then to York, where it assembled on the 30th, and continued its session there until the following summer. The main body of the British army was encamped at Germantown, four miles from Philadelphia, and Howe prepared to make that city his winter quarters.³

16. A few miles below Philadelphia, on opposite sides of the Delaware, were two forts of considerable strength (Mifflin and Mercer), garrisoned by the Americans. While the British army was marching from the Chesapeake⁴ to Philadelphia, the fleet had sailed round to the Delaware, and had approached to the head of that bay. These forts commanded the river; and a *chevaux-de-frise*⁵ just below them, completely obstructed it, so that the army in Philadelphia could obtain no supplies from the fleet. The possession of these forts was important; and on the 22d of October they were attacked by detachments sent by Howe. Fort Mercer was assailed by two thousand Hessian grenadiers, under Count Donop.⁶ They were repulsed by the garrison of less than five hundred men, under Lieutenant-Colonel Greene, after losing their commander⁷ and almost four hundred soldiers. The garrison of Fort Mifflin, under Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, also made a gallant defense, but after a series of assaults by land and water, it was abandoned [Nov. 16, 1777]. Two days afterward, Fort Mercer was also abandoned, and several British ships sailed up to Philadelphia.⁸



CHEVAUX-DE-FRISÉ.

1. The bodies of fifty-three Americans, found on the field the next morning, were interred in one broad grave; and forty years afterward, the "Republican Artillerists" of Chester county, erected a neat marble monument over them.

2. Philadelphia, New York, and Washington, have been, respectively, federal cities, or cities where the Federal Congress of the United States assembled.

3. Note 6, page 224.

4. Verse 13, page 217.

5. *Chevaux-de-frise* are obstructions placed in river channels to prevent the passage of vessels. They are generally made of a series of heavy timbers, pointed with iron, and secured at an angle in a strong frame filled with stones, as seen in the engraving. The upper figure shows the position under water—the lower one shows how the timbers are arranged, and the stones placed in them.

6. Verse 24, page 209.

7. Donop was terribly wounded, and taken to the house of a Quaker near by, where he expired a few days afterward. He was buried beneath the fort. A few years ago his bones were disinterred, and his skull was taken possession of by a New Jersey physician.

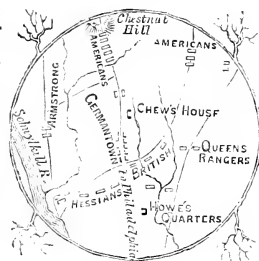
8. In the defense of these forts, the Americans lost about three hundred men, and the enemy almost double that number.

QUESTIONS.—14. What movements were made by Washington? What happened to troops under Wayne? 15. Why did Washington encamp at Pottsgrove? What did General Howe do? What did Congress do? 16. How was the approach to Philadelphia by water, guarded? What can you tell of occurrences on the Delaware?

Battle at Germantown.

Burgoyne on Lake Champlain.

17. Washington moved down the Schuylkill to Skippack Creek [Sept. 25], and from that point he marched, silently, on the evening of the 3d of October, toward the camp of the enemy, at Germantown. He reached Chestnut Hill, beyond that village, at dawn the following morning, and the attack soon commenced near there. After a severe battle during several hours, the patriots were repulsed, with a loss, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about equal to that at Brandywine.¹ The British lost only about six hundred. On the 19th, Howe broke up his encampment at Germantown. Three weeks afterward, he proceeded to place his whole army in winter quarters in Philadelphia. Washington retired to his camp on Skippack Creek; and on the 29th of November, prepared to go into winter quarters at White Marsh, fourteen miles from Philadelphia.



BATTLE AT GERMANTOWN.

18. While these events, so disastrous to the Americans, were occurring on the Delaware, others of vast importance were transpiring on the banks of the Hudson and on Lake Champlain. Burgoyne,² with more than ten thousand men, invested Ticonderoga on the 2d of July. The fortress was garrisoned by General St. Clair, with only about three thousand men. Upon Mount Independence, on the opposite side of the lake, were a small fortification and a weak garrison.³ On the approach of Burgoyne, St. Clair⁴ left his outworks, gathered his force near the fortress, and prepared for an assault; but when, on the evening of the 5th, he saw the scarlet uniforms of the British on the top of Mount Defiance,⁵ and a battery of heavy cannons planted there,⁶ more than five hundred feet above the fort, he knew resistance would be vain. That evening he sent his



GENERAL ST. CLAIR.

1. Washington felt certain of victory at the beginning of the battle. Just as it commenced, a dense fog overspread the country; and through the inexperience of some of his troops, great confusion, in their movements, was produced. A false rumor caused a panic among the Americans, just as the British were about to fall back, and a general retreat and loss of victory were the result. In Germantown, a strong stone house is yet [1857] standing, which belonged to Judge Chew. This a part of the enemy occupied, and from the windows fired with deadly effect upon the Americans.

2. Verse 10, p. 215.
3. During the previous year, the Americans constructed a picketed fort, or stockade [note 3, page 150] on that eminence, built about three hundred huts or barracks, dug several wells, and placed batteries [note 2, page 110] at different points. The remains of these are now [1857] everywhere visible on Mount Independence. This was so called because the troops took possession of it on the 4th of July, 1776. Verse 10, page 202.

4. Arthur St. Clair was a native of Scotland, and came to America with Admiral Boscawen, early in May, 1755. He served under Wolfe; and when the Revolution broke out he entered the American army. He served during the war, and afterward, and died in 1818, at the age of eighty-four years.

5. This is a hill about 750 feet in height, situated on the south-west side of the outlet of Lake George, opposite Ticonderoga.

6. With immense labor Burgoyne opened a road up the northern slope of Mount Defiance, and dragged heavy artillery to the summit. From that point every ball might be hurled within the fort below, without difficulty.

QUESTIONS.—17. What caused Washington to attack the British at Germantown? What can you tell of the battle? What did the two armies then do? 18. What events were occurring elsewhere? Can you tell what happened at Ticonderoga? What did the Americans do?

Capture of Ticonderoga. Misfortunes of the Americans. Schuyler's camp on the Mohawk.

ammunition and stores up the lake to Skenesborough,¹ and under cover of the darkness, silently crossed over to Mount Independence, and commenced a retreat toward Fort Edward,² the head-quarters of General Schuyler, who was then in command of the northern army.

19. The light of a burning building, fired on Mount Independence, discovered their flight to the enemy, and a strong party was immediately sent in pursuit.³ At dawn, the British flag was waving over Ticonderoga; and a little after sunrise [July 7, 1777] the rear division of the flying Americans, under Colonel Seth Warner,⁴ were overtaken in Hubbardton, Vermont, and a severe engagement followed. The patriots were defeated and dispersed, and the victors returned to Ticonderoga.⁵ Before sunset the same evening, a flotilla of British vessels had overtaken and destroyed the Americans' stores which St. Clair had sent up the lake, and also another large quantity at Skenesborough. The fragments of St. Clair's army reached Fort Edward on the 12th, thoroughly dispirited. Within a week the Americans had lost almost two hundred pieces of artillery, and a large amount of provisions and military stores.

20. Even with this reinforcement, Schuyler had only about four thousand effective men—a number totally inadequate to combat with those of Burgoyne. He therefore sent a strong party toward Skenesborough to fell huge trees across the roads, and to destroy all the bridges so as to obstruct the march of the invaders, while he slowly retreated down the Hudson valley to the mouth of the Mohawk, and there established a fortified camp.⁶ His call for aid was nobly responded to, for the whole country was thoroughly aroused to a sense of peril. Detachments were sent from the regular army to strengthen him; and soon General Lincoln came with a large body of New England militia. When General Gates arrived, to take the chief command,⁷ he found an army of thirteen thousand men ready to meet the invader.

21. Burgoyne did not reach Fort Edward⁸ until



KOSCIUSKO.

when, by great exertions and through great hardships, he had a force prepared to confront Burgoyne with some prospect of success.

8. It was while Burgoyne was approaching that point, that Jane M'Crea the betrothed of a young Tory

QUESTIONS.—19. What discovered the retreat of the Americans? What then occurred? What disasters befell the Americans? 20. What was the condition of the American army? and what did Schuyler do? How was his army increased?

1. Now Whitehall. It was named after Philip Skene, who settled there in 1764. The narrow part of Lake Champlain, from Ticonderoga to Whitehall, was formerly called *Wood Creek* (the name of the stream that enters the lake at Whitehall), and also *South River*.

2. Note 5, page 161.

3. These consisted of the brigade of General Fraser, and two Hessian corps.

4. Verse 7, p. 189.

5. The Americans lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, a little more than three hundred; the British reported their loss at one hundred and eighty-three.

6. Thaddeus Kosciuszko, a Polish refugee, who came with Lafayette [verse 12, p. 216], was now attached to Schuyler's army, as engineer. Under his direction, the intrenchments at the mouth of the Mohawk river were constructed; also those at Stillwater and Saratoga. The camp at the mouth of the Mohawk was upon islands just below the Great, or Cohoes' Falls.

7. General Schuyler had superseded Gates in June. The latter had a strong party of friends in Congress, and the command of the northern army was ungenerously taken from Schuyler at the moment

Battle of Bennington.

Battle of Oriskany.

Death of Herkimer.

the 30th of July.¹ His army was worn down by fatigue, and his provisions were almost exhausted. To replenish his stores, he sent a party of six hundred, under Colonel Baume, to seize provisions and cattle which the Americans had collected at Bennington, thirty-five miles distant. Colonel John Stark had called out the New Hampshire militia; and near Hoosick, within five miles of Bennington, they met [Aug. 16] and defeated the marauders. And toward evening when another party, under Colonel Breyman, approached, they also were defeated by a continental force under Colonel Seth Warner.² Many of the enemy were killed, and a large number were made prisoners. Burgoyne's entire loss in this expedition was almost a thousand men. The Americans had one hundred killed, and as many wounded. This defeat was fatal to Burgoyne's future operations.³ Stark was made a brigadier in the continental army for his gallantry.

22. At this time, the Mohawk valley was a scene of great confusion and alarm. St. Leger and his savages, joined by the Mohawk Indians, under Brant,⁴ and Tories under Johnson⁵ and Butler, had arrived from Oswego, and invested Fort Schuyler [Aug. 3, 1777]. The garrison was commanded by Colonel Gansevoort, and made a spirited defense. General Herkimer rallied the militia of his neighborhood; and while marching to the assistance of Gansevoort, he fell into an Indian ambuscade [Aug. 6] at Oriskany.⁶ His party was totally defeated, after a bloody conflict, and



JOSEPH BRANT.

in the British army, was shot, while being conveyed by a party of Indians from Fort Edward to the British camp. Her death was charged upon the Indians, and it was made the subject of the most bitter denunciations of the British ministers, for employing such cruel instrumentalities. The place of her death is a short distance from the village of Fort Edward. The pine-tree which marked the spot decayed a few years ago, and in 1853 it was cut down, and converted into canes and boxes for the curious.

1. He was obliged to construct forty bridges on the way, and to remove the many trees which lay across the roads. To estimate the fatigue which the troops must have endured during that hot month, it must be remembered that each soldier bore a weight of sixty pounds, in arms, accoutrements, and supplies.

2. Verse 7, page 189, and verse 19, page 220.

3. It dispirited his troops, who were worn down with the fatigue of the obstructed march from Skenesborough to Fort Edward. It also caused a delay of a month at that place, and in the meantime their provisions were rapidly diminishing. While at Fort Edward, Burgoyne received intelligence of the defeat of St. Leger [verse 22, page 221] at Fort Stanwix.

4. Joseph Brant was a Mohawk Indian, and a great favorite of Sir William Johnson. He adhered to the British, and went to Canada after the war, where he died in 1807, aged sixty-five years.

5. Sir William Johnson [verse 19, page 155] (now dead) had been a sort of autocrat among the Indians and Tories in the Mohawk valley. He flattered the chiefs in various ways, and through them he obtained almost unbounded influence over the tribes, especially that of the *Mohawks*. He was in the habit of giving those chiefs, who pleased him, a diploma, certifying their good character, and faithfulness to his majesty. These contained a picture, representing a treaty council, of which the annexed engraving is a copy. His family were the worst enemies of the Americans during the war, in that region. His son, John, raised a regiment of Tories, called the *Johnson Greens* (those who joined St. Leger); and John Butler, a cruel leader, was at the head of another band, called *Butler's Rangers*. These co-operated with Brant, the great Mohawk sachem, and for years they made the Mohawk valley and vicinity, a scene of terror. These men were the allies of St. Leger on the occasion in question.

6. The place of the battle is about half-way between Utica and Rome. The latter village is upon the site of Fort Stanwix, built by Bradstreet and his troops in 1758 [verse 13, page 161]. It was repaired and garrisoned in 1776, and its name was changed to Fort Schuyler. Another Fort Schuyler was built during the French and Indian war, where Utica now stands.

QUESTIONS.—21. What was the condition of the British army? What enterprise was undertaken? and what was the result? 22. What occurred in the Mohawk valley?



A TREATY.

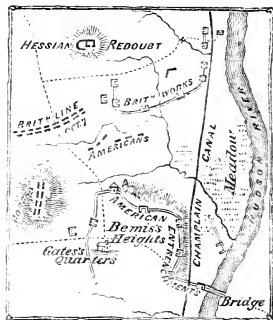
Battles at Saratoga.

himself mortally wounded. On the same day, a corps of the garrison, under Colonel Willet, made a successful sortie,¹ and broke the power of the besiegers. Arnold, who had been sent by Schuyler to the relief of the fort, soon afterward approached, when the besiegers fled [Aug. 22], and quiet was restored to the Mohawk valley.



GENERAL BURGoyNE.

23. Burgoyne was greatly perplexed. To retreat, advance, or remain inactive, seemed equally perilous. With little hope of reaching Albany, where he had boasted he would eat his Christmas dinner, he crossed the Hudson and formed a fortified camp on the hills and plains of Saratoga, now the site of Schuylerville. General Gates advanced to Bemis's Heights,² a little above Stillwater, and also formed a fortified camp.³ A severe,



BEMIS'S HEIGHTS.

but indecisive action ensued on the 19th of September. Night terminated the conflict, and both parties claimed the victory.⁴ Burgoyne fell back to his camp, where he resolved to await the arrival of expected detachments from General Clinton, who was to attack the posts on the Hudson Highlands, and force his way to Albany.⁵ But after waiting a few days, and hearing nothing from Clinton, he prepared for another attempt upon the Americans, for the militia were flocking to Gates's camp, and warriors of the Six Nations⁶ were gathering there. His own forces, on the contrary, were hourly diminishing. As his star, which arose so brightly at Ticonderoga,⁷ began to decline upon the Hudson, the Canadians and his Indian allies deserted him in great numbers.⁸ He was compelled to fight or flee. Again he advanced; and after a severe battle [Oct. 7] of several hours, almost on the same ground occupied on the 19th of September, he was compelled to fall back to the heights of Saratoga, and leave the patriots in the possession of the field. Ten days afterward [Oct. 17], finding only three days' provisions in his camp, hearing nothing of Clinton, and perceiving retreat impossible, he was compelled to surrender his whole army

1. Note 1, page 196.

2. About four miles north of the village of Stillwater, and twenty-five north of Albany.

3. The remains of some of the intrenchments were yet visible in 1850, when the writer visited the locality.

4. The number of Americans engaged in this action, was about 2,500; that of the British was about 3,000. The former lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, 319; the British loss was rather less than 500.

5. Verse 27, page 224.

6. Verse 5, page 19.

7. Verse 18, page 219.

8. The Indians had been disappointed in their expectations of blood and plunder; and now was their hunting season, when provisions must be secured for winter use. The Canadians saw nothing but defeat in the future, and left the army in whole companies.

QUESTIONS.—23. How was Burgoyne perplexed? What movements were made by the two armies? What can you tell of two battles that ensued?

Surrender of Burgoyne.

Effects of that event.

prisoners of war.¹ Of necessity the forts upon Lake Champlain now fell into the hands of the patriots.

24. This was a glorious victory for the Americans. It gave them a fine train of brass artillery, five thousand muskets, and a vast amount of munitions of war. Its moral effect was of greater importance. All eyes had been anxiously turned to the army of the North, and Congress and the people listened eagerly for every breath of rumor from Saratoga. How electric was the effect when a shout of victory came from the camp of Gates!² It rolled over the land, and was echoed from furrows, workshops, marts of commerce, the halls of legislation, and from the shattered army of Washington at White-marsh.³ Toryism stood abashed; the bills of Congress rose twenty per cent. in value;⁴ private capital came from its hiding-places, for public employment; the militia flocked to the standards of leaders, and the great patriot heart of America beat with the strong pulsations of hope.

25. The effect in Europe was also favorable to the Americans. The highest hopes of the ministers rested on this expedition, and the generalship of Burgoyne justified their expectations. It was a most severe blow, and gave the opposition in Parliament the keenest weapons. Pitt, leaning upon his crutches,⁵ poured forth eloquent denunciations [December, 1777] of the mode of warfare pursued—the employment of German hirelings,⁶ and brutal savages.⁷ “If I were an American, as I am an Englishman,” he exclaimed, “while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I never would lay down my arms—never, never, never!” In the Lower House,⁸ Burke, Fox, and Barré were equally severe upon the government.

26. This victory weighed mightily in favor of the Americans at the court of France. Unaided by any foreign power, they had defeated and captured a well-trained army of about six thousand men. “Surely such a people possess the elements of success, and will achieve it. We may now safely strike England a severe blow,⁹ by acknowledging the independence, and forming an

1. The whole number surrendered was 5,791, of whom 2,412 were Germans or *Hessians* [verse 2, page 198], under the chief command of the Baron Reidesel, whose wife accompanied him, and afterward wrote a very interesting account of her experience in America. Burgoyne *did* dine at Albany [verse 23, page 222], but as a prisoner, though a guest at the table of General Schuyler. His troops were marched to Cambridge, with the view of sending them to Europe, but Congress thought it proper to retain them, and they were marched to the interior of Virginia. John Burgoyne was a son of Lord Bingley. On his return to England, he resumed his seat as a member of Parliament, and opposed the war. He died in 1792.

2. General Gates was so elated with the victory, which had been prepared for by General Schuyler, and won by the valor of Arnold and Morgan [verse 23, page 196], that he neglected the courtesy due to the commander-in-chief, and instead of sending his dispatches to him, he sent his aid, Colonel Wilkinson, with a verbal message to Congress. That body also forgot its dignity in the hour of its joy, and the young officer was allowed to announce the victory himself, on the floor of Congress. In his subsequent dispatches, Gates did not mention the names of Arnold and Morgan. Congress voted a gold medal to Gates.

3. Verse 17, page 219.

4. Note 2, page 198.

5. Note 4, page 188.

6. Verse 2, page 198.

7. A member justified the employment of the Indians, by saying that the British had a right to use the means “which God and nature had given them.” Pitt scornfully repeated the passage, and said, “These abominable principles, and this most abominable avowal of them, demand most decisive indignation. I call upon that right reverend bench (pointing to the bishops), those holy ministers of the Gospel, and pious pastors of the church—I conjure them to join in the holy work, and to vindicate the religion of their God.”

8. Note 7, page 177.

9. France rejoiced at the embarrassments of England, on account of her revolted colonies, and from the beginning secretly favored the latter. She thought it inexpedient to aid the colonies openly, until there appeared some chance for their success; yet arms and money were secretly provided for a long time previous

QUESTIONS.—24. What were the effects of Burgoyne's defeat in America? 25. What were the effects of the victory, in France? What occurred in the British Parliament? 26. What effect did the victory have in France? What did the French government do?

Treaty with France.

The British on the Hudson.

Valley Forge.

alliance with her revolted colonies," argued the French government. And so it did. Within a little more than a hundred days after Burgoyne laid down his arms at Saratoga, France had formed an alliance with the United States [Feb. 6, 1778], and publicly avowed it.

27. General Clinton attempted co-operation with Burgoyne, but too late for success. He ascended the Hudson with a strong force, captured the Highland forts¹ [Oct. 6, 1776], and sent a marauding expedition above these mountain barriers, to devastate the country [Oct. 13], and endeavor to draw off some of the patriot troops from Saratoga.² They burned Kingston, and penetrated as far as Livingston's manor, in Columbia county. Informed of the surrender of Burgoyne, they hastily retreated, and Clinton and his army returned to New York. Some of Gates's troops now joined Washington at Whitemarsh.³ Howe made several attempts to entice the chief from his encampment, but without success.⁴ Finally Washington moved from that position [Dec. 11], and went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, where he might more easily afford protection to Congress at York, and his stores at Reading.⁵ The events of that encampment at Valley Forge afford some of the gloomiest, as well as some of the most brilliant scenes in the records of American patriotism.

SECTION V.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1778.]

1. In the bosom of a rugged gorge on the banks of the Schuylkill, twenty miles north-west of Philadelphia, the American army was encamped during the severe winter of 1777-78. Many of the soldiers had marched thither from Whitemarsh, barefooted, and left bloody foot-prints in the snow on their dreary journey. There, half-clad and scantily fed, they shivered in rude huts, while the British army was indulging in comforts and luxuries within a large city.⁶ Yet that freezing and starving army did not despair, nor

to the alliance. Her motives were not the benevolent ones to aid the patriots, so much as a selfish desire to injure England for her own benefit. A Bourbon (the family of French kings) was never known to be an honest advocate of free principles.

1. Forts Clinton and Montgomery, situated on opposite sides of a stream which forms the dividing line between Orange and Rockland counties. Fort Independence, near Peekskill, and Fort Constitution, opposite West Point, were abandoned on his approach. Fort Putnam, at West Point, was not yet erected.

2. While the garrisons of the two forts (who escaped) were re-gathering, back of New Windsor, a man from the British army was arrested on suspicion of being a spy. He was seen to swallow something. An emetic brought it up, and it was discovered to be a hollow silver bullet, containing a dispatch from Clinton to Burgoyne, written on thin paper. That bullet is yet in the family of George Clinton, who was the first Republican Governor of New York.

3. Verse 17, page 219.

4. Howe marched out to attack Washington on the 4th of December, expecting to take him by surprise. A Quaker lady of Philadelphia, who had overheard British officers talking about this enterprise, at her house, gave Washington timely information, and he was too well prepared for Howe to fear his menaces. After some skirmishes, in which several Americans were lost, Howe returned to Philadelphia.

5. Verse 15, page 218.

6. The power of the British army was very much weakened by indulgence during that winter. Profligacy begat disease, crime, and insubordination. The evil effects produced upon the army led Dr. Franklin to say, "Howe did not take Philadelphia—Philadelphia took Howe." General Howe took leave of the army in May, and the officers gave him a splendid farewell *fête*, which was called a *Mischianza*, signifying a medley. For a full description, see Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution*, volume ii.

QUESTIONS.—27. What did General Clinton do? What did an expedition up the Hudson accomplish? What occurred near Whitemarsh? What did Washington do? 1. What can you tell of the encampment at Valley Forge? How did the Americans suffer? By what were they cheered?

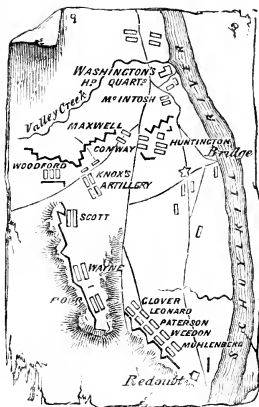
Encampment at Valley Forge.

Proceedings in Parliament.

Commissioners.

did the commander-in-chief, who shared their privations, and suffered injury at the hands of intriguing men,¹ lose confidence in the patriotism of the people or his troops, or doubt the wisdom of Providence.² In the spring, intelligence of the treaty of alliance with France was received;³ and when the news spread through the camp [May 1, 1778], shouts loud and long shook the forests which shrouded the hills around Valley Forge.⁴

2. Light also emanated from the British throne and Parliament. The capture of Burgoyne, and the general failure of the campaign for 1777, made the English people, and a powerful minority in Parliament, clamorous for peace and reconciliation. Lord North, the prime minister,⁵ was compelled to listen. To the astonishment of every body, he proposed [Feb. 17] a repeal of all the acts of Parliament obnoxious to the Americans, which had been enacted since 1763; and in the course of his speech in favor of his conciliatory plan, he actually proposed to treat the Continental Congress as a legal body. Two bills, expressing these conciliatory measures, were passed after much opposition,⁶ and received the signature of the king [March 11]. Commissioners⁷ were appointed to proceed to America to negotiate for peace with Congress, and the British Government seemed really anxious to offer the olive branch, without qualification. But the Americans had been too often deceived to accept any thing confidently from that source; and as soon as these bills reached Congress [April 15], and it was found that they made no mention of the independence of the colonies, that body at once rejected them as deceptive. Congress refused also to negotiate with the Commissioners until Great Britain should withdraw her fleets and armies, or unequivocally acknowledge the independence of the United States. After unsuccessfully appealing to the American people, and one of them endeavoring to bribe members of Congress,⁸ the commissioners returned to England, and the war went on.



ENCAMPMENT AT VALLEY FORGE.

1. During this season a scheme was formed among a few officers of the army, and members of Congress, for depriving Washington of his command, and giving it to Gates or Lee. One of the chief actors in the plot was General Conway, an Irishman, who belonged to the Continental army. The plot was discovered and defeated, and Conway was led to make a most humble apology to Washington, for his conduct.

2. On one occasion, Isaac Potts, whose house was Washington's head-quarters at Valley Forge, discovered the chief in a retired place, pouring out his soul in prayer to his God. Potts went to his wife and said, "If there is any one on this earth to whom the Lord will listen, it is George Washington."

3. Verse 26, page 223.

4. On the 7th of May the army fired salutes in honor of the event, and by direction of the chief, they all shouted, *Huzza for the King of France!*

5. Pitt was favorable to these bills; but when a proposition was made to acknowledge the independence of the colonies, and thus dismember the British empire, he opposed the measure with all his might. He was in favor of *reconciliation*, not of *separation*. It was during his speech on that subject that he was seized with the illness [April 7] which terminated his life a month afterward. Pitt was born in November, 1708, and died on the 11th of May, 1778, when almost seventy years of age.

6. Earl of Carlisle, George Johnstone, and William Eden.

7. Among those who were approached, was General Joseph Reed. To Mrs. Ferguson, the lady who was

QUESTIONS.—2. What was done in England? What did Parliament do? How did the Americans treat the whole matter?

French fleet in the Delaware.

Evacuation of Philadelphia.

Battle of Monmouth.

3. The first movement of the French government, in compliance with the requirements of its treaty with the United States, was to dispatch a squadron under Count D'Estaing, to blockade the British fleet in the Delaware.¹ When, a month before he sailed, the British ministry was officially informed [March 17, 1778] of the treaty, and it was considered equivalent to a declaration of war, a vessel was dispatched with a message to the British commanders, ordering them to evacuate Philadelphia and the Delaware, and to concentrate their forces at New York. Fortunately for Lord Howe, he had left the Delaware a few days before the arrival of D'Estaing² [July 8, 1778], and found safety from the heavy French vessels, in the waters of Amboy or Raritan Bay.

4. Sir Henry Clinton succeeded Sir William Howe³ in command, toward the close of May, and on the 18th of June, he withdrew his whole army (eleven thousand strong) from Philadelphia, and started for New York, by the way of New Brunswick and Amboy. Washington was on the alert, and breaking up his encampment at Valley Forge,⁴ he pursued Clinton with more than equal force,⁵ and compelled him to change his course in the direction of Sandy Hook, while New Jersey militia continually harassed his flanks and rear.⁶ Finally a general engagement took place [June 28, 1778] on the plains of Monmouth, in the present village of Freehold, in New Jersey.



GENERAL CLINTON.

5. It was Sabbath morning, and one of the most sultry ever known when the two armies met in conflict, and from nine o'clock in the forenoon, until dark of that long summer day, the terrible contest raged. It was commenced by the advanced division of the American army, under General Charles Lee.⁷ His apparent want of skill or courage, and a misunderstanding of orders on the part of some of his officers, produced a general and tumultuous retreat of

made the vehicle of a proposition to give him fifty thousand dollars, and a lucrative office, if he would favor the views of the commissioners, he is reported to have said, "*I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am, the King of England is not rich enough to do it.*"

1. It consisted of twelve ships of the line, and four large frigates.

2. Silas Deane [page 211] returned to America in D'Estaing's flag-ship, and Gerard, the first French minister to the United States, came in the same vessel. Congress was now in session in Philadelphia, having returned from York [verse 15, page 218] on the 30th of June.

3. Howe was made a baronet, and called Sir William, because of his success (such as it was) in the battle at Brooklyn, in August, 1776, [see page 205]. Clinton was a son of George Clinton, governor of the province of New York in 1743, and a grandson of the Earl of Lincoln. After the war, he was made governor of Gibraltar [1795], and died there the same year.

4. Verse 1, page 225.
5. Arnold was yet quite lame from the effects of a severe wound in the leg, which he received in the battle of Bemis's Heights [verse 23, page 222], and at his solicitation, Washington left him in command of a corps at Philadelphia, with the powers of a military governor. Washington crossed the Delaware in pursuit of Clinton, with a little more than 12,000 men.

6. Washington was anxious to attack Clinton, when he was in the vicinity of Allentown, but Lee and others overruled his opinions in a council of war. Greene, La Fayette and Wayne agreed with the chief, and supported by these able officers, he resolved on a general engagement.

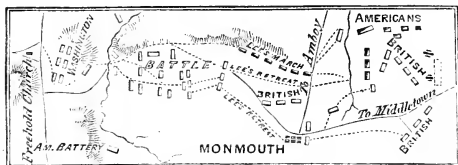
7. [Verse 5, page 200]. This command was first given to La Fayette, but when Lee signified his readiness to lead it, it was given to him, as he was the senior officer.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did the French government do? What did the British do? 4. Who succeeded Howe, and what did he do? How did the Americans annoy the British? 5. What can you tell of the battle of Monmouth? What did General Lee do? What movements were made by Clinton and Washington?

Escape of the British.

Events on Rhode Island.

his division. The fugitives were met by the approaching main body, under Washington,¹ and being speedily checked and restored to order by the chief, they were led to action, and the battle became general. Many fell under the excessive heat of the day, and when night came, both



BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.

parties were glad to rest. The Americans slept on their arms² during the night, with the intention of renewing the battle at dawn, but when light appeared, the British camp was deserted. Clinton had silently withdrawn [June 29], and was far on his way toward Sandy Hook. Washington did not follow, but marching to New Brunswick, and thence to the Hudson river, he proceeded to White Plains,³ where he remained until late in Autumn. Then he crossed into New Jersey, and made his winter quarters at Middlebrook,⁴ on the Raritan. Clinton's shattered forces went on board the British fleet at Sandy Hook, and proceeded to New York, where the head-quarters of the royal army continued until the close of the war.⁵

6. When D'Estaing appeared off Sandy Hook, the British fleet was safe in Raritan Bay, for the bar from the Hook to Staten Island, would not allow the heavy French vessels to pass. D'Estaing therefore relinquished his design of attacking Howe's fleet, and, on the solicitation of Washington, he proceeded to Newport, to assist the Americans in an attempt to drive the British from Rhode Island.⁶ General Sullivan was in command there, and Washington also dispatched La Fayette, with two Continental regiments (accompanied by General Greene, then quarter-master general), to aid in the expedition. John Hancock⁷ came at the head of Massachusetts militia, and similar troops gathered at Tiverton, from Connecticut and Rhode Island.⁸ On

1. Washington was greatly irritated when he met the fugitives, and riding up to Lee, he addressed him with much warmth of language, and directed him to assist in restoring order. Lee promptly obeyed, but the sting of Washington's words rankled in his bosom, and on the day after the battle he addressed an offensive letter to the chief. Lee was arrested and tried by a court-martial, on the charges of disobedience of orders, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief. He was found guilty, and was suspended from command for one year. He never entered the army again, and died in obscurity in Philadelphia, in October, 1782. He was brave, but bad in manners and morals, profane in language, and a contemner of religion. It is believed that he was willing to have Washington lose the battle of Monmouth, because he (Lee) was opposed to it, and at the same time was seeking to rise to the chief command upon the ruins of Washington's reputation. The place where Washington and Lee met on the battle-field of Monmouth, is indicated by the black spot on the above map, marked c. The battle occurred a short distance from the Freehold Presbyterian Church, yet [1857] standing.

2. This expression is used respecting troops who sleep with all their accoutrements on, and their weapons by their side ready for action in a moment. The British left about three hundred killed on the field of battle. They also left a large number of the sick and wounded to the mercy of the Americans. The Americans lost in killed, wounded and missing, two hundred and twenty-eight. Many of the missing afterward rejoined the army. They had less than seventy killed.

4. Verse 10, page 215.

5. Verse 2, page 258.

6. Verse 22, page 208.

3. Verse 19, page 205.

7. Verse 10, page 202.

8. The people of Rhode Island had suffered dreadfully from the brutality of the British troops. There had been some amelioration of their condition since the capture of Prescott [verse 9, page 215], and under the rule of Pigot, the present commander. When success seemed possible, thousands of volunteers flocked to the standards of Sullivan and La Fayette. John Hancock was appointed a general of some of these volunteers.

French and English fleets.

Terrible storm.

Battle of Quaker Hill.

the 9th of August [1778], the whole American force crossed from Tiverton to the north end of Rhode Island.

7. The British fleet was reinforced by several ships of war from England, and a few days after D'Estaing sailed for Newport,¹ a large squadron under Howe, proceeded to the relief of Pigot. It appeared off Rhode Island on the same day [Aug. 9], when the Americans landed on the northern end of it.



COUNT D'ESTAING.

D'Estaing, who was within the harbor, went out to meet Howe, but before they came to an engagement a terrible storm arose [Aug. 12], and scattered and disabled both fleets.² The French squadron returned to Newport [Aug. 20], and immediately sailed for Boston to be repaired. The Americans had then advanced almost to Newport, with every prospect of making a successful siege. They had been promised four thousand land troops from the French fleet. These were denied them, and D'Es-

taing abandoned the Americans.³ The latter hastily withdrew to the north end of the island [Aug. 28], pursued by the British, and a severe engagement took place [Aug. 29] at Quaker Hill. Sullivan repulsed the British, and on the night of the 30th, withdrew his whole army to the main, near Bristol, in time to avoid an interception by Sir Henry Clinton, who had just arrived with four thousand troops, in light vessels.⁴ The Americans lost thirty killed, and one hundred and seventy-two wounded and missing. The British loss was about two hundred and twenty.

8. During the summer of 1778, the Wyoming, Mohawk, Schoharie and Cherry valleys were made the theaters of terrible scenes of blood and devastation. Tories from distant Niagara,⁵ and savages upon the head waters of the Susquehanna, gathered at Tioga early in June; and at the beginning of July, eleven hundred of these white and dusky savages, under the general command of Colonel John Butler,⁶ entered [July 2, 1778] the lovely valley of Wyoming. Most of the strong men were away on distant duty, and families and homes found defenders only in aged men, tender youths, resolute

1. Verse 6, page 127.

2. Very old people on Rhode Island, who remember this gale, yet [1857] speak of it as "the great storm." So violent was the wind, that it brought spray from the ocean a mile distant, and incrustated the windows of the town with salt.

3. This conduct was warmly censured by the American commanders, because it had no valid excuse. It deprived them of a victory just within their grasp. Congress, however, afraid to offend the French, uttered not a word of blame. The matter was passed over, but not forgotten. Once again [verse 15, page 236], the same admiral abandoned the Americans. D'Estaing was a native of Auvergne, France. He became involved in the French Revolution in 1792, and in the spring of 1793 was guillotined. The guillotine was an instrument for cutting off the head, invented by M. Guillotine.

4. When Clinton was assured of the security of Rhode Island, he detached General Grey on a marauding expedition upon the southern shores of Massachusetts, and among the adjacent islands, and then returned to New York. Grey burned about 70 vessels in Buzzard's bay, near New Bedford, and in that vicinity destroyed property valued at more than \$323,000. He then went to Martha's Vineyard [verse 27, p. 43], and carried away for the army in New York, about 300 oxen and 10,000 sheep. On the 1st of October, Clinton sent a successful expedition to capture American stores at Little Egg Harbor, on the New Jersey coast.

5. Verse 39, page 164.

6. Note 5, page 221.

QUESTIONS.—7. What naval engagement took place? What calamity happened? How did D'Estaing treat the Americans? What did they do? and what did they avoid? 8. What did the Tories and Indians do? What occurred in the Wyoming valley?

Tories and Indians in Wyoming Valley. Massacre there. Cruelties at Cherry Valley.

women, and a few trained soldiers. These, about four hundred strong, under Colonel Zebulon Butler,¹ marched up the valley [July 4], to drive back the invaders. But they were terribly smitten by the foe, and a large portion of them were slain or made prisoners. A few escaped to Forty Fort, near Wilkesbarre, wherein families, for miles around, had sought safety.

9. The night of the battle-day was a terrible one for the people in the fort; but their agony of suspense was ended the following morning, when the leader of the invaders agreed upon humane terms of surrender.² The gates of the fort were thrown open, and most of the families returned to their homes in fancied security. Brant, the great Indian leader, was not there to restrain his savage bands, and their thirst for blood and plunder soon overcame all their allegiance to their white commander. Before sunset they had scattered over the valley; and when night fell upon the scene, the blaze of more than twenty dwellings cast its lurid glare over the paradise of yesterday. The cries of the murdered went up from almost every house and field; and when the moon arose, the terrified inhabitants were fleeing to the Wilkesbarre mountains, and the dark morasses of the Pocono mountain beyond. In that vast wilderness between the valley and the Delaware, appropriately called the *Shades of Death*, many women and children, who escaped the hatchet, perished by hunger and fatigue.³

10. Brant,⁴ in the mean while, was leading or sending war parties through the country south of the Mohawk river; and the Johnsons,⁵ and their Tory adherents were allies of the savages in the Mohawk valley. A party of Tories, under Walter N. Butler,⁶ accompanied by Indians, under Brant, fell like lightning upon the settlement of Cherry Valley [Nov. 11-12, 1778]. Many of the people were killed or carried into captivity;⁷ and for months, no eye was closed in security at night, within an area of a hundred miles and more, around this desolated village. Tryon county, as that region of New York was then called, was a "dark and bloody ground" for full four years, and the records of the woes of the people have filled volumes.⁸

11. When the fourth year of the war [1778] drew to a close, the British army had accomplished very little more in the way of conquest than at the

1. He was a native of Connecticut, and was born in 1731. He was in the French and Indian war, and was a brave soldier. He died at Wyoming in 1795.

2. All our histories contain horrible statements of the fiend-like character of John Butler, and his unmitigated wickedness on this occasion. They also speak of the "monster Brant" [verse 22, p. 221] as the terrors of the Indians, and the instigator of the crimes of which they were guilty. Both of these men were bad enough; but recent investigations clearly demonstrate that Brant was not there at all: and the treaty for surrender, which is still in existence, granted most humane terms to the besieged, instead of the terrible one represented in our histories, as "*The Hatchet*."

3. The fugitives who escaped from the valley were chiefly natives of Connecticut, and they made their way homeward as fast as possible. Many of them crossed the Hudson river at Poughkeepsie, where they told their terrible stories, the facts of which were greatly exaggerated by their fears, and these were published in *Holt's Journal*, to form a text for a tale of the direst woe for the future historian.

4. Verse 22, page 221.

5. He was a son of Colonel John Butler, and one of the most brutal of the Tory leaders. He was killed by an Oneida Indian in 1781, while fleeing before some Americans.

6. Among the latter was the Hon. James S. Campbell, yet [1857] living in the same village. He retains a vivid recollection of the terrible events of a two years' captivity.

7. See Campbell's *Annals of Tryon County*; Simms's *History of Schoharie County*; Stone's *Life of Brant*, etc.

QUESTIONS.—9. What terrible tragedy occurred? 10. What did Brant and Butler do? How did the people suffer?

end of the second year. The belligerent forces occupied almost the same relative position which they did in the autumn of 1776,¹ while the Americans had gained strength by a knowledge of military tactics,² naval operations, and the art of civil government; and they had secured the alliance of the powerful European rival of Great Britain,³ and the sympathies of Spain and Holland. The British army was hemmed in upon only two islands,⁴ almost two hundred miles apart, and each about fourteen miles in length; while the Americans possessed every other stronghold in the country.

12. D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies [Nov. 3, 1778] in the autumn, to attack the British possessions there. To defend these, it was necessary for the British fleet on our coast to proceed to those waters.⁵ This movement would prevent any co-operation between the fleet and army in aggressive movements between the populous and now well-defended North; they could only co-operate in active operations against the sparsely-settled South. These considerations caused a change in the plans of the enemy; and late in November [Nov. 27], Sir Henry Clinton dispatched Colonel Campbell, with about two thousand troops, to invade Georgia. They proceeded by water, and landed at Savannah on the morning of the 29th of December. General Robert Howe⁶ was there, with only about a thousand men, and these were dispirited by the failure of a recent expedition against Florida in which they had been engaged.⁷ They defended the city nobly, however, until an overwhelming force, by power and stratagem, compelled them to retire. They then fled, in confusion, up the Savannah river, and took shelter in the bosom of South Carolina. The capital of Georgia became the head-quarters of the British army at the South; and the enemy retained it until near the close of the contest [1782], even when every foot of soil in the State, outside the intrenchments around the city, was possessed by the patriots.



BARON STEUBLN.

1. Verse 27, page 210.

2. Among the foreign officers who came to America in 1777, was the Baron Steuben, who joined the Continental army at Valley Forge [verse 1, page 225]. He was a veteran from the armies of Frederic the Great of Prussia, and a skillful disciplinarian. He was made Inspector-General of the army; and the vast advantages of his military instruction were seen on the field of Monmouth [verse 5, page 226], and in other subsequent conflicts. He died in the interior of New York in 1795.

3. Verse 26, page 223.

4. Manhattan or York Island, and Rhode Island.

5. Admiral Hotham sailed for the West Indies on the 3d of November; and early in December, Admiral Byron, who had just succeeded Lord Howe in chief naval command, also sailed for that destination.

6. Verse 25, page 197.

7. A great number of Tories were organized in Florida, and committed so many depredations upon the settlers on the Georgian frontiers, that Howe, during the summer of 1778, went thither to disperse them. He penetrated to the St. Mary's river [June], where he awaited reinforcements and supplies, by water. Want of co-operation on the part of the governor of Georgia and the naval commander, produced much disunion; and sickness soon reduced the number of effective men so much, that the enterprise was abandoned.

QUESTIONS.—1st. What was the position and prospects of each army in the autumn of 1778? 12. What caused an expedition to be sent against Georgia? What did it accomplish?

Gloomy prospect.

Designs against Canada.

War at the South.

SECTION VI.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1779.]

1. The dawn of 1779 was gloomy with evil forebodings for the patriot cause. The finances of the country were in a wretched condition. One hundred millions of dollars of Continental money¹ were afloat without the security of even good public credit;² and their value was rapidly depreciating.³ Only small sums had been obtained, by loan from Europe; and a general tax, imposed by Congress upon the respective States, was of little avail. No French army was yet upon our soil to aid us, nor had French coin yet gladdened the hearts of unpaid soldiers. A French fleet had indeed been upon our coasts,⁴ but had now gone to fight battles for France in the West Indies, after mocking our hopes with broken promises of aid.⁵

2. A plan for invading Canada and the eastern British provinces, and for seizing the British posts on the western lakes, had been matured by Congress and the Board of War,⁶ in the autumn of 1778. When it was submitted to Washington, he exposed its folly, and the scheme was abandoned. For several weeks the commander-in-chief co-operated with Congress [Jan., 1779] in person, in preparing a plan for the campaign of 1779. It was finally resolved to act on the defensive, except in retaliatory expeditions against the Indians and Tories in the interior.⁷ This scheme promised the most beneficial results, for it would be safer and less expensive than offensive warfare.

3. The principal military operations of the year were carried on in the two extreme sections of the confederacy. The chief efforts of the Americans were directed to the confinement of the British army to the sea-board, and chastising the Indian tribes. The winter campaign opened by Campbell⁸ [Dec. 29, 1778] continued until June, and resulted in the complete subjugation of Georgia to British rule.

4. Soon after the fall of Savannah, General Prevost marched from Florida, captured [Jan. 9, 1779] the American fort at Sunbury,⁹ and assumed the chief command of the British forces in the South. In the mean while, General Lincoln had been appointed [Sept., 1778] commander-in-chief of the southern

1. Page 198.

2. Robert Morris, of Philadelphia, who was the chief financial agent of the government during the Revolution, was a wealthy merchant, with almost unlimited credit. At the period in question, when Congress could not borrow a dollar on its credit, Robert Morris found no difficulty in raising millions upon his own. For a long time he alone furnished the "hard money" which government used.

3. Note 2, page 198. During this year the British government caused an immense amount of counterfeit Continental bills to be made, and sent to New York. These were scattered by thousands over the country, and caused universal suspicion of the genuine. By this trick, the true bills were much depreciated; but the worst feature of the transaction was the great loss to innocent individuals who had taken the spurious ones.

4. Verse 7, page 228.

5. On the 12th of June, 1776, Congress appointed a committee, to be styled the "Board of War and Ordnance," to have the general supervision of military affairs. John Adams was the chairman, and Richard Peters was secretary. Peters was the real "Secretary of War" until 1781, when he was succeeded by General Lincoln. Gates was chairman in 1778.

6. Verses 13, 14, page 235.

7. Verse 12, page 230.

8. Verse 12, page 230.

9. About twenty-eight miles southward from Savannah. It was an important post, and with it fell the hopes of the Republicans in east Georgia.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the financial condition of the Americans in 1779? What made the future appear gloomy? 2. What plan was arranged? and how was it defeated? What did Washington and Congress do? 3. What were the chief features of the campaign of 1779?

Defeat of Tories.

Battle on Brier Creek.

Loss of the Americans.

army of patriots.¹ He made his head-quarters at Purysburg [Jan. 6], twenty-five miles above Savannah, and there commenced the formation of an army, composed of some Continental regiments, new recruits, and the broken forces of General Howe.² While Lincoln was collecting his forces on the Carolina bank of the Savannah, Campbell marched³ up the Georgia side to Augusta, for the purpose of encouraging the Tories, opening a communication with the *Creek* Indians⁴ in the west (among whom the British had active emissaries), and to awe the Whigs. At the same time, a band of Tories, under Colonel Boyd, were desolating the Carolina frontiers, while on their march to join the royal troops. They were attacked [Feb. 14, 1779], and utterly defeated, by Colonel Pickens, at the head of the militia of Ninety-six.⁵ Boyd and seventy of his men were killed, and seventy-five were made prisoners.⁶ Pickens lost thirty-eight.



GENERAL LINCOLN.

5. The defeat of Boyd alarmed Campbell and encouraged Lincoln. The latter sent General Ashe, with about two thousand men,⁷ to drive Campbell from Augusta and to confine the invaders to the low, sickly sections near the sea. The British fled [Feb. 13, 1779] at the approach of Ashe, and were pursued by him [Feb. 16] as far as Brier Creek, about forty miles below Augusta, where he halted to establish a camp. There Ashe⁸ was surprised and defeated [March 3] by General Prevost, and lost almost his entire army by death, captivity, and dispersion. Some were killed, others perished in the morasses, and many were drowned in attempting to escape across the Savannah.⁹ This blow deprived Lincoln of one fourth of his army, and led to the temporary re-establishment of royal government in Georgia.¹⁰

6. Toward the last of April, Prevost crossed the Savannah [April 27] with

1. Benjamin Lincoln was born in Massachusetts, in 1733. He was a farmer. He joined the Continental army in 1777, and rose rapidly to the station of Major-General. He commanded the militia against Shay's insurgents (note 3, page 261) in 1785. He was also a useful public officer in civil affairs, and died in 1810.

2. Verse 12, page 230.

3. When Campbell departed for Augusta, Prevost sent Colonel Gardiner with some troops, to take possession of Port Royal Island, some sixty miles below Charleston, preparatory to a march upon that city. Gardiner was attacked by General Moultrie with Charleston militia on the morning of the 3d of February. Almost every British officer (except the commander) and many privates were killed. Gardiner and a few men escaped in boats, and Moultrie, whose loss was trifling, joined Lincoln at Purysburg.

4. Verse 2, page 22.

5. Seventy of them were tried and found guilty of treason, and sentenced to be hung. Only five were executed.

6. Lincoln was joined by Generals Ashe and Rutherford, with North Carolina regiments, about the 1st of February, and his army now amounted to little more than three thousand men.

7. John Ashe was born in England in 1721, and came to America when a child. He was engaged in the *Regulator War* [verse 27, page 182] and was one of the most active of the North Carolina patriots. He died of small-pox in 1781.

8. About one hundred and fifty killed and drowned, eighty-nine made prisoners, and a large number who were dispersed, did not take up arms again for several months.

9. At the beginning of 1776, the bold Whigs of Savannah had made Governor Sir James Wright a prisoner in his own house; and the provincial Assembly, assuming governmental powers, made provisions for military defense, issued bills of credit, etc. [February, 1776]. Wright escaped and went to England. He returned in July, 1779, and resumed his office as governor of the "colony."

QUESTIONS.—4. What movements were made in Georgia? What did Lincoln and Campbell do? What did Tories do? and how were they served? 5. What did the defeat of the Tories effect? What can you tell of General Ashe's movements? What misfortune occurred?

Prevost marches upon Charleston.

He demands a surrender.

His retreat.

two thousand regulars, and a large body of Tories and *Creek* Indians, and marched for Charleston. Lincoln had recruited, and was now in the field with about five thousand men, preparing to recover lost Georgia, by entering the State at Augusta, and sweeping the country to the sea. But when he discovered the progress of Prevost, and that even the danger of losing Savannah did not deter him from his attempts upon Charleston, Lincoln hastened to the relief of the menaced city. Fortunately for the Republicans, the march of Prevost was so slow, that when he arrived [May 11] before the city, the people were prepared for resistance.

7. On the morning of the 11th of May, Prevost approached the American intrenchments thrown across Charleston Neck¹ and demanded an immediate surrender of the city. He was answered by a prompt refusal, and the remainder of the day was spent in preparations for an assault. That night was a fearful one for the citizens, for they expected to be greeted at dawn with bursting bomb-shells,² and red-hot cannon-balls. When morning came [May 12, 1779], the scarlet uniforms of the enemy were seen across the waters upon John's Island, and not a hostile foot was upon the Charleston peninsula. Prevost had been informed of the approach of Lincoln, and at midnight he commenced a retreat to Savannah, by the way of the islands along the coast. For more than a month some British detachments lingered upon John's Island. Then they were attacked at Stono Ferry³ [June 20] by a part of Lincoln's army, but after a severe engagement, and the loss of almost three hundred men in killed and wounded, they repulsed the Americans, whose loss was greater. Prevost soon afterward established a military post at Beaufort, on Port Royal Island,⁴ and then retreated to Savannah. The hot season produced a suspension of hostilities in the South, and that region enjoyed comparative repose for several months.

8. While these events were in progress at the South, Sir Henry Clinton was sending out marauding expeditions from New York, to plunder and harass the people on the sea coast. Governor Tryon⁵ went [March 25, 1779] from Kingsbridge⁶ with fifteen hundred British regulars and Hessians,⁷ to destroy some saltworks at Horseneck, and attack an American detachment under General Putnam, at Greenwich. The Americans were dispersed [March 26], and Putnam barely escaped capture by some dragoons.⁸ He rallied his troops

1. Charleston, like Boston [note 2, page 187], is situated upon a peninsula, the neck of which is made quite narrow by the Ashley and Cooper rivers and the marshes. Across this the Americans had hastily cast up embankments. These served a present purpose, and being strengthened, were of great value to the Americans the following year. See verse 2, page 239.

2. Hollow balls, or shells of cast-iron, filled with gunpowder, slugs, etc. In an orifice communicating with the powder, is a slow match. This is ignited, and the shell is hurled from a mortar (a short cannon) into the midst of a town or an army. When the powder ignites, the shell is burst into fragments, and these with the slugs make terrible havoc. They are sometimes the size of a man's head.

3. Ten miles south-west from Charleston.

4. Note 1, page 185.

5. Verse 8, page 214.

6. The passage across the Harlem river at the upper end of York or Manhattan Island.

7. Verse 2, page 198.

8. On this occasion he performed the feat of descending a steep hill on horseback, making his way, as common history asserts, down a flight of stone steps, which had been constructed for the convenience of

QUESTIONS.—6. What movements were made against Charleston? What did Lincoln and Prevost do? 7. What occurred at Charleston? What did the people expect? How were they disappointed? What skirmish occurred? and what result followed? 8. What was Sir Henry Clinton attempting? What occurred at Greenwich?

Marauding expeditions.

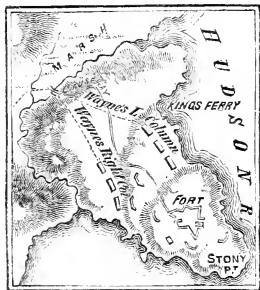
Capture of Stony Point.

at Stamford, pursued the British on their return toward New York the same evening, recaptured a quantity of plunder in their possession, and took thirty-eight of them prisoners.

9. In May, Sir George Collier entered Hampton Roads [May 9], with a small fleet, bearing General Mathews with land troops, destined to ravage the country in that vicinity. They spread desolation on both sides of the Elizabeth river, from the Roads to Norfolk and Portsmouth. After destroying a vast amount of property, they withdrew; and at the close of the month, they were up the Hudson river, assisting Sir Henry Clinton in the capture of the fortress at Stony Point, on the 31st of May, and also the small fort on Verplanck's Point, opposite, on the 1st of June. Both these posts fell into the power of the British, after a spirited resistance.

10. On the night of the 4th of July [1779], Collier's vessels bore Governor Tryon, and two thousand five hundred troops, to the shores of Connecticut, to plunder and destroy the towns on the coast. They plundered New Haven [July 5], and laid East Haven [July 6], Fairfield [July 8], and Norwalk [July 12] in ashes. Not contented with this wanton destruction of property, the invaders insulted and cruelly abused the defenseless inhabitants; and the inhuman leader boasted of his extreme clemency in leaving a single house standing on the New England coast.²

11. Three days after the destruction of Norwalk, [July 15], General Wayne



STONY POINT.

was marching secretly to attempt the re-capture of Stony Point, on the Hudson. The fort stood upon a rocky promontory, surrounded by water and a marsh, and was very strong in its position. So secretly was the whole movement conducted, that the British garrison were unsuspecting of danger. At midnight, the little army of patriots crossed the



GENERAL WAYNE.

morass in the rear, and attacked the fort with ball and bayonet at two separate points, in the face of

people who had to ascend this hill to a church on its summit. The whole matter is an exaggeration. An eye-witness of the event says that Putnam pursued a zig-zag course down the hill, and only descended four or five of the steps near the bottom. The feat was not at all extraordinary when we consider that a troop of dragoons with loaded pistols were at his heels. These however dared not follow the flying general.

1. Verse 23, page 54. This is a body of water at the conjunction of the James and Elizabeth rivers, and communicating with the sea. It is one of the most spacious harbors in the world. The village of Hampton lies upon its northern border. See verse 25, page 197.

2. Alluding to these outrages of Tryon, and the burning of Kingston [verse 27, page 224] by Vaughan, Trumbull, in his *M-Fingal*, says,

"Behold, like whelps of British lion,
Our warriors, Clinton, Vaughan, and Tryon,

QUESTIONS.—9. What depredations were committed in Virginia? What occurred on the Hudson river? 10. What expedition went to Connecticut? What outrages were committed? and where?

Lee's exploit at Paulus's Hook.

Daniel Boone.

Events in the West.

a heavy cannonade from the aroused garrison. At two o'clock in the morning [July 16, 1779], Wayne, though wounded in the head, wrote to Washington, "The fort and garrison, with Colonel Johnson, are ours." This was considered one of the most brilliant events of the war.¹ The British lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about six hundred men; the loss of the Americans was fifteen killed, and eighty-three wounded. The spoils were a large amount of military stores.

12. Three days later [July 19], Major Henry Lee² surprised a British garrison at Paulus' Hook (now Jersey City³), opposite New York, killed thirty soldiers, and took one hundred and sixty prisoners. These, and other smaller successes about this time, elated the Americans; but their joy was soon turned into sorrow, because of disasters in the extreme East. Massachusetts had fitted out almost forty vessels to attempt the seizure of a British post on the Penobscot river. Just as the troops were about to land for the purpose, a British fleet arrived, destroyed the flotilla, took many of the soldiers and sailors prisoners, and drove the remainder into the wilderness [Aug. 13]. These, after great hardships in the forests, reached Boston toward the close of September.

13. During the latter half of 1778 and the beginning of 1779, the patriots gained some important advantages in the vast wilderness west of the Alleghanies. For several years, Daniel Boone⁴ and other pioneers had been battling with the Indians, and more recently, they had measured strength and skill with British leaders. Finally, Major George Rogers Clarke⁵ led a regular expedition against British posts in the present States of Indiana and Illinois. He first captured Kaskaskia [July 4, 1778], then Cahokia [July 9], and finally Vincennes [August]. Acting in the capacity of a peace-maker, he was working successfully toward the pacification of the western tribes, when the commander of the British fort at Detroit retook Vincennes⁶ [Jan., 1779]. With a few men, Clarke traversed the dreadful



DANIEL BOONE.

March forth, with patriotic joy,
To ravish, plunder, and destroy.
Great generals! Foremost in their nation—
The journey-men of desolation!"

1. Wayne was highly complimented by all. Congress gave him thanks, and a gold medal; and silver medals were awarded to Colonels Stewart and De Fleury, for their gallantry on the occasion. Anthony Wayne was born in Pennsylvania in 1745. He was a professional surveyor, then a provincial legislator, and became a soldier in 1775. He was very active during the whole war; and was efficient in subduing the Indians in the Ohio country in 1795. He died on his way home, at Erie, near the close of 1796.

2. Note 3, page 251.

3. Note 2, page 112.

4. Boone was one of the boldest pioneers of the great West. He went over the mountains as early as 1769, and took his family there in 1773. He built a fort on the site of the present Boonesborough, in 1775, and his wife and daughters were the first white women ever seen on the banks of the *Kain-tuck-ee*. He did good service in the cause of the patriots, against the Indians, but was afterward treated with ingratitude. He died in 1820, at the age of almost ninety years.

5. Clarke was a native of Virginia, and was born in 1752. He was the most accomplished and useful, in a military point of view, of all the western pioneers during the Revolution. He was then a young man. He died near Louisville, Kentucky, in 1818.

6. They traversed the "drowned lands" of Illinois, through ice and snow, for a whole week; and just be-

QUESTIONS.—11. What brave exploit was performed at Stony Point? and how? 12. What did Major Lee do? What disaster befell the Americans in the East? 13. What occurred west of the Alleghanies? What can you tell of Clarke's operations?

Sullivan's chastisement of the Indians.

Siege of Savannah.

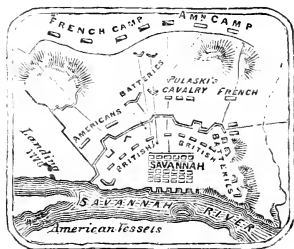
wilderness of a hundred miles from the Ohio; and on the 20th of February, again unfurled the stripes and stars over the fort at Vincennes¹ and a captured garrison.

14. The atrocities at Wyoming,² and upon the head waters of the Susquehannah, aroused the indignation of the white people; and in the summer of 1779, General Sullivan was sent into the heart of the country of the SIX NATIONS,³ to chastise and humble them.⁴ On the last day of July he marched up the Susquehannah from Wyoming, with about three thousand soldiers. At Tioga Point, he was joined [Aug. 22] by General James Clinton,⁵ who came from the Mohawk valley with about sixteen hundred men, and they penetrated the country to the Genesee river. In the course of three weeks, they destroyed forty Indian villages, and a vast amount of food growing in fields and gardens.⁶ It was a terrible retribution, yet it did not crush the power of the Indians. They were only awed for a time. The chastisement created the most intense hatred of the white people of the States throughout all the tribes in the West; and Washington, who directed all the military movements, was called by them *An-na-ta-kaw-les*, or "The town-destroyer."



GENERAL SULLIVAN.

15. Early in September [1779] Count D'Estaing appeared off the coast of Georgia with a powerful fleet, prepared to co-operate with General Lincoln in an attack upon the British at Savannah. He landed troops and heavy battery cannon; and, on the 23d of September, the combined armies commenced the siege. After making slow progress for a fortnight, D'Estaing became impatient of delay,⁷ and proposed an attempt to take the place by storm. It was agreed to, and the assault commenced on the morning of the 9th of October.



SIEGE OF SAVANNAH. 1779.

fore reaching Vincennes, they waded through the cold flood that covered the country, more than five miles, the water sometimes so deep as to leave only their breasts and head above, dry.

1. Verse 2, page 148.

2. Verse 8, page 228.

3. Verse 5, page 19. British emissaries had gained over to the royal interest the whole of the Six Nations except the *Oneidas*. These were kept loyal to the republicans, chiefly through the instrumentality of one or two Christian missionaries.

4. John Sullivan was born in Maine in 1730. He was a delegate in the first Continental Congress (1774), and was one of the first eight brigadiers in the Continental army. He resigned his commission in 1779; was afterward a member of Congress, and Governor of New Hampshire, and died in 1795.

5. Was born in Ulster county, New York, in 1736. He was a captain in the French and Indian war, and an active officer during the Revolution. He died in 1812.

6. The *Seneca* Indians were beginning to cultivate rich openings in the forests, known as the "Genesee Flats," quite extensively. They raised large quantities of corn, and cultivated gardens and orchards. The dwellings were of the rudest character, and their villages consisted of a small collection of these miserable huts, of no value except for winter shelter.

7. D'Estaing expressed his fears, not only of the arrival of a British fleet, to blockade his own in the Savannah river, but of the autumn storms, which might damage his vessels before he could get to sea.

QUESTIONS.—14. What aroused the people? What can you tell of Sullivan's expedition? What did it effect? 15. What did D'Estaing do? What occurred at Savannah? What can you tell of the siege and its termination?

Abandonment of the siege of Savannah.

Movements of the British.

After five hours of severe conflict, there was a truce for the purpose of burying the dead. Already, nearly a thousand of the French and Americans had been killed and wounded.¹ D'Estaing was averse to renewing the assault, and made preparations to withdraw. Lincoln yielded an unwilling assent to the movement, and the enterprise was abandoned at the moment when the American commander felt certain of victory.² Ten days afterward, the French fleet had left the coast, and Lincoln was retreating toward Charleston. Thus closed the campaign for 1779, at the South. The repulse at Savannah was a severe blow to the hopes of the patriots of Georgia, and spread a gloom over the whole South.

16. Very little of general importance transpired at the North, after the close of Sullivan's campaign, except the withdrawal of the British troops from Rhode Island, on the 25th of October. La Fayette had been in France during the summer, and chiefly through his efforts the French government had consented to send another powerful fleet, and several thousand troops, to aid the Americans. When informed of this intended expedition, the British ministry ordered Clinton to cause the evacuation of Rhode Island,³ and to concentrate at New York all his troops at the North. When this was accomplished, Clinton sailed for the South at the close of the year [Dec. 25], with about five thousand troops, to open a vigorous campaign in the Carolinas. Washington, in the mean while, had gone into winter quarters at Morristown.⁴

17. Difficulties had gathered thick and fast around Great Britain during 1779. Spain had declared war [June 16] against her,⁵ and a powerful French and Spanish naval armament had attempted [August] to effect an invasion of England. American and French cruisers were hovering around her coasts; and in September [Sept. 23] the intrepid John Paul Jones⁶ had conquered two of her proud ships of war, after one of the most desperate naval

1. Among the mortally wounded, was Count Pulaski, the brave Pole whom we first met in the battle on the Brandywine [note 4, page 217.] He died on board a vessel bound for Charleston, a few days after the siege. Serjeant Jasper, whose bravery at Fort Moultrie we have noticed [note 6, p. 201], was also killed, while nobly holding aloft, upon a bastion of the British works which he had mounted, one of the beautiful colors [note 6, p. 201] presented to Moultrie's regiment by ladies of Charleston. Savannah honors both these heroes, by having parks bearing their names.

2. Verse 7, page 228.

3. A rumor reached the British on Rhode Island, that the French armament was approaching, and so rapid was their retreat that they left behind them all their heavy artillery, and a large quantity of stores.

4. Verse 6, page 214. Strong detachments were stationed among the Hudson Highlands, and the cavalry were cantoned in Connecticut.

5. Hoping to regain Gibraltar, Jamaica, and the two Floridas, which Great Britain had taken from her, Spain made a secret treaty of peace with France in April, 1779, and in June declared war against Great Britain. This event was regarded as highly favorable to the Americans, because any thing that should cripple England would aid them.

6. He was born in Scotland in 1747, and came to Virginia in boyhood. He entered the American naval service in 1775, and was active during the whole war. He was afterward rear-admiral in the Russian service. He died in Paris in 1782.



COUNT PULASKI.

QUESTIONS.—16. What occurred at the North? What did the French and English governments do? What did Washington and Clinton do? 17. What can you tell of European affairs at this time? What great naval battle occurred? What can you tell of the operations of the United States Navy? How was the war regarded? What did Parliament do?

Naval operations.



JOHN PAUL JONES.

fightings ever known.¹ In America, there had been very little success for the British arms; and sympathy for the patriots was becoming more and more manifest in Europe. Even a great portion of the intelligent English people began to regard the war as not only useless but unjust. Yet in the midst of all these difficulties, the government put forth mighty energies. Parliament voted eighty-five thousand seamen and thirty-five thousand troops for general service, in 1780, and appropriated one hundred millions of dollars to defray the expenses.

1. The naval operations during the War for Independence do not occupy a conspicuous place in history, yet they were by no means insignificant. The Continental Congress took action on the subject of an armed marine in the autumn of 1775. Already Washington had fitted out some armed vessels at Boston, and constructed some gun-boats for use in the waters around that city. These were propelled by oars, and covered. In November, the government of Massachusetts established a *Board of Admiralty*. A committee on naval affairs, of which Silas Deane [verse 2, page 211] was chairman, was appointed by the Continental Congress in October, 1775. Before the close of the



A GUN-BOAT AT BOSTON.

year, the construction of almost twenty vessels had been ordered by Congress; and the *Marine Committee* was so re-organized as to have in it a representative from each colony. In November, 1776, a *Continental Navy Board* to assist the *Marine Committee* was appointed; and in October, 1779, a *Board of Admiralty* was installed. Its secretary (Secretary of the Navy) [verse 3, page 270] was John Brown, until 1771, when he was succeeded by General McDougal [note 5, page 214]. Robert Morris also acted as *authorized Agent of Marine*; and many privateers were fitted out by him on his own account. In November, 1776, Congress determined the relative rank of the naval commanders, such as *admiral* equal to a *major-general* on land; a *commodore* equal to a *brigadier-general*, etc. The first commander-in-chief of the navy, or high admiral, was Esek Hopkins, of Rhode Island, whom Congress commissioned as such in December, 1775. He first went against Dunmore [verse 25, page 197] on the coast of Virginia. He also went to the Bahamas and captured the town of New Providence, and its governor. Sailing for home, he captured some British vessels off the east end of Long Island, and with these prizes he went into Narraganset Bay. In the mean while, Paul Jones and Captain Barry were doing good service, and New England cruisers were greatly annoying English shipping on our coast. In 1777 Dr. Franklin, under the authority of Congress, issued commissions to naval officers in Europe. Expeditions were fitted out in French sea-ports, and these produced great alarm on the British coasts.



ADMIRAL HOPKINS.

While these things were occurring in European waters, Captains Biddle, Manly, M'Neil, Hinman, Barry, and others, were making many prizes on the American coasts. Finally, in the Spring of 1779, an expedition was fitted out at L'Orient under the auspices of the French and American governments. It consisted of five vessels, under the command of John Paul Jones. They sailed first in June, for the British waters, took a few prizes and returned. They sailed again in August, and on the 23d of September, while off the coast of Scotland, not far above the mouth of the Humber, Jones, with his flag-ship (the *Bonhomme Richard*), and two others, fell in with and encountered a small British fleet, which was convoying a number of merchant-vessels to the Baltic Sea. An engagement took place after night had fallen upon the scene, and for three hours one of the most desperate sea fights on record raged off Flamborough Head. Jones managed to lash the *Richard* to the British ship *Serapis*, and with muzzle to muzzle they poured broadsides into each other. Three times both ships were on fire. The *Serapis* finally yielded, and ten minutes afterward, the *Countess of Scarborough*, another large English vessel, surrendered. Jones's ship was so much injured that, sixteen hours after the battle, she went to the bottom of the ocean. Congress gave Jones a gold medal for his bravery. Many other brave acts were performed by American seamen during the remainder of the war. For a condensed account of the whole naval operations of the Revolution, and of the "whale-boat warfare" on the coast, see supplement to Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution*.

SECTION VII.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1780.]

1. Sir Henry Clinton left the Hessian general Knyphausen,¹ in command at New York, when he proceeded [Dec. 25th, 1779] southward² with the main body of his army. To aid the southern patriots, Washington sent the Baron De Kalb³ and others thither, the following Spring [1780], and thus the two armies were so much weakened at head-quarters, that military operations at the North almost ceased during that year. The Carolinas became the chief theater of war, and many and bloody were the acts upon that stage. Invasions from without, and the cruelties of Tories⁴ in their midst, made 1780 a year of great woe for the patriots and their families in the Carolinas.

2. Clinton and his forces were borne by a strong fleet with two thousand marines, under Admiral Arbuthnot. After encountering heavy storms⁵ they arrived on the coast of Georgia in January; and early in February [Feb. 10], proceeded against Charleston. Clinton's troops were landed [Feb. 11] upon the islands below the city, on the shores of the Edisto inlet, thirty miles distant; but instead of marching at once to make an assault upon the town, the British commander prepared for a regular siege. General Lincoln was in Charleston with a feeble force,⁶ when Clinton landed; and he was about to flee to the interior, when intelligence of the tardy plans of the British reached him. He then resolved to remain, and prepare for defense. Governor Rutledge⁷ was clothed with all the power of an absolute dictator; and so nobly did the civil



GOVERNOR RUTLEDGE.

a * ^ s 6
 b # k v t 8
 c + L H u E
 d = m 4 v 9
 e 7 n o w X
 f L o c x Δ
 g H p x y v
 h # q z a
 i r o =

CYPHER ALPHABET.

1. Verse 20, page 207. 2. Verse 16, page 237. 3. Verse 6, page 241.
 4. At no time during the war were the Tories more active, throughout the whole country, than in 1780. They were the most inveterate enemies of the patriots, and the leaders were in continual correspondence with each other, with the British government, and with the royal commanders in America. Their correspondence was carried on chiefly in cipher writing, understood only by themselves, so that in the event of their letters falling into the hands of the Whigs, their contents would remain a secret. The engraving shows the alphabet of the cipher writing of some New York Tories.

5. During a severe storm off Cape Hatteras, one vessel, carrying heavy battery cannons [note 2, page 110], was lost, and almost all the cavalry horses of Tarleton's legion, perished at sea. Tarleton supplied himself with others, soon after landing, by plundering the plantations near the coast.

6. During the preceding winter, Lincoln's army had dwindled to a mere handful. The repulse at Savannah had so disheartened the people, that very few recruits could be obtained, and when Clinton arrived, Lincoln's army did not exceed fourteen hundred men in number. The finances of the State were in a wretched condition, and the Tories were everywhere active and hopeful.

7. John Rutledge was born in Ireland, and came to South Carolina when a child. He was one of the most active patriots of the South. After the war he was made a judge of the Supreme Court of the United States, and also chief justice of South Carolina. He died in 1800.

QUESTIONS.—1. What movements were made by the British and American troops? What was the situation of the two armies? 2. What can you tell of Clinton's southern expedition? What preparations were made for a siege at Charleston?

Siege of Charleston.

and military authorities labor for the public good, that when the invaders crossed the Ashley [March 29, 1780], and sat down before the American works on Charleston Neck,¹ the besieged felt strong enough to resist them. The intrenchments had been greatly strengthened, and works of defense had been cast up along the wharves, and at various points around the harbor. Fort Moultrie² was strongly garrisoned, and Commodore Whipple³ was in command of a flotilla of small armed ships in the harbor.

3. Arbuthnot sailed up the harbor on the morning of the 9th of April,⁴ and sustaining but trifling damage from the guns of Fort Moultrie, anchored within cannon-shot of the city.⁵ Clinton in the meantime had erected batteries in front of the American lines on the Neck,⁶ and both commanders joined in a summons for the patriots to surrender. Expecting reinforcements from the interior, the people of the beleagured city refused compliance, and for more than a month the siege went on.⁷ In the meantime American detachments sent out between the Cooper and Santee rivers, to keep open a communication with the interior, were attacked and defeated by parties of British horsemen,⁸ and at the close of the month [April, 1780], the city was completely environed by the foe. Cornwallis had arrived [April 18], from New York with three thousand fresh troops, and all hopes for the patriots faded.

4. The night of the 9th of May was a terrible one for Charleston. That day a third summons to surrender had been refused, and late in the evening a general cannonade commenced. Two hundred heavy guns shook the city with their thunders, and all night long destructive bombshells⁹ were



SIEGE OF CHARLESTON, 1780.

hailed upon it. At one time the city was on fire in five different places. Nor did morning bring relief. The enemy had determined to take the city by storm. The cannonade continued all the day, and the fleet moved toward the town to open a bombardment. At two o'clock on the morning of the

1. Note 1, page 253.

2. Note 6, page 201.

3. Note 6, page 182.

4. He had previously [March 25] crossed the bar, drove Whipple's little fleet to the waters near the town, and cast anchor in Five Fathom Hole, not far from St. John's island.

5. Whipple could not contend with the strong ships, so he sunk several of his vessels near the mouth of the Cooper river, and formed a *chevaux-de-frise* [note 5, page 218] to prevent the enemy's ships passing beyond the town so as to enfilade the American works on the Neck.

6. On Sunday morning, the 1st of April, the British first broke ground in the face of eighty cannons and mortars on the American works.

7. General Woodford had just arrived with seven hundred Virginians, and others from North Carolina were reported on their way.

8. On the 14th of April, Tarleton defeated Colonel Huger on the head waters of the Cooper river, and killed twenty-five Americans. On the 6th of May, a party under Colonel White, of New Jersey, were routed at a ferry on the Santee, with a loss of about thirty in killed, wounded, and prisoners. These British detachments overran the whole country below the Cooper and Santee, in the course of a few days.

9. Note 2, page 233.

QUESTIONS.—3. What occurred at Charleston and vicinity? What of the progress of the siege? 4. What further can you tell of the progress and end of the siege?

Surrender of Charleston.

Subjugation of the Carolinas.

De Kalb on the march.

12th, a proposition for surrender was made to Clinton, and his guns were all silenced before daylight. Lincoln and his troops, with a large number of citizens, were made prisoners of war. The citizens, and a great number of soldiers, were paroled.¹ Altogether, the captives amounted to between five and six thousand;² and among the spoils of victory were four hundred pieces of cannon.

5. The loss of this southern army was a severe blow for the Republicans. It was followed by measures which, for a time, prostrated South Carolina at the feet of royal power. With an activity hitherto unusual for the British officers, Clinton took steps to secure and extend his conquest, and to re-establish royal power in the South. He sent out three strong detachments of his army to overrun the country. One, under Cornwallis, marched up the Santee toward Camden; another, under Lieutenant-Colonel Cruger, was ordered to penetrate the country to Ninety-six,³ and a third, under Lieutenant-Colonel Brown, marched to Augusta,⁴ in Georgia. A general truce was proclaimed, and a pardon to all who should accept British protection. The silence of fear overspread the whole country; and mistaking this lull in the storm of war for permanent tranquillity, Clinton and Arbutnot, with a large body of troops, sailed [June 5, 1780] for New York.

6. The lull was of short duration. DeKalb⁵ did not reach the borders of South Carolina until mid-summer, and then not an American was in arms in the lower country.⁶ Although Congress had confidence in the skill of De Kalb (who, by the capture of Lincoln, became the commander-in-chief at the South), yet it was thought best to send General Gates⁷ thither, because of the influence of his name. When it was known that Gates was approaching, southern hearts beat high with hope, for they expected great things from the conqueror of Burgoyne.⁸ Many patriots, who, in their extremity, had signed "paroles" and



GENERAL GATES.

1. A prisoner on *parole* is one who is left to go anywhere within a prescribed space of country, or within a city, under certain restrictions relative to conduct. Prisoners taken in war, are often paroled, and allowed to return to their friends, with an agreement not to take up arms. It is a point of honor with a soldier, to "keep his parole," and when such a one is again taken in battle, during the period of his parole, he is treated not as a prisoner, but as a traitor.

2. In violation of the solemn agreement for surrender, Clinton caused a great number of leading men in Charleston to be seized, and carried on board prison-ships, where hundreds suffered tortures. Many were taken to St. Augustine and immured in the fortress there.

3. Verse 12, page 253.

4. Verse 4, page 231.

5. Verse 1, page 239.

6. Among the American detachments which had hastened toward Charleston to assist Lincoln, and re-treated when they heard of his fall, was that of Colonel Buford, consisting of 400 Continental infantry, and a small troop of cavalry, with two field-pieces. He retreated from Camden on Cornwallis's approach, and near the Waxhaw creek, some sixty miles further north, he was overtaken and surprised by Tarleton and his cavalry. They gave no quarter, but massacred or maimed the larger portion of Buford's command. His loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was 313. He also lost his artillery, ammunition, and baggage. The cruelty of Tarleton was condemned by British writer themselves.

7. Horatio Gates was a native of England, and was educated for military life. He was the first adjutant-general of the Continental army [note 2, page 194], and was made major-general in 1776. He retired to his estate in Virginia at the close of the war, and finally took up his abode in New York, where he died in 1806, at the age of seventy-eight years.

8. Verse 23, page 272.

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the siege effect, and what followed? How was South Carolina subdued? 6. Who had command of the southern army? What was the effect of Gates's approach? What partisans appeared, and what did they do?

Partisans in the field.

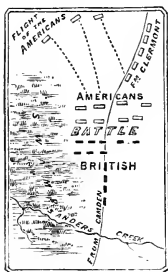
Meeting of Gates and Cornwallis.

Battle near Camden.

"protections," seeing how little solemn promises were esteemed by the conqueror, disregarded both, and flocked to the standard of those brave partisan leaders, Sumter, Marion, Pickens, and Clarke, who now called them to the field. While Gates and his army were approaching, they were preparing the way for conquest. They swept over the country in small bands, striking a British detachment here, and a party of Tories there, and soon so effectually alarmed the enemy in the interior, as to check the onward progress of invasion.

7. Sumter² first appeared in power on the Catawba. Repulsed at Rocky Mount [July 30, 1780], on that river, he crossed it, and at Hanging-rock, a few miles eastward, he fell upon and dispersed [Aug. 6], a large body of British and Tories; yet, through the folly of his men, he did not secure a victory.³ Marion, at the same time, was smiting the enemy among the swamps of the lower country, on the borders of the Pedee. Pickens was annoying Cruger in the neighborhood of the Saluda, and Clarke was calling for the patriots along the Savannah, Ogeechee, and Alamamaha, to drive Brown⁴ from Augusta.

8. Earl Cornwallis was left in chief command at Charleston, and his troops on the Santee were intrusted to Lord Rawdon. When that general heard of the approach of Gates, he gathered all his available forces at Camden, where he was soon joined by the earl. Gates came down from the hill country through Lancaster district, and on the night of the 15th of August, he marched from his camp at Clermont, to surprise the British at Camden. Without being aware of this movement, Cornwallis and Rawdon advanced at the same hour to surprise the Americans. A little after midnight they met [August 16, 1780], near Sander's creek,⁵ a few miles north of Camden, on the Lancaster road. A slight skirmish between the vanguards ensued, and early in the morning a general battle begun. After a desperate struggle with an overwhelming force, the Americans were compelled to yield. The route became general, and the Americans lost in killed, wounded,



SANDER'S CREEK.



GENERAL SUMTER.

1. Verse 4, page 240.

2. Thomas Sumter was a native of South Carolina, and was early in the field. Ill health compelled him to leave the army just before the close of the war, in 1781. He was afterward Congressman, and died on the High Hills of Santee [verse 14, page 233] in 1832, at the age of ninety-eight years.

3. Having secured a portion of the British camp, Sumter's men commenced plundering, and drinking the liquors found there. They became intoxicated, and were unable to complete the victory, yet the British dared not follow Sumter in his slow retreat.

4. Verse 5, page 241.

5. The roads being in deep sand, the footsteps of the approaching armies could not be heard by each other. They came together in the dark, almost noiselessly, and both were equally surprised.

QUESTIONS.—7. What did Sumter do? What were Marion, Pickens, and Clarke accomplishing? 8. What military movement now took place? What can you tell of a battle near Camden, and its results?

Defeat of the Americans.

Great loss of the Americans.

Bad policy of the British.

and prisoners, about a thousand men, besides all of their artillery and ammunition, and a greater portion of their baggage and stores.¹ The British loss was three hundred and twenty-five. Among the killed was the brave Baron de Kalb,² whose remains yet lie under a neat monument at Camden.

9. Gates vainly endeavored to rally his flying troops, and with a few followers he hastened to Charlotte,³ eighty miles distant. There he continued to be joined by officers and men, and he began to hope that another army might be speedily collected.

But when, a few days after his own defeat, he received intelligence that Sumter's force had been nearly annihilated by Tarleton⁴ [August 18, 1780], on the Fishing creek, near the Catawba, he almost despaired.⁵ The victory of the British was again complete, and at the close of Summer, there were no Republicans in arms in South Carolina, except Marion and his men. Within three months [May 12 to August 16], two American armies⁶ had been annihilated, and one of the most formidable patri-



COLONEL TARLETON.

isan corps⁷ scattered to the winds.

10. Governed by a foolish and wicked policy, Cornwallis now proceeded to establish royal authority, by the most severe measures. Instead of winning the respect of the people by wisdom and clemency, he thought to subdue them by cruelty. Private rights were trampled under foot, and social organization was superseded by the iron rule of military despotism.⁸ His measures created the most bitter hatred, and hundreds of patriots



BARON DE KALB.



GENERAL MARION.

1. General Gates had felt so certain of victory, that he had made no provisions for a retreat, or the salvation of his stores in the rear. His troops were scattered in all directions. Many were shot down in their flight, and even now [1857] bullets are found in the old pine-trees on the route of their retreat. Gates did indeed, as General Charles Lee predicted he would, "exchange his northern laurels for southern willows."

2. De Kalb was a native of Alsace, a German province ceded to France. He had been in America as a secret French agent, about fifteen years before. He came to America with La Fayette in 1777, and Congress commissioned him a major-general. He died of his wounds at Camden, three days after the battle. La Fayette laid the corner-stone of his monument in 1825.

3. Verse 14, page 193.

4. Tarleton was one of the most active and unscrupulous officers of the British army. He was distinguished for his abilities and cruelties during the southern campaigns of 1780-'81. He was born in Liverpool in 1751. He married a daughter of the Duke of Ancaster, in 1798, and was afterward made a major-general.

5. Sumter himself escaped, but with a loss of fifty men killed and three hundred made prisoners. Tarleton took them by surprise, for Sumter had no suspicion of his being in the neighborhood.

6. Lincoln's and Gates's.

7. Sumter's.

8. He issued cruel orders to his subalterns. They were directed to hang every militia-man who had once served in Loyalist corps, but was now found in arms against the king, and many who had submitted to

QUESTIONS.—9. What did Gates do? What events discouraged him? What was now the condition of the Southern patriots? 10. How unwisely and wickedly did Cornwallis act? What did his conduct produce?

Battle at King's Mountain.

Activity of American partisans.

who might have been conciliated, were goaded into active warfare by the lash of military power. Everywhere the people thirsted for vengeance, and only awaited the call of leaders, to rally and strike again for homes and freedom.

11. Feeling confident of his power in South Carolina, Cornwallis¹ now prepared to invade the North State. Early in September he proceeded with his army to Charlotte,² while detachments were out in various directions to awe the Republicans and encourage the loyalists. While Tarleton was operating on the east side of the Catawba, Major Patrick Ferguson was sent to embody the militia who favored the king, among the mountains west of the Broad river. Many profligate and worthless men joined his standard, and on the 1st of October, 1780, he crossed the Broad river at the Cherokee ford (Yorkville district), and encamped among the hills of King's Mountain, with about



LORD CORNWALLIS.

fifteen hundred men. Several corps of Whig militia united to oppose him,³ and on the 7th of October, they fell upon his camp on King's Mountain. A very severe engagement ensued, and the British were totally defeated. Ferguson was slain,⁴ and three hundred of his men were killed and wounded. The spoils of victory, which cost the Americans only twenty men, were eight hundred prisoners, and fifteen hundred stand of arms. This defeat was, to Cornwallis, what the affair at Bennington⁵ was to Burgoyne.

12. Marion, in the mean while, was daily gaining strength in the lower country, and greatly annoyed the British detachments there, while Pickens and Clarke were hourly augmenting their forces in Georgia, and south-western Carolina. Sumter, too, undismayed by his recent defeat, again appeared in the field,⁶ and other leaders were coming forth between the Yadkin and Broad rivers. Alarmed by the defeat of Ferguson, and these demonstrations on flank and rear, Cornwallis withdrew [Oct. 14] to South Carolina, and toward

Clinton [verse 4, page 240], and taken protection, and had remained at home quietly during the recent revolt, were imprisoned, their property taken from them or destroyed, and their families treated with the utmost rigor. See note 3, page 253.

1. Charles, Earl Cornwallis, was born in Suffolk, England, in 1738. He was educated for military life, and commenced his career in 1759. After the Revolution in America, he was made Governor-General of India [note 8, page 182], then Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland, and again Governor of India. He died near Benares, East Indies, in 1805.

2. His advanced corps were attacked by the Americans under Colonel Davie, on their arrival at Charlotte, but after a severe skirmish the patriots were repulsed.

3. These were commanded by Colonels Campbell, Shelby, Cleveland, Sevier, Winston, McDowell, and Williams, in all nearly eighteen hundred strong.

4. On the spot where Ferguson was slain, a plain stone has been erected to the memory of that officer, and of Americans who were killed.

5. Sumter collected a small force in the vicinity of Charlotte, and returned to South Carolina. For some weeks he annoyed the British and Tories very much, and Lord Cornwallis, who called him *The Carolina Game Cock*, used great endeavors to crush him. On the night of the 12th of November, Major Wemyss, at the head of a British detachment, fell upon him near the Broad river, but was repulsed. Eight days afterward he had a very severe engagement with Tarleton, at Blackstock's plantation on the Tyger river, in a Union district. He had now been joined by some Georgians under Colonels Clarke and Twiggs. The British were repulsed, with a loss, in killed and wounded, of about 300. The Americans lost only three killed and five wounded. Sumter was among the latter, and he was detained from the field for several months, by his wounds.

QUESTIONS.—11. What did Cornwallis attempt? What expedition was defeated near the Broad river, and how? What of the battle? What were Marion and others doing? What did Cornwallis do? and why?

Events in New Jersey.

Arrival of a French fleet.

the close of October [Oct. 27], made his head-quarters at Winnsborough, midway between the Broad and Catawba rivers, in Fairfield district. Here he remained until called to the pursuit of Greene,¹ a few weeks later.

13. While these events were progressing at the South, others of great importance were transpiring at the North. As we have observed,² military operations were almost suspended in this region during the year, and there were no offensive movements worthy of notice, except an invasion of New Jersey, in June. Before the arrival of Clinton from Charleston, Knyphausen³ had sent General Matthews from Staten Island, with five thousand men, to penetrate New Jersey. They took possession of Elizabethtown [June 7], and burned Connecticut Farms;⁴ but at Springfield, detachments which had come down from Washington's camp at Morristown, drove them back to the coast. There they remained a fortnight. In the meantime, Clinton arrived, and joining Matthews with additional troops [June 22], endeavored to draw Washington into a general battle, or to capture his stores at Morristown. He failed in both. In a severe skirmish at Springfield [June 23], the British were defeated by the Americans under General Greene. After setting fire to the village, the enemy retreated, and passed over to Staten Island.

14. A few days after this invasion, the American people were made glad by the arrival, at Newport [July 10], of a powerful French fleet, under Admiral Ternay, bearing six thousand troops, under the Count de Rochambeau.⁵ This arrival caused Clinton to be more circumspect in his movements, and he made no further attempts to entice Washington to fight. Yet he was endeavoring to accomplish, by his own strategy and the treason of an American officer, what he could not achieve by force. While the French army were landing upon Rhode Island, and preparing for winter quarters there, Clinton was bargaining with Benedict Arnold for the strong military post at West Point,⁶ and its dependencies, among the Hudson Highlands, and with it, the liberties of America, if possible.

1. Verse 8, page 250.

2. Verse 16, page 237.

3. Verse 10, page 207.

4. Now the village of Union, on the road from Elizabethtown to Springfield.

5. In order to prevent any difficulties in relation to command, between the American and French officers, the Government of France appointed Washington a lieutenant-general of the empire. This allowed him to take precedence of Rochambeau, and made him commander-in-chief of the allied armies. The French army did not enter upon a fall campaign, but remained in camp on Rhode Island and in Connecticut, until the following year [verse 18, page 255]. The French cavalry were stationed at Lebanon, the residence of Joseph Trumbull, Governor of Connecticut, who was one of the most efficient civil officers, next to Robert Morris [verse 3, page 248, of the Revolution. He was born in 1710. He was the Whig leader in Connecticut, and filled the office of Governor for many years. He died in 1785.

6. During the spring and summer of 1778, the passes of the Hudson Highlands were much strengthened. A strong redoubt, called Fort Clinton (in honor of George Clinton, then Governor of New York), was erected on the extreme end of the promontory of West Point. Other redoubts were erected in the rear; and upon Mount Independence, five hundred feet above the point, the strong fortress of Fort Putnam was built, whose gray ruins are yet visible. Besides these, an enormous iron chain, each link weighing more than one hundred pounds, was stretched across the Hudson at West Point, to keep British ships from ascending the river. It was floated upon timbers.



GOVERNOR TRUMBULL.

QUESTIONS.—13. What movements occurred at the North? What skirmishes in New Jersey? 14. What event gave joy to the Americans? What did Clinton now do and attempt?

Defection of Arnold.

His correspondence with the enemy.

Capture of André.

15. Benedict Arnold¹ was a bold soldier, but a bad man. Impulsive, vindictive, and unscrupulous, he was personally unpopular, and was seldom without a quarrel with some of his companions-in-arms. Soon after his appointment to the command at Philadelphia,² he was married to the beautiful young daughter of Edward Shippen, one of the leading loyalists of that city. He lived in splendor, at an expense far beyond his income. To meet the demands of increasing creditors, he engaged in fraudulent acts which made him hated by the public, and caused charges of dishonesty and malpractices in office to be preferred against him, before the Continental Congress. A court-martial, appointed to try him, convicted him, but sentenced him to a reprimand only. Although Washington performed that duty with the utmost delicacy, Arnold felt the disgrace. It awakened vengeful feelings which, operating with the pressure of debt, made him listen with complacency to the suggestions of a bad nature. He made treasonable overtures to Sir Henry Clinton, and by a correspondence for several months (under an assumed name, and with propositions couched in commercial phrases) with the accomplished Major André,³ Clinton's adjutant-general, he bargained with the British commander to betray West Point and its dependencies into his hands. For this service he was to receive a brigadier's commission, and fifty thousand dollars in cash.



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

16. By patriotic professions, Arnold obtained the command of West Point in 1780; and the time chosen for the consummation of his treasonable designs was when Washington was absent, in September, in conference with the French officers at Hartford, Connecticut. Arnold and André met, for the first time [Sept. 22], at Haverstraw, on the west side of the Hudson, and arranged a definite plan of operations. Clinton was to sail up the river with a strong force, and after a show of resistance, Arnold was to surrender West Point and its dependencies into his hands. The sloop-of-war *Vulture*, which conveyed André up the river, was driven from her anchorage by shots from an American cannon on shore, and he was obliged to cross to the eastern side of the Hudson, and make his way toward New York by land.⁴ At Tarrytown, twenty-seven miles from the city, he was stopped [Sept. 23] and searched by three young militia men,⁵ who, finding papers concealed in his

1. He had fought nobly for freedom until 1778, when his passions got the better of his judgment and conscience. He was a native of Norwich, Conn., where he was born in January, 1740. He went to England after the war, and died in London in June, 1801. His young wife died there also two years afterward.

2. Note 5, page 226.

3. Arnold's hand-writing was disguised, and he signed his letters *Gustavus*. André's letters were signed *John Anderson*. A correspondence was carried on between them for more than a year.

4. The sloop lay off Teller's Point, just above the mouth of the Croton river. On that point, some Americans, with an old iron six-pounder, so galled the *Vulture*, that she was compelled to drop further down the river. That old cannon is preserved at Sing Sing, New York.

5. John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart, all residents of Westchester county. André offered them large bribes if they would allow him to pass, but they refused, and thus saved their country from ruin.

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell of Benedict Arnold? What wicked act did he propose? and for what? 16. What can you tell of Arnold's treason? How was it thwarted? What of André and his capture?

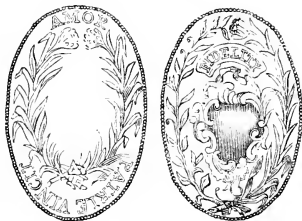
 Treason of Arnold.

Execution of André.

Continuation of the war.

boots,¹ took him to the nearest American post. The commander could not seem to understand the matter, and unwisely allowed André to send a letter to Arnold, then at his quarters opposite West Point. The alarmed traitor fled [Sept. 24] down the river in his barge, and found safety on board the *Vulture*.

17. André was hanged as a spy at Tappan [Oct. 2, 1780], opposite Tarrytown. Washington would have spared André, if the stern rules of war had permitted. The young soldier has always been more pitied than blamed; while the name of Arnold will ever be regarded with the bitterest scorn. Thankful for this deliverance from the dangers of treason, Congress voted [Nov 3, 1780]² each of the three young militia men, a silver medal, and a pension of two hundred dollars a year for life.



CAPTOR'S MEDAL.

18. Another year now drew to a close, and yet the patriots were not subdued. England had already expended vast treasures and much blood in endeavors to subjugate them. Notwithstanding this, and unmindful of the fact that a large French land and naval armament were already on the American shores,³ she seemed to acquire fresh vigor as every new obstacle presented itself. And when the British ministry learned that Holland, the maritime rival of England, was secretly negotiating a treaty with the United States for loans of money and other assistance, they caused a declaration of war against that government to be immediately proclaimed [Dec. 20, 1780], and procured from Parliament immense appropriations of men and money, ships and stores, to sustain the power of Great Britain on land and sea.

SECTION VIII.

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1781.]

1. The opening of 1781 was marked by one of the noblest displays of true heroism, for which the War for Independence was so remarkable. Year after year, the soldiers had suffered every privation from the lack of money and clothing. Faction had now corrupted the Continental Congress, and the public welfare suffered on account of the tardiness of that body in the performance of its legitimate duties. Continental money had become almost

1. These papers are well preserved. After being in private hands more than seventy years, they were purchased, and deposited in the New York State Library in 1853.

2. On one side is the word "FIDELITY," and on the other, "VINCIT AMOR PATRIÆ!"—"The love of country conquers."

3. Verse 14, page 245.

QUESTIONS.—17. What was done with André? How are Arnold and André regarded? How were the captors rewarded? 18. What had England accomplished and endured at the close of 1780? What troubles menaced her in Europe? What did she do? 1. What event distinguished the opening of 1781? Can you relate the circumstances?

Patriotism of American troops.

Mutiny of New Jersey troops.

Efforts of Congress.

worthless,¹ and the pay of officers and men was greatly in arrears. They had asked in vain for aid; and finally, on the 1st day of January, 1781, thirteen hundred of the Pennsylvania line left the camp at Morristown,² with the avowed determination of marching to Philadelphia, and in person demanding justice from the national legislature.

2. When the mutineers reached Princeton, they were met by British emissaries from New York, who came to seduce them by bribes to enter the service of the king. Indignant at this implied suspicion of their patriotism, *the insurgents seized the spies, and delivered them to General Wayne³ for punishment.* There they were met also by a deputation from Congress, who relieved their immediate wants, and gave them such satisfactory guaranties for the future, that they returned to their duty. When offered a reward for delivering up the spies, they refused to accept it, saying, "Our necessities⁴ compelled us to demand justice from our government; *we ask no reward for doing our duty to our country against its enemies!*"

3. On the 18th of January, a portion of the New Jersey line, at Pompton, followed the example of their comrades at Morristown. But the mutiny was soon quelled⁵ [Jan. 27], and these events had a salutary effect. They aroused

Congress and the people to the necessity of more efficient measures for the support of the army. Taxes were imposed and cheerfully paid; a special agent sent abroad to obtain loans was quite successful,⁶ and a national bank⁷ was established at Philadelphia, and placed under the charge of Robert Morris, to whose superintendence Congress had recently intrusted the public Treasury. To his efforts and financial credit, the country was indebted for the means to commence offensive operations in the spring of 1781.



ROBERT MORRIS.

1. Thirty dollars in paper were then worth only one in silver. See note 2, page 198.

2. The head-quarters of Washington were now at New Windsor just above the Hudson Highlands. The Pennsylvania troops were cantoned at Morristown, New Jersey; and the New Jersey troops were at Pompton, in the same State.

3. Washington had sent Wayne to bring the insurgents back to duty. When he placed himself before them, with loaded pistols, they put their bayonets to his breast, and said, "We love and respect you, but if you fire you are a dead man. We are not going to the enemy; on the contrary, if they were now to come out, you should see us fight under your orders with as much alacrity as ever."

4. A committee of Congress appointed to report on the condition of the army said, a short time previous to this event, that it was "unpaid for five months, that it seldom had more than six days' provisions in advance, and was, on several occasions, for sundry successive days, without meat; that the medical department had neither sugar, coffee, tea, chocolate, wine, nor spirituous liquors of any kind, and that every department of the army was without money, and had not even the shadow of credit left." This report heightens the glowing colors of their patriotism.

5. Washington sent General Robert Howe, with five hundred men, to suppress the mutiny. Two of the ringleaders were hanged, and the remainder quietly submitted.

6. Colonel John Laurens [note 4 page 258] was sent to France to ask for aid. He procured about \$1,200,000 as a subsidy, and a further sum as a loan; and also a guaranty for a Dutch loan of about \$2,000,000. These sums, and the operations of Morris's Bank, gave essential relief.

7. This was called the *Bank of North America*, the first ever established in the United States. Morris was born in England in 1733, and came to America in childhood. He was a successful merchant in Philadelphia, was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and the great financier of the Revolution. He

QUESTIONS.—2. How did mutineers display remarkable patriotism? 3. What other mutiny occurred? How was it suppressed? What good did these accomplish? What financial arrangements were made, and by whom?

Arnold and Phillips in Virginia.

Greene takes command of the southern army.

4. While half-starved, half-naked troops were making such noble displays of patriotism amid the snows of New Jersey, Arnold, now engaged in the service of his royal master, was commencing a series of depredations upon lower Virginia, with about sixteen hundred British and Tory troops, and a few armed vessels. He went up the James river, and after destroying [Jan. 5, 1781] a large quantity of public and private stores at Richmond, and vicinity, he went to Portsmouth [Jan. 20], opposite Norfolk, and made that his head-quarters. Great efforts were made by the Americans to seize and punish the traitor.¹ La Fayette was sent into Virginia with twelve hundred men to oppose him, and a portion of the French fleet went [March 8, 1781] from Rhode Island, to shut him up in the Elizabeth river, and assist in capturing him. Admiral Arbuthnot² pursued and attacked [March 16] this fleet, and compelled it to return to Newport. General Phillips soon afterward joined Arnold [March 26] with more than two thousand men, and took the chief command. The traitor accompanied Phillips on another expedition up the James river [April], and after doing as much mischief as possible between Petersburg and Richmond, he returned to New York.³ We shall meet Arnold presently on the New England coast.⁴

5. The southern States became the most important theater of the campaign of 1781. General Greene,⁵ who was appointed [Oct. 30, 1780] to succeed General Gates at the South, arrived at the head-quarters at Charlotte, and on the 3d of December took formal command. He arranged his little army into two divisions. With the main body he took post at Cheraw, east of the Pedee, and General Morgan was sent with the remainder (about a thousand strong) to occupy the country near the junction of the Pacolet and Broad rivers. Cornwallis's position was between the two. That general was just preparing to march into North Carolina again,⁶ when Greene made this disposition of his army.

6. Unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear,



GENERAL GREENE.

died in 1806, in comparative poverty, having lost an immense fortune by speculations in lands in western New York, since known as the Holland Land Company's purchase.

1. Soon after the capture of Andre, and before his execution, great efforts were made to seize Arnold. Sergeant Champe, one of Major Lee's dragoons, went in disguise to New York, enlisted into a corps over which Arnold had command, ascertained the nature of his nightly movements, and had almost consummated a plan for abducting him and carrying him to the Jersey shore, when the traitor was ordered to the southern expedition. Instead of carrying Arnold off, Champe, himself, was taken to Virginia with the corps in which he had enlisted. There he escaped, and joined Lee in the Carolinas.

2. Verse 2, page 239.

3. Phillips sickened and died at Petersburg, when Cornwallis, who soon afterward arrived, took the general command.

4. Verse 19, page 255.

5. Nathanael Greene was born of Quaker parents, in Rhode Island, in 1740. He was an anchor-smith, and was pursuing his trade when the Revolution broke out. He hastened to Boston after the skirmish at Lexington, and from that time, until the close of the war, he was one of the most useful officers in the army. He died near Savannah in 1786, and was buried in a vault in that city. His sepulchre can not be identified.

6. Verse 11, page 244.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Benedict Arnold do in Virginia? What was done to capture him? What expedition did he undertake with Phillips? 5. What military movements were made in the South?

Battle of the Cowpens.

Great retreat of the Americans.

Cornwallis sent Tarleton to capture or disperse his command. The Americans retreated before his superior force, but were overtaken at the *Cowpens*,¹ in Spartanburg district, and compelled to fight. Morgan² and his brave followers turned upon their pursuers, and combated with them for more than two hours [Jan. 17, 1781], with skill and bravery. The British were defeated with a loss of almost three hundred men in killed and wounded, five hundred made prisoners, and a large quantity of arms, ammunition, and stores. It was a brilliant victory, and Congress gave Morgan a gold medal, as a token of its approbation. Colonels Howard³ and Washington,⁴ whose soldierly conduct won the battle, received each a silver medal.



GENERAL MORGAN.

7. At the close of the battle, Morgan pushed forward with his prisoners, intending to cross the Catawba, and make his way toward Virginia. When Cornwallis heard of the defeat of Tarleton, he destroyed his heavy baggage, and hastened with his whole army to intercept Morgan and his prisoners. He reached the Catawba in the evening, two hours after Morgan had crossed. Feeling confident of his prey, he deferred his passage of the stream until morning. A heavy rain during the night filled the river to its brim, and while the British were detained by the flood, Morgan had reached the banks of the Yadkin, where he was joined by General Greene and his escort.

8. Now commenced a remarkable retreat of the American army under Greene, from the Yadkin to the Dan. Cornwallis reached the western bank of the former [Feb. 3, 1781], just as the Americans got safely on the eastern shore, and he was again arrested in his progress by a sudden swelling of the floods. Onward the patriots pressed, and soon Cornwallis was in full chase. At Guilford court house Greene was joined [Feb. 7] by his main body



COLONEL WASHINGTON.

1. The scene of the battle is among the Thicketty mountains, west of the Broad river. It was called *Cowpens* from the fact that some time before the Revolution, some traders at Camden kept herds of cows in that fertile region.

2. Daniel Morgan was born in New Jersey in 1738, and was in the humble sphere of a wagoner, when called to the field. He had been a soldier under Braddock, and joined Washington at Cambridge in 1775. He was a farmer in Virginia after the war, where he died in 1802.

3. John Eager Howard, of the Maryland line. He was born in Baltimore county in 1752. He went into military service at the commencement of the war. He was in all of the principal battles of the Revolution, was chosen Governor of Maryland in 1778, was afterward a United States Senator, and died in October, 1827.

4. William Washington, a relative of the general. He was born in Stafford county, Va. He entered the army under Mercer, who was killed at Princeton [verse 5, page 213], and greatly distinguished himself at the South, as commander of a corps of cavalry. Taken prisoner at Eutaw Springs [verse 15, page 253], he remained a captive until the close of the war, and died in Charleston, in March, 1810. In a personal combat with Tarleton, at the battle of the Cowpens, Washington wounded his antagonist in his hand. Some months afterward, Tarleton said sneeringly to Mrs. Willie Jones, a witty American lady, "that Colonel Washington, I am told, is illiterate, and can not write his own name." "Ah! colonel," said Mrs. Jones, "you ought to know better, for you bear evidence that he can make his mark." At another time he ex-

QUESTIONS.—6. What did Cornwallis wish to do? What was done? and what else can you tell of a battle? How were the victors rewarded? 7. What was done after the battle of the Cowpens, by the two armies?

Cornwallis gives up pursuit.

Greene's army in North Carolina.

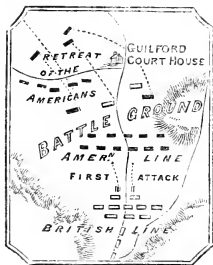
Battle at Guilford.

from Cheraw,¹ and all continued the flight, for they were not strong enough yet to turn and fight. After many narrow escapes during the retreat, Greene reached the Dan [Feb. 13], and crossed its rising waters safely into the friendly bosom of Halifax county, in Virginia. When Cornwallis arrived, a few hours later [February 14], the stream was too much swollen to allow him to cross. For the third time the waters, as if governed by a special Providence, interposed a barrier between the pursuers and the pursued. Mortified and dispirited, the earl here abandoned the chase, and moving sullenly southward through North Carolina, established his camp at Hillsborough.

9. Greene remained in Virginia only long enough to refresh his troops, and receive recruits,² and then he recrossed the Dan [Feb. 23], to oppose Cornwallis in his efforts to embody the loyalists under the royal banner, Colonel Lee,³ with his cavalry, scoured the country around the head waters of the Haw and Deep rivers, and foiled the efforts of Tarleton who was recruiting in that region. On one occasion he defeated and dispersed [March 2] a body of three hundred loyalists under Colonel Pyle,⁴ near the Alamance creek, after which the Tories kept quiet and very few dared to take up arms. Greene, in



COLONEL HENRY LEE.



BATTLE OF GUILFORD.

the meantime, had moved cautiously forward, and on the 1st of March [1780], found himself at the head of almost five thousand troops. Feeling strong enough now to cope with Cornwallis, he sought an engagement with him, and on the 15th they met, and fiercely contended, near Guilford court house.⁵ That battle was one of the severest of the war. Although the Americans were repulsed and the British became masters of the field, the victory was almost as destructive for Cornwallis as a defeat. "Another such victory,"

pressed a desire to see Colonel Washington. Mrs. Jones's sister instantly replied, "Had you looked behind you at the *Cowpens*, you might have had that pleasure."

2. On his way South to take command of the southern army, he left the Baron Steuben in Virginia, to gather recruits, provisions, etc., and forward them to him. This service the Baron performed with efficiency. See note 2, page 230.

3. Henry Lee was born in Virginia, in 1756. He entered the military service as captain of a Virginia company in 1776, and in 1777 joined the Continental army. At the head of a legion he performed extraordinary services during the war, especially at the South. He was afterward Governor of Virginia, and a member of Congress. He died in 1818.

4. Lee sent two young countrymen, whom he had captured, to the camp of Pyle, to inform that leader that Tarleton was approaching, and wished to meet him. Pyle had never seen Tarleton, and when he came up he supposed Lee and his party to be that of the renowned British officer. Friendly salutations were expressed, and at a word, the Americans fell upon the loyalists, killed almost a hundred of them, and dispersed the remainder. This event took place two or three miles from the scene of the Regulator battle mentioned on page 182.

5. About five miles from the present village of Greensborough, in Guilford county, North Carolina.

QUESTIONS.—8. What remarkable event now occurred? What can you tell of Greene's retreat and escape?
9. What did the Americans now do? What exploit did Lee perform? What can you tell of a battle and its results?

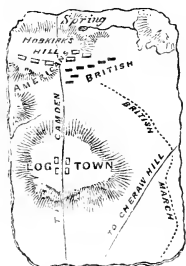
Character of the battle at Guilford.

Battle near Camden.

Capture of British posts.

said Charles Fox in the British House of Commons, "will ruin the British army." His battalions were so shattered¹ that he could not maintain the advantage he had gained. Thoroughly dispirited, he abandoned western Carolina and moved [March 19], with his whole army, to Wilmington, near the seaboard. Greene rallied his forces and pursued the British as far as the Deep river, in Chatham county. There he relinquished the pursuit, and prepared to re-enter South Carolina.

10. Lord Rawdon² was now in command of a British force at Camden. Greene marched [April 6], directly for that place, and on the 19th of April he encamped on Hobkirk's Hill, about a mile from Rawdon's intrenchments. Six days afterward [April 25, 1781], he was surprised³ and defeated by Rawdon, after a sharp battle, in which the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and missing, two hundred and sixty-six men. The British lost two hundred and fifty-eight.⁴ Greene conducted his retreat so well, that he carried away all his artillery and baggage, with fifty British prisoners.



HOBKIRK'S HILL.

11. The two armies were now about equal in numbers, and Greene's began to increase. Alarmed by this, and for the safety of his forts in the lower country, Rawdon set fire to Camden and retreated [May 10, 1781] to Nelson's Ferry, on the Santee. He had ordered Cruger⁵ to abandon Ninety-Six⁶ and join Brown at Augusta;⁷ and had also directed Maxwell to leave Fort Granby,⁸ and retire to Orangeburg,⁹ on the North Edisto. But his

orders and his movements were made too late. Within the space of a week, four important posts fell into the hands of the Americans,¹⁰ and Greene was making rapid marches toward Ninety-Six. Lee had pressed forward and co-operated with Pickens in holding the country between Ninety-Six and Augusta, to prevent a junction of the garrisons at either of those places. At the beginning of June [1781], the British possessed only three points in South Carolina, namely, Charleston, Nelson's Ferry, and Ninety-Six.

1. The Americans lost in killed and wounded, about four hundred men, besides almost a thousand who deserted to their homes. The loss of the British was over six hundred. Among the officers who were killed was Lieutenant-Colonel Webster, who was one of the most efficient men in the British army. On this occasion Greene's force was much superior in numbers to that of Cornwallis, and he had every advantage of position.

2. Verse 14, page 253.
3. Greene was breakfasting at a spring on the eastern slope of Hobkirk's Hill, when Rawdon's army, by a circuitous route through a forest, fell upon him. Some of his men were cleaning their guns, others were washing their clothes, and all were unsuspecting of danger.

4. The number of killed was remarkably small. The Americans had only eighteen, and the British thirty-eight, slain on the battle-field.

5. Verse 5, page 241.
6. So called because it was ninety-six miles from the frontier fort, Prince George, on the Keowee river. Its site is occupied by the pleasant village of Cambridge, in Abbeville district, one hundred and forty-seven miles north-west from Charleston.

7. Verse 5, page 241.
8. On the western side of the Congaree, two miles from the present city of Columbia, South Carolina.

9. On east bank of the North Edisto, about sixty-five miles south of Columbia.

10. Lee and Marion were the principal leaders against these posts. Orangeburg was taken on the 11th of May; Fort Motte on the 12th; the post at Nelson's Ferry on the 14th, and Fort Granby on the 16th. Fort Watson, situated on the Santee, a few miles above Nelson's Ferry, was taken on the 16th of April. Fort Motte was near the junction of the Wateree and Congaree, forty miles south from Camden. Nelson's Ferry is at the mouth of Eutaw creek, on the Santee, about fifty miles from Charleston.

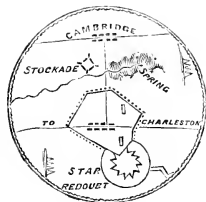
QUESTIONS.—10. What occurred near Camden? What can you tell of a battle there? 11. How did the two armies now compare? What movements did Lord Rawdon order? What series of important events occurred?

Siege of Ninety-Six.

Surrender of Augusta.

High Hills of Santee.

12. Greene commenced the siege of Ninety-Six¹ on the 22d of May, with less than a thousand regulars and a few raw militia. For almost a month, his efforts were unavailing. Then hearing of the approach of Rawdon, with a strong force, to the relief of Cruger, the Americans made an unsuccessful effort [June 18] to take the place by storm. They raised the siege the following evening [June 19], and retreated beyond the Saluda. Rawdon pursued them a short distance, when he wheeled and marched to Orangeburg.



FORT NINETY-SIX.

13. While this siege was progressing, Lee and Pickens, with Clarke and others of Georgia, were making successful efforts on the Savannah. Lee captured Fort Galphin, twelve miles below Augusta, on the 21st of May, and then sent an officer to demand of Brown an instant surrender of his garrison. The siege of Augusta was commenced on the 23d, and continued until the 4th of June, when a general assault was agreed upon. Brown now proposed a surrender; and the following day [June 5, 1781] the Americans took possession of that important post. They lost fifty-one men, killed and wounded; the British lost fifty-two killed, and three hundred and thirty-four (including the wounded) made prisoners. At the close of the siege, Lee and Pickens² hastened to join Greene before Ninety-Six.



GENERAL PICKENS.

14. When Rawdon retired toward Orangeburg, Greene became his pursuer, but finding him strongly intrenched at that place, the Americans crossed the Congaree, and the main body encamped upon the *High Hills of Santee*, in Santee district, there to pass the hot and sickly season. Leaving his troops at Orangeburg, in the command of Colonel Stewart, Rawdon departed for England.³

15. Greene was reinforced by North Carolina troops, in August, and at the close of that month he marched upon Orangeburg.⁴ Stewart (who had been

1. The principal work was a star redoubt [note 8, page 190]. There was a picketed inclosure [note 2, page 191] around the little village; and on the west side of a stream running from a spring (a) was a stockade [note 3, page 150] fort. The besiegers encamped at four different points around the works. Kosciuszko [note 6, page 220] was the engineer in chief.

2. Andrew Pickens was born in Pennsylvania in 1739. In childhood he went to South Carolina, and was one of the first in the field for liberty. He was a very useful officer, and good citizen. He died in 1817.

3. A short time before he sailed, Rawdon was party to a cruel transaction which created a great deal of excitement throughout the South. Among those who took British protection after the fall of Charleston, in 1780 [verse 4, page 240], was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a highly respectable Carolinian. When General Greene, the following year, confined the British to Charleston alone, and these protections had no force, Hayne considered himself released from the obligations of his parole, took up arms for his country, and was made a prisoner. Colonel Balfour was then in chief command at Charleston, and from the beginning seemed determined on the death of Hayne. Rawdon exerted his influence to save the prisoner, but finally he consented to his execution, as a traitor. Greene was inclined to retaliate, but, fortunately, hostilities soon afterward ceased, and the flow of blood was stopped.

4. Verse 11, page 252.

QUESTIONS.—12. What post was besieged? What can you tell of the siege of Ninety-Six? 13. What were other American officers doing? What can you tell of the capture of Augusta by the Americans? What movements were now made by the two armies?

Battle of Eutaw Springs.

British driven to the coast.

Cornwallis in Virginia.

joined by Cruger from Ninety-Six), retreated to Eutaw Springs, near the south-west banks of the Santee, and there encamped. Greene pursued, and on the morning of the 8th of September [1781], a severe battle commenced. The British were driven from their camp; and Greene's troops, like those of Sumter at Hanging Rock,¹ scattered among the tents of the enemy, drinking and plundering. The British unexpectedly renewed the battle, and after a bloody conflict of about four hours, the Americans were obliged to give way. That night the British retreated toward Charleston. The next day [Sept. 9, 1781], Greene advanced and took possession of the battle-field, and then sent detachments in pursuit of the enemy.² The Americans lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, five hundred and fifty-five. The British lost six hundred and ninety-three.

16. At this time, Marion, Sumter, Lee, and other partisans, were driving British detachments from post to post, and smiting parties of loyalists in every direction. The British finally evacuated all their stations in the country, and retired to Charleston, pursued almost to the verge of the city, by the bold American scouts. At the close of the year [1781], the British at the South were confined to Charleston and Savannah; and besides these places, they did not hold a single post south of New York. Late in the season [Nov.], Greene moved his army³ to the vicinity of Charleston; while Wayne, early in 1782, was closely watching the British at Savannah.

17. While Greene and Rawdon were maneuvering in South Carolina, Cornwallis was attempting the subjugation of Virginia. He left Wilmington⁴ on the 25th of April, crossed the Roanoke at Halifax, and on the 20th of May, reached Petersburg, where he took the command of the troops of the deceased Phillips.⁵ Lafayette was then in Virginia,⁶ but his force was too small effectually to oppose the invaders, and the State seemed doomed to British rule. For the purpose of bringing La Fayette into action, Cornwallis penetrated the country beyond Richmond, and destroyed an immense amount of property.⁷ He also sent out marauding parties in various directions,⁸ and for several weeks the whole State was kept in great alarm. He finally proceeded [June, 1781] slowly toward the coast, closely pursued by La Fayette, Wayne, and

1. Verse 7, page 242.

2. Congress awarded a gold medal to Greene for his skill and bravery at Eutaw Springs. The battle, although it resulted in the repulse of the Americans, was more disastrous to the British than to them.

3. After the battle of Eutaw Springs, Greene again encamped on the High Hills of Santee, from which he sent out expeditions toward Charleston. These were successful, and the enemy were kept close upon the sea-board, during the remainder of the war.

4. Verse 9, page 251.

5. Note 3, page 249.

6. Verse 4, page 249.

7. The principal object of Cornwallis in marching beyond Richmond, was to prevent a junction of troops, under Wayne, then approaching through Maryland, with La Fayette. But the marquis was too expert, out-marched the earl, and met Wayne on the 10th of June.

8. Colonel Simcoe, commander of the *Queen's Rangers*, was sent to capture or destroy stores at the junction of the Pluvanna and Rivanna rivers. He also dispatched Tarleton to attempt the capture of Governor Jefferson and the Legislature, who had fled from Richmond to Charlottesville, near the residence of Mr. Jefferson. Seven members of the Legislature fell into his hands [June 4], and Mr. Jefferson narrowly escaped capture by fleeing from his house to the mountains.

QUESTIONS.—15. How was Greene strengthened? and what did he do? What battle occurred? What can you tell about it? 16. What were Marion and others now doing? What was now the condition of the British in South Carolina and Georgia? 17. What was Cornwallis attempting in Virginia? Who opposed him? and what were the prospects? What did the British detachments do? What can you tell of Cornwallis's movements?

The allied armies.

Deceptive letters.

March for Virginia.

Steuben. While lying at Williamsburg, he received [June 29] orders from General Clinton to take post near the sea, in order to reinforce the garrison at New York, if necessary, which was now menaced by the combined American and French armies. He crossed the James river [July 9] at Old Jamestown,¹ and proceeded by land to Portsmouth; but disliking that situation, he went to Yorktown, on the York river, and commenced fortifying that place [Aug.] and Gloucester Point, opposite.

18. While these movements were progressing at the South, the allied armies had met on the Hudson river [July 6], in Westchester county, for the purpose of attacking Sir Henry Clinton, in New York. The Americans were under the immediate command of Washington, and the French under the Count de Rochambeau.² Count de Grasse was then in command of a French fleet in the West Indies, and Washington confidently expected his aid in the enterprise. But while preparing to strike the blow, Clinton was reinforced [Aug. 11] by nearly three thousand troops from Europe; and intelligence came from De Grasse that he could not give his co-operation. Thus foiled, Washington turned his thoughts to Virginia; and when, a few days afterward, he learned from De Barras,³ at Newport, that De Grasse was about to sail for the Chesapeake, he resolved to march southward.



COUNT DE ROCHAMBEAU.



COUNT DE GRASSE.

19. Washington wrote deceptive letters to General Greene in New Jersey, and sent them so as to be intercepted by Sir Henry Clinton. He thus blinded the British commander to his real intentions; and it was not until the allied armies had crossed the Hudson, passed through New Jersey, and were marching from the Delaware toward the head of Chesapeake Bay,⁴ that Clinton was convinced that an attack upon the city of New York was not the object of Washington's movements. It was then too late for successful pursuit, and he endeavored to recall the Americans by sending Arnold to desolate the New England coast. Although there was a terrible massacre perpetrated by the marauders at Fort Griswold,⁵ [Sept. 6,

1. Here he was attacked by Wayne, who, after striking the British a severe blow, hastily retreated, with but little loss, back to the main army, two miles distant.

2. Born at Vendome, in France, in 1725. He was a distinguished officer in the French army, and after his return from America, was made a field marshal by his king. He was pensioned by Bonaparte, and died in 1807.

3. The successor of Admiral de Ternay, in the command of the French fleet. Ternay died at Newport.

4. This is generally called, in the letters and histories of the time, "Head of Elk," the narrow, upper part of the Chesapeake being called Elk river. There stands the village of Elkton.

5. Arnold landed at the mouth of the Thames, and proceeded to attack Fort Trumbull, near New London. The garrison evacuated it, and the village was burned. Another division of the expedition went up on the

QUESTIONS.—18. What did the allied armies do? What did they attempt? Why was the scheme abandoned? 19. How did Washington mislead Clinton? What did the allied armies do? What did Clinton attempt? and how? What can you tell of Arnold's expedition to Connecticut? What naval battle occurred?

Naval battle.

Siege of Yorktown.

1781], and New London, opposite, almost in sight of the traitor's birth-place,¹ was burned, it did not check the progress of Washington. Nor did reinforcements sent by water to aid Cornwallis, effect their object, for when Admiral Graves arrived off the Capes [Sept. 5], De Grasse was there to guard the entrance to the Chesapeake.² He went out to fight Graves, but after a partial action both withdrew, and the French anchored [Sept. 10] within the Capes.³

20. The allied armies, about twelve thousand strong,⁴ arrived before Yorktown on the 28th of September, 1781, and after compelling the British to abandon their outworks, commenced a regular siege. They opened a heavy cannonade upon the town and the British works on the evening of the 9th of October. They hurled red-hot balls among the English shipping in front of the town, and burned several vessels. Disasters were gathering a fearful web of difficulty around Cornwallis. Despairing of aid from Clinton, and perceiving his strong fortifications crumbling, one by one, under the terrible storm of iron from a hundred heavy cannons, he attempted to escape on the night of the 16th, by crossing to Gloucester, breaking through the French troops stationed there, and making forced marches toward New York.

When the van of his troops embarked, the waters of the York river were perfectly calm, although dark clouds were gathering on the horizon. Then a storm arose as sudden and as fearful as a summer tornado, dispersed the boats, compelled many to put back, and the attempt was abandoned. Hope now faded, and on the 19th, Cornwallis surrendered the posts at Yorktown and Gloucester, with almost seven thousand British soldiers, and his shipping and seamen, into the hands of Washington and De Grasse.⁵ Clinton appeared at the



SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

east side of the Thames, attacked Fort Griswold at Groton, and after Colonel Ledyard had surrendered it, he and almost every man in the fort were cruelly murdered, or badly wounded. There is a monument to their memory, at Groton.

1. At Norwich, at the head of the Thames, a few miles north of New London. See note 1, page 246.

2. Graves intended to intercept a French squadron which was on its way with heavy cannons and military stores for the armies at Yorktown. He was not aware that De Grasse had left the West Indies.

3. The place of anchorage was in Lynn Haven Bay. The hostile fleets were in sight of each other for five successive days, but neither party was anxious to renew the combat.

4. The whole of the American and French forces, employed in the siege, amounted to a little over sixteen thousand men. Of the Americans, about seven thousand were regular troops, and four thousand militia. The French troops numbered about five thousand, including those brought by De Grasse from the West Indies.

5. The British lost one hundred and fifty-six killed, three hundred and twenty-six wounded, and seventy missing. The combined armies lost, in killed and wounded, about three hundred. Among the spoils were

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell of the siege of Yorktown? What was the result?

Surrender of Cornwallis.

Effects of that event.

entrance to Chesapeake Bay a few days afterward, with seven thousand troops, but it was too late. The final blow which smote down British power in America had been struck, and the victory was complete. Clinton returned to New York, amazed and disheartened.

21. From every family altar where a love of freedom dwelt—from pulpits, legislative halls, the army, and from Congress¹ [October 24], went up a shout of thanksgiving and praise to the Lord God Omnipotent, for the success of the allied troops, and these were mingled with universal eulogies of the Great Leader and his companions in arms. The clouds which had lowered for seven long years appeared to be breaking, and the splendors of the dawn of peace burst forth, like the light of a clear morning after a dismal night of tempest. And the desire for peace, which had long burned in the bosom of the British people, now found such potential expression, as to be heeded by the British ministry. The intelligence of the fate of Cornwallis and his party, fell with all the destructive energy of a bomb-shell in the midst of the war-party² in Parliament; and the stoutest declaimers in favor of bayonets and gunpowder, Indians and German mercenaries,³ as fit instruments for enslaving a free people, began to talk of the *expediency* of peace. Lord North⁴ and his administration, who had misled the nation for twelve years, gave way under the pressure of the peace sentiment, and retired [March 20, 1782] from office. The advocates of peace then came into power, and early in the following May, Sir Guy Carleton arrived in New York, with propositions for a reconciliation.

SECTION IX.

CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1782-1789.]

1. Intelligence of the capture of Cornwallis⁵ reached General Greene on the 30th of October, 1781, and that day was spent by the army as one of jubilee. The event seemed to be a guaranty for the future security of the Republicans in the South, and Governor Rutledge⁶ soon called a Legislative Assembly, to

seventy-five brass, and one hundred and sixty iron cannons; seven thousand seven hundred and ninety-four muskets; twenty-eight regimental standards; a large quantity of musket and cannon-balls, and nearly eleven thousand dollars in specie in the military chest. The army was surrendered to Washington, and the shipping and seamen to De Grasse. The latter soon afterward left the Chesapeake and went to the West Indies. Rochambeau remained with his troops in Virginia during the winter, and the main body of the American army marched north, and went into winter quarters on the Hudson. A strong detachment under General St. Clair [verse 18, p. 219] was sent south to drive the British from Wilmington, and reinforce the army of General Greene, then lying near Charleston.

1. A messenger, with a dispatch from Washington, reached Philadelphia at midnight. Before dawn the exulting people filled the streets; and at an early hour, Secretary Thomson [verse 35, p. 185] read that cheering letter to the assembled Congress. Then that august body went in procession to a temple of the living God [October 24th, 1781], and there joined in public thanksgivings to the King of kings, for the great victory. They also resolved that a marble column should be erected at Yorktown, to commemorate the event; and that two stands of colors should be presented to Washington, and two pieces of cannon to each of the French commanders, Rochambeau and De Grasse.

2. Lord George Germaine said that Lord North received the intelligence, as he would have done a cannon-hall in his breast." He paced the room, and throwing his arms wildly about, kept exclaiming, "O, God! it is all over, it is all over!" 3. Verse 2, page 198.

5. Verse 20, page 266.

4. Verse 29, page 182.
6. Verse 2, page 239.

QUESTIONS.—21. What effect did the victory at Yorktown have? What was done by the British Parliament? What political changes took place?

Vigilance of the Americans.

Proceedings in Parliament.

Treaty of peace.

meet at Jacksonborough, to re-establish civil authority. An offer of pardon for penitents, brought hundreds of Tories from the British lines at Charleston, to accept the clemency. Yet the vigilance of the Americans was not allowed to slumber, for a wary foe yet occupied the capitals of South Carolina and Georgia. Marion and his men kept "watch and ward" over the region between the Cooper and the Santee, while Greene's main army lay near the Edisto; and Wayne kept the enemy as close within his intrenchments at Savannah. Alarmed by the approach of St. Clair,¹ the British fled from Wilmington, and took post on St. John's Island, just below Charleston. Washington, at the same time, was keeping Clinton and his army close prisoners in New York.²

2. On the 4th of March, 1782, the British House of Commons³ resolved to end the war. Orders for a cessation of hostilities speedily went forth to the British commanders in America. On the 11th of July [1782], the British evacuated Savannah, and on the 14th of December following, they also departed from Charleston.⁴ They remained in New York almost a year longer [Nov. 25, 1783], under the command of Sir Guy Carleton,⁵ who had succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, because the final negotiations for peace were not completed, by ratification, until near that time.

3. Five commissioners⁶ were appointed by the United States to conclude a treaty of peace with Great Britain. They met two English commissioners, for that purpose, at Paris, and there, on the 30th of November, 1782, they signed a preliminary treaty. French and English commissioners also signed a treaty of peace on the 20th of January following. Congress ratified the action of its commissioners in April, 1783, yet negotiations were in progress until September following, when a definitive treaty was signed⁷ [Sept. 3, 1783] at Paris. At the same time, definitive treaties between England, France, Spain, and Holland, were signed by their respective commissioners, and the United States became an acknowledged power among the nations of the earth.

4. The joy of the American people, in view of returning peace and prosperity, was mingled with many gloomy apprehensions of evil. The army, which, through the most terrible sufferings, had remained faithful, and become con-

¹. Note 5, page 256.

². Verse 18, page 275.

³. Note 7, page 177.

⁴. During the preceding summer, General Leslie, the British commander at Charleston, made several attempts to penetrate the country for the purpose of seizing provisions for his army. Late in August, he attempted to ascend the Combahee [verse 20, page 33], for that purpose, when he was opposed by the Americans under General Gist, of the Maryland line. Colonel John Laurens [note 6, page 246] volunteered in the service; and in a skirmish at daybreak, on the 25th of August, he was killed. The last blood of the Revolution was shed at Stono Ferry [verse 7, page 233] in September following, when Captain Willmot was killed in a skirmish with a British foraging party.

⁵. Verse 19, page 195.

⁶. This number was appointed in order that different sections of the Union might be represented. The commissioners were John Adams, John Jay, Dr. Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and Henry Laurens. Jefferson did not serve.

⁷. England acknowledged the independence of the United States; allowed ample boundaries, extending northward to the great lakes, and westward to the Mississippi, and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The two Floridas were restored to Spain.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did the intelligence of the capture of Cornwallis affect the American army and the people? What occurred in the vicinity of Charleston? 2. What was done in the British House of Commons? What was done by the British army in America? 3. What was done toward the establishment of peace? What can you tell of negotiations and their results? What treaties were agreed to?

Discontents of the army. Provisions made by Congress. Washington resigns his commission.

queror, was soon to be disbanded; and thousands, many of them made invalids by the hard service in which they had been engaged, would be compelled to seek a livelihood in the midst of the desolation which war had produced. For a long time the public treasury had been empty, and neither officers nor soldiers had received any pay for their services. A resolution of Congress, passed in 1780 [Oct. 21], to allow the officers half pay for life, was ineffective, because funds were wanting. Already the gloomy prospect had created wide-spread murmuring in the army; and on the 11th of March, 1783, a well-written address was circulated through the American camp (then near Newburg), which advised the army to take matters into their own hands, make a demonstration that should arouse the fears of the people and of Congress, and thus obtain justice for themselves.¹ For this purpose, a meeting of officers was called, but the great influence of Washington prevented a response. He then summoned all the officers together, laid the matter before them [March 15], and obtained from them a patriotic expression of their faith in the "justice of Congress and the country." In a few days the threatening cloud passed away.

5. Soon after this event, Congress made arrangements for granting to the officers full pay for five years, instead of half pay for life; and to the soldiers full pay for four months, in partial liquidation of their claims. On the eighth anniversary of the skirmish at Lexington [April 19, 1783], a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the army, and on the 3d of November following, the army was disbanded. That glorious band of patriots then quietly returned to their homes, to enjoy, for the remnant of their lives, the blessings of the liberty they had won, and the grateful benedictions of their countrymen. Of the two hundred and thirty thousand Continental soldiers, and the fifty-six thousand militia who bore arms during the war, not more than five hundred now [1857] remain among us!² And the average age of these must be more than ninety years.

6. Washington met his officers at New York, and there had an affectionate parting with them³ [Dec. 4, 1783]. He then hastened to Annapolis, in Maryland, where the Congress was in session, and on the 23d of December, he resigned into its custody the commission which he received [June 16, 1775] from that body more than eight



GENERAL MIFFLIN.

1. This address was anonymous, but it was afterward acknowledged to be the production of John Armstrong, then a major, and one of General Gates's aids. He was Secretary of War in 1814. See verse 13, page 289.

2. Great Britain sent to America, during the war, one hundred and twelve thousand five hundred and eighty-four troops for the land service, and more than twenty-two thousand seamen. Of all this host, not one is known to be living. One of them (John Battin) died in the city of New York, in June, 1852, at the age of one hundred years and four months.

3. On the 2d of November, he issued a *Farewell Address to the Armies of the United States*; and on the

QUESTIONS.—4. What was the condition of the Continental army? What caused discontents? What happened near Newburg? 5. What provisions did Congress make for the officers and soldiers of the Revolution? What military movement occurred? What can you tell of the Revolutionary soldiers? 6. What did Washington now do? What interesting event occurred at Annapolis?

Society of the Cincinnati.

Evacuation of New York.

years before.¹ His address on that occasion was simple and touching, and the response of General Mifflin,² the President, was equally affecting. The spectacle was one of great moral sublimity. Like Cincinnatus, Washington laid down the cares of State, and returned to his plow. Already the last hostile foot had departed³ [Nov. 25], and his country was free and independent.⁴

7. A little while before the final disbanding of the army, many of the officers, then at Newburg, on the Hudson,⁵ met [June 19, 1783], and formed an association, which they named the SOCIETY OF THE CINCINNATI. The chief objects of the Society were to promote cordial friendship and indissoluble union among themselves; to commemorate, by frequent re-unions, the great struggle they had just passed through; to use their best endeavors for the promotion of human liberty; to cherish good feeling between the respective States; and to extend benevolent aid to those of the Society whose circumstances might require it. They formed a General Society, and elected Washington its first President. They also made provision for the formation of auxiliary State Societies. The *Order* of the Society⁶ consists of a gold eagle, suspended upon a ribbon, on the breast of which is a medallion with a device, representing Cincinnatus receiving the Roman senators.⁷ Several State Societies are yet [1857] in existence.

8. Although the war was ended and peace was guaranteed, the people had much to do in the adjustment of public affairs, to secure the liberty and independence proclaimed and acknowledged. The country was burdened with

14th of the same month, he made an arrangement with General Carleton for the British evacuation of New York. 1. Verse 15, page 193.

2. Thomas Mifflin was born in Philadelphia, in 1744. He was a Quaker [note 7, page 97], but joined the patriot army in 1775, and rapidly rose to the rank of major-general. He was a member of Congress after the war, and also Governor of Pennsylvania. He died in January, 1800.

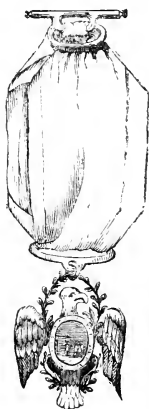
3. The British evacuated New York on the 25th of November, and on that day, General Knox, the efficient artillery commander during the war, entered the city with a small remnant of the Continental army, and took possession. He was accompanied by Governor George Clinton, of New York, and all the State officials. Before evening, the last British soldier had departed from the Bay. Like Governors Trumbull [note 5, page 245] and Rutledge [verse 2, page 239], Clinton, in a civil capacity, was of immense service to the American cause. He was born in Ulster county, New York, in 1739. He was Governor about eighteen years, and died in 1812, while Vice-President of the United States. See verse 18, page 284.

4. John Adams was the first minister of the United States to Great Britain. He was politely received by King George the Third, and that monarch was faithful to his promises. 5. Verse 4, page 258.

6. An *order* is a badge, or visible token of regard or distinction, conferred upon persons for meritorious services. On the breast of Baron Steuben, on page 230, is the order of *Fidelity*, presented to him by Frederick the Great of Prussia, for his services in the army of that monarch. Some of the *orders* conferred by kings are very costly, being made of gold, and silver, and precious stones. The picture of the *order* of the Cincinnati, given above, is half the size of the original.

7. Cincinnatus was a noble Roman citizen. When the Romans were menaced with destruction by an enemy, the Senate appointed delegates to invite Cincinnatus to assume the chief magistracy of the nation.

QUESTIONS.—7. What society was formed? and by whom? What was its organization? and what its objects? What of its *order*?



ORDER.



GOVERNOR CLINTON.

heavy debts, foreign and domestic,¹ and the *Articles of Confederation*² gave Congress no power to discharge them, if it had possessed the ability. On its recommendation, however, the individual States attempted to raise their respective quotas, by direct taxation.³ But all were impoverished by the war, and it was found to be impossible to provide means even to meet the arrears of pay due to the soldiers of the Revolution. Each State had its local obligations to meet,⁴ and Congress could not coerce compliance with its recommendations.

9. It was now perceived that, while the *Articles of Confederation* formed a sufficient constitution of government during the progress of war, they were not adapted to the public wants in the new condition of an independent sovereignty, in which the people found themselves. There appeared a necessity for a greater centralization of power, by which the States would not only be drawn into a closer union, but the General Government could act more efficiently for the public good. A better system of commercial regulations was demanded; and in September, 1786, delegates from six States convened at Annapolis, in Maryland, to consider the matter. This Convention suggested the propriety of holding another, for the purpose of revising the *Articles of Confederation*.⁵ For that labor, representatives from all the States but Rhode Island, met in the State House in Philadelphia,⁶ in May, 1787, and chose General Washington to preside. After long deliberation,⁷ and a clear perception of the utter inutility of the existing organic laws, the Convention cast aside the *Articles of Confederation*, and formed an entirely new instrument—the **FEDERAL CONSTITUTION** under which we now live.

10. The *Constitution* was submitted to Congress [Sept. 28, 1787], and that

They found him at his plow. He immediately complied, raised an army, subdued the enemy, and after bearing the almost imperial dignity for fourteen days, he resigned his office, and returned to his plow. How like Cincinnatus were Washington and his compatriots of the War for Independence.

1. According to an estimate made by the Register of the Treasury in 1790, the entire cost of the War for Independence, was at least *one hundred and thirty millions* of dollars, exclusive of vast sums lost by individuals and the several States. The Treasury payments amounted to almost *ninety-three millions*, chiefly in Continental bills. The foreign debt amounted to *eight millions* of dollars; and the domestic debt, due chiefly to the officers and soldiers of the Revolution, was more than *thirty millions* of dollars.

2. Note 3, page 212.

3. This effort produced great excitement in many of the States; and in Massachusetts, in 1787, the people openly rebelled. The insurrection became so formidable, that an armed force of several thousand men was required to suppress it. The insurgents were led by Daniel Shay, and it is known in history as *Shay's Rebellion*.

4. In the Convention which framed the Federal Constitution, no subject created more earnest debate than a proposition for the General Government to assume the debts of the States contracted in providing means for carrying on the war. The debts of the several States were unequal. Those of Massachusetts and South Carolina, amounted to more than ten millions and a half of dollars, while the debts of all the other States did not extend, in the aggregate, to fifteen millions. This assumption was finally made, to the amount of \$21,500,000. See verse 4, page 265.

5. Verse 2, page 211.

6. Page 202.

7. Such conflicting interests were represented in this Convention, that it was doubtful, for a long time, whether the members would come to any agreement; and some proposed a final adjournment. At this momentous crisis, Dr. Franklin arose, and said to the President: "How has it happened, sir, that while groping so long in the dark, divided in our opinions, and now ready to separate without accomplishing the great objects of our meeting, that we have not hitherto once thought of humbly applying to the Father of Lights to illuminate our understanding? In the beginning of the contest with Britain, when we were sensible of danger, we had daily prayers in this room, for divine protection. Our prayers, sir, were heard, and they were graciously answered." After a few more remarks, he moved that "henceforth, prayers, imploring the assistance of Heaven, and its blessings on our deliberations, be held in this Assembly every morning before we proceed to business." The resolution was not adopted, as the convention, except three or four persons, thought prayers unnecessary. Objections were also made, because there were no funds to defray the expenses of such clerical services.

QUESTIONS.—8. What was the general condition of the country? What was done for the common good?
9. What defects were seen in the form of Government of the United States? What was done to improve it?
What instrument was formed?

Expiration of the old Congress.

Commencement of the new government.

body sent copies of it to the several State Legislatures, in order that it might be considered in conventions of the people.¹ These were assembled, and the requisite number of States having ratified it,² Congress fixed the time for choosing electors³ for President and Vice-President; the time for making choice of these officers, and the time and place when and where the government should commence operations under the new Constitution. On the 4th of March, 1789, the old Continental Congress expired, and the FEDERAL CONSTITUTION became the organic law of the new Republic. Thus was consummated the last act in the War for Independence.⁴ Then the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA commenced their glorious career.⁵

1. The new Constitution found many and able opponents. There was a reluctance on the part of the people of several States to resign any of their State sovereignty into the hands of a Federal or central power. There were long and violent debates in the State conventions; and the newspapers were filled with discussions. The Constitution found the most efficient support in a series of essays called *The Federalist*, written by Madison, Hamilton, and Jay. They had a powerful effect upon the public mind, and accomplished much in bringing about a ratification of the Constitution by a majority of the States.

2. The conventions of the several States ratified the Constitution in the following order:—Delaware, Dec. 7, 1787; Pennsylvania, Dec. 12, 1787; New Jersey, Dec. 18, 1787; Georgia, Jan. 2, 1788; Connecticut, Jan. 9, 1788; Massachusetts, Feb. 6, 1788; Maryland, April 28, 1788; South Carolina, May 23, 1788; New Hampshire, June 21, 1788; Virginia, June 26, 1788; New York, July 26, 1788; North Carolina, Nov. 21, 1789; Rhode Island, May 29, 1790.

3. The first electors were to be chosen the first Wednesday in January, 1789, and they were to meet and choose a *President* and *Vice-President* of the United States, on the first Wednesday in February. The new government went into operation on the first Wednesday in March, 1789, in the city of New York. The inauguration of the first President [verse 1, p. 263] did not take place until the 30th of April following.

4. During the first session of Congress under the Federal Constitution, sixteen amendments to that instrument were agreed to, ten of which were subsequently ratified by the States, and now form a part of the great compact.

5. For details of the history, biography, scenery, relics, and traditions of the War for Independence, see *Lossing's Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution*.

QUESTIONS.—10. What was done with the Federal Constitution? What important acts were done according to its provisions? What was the crowning act of the War for Independence?



INAUGURATION OF WASHINGTON.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CONFEDERATION.

SECTION I.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.
1789—1797.

1. WHEN the *Constitution*¹ had received the approval of the people and was made the supreme law of the Republic, all minds and hearts were turned toward Washington as



GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

the best man to perform the responsible duties of chief magistrate of the nation. He was chosen [April 6, 1789] President of the United States by the unanimous vote of the electors,² and John Adams was made Vice-President.

1. This instrument, in language and general arrangement, is the work of Gouverneur Morris, into whose hands the convention of 1787 placed the crude materials which had been adopted at various times during the session. Gouverneur Morris was born near New York, in 1752. He was a lawyer, and active in public life. In 1792 he was appointed minister to France, and after his return he was a legislator for many years. He died in 1816.

2. These are men elected by the people in the various States, to meet and choose a President and Vice-President of the United States. Their number is equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the several States are entitled. So the people do not vote directly for the Chief Magistrate. Formerly, the man who received the highest number of votes was declared to be President, and he who re-

QUESTIONS.—1. What was done when the Constitution was adopted? What can you tell of the first President, and his inauguration?

Election and inauguration of Washington.

Organization of the government.

Washington came from Mount Vernon, and was greeted with ovations by the people throughout his whole journey. On the 30th of April, he appeared upon the street-gallery of the old City Hall¹ in New York, and there, in the presence of an immense concourse of people, the oath of office was administered to him by Chancellor Livingston.² After delivering an impressive address to the members of both Houses of Congress, the President and the representatives of the people went in solemn procession to St. Paul's Church, and there invoked the blessings of the Supreme Ruler upon the new government just inaugurated.



WASHINGTON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

2. Never were men called upon to perform duties of greater responsibility than those which demanded the consideration of Washington and his compeers. The first session³ was chiefly occupied in the organization of the new government, and in the elaborating of schemes for the future prosperity of the Republic. The first efforts of Congress were directed to the arrangement of a system of revenues,⁴ to adjust and regulate the wretched financial affairs of the country. Three executive departments—Treasury, War, and Foreign Affairs—were created, the heads of which were to be styled secretaries, instead of ministers, as in Europe. These the President might appoint or dismiss with the concurrence of the Senate. They were to constitute a cabinet council, always ready for consultation with

the President, on public affairs, and bound to give him their opinions in writing when required.

3. A national judiciary was established, consisting of a Supreme Court,

ceived the next highest number was proclaimed Vice-President. Now these are voted for as distinct candidates for separate offices.

1. It stood on the site of the present Custom House, corner of Wall and Broad-streets. In the picture on the preceding page, a correct representation of its street-gallery is given.

2. One of the committee [verse 10, p. 202] to draft the Declaration of Independence. He was born in New York in 1747, became a lawyer, and was always an active public man. He was minister to France in 1801, when he purchased Louisiana for the United States. See verse 2, page 273. He died in 1813.

3. Members of the House of Representatives are elected to seats for two years, and they hold two sessions or sittings during that time. Each full term is called a *Congress*. Senators are elected by the State Legislatures to serve six years.

4. Tonnage duties were levied, and also a tariff, or duties upon foreign goods. These duties were made favorable to American shipping.

QUESTIONS.—2. What responsibilities were laid upon our first federal officers? What was done by the first federal Congress? 3. What can you tell of a national Judiciary? What was done with the Constitution? What appointments did Washington make?

The judiciary and revenue systems.

Admission of Vermont.

having one chief justice¹ and five associate justices;² and also Circuit and District Courts, which had jurisdiction over certain specified cases. After a session of almost six months, Congress adjourned [Sept. 29, 1789], and Washington, having appointed his cabinet council,³ made a brief tour through the northern and eastern States to make himself better acquainted with the people and their resources.

4. The second session of the first Congress commenced in January, 1790, when Hamilton⁴ made some of those able financial reports, which established the general line of national policy for more than twenty years. On his recommendation, the general government assumed the public foreign and domestic debt, incurred by the late war, and also the State debts contracted during that period.⁵ A system of revenue from imposts and internal excise, proposed by Hamilton, was adopted; and an act was passed making the District of Columbia⁶ the permanent seat of the Federal government, after the lapse of ten years from that date.

5. A third session commenced in December, 1790, and before its close, measures were adopted which laid the foundations of public credit and national prosperity deep and abiding. North Carolina [Nov. 21, 1789], and Rhode Island [May 29, 1790], had already become members of the confederacy, by adopting the Constitution;⁷ and during this session, Vermont⁸ was admitted [Feb. 18, 1791] as a sovereign State. Settlements were now



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

1 John Jay [verse 12, p. 268] of New York, one of the most active and acute lawyers in the country, was appointed the first chief justice of the United States, and Edmund Randolph, of Virginia, was made attorney-general. Randolph succeeded Patrick Henry as Governor of Virginia in 1786, and was very active in the Convention of 1787. Verse 9, page 161. He succeeded Jefferson as Secretary of State, and died in 1813.



GENERAL KNOX.

2 John Rutledge [verse 2, p. 239] of S. C.; James Wilson of Penn.; William Cushing of Mass.; Robert H. Harrison of Md.; and John Blair of Va.

3 Alexander Hamilton was appointed Secretary of the Treasury; Henry Knox, Secretary of War; and Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of Foreign Affairs. Jefferson was then United States minister at the court of France, and did not enter upon his duties until March, 1790. The office of Secretary of the Navy was not created until the presidency of Mr. Adams. Naval affairs were under the control of the Secretary of War. General Knox was one of the most efficient officers of the Revolution, having, from the beginning, the chief command of the artillery. He was born in Boston in 1750, entered the army as captain of artillery, and rose to the rank of major-general. He resigned his secretaryship in 1794, and died in Maine in 1806.

4 Alexander Hamilton was born in the island of Nevis, one of the British West Indies, in 1757. He joined the people of New York in their revolutionary movements, while yet a student of King's (now Columbia) college. He was Washington's secretary, and was always distinguished as a fine writer and accomplished soldier. He was truly one of the great men of our history. He was forced into a personal combat with Aaron Burr, which cost him his life, in July, 1804. His widow, daughter of General Schuyler, died on the 9th of November, 1854, at the age of ninety-seven years.

5. Verse 8, page 269. Government assumed the payment of State debts to the amount of \$ 1,700,000.

6. Verse 6, page

7. Vermont was originally called the *New Hampshire Grants*, and was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. In 1777, the people met in convention, and proclaimed the territories an independent State. After purchasing the claims of New York for \$30,000, it was admitted into the Union.

8. Verse 9, page 161.

QUESTIONS.—4. What financial arrangements were made? What in reference to the future seat of government? 5. What three States were added to the Union? What settlements and territorial organizations were made?

The North-West Territory.

United States Bank.

Indian wars.

rapidly spreading beyond the Alleghanies,¹ and the subject of territorial organizations was pressed upon the consideration of Congress. Already the *North-Western Territory*, embracing the present States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, had been established [July, 1787], and Tennessee had been constituted [March 26, 1790] the *Territory South-West of the Ohio*.

6. Pursuant to the recommendation of Hamilton, a national financial agent, called the Bank of the United States,² was incorporated, and provision was made for the establishment of a mint³ for national coinage.

7. For several years after the peace of 1783,⁴ the British held possession of western posts belonging to the United States, and the fact that they were continually exciting the Indians against the American people, caused a prevalent belief that the British government yet hoped for an opportunity to bring the new Republic back to colonial dependence. In the Summer of 1790, the Indians continued hostilities, and General Harmer was sent into the country north of the present Cincinnati, with quite a strong force, to desolate their villages and crops as Sullivan did those of the Senecas in 1779.⁵ In this he succeeded, but in two battles [Oct. 17 and 22, 1790], near the present village of Fort Wayne, in Indiana, he was defeated, with considerable loss. A year afterward, General St. Clair,⁶ then governor of the North-West Territory, marched into the Indian country, with two thousand men. While in camp near the northern line of Darke county, Ohio, on the border of Indiana, he was surprised and defeated [Nov. 4, 1791] by the Indians, with a loss of about six hundred men.

8. General Wayne⁷ was appointed to succeed St. Clair in military command, and he marched into the Indian country in the Autumn of 1793. He spent the Winter near the place of St. Clair's defeat, where he built Fort Recovery, and the following Summer [1794] he pushed forward to the Maumee river, and built Fort Defiance.⁸ He went down that stream with three thousand men, and not far from the present Maumee City,⁹ he fought and defeated [Aug. 20] the Indians.¹⁰ He then laid waste their country; and the following year the chiefs of the Western tribes met [Aug. 3, 1795] commissioners of the United States, at Greenville,¹¹ made a treaty of peace,¹² and ceded to the

1. The first census, or enumeration of the inhabitants of the United States, was completed in 1791. The number of all sexes and color was 3,929,000. The number of slaves was 695,000.

2. At that time the whole banking capital in the United States was only \$2,000,000, invested in the *Bank of North America* at Philadelphia [verse 3, page 248], the *Bank of New York*, in New York city, and the *Bank of Massachusetts*, in Boston. The Bank of the United States began its operations in corporate form, in February, 1791, with a capital of \$10,000,000.

3. The first mint went into operation in 1792, in Philadelphia, and remained the sole issuer of coin, in the United States, until 1835, when a branch was established in each of the States of Georgia, North Carolina, and Louisiana.

4. Verse 3, page 258.

5. Verse 14, page 276.

6. Verse 18, page 219.

7. Verse 11, page 234.

8. At the junction of the Au Glaize with the Maumee river, in the south-east part of Williams county, Ohio.

9. In the town of Waynesfield. The British then occupied a fort at the Maumee rapids, near by.

10. Verse 13, page 15.

11. In Darke county, Ohio. There Wayne built a fort in 1793.

12. Verse 9, page 14.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of a bank and mint? 7. What caused ill-feeling toward the British? How were Indians influenced, and what did they do? What battles and defeats occurred? 8. What can you tell of Wayne's expedition into the Indian country? What was the result?

Federalists and Republicans.

French Revolution.

Troubles with the French minister.

latter a large tract of land in the present States of Michigan¹ and Indiana. After that, the United States had very little trouble with the Western Indians, until just before the breaking out of the war of 1812-'15.²

9. During the second session of the second Congress, party spirit became rampant among the people, as well as in the national legislature. Hamilton and Jefferson, the heads of distinct departments³ in Washington's cabinet, differed materially concerning important public measures, and then were drawn those lines of party distinction, known as *Federalist* and *Republican*,⁴ which continued for a quarter of a century. During the Summer of 1792, very little of public interest occurred, except the admission [June 1, 1792] of Kentucky⁵ into the Union, but the marshaling of forces for the presidential election. In the Autumn, Washington and Adams were re-elected by large majorities, yet the Republican party were daily gaining strength. A bloody revolution was in progress in France. The people there had abolished monarchy, and murdered their king, and the new Republic in name (a political chaos in reality), sent M. Genet as its minister to the United States, to obtain the co-operation of the American people. The French Republic had declared war against England, Spain, and Holland, and needed transatlantic assistance. Remembering the recent alliance,⁶ and sympathizing with all efforts for popular freedom, the Republican party here, and many of the Federalists, received Genet⁷ with open arms, and espoused his cause.

10. Genet's zeal outstripped his prudence, and defeated his plans. Without waiting for an expression of opinions or intentions from the government of the United States, he began to fit out privateers⁸ in our ports, to depredate upon English, Dutch, and Spanish property;⁹ and when Washington prudently issued [May 9, 1793] a proclamation, declaring it to be the duty and the interest of the people of the United States to preserve a strict neutrality toward the contending powers of Europe, Genet persisted, and tried to excite hostility between our people and their government. Washington finally requested [July], and obtained his recall, and Fouchet, who succeeded him [1794], was instructed to assure the President that the French government disapproved of Genet's¹⁰ conduct.

1. The British held possession of Detroit, and nearly all Michigan, until 1796. See verse 12, page 218.

2. Verse 5, page 280.

3. Verse 2, page 164.

4. The *Federalists* were those who favored the concentration of great power in the Federal Government. The *Republicans* were for diffusing power among the people.

5. Kentucky, which had been settled chiefly by Virginians, and was claimed as a part of the territory of that State, was now erected into a sovereign member of the confederation. Its first settlement was at Boonesboro, by Daniel Boone, in 1775. He and Clarke (verse 13, page 235) were co-workers against the British and Indians, during the Revolution, and by extraordinary exertions, they redeemed a great portion of Kentucky from savage rule. Yet Boone died in 1820, at almost ninety years of age [note 4, page 235], without owning sufficient land for a burial-place in all Kentucky. The legislature of Missouri gave him ten thousand acres of wild land.

6. Verse 26, page 223.

7. He arrived at Charleston in April, 1793, and then prepared for future operations.

8. Note 4, page 198.

9. These cruisers brought captured vessels into our ports, and French consuls actually held courts of admiralty, and authorized the sale of the prizes; and all this was done before Genet was recognized as a minister, by the American government.

10. Edward Charles Genet was the son of a distinguished public man in France. He married a daughter of Governor George Clinton [note 3, page 260], and remained in the United States. He died at Greenbush,

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of party spirit? What special occurrence took place in 1792? What of the revolution in France, and its influence in America? What happened? 10. What can you tell of the French minister, Genet? What did his conduct lead to?

11. A law passed in 1791, which imposed duties on domestic distilled liquors, was very unpopular; and when, in 1794, officers were sent to enforce it among the Dutch inhabitants of western Pennsylvania, they were resisted by the people in arms.¹ After issuing two proclamations [Aug. 7, Sept. 25] without effect, the President sent [Oct.] a large body of militia, under General Henry Lee,² to enforce obedience. This last argument was effectual. This event is known in history as the *Whisky Insurrection*.

12. While these internal commotions were disturbing the public tranquillity, a bitter feeling was growing up between the American and British governments. Each accused the other of infractions of the treaty of 1783,³ and the



JOHN JAY.

disputes daily assuming a more bitter tone, threatened to involve the two nations in another war. John Jay⁴ was appointed [April 19, 1794] an envoy extraordinary⁵ to the British court, to adjust all matters in dispute. The Americans complained that no indemnification had been made for negroes carried away at the close of the Revolution;⁶ that the British held military posts on their frontiers, contrary to the treaty;⁷ that British emissaries had excited the hostility of the Indians,⁸ and that to retaliate on France, the English had captured our neutral vessels, and impressed our seamen⁹ into the British service. The British complained that stipulations concerning the property of Loyalists,¹⁰ and also in relation to debts contracted in England before the close of the war, had not been complied with.

13. Mr. Jay negotiated a treaty which was not very satisfactory. It provided for the collection of debts here, by British creditors, which had been contracted before the Revolution, but it procured no redress for those who had lost negroes. It secured indemnity for unlawful captures on the seas, and the evacuation of the forts on the frontiers, by the 1st of June, 1796. The treaty gave rise to violent debates in Congress, and in State legislatures, but

near Albany, in 1834, aged seventy-two years. He left a large quantity of valuable papers, which a member of his family is now [1857] preparing for publication.

1. The insurrection became general in all the western counties, and in the vicinity of Pittsburg many outrages were committed. Buildings were burned, mails were robbed, and government officers were insulted and abused. It was estimated that at one time the insurgents numbered seven thousand.

2. Note 3, page 251.

3. Verse 3, page 253.
4. John Jay was a descendant of a Huguenot family [verse 12, page 38], and was born in the city of New York in 1745. He was early in the ranks of active patriots, and rendered very important services during the Revolution. He retired from public life in 1801, and died in 1829, at the age of eighty-four years. His residence was at Bedford, Westchester county, New York.

5. A minister appointed for a special purpose.

6. During the last two years of the war in the Carolinas and Georgia, and at the final evacuation, the British plundered many plantations, and sold the negroes in the West Indies.

7. Verse 3, page 258.

8. Verse 7, page 266.

9. This practice was one of the causes which finally produced a war between the two nations, in 1812.

10. The Loyalists endeavored to regain their confiscated estates, and also indemnity for their losses during the war. The British government paid to these sufferers more than \$15,000,000.

QUESTIONS.—11. What law was unpopular? What occurred in western Pennsylvania? 12. What caused animosity between the governments of Great Britain and the United States? What was done to remove the feeling? What were the complaints? 13. What treaty was negotiated? What terms were agreed to? How was it received by the Americans? What other treaty was negotiated?

Algerine pirates.

Close of Washington's administration.

Election of Adams.

was ratified by the Senate on the 24th of June, 1795.¹ In October following, a treaty was concluded with Spain, by which boundaries between the Spanish territories of Louisiana and Florida, and the United States, were defined.

14. American commerce now began to find its way into the Mediterranean, but was there met by Algerine pirates, who seized the merchandise, and held the seamen in captivity, in order to procure ransom money. These depredations gave rise to efforts to organize a navy; and in 1794, Congress appropriated almost seven hundred thousand dollars for the purpose. But the United States were compelled to make a treaty [Nov. 28, 1795] of peace with the Dey of Algiers, by which an annual tribute was given for the redemption of captives, in accordance with the long-established usage of European nations.²

15. The administration of Washington now drew to a close. It had been one of vast importance and incessant action. All disputes with foreign nations, except France,³ had been adjusted; government credit was established, and the nation was highly prosperous.⁴ The last year of his administration was signalized by the admission [June, 1796] of Tennessee into the Union of States, making the number of confederated republics, sixteen.

16. And now came the first great struggle for ascendancy, between the Federalists and the Republicans.⁵ The only man on whom the nation could unite was about to retire from public life. The Federalists nominated John Adams, and the Republicans, Thomas Jefferson, for the Presidency. The contest was fierce, and resulted in the election of Adams, with Jefferson for Vice-President. It was a victory to both parties. On the 4th of March following [1797], Mr. Adams was inaugurated, and Washington, who had already issued [Sept., 1796], a *Farewell Address* to his countrymen, full of wisdom and patriotism, retired to the quietude of Mount Vernon, from which he was never again enticed to the performance of public duties.

1. Great excitement succeeded. In several cities mobs threatened personal violence to the supporters of the treaty. Mr. Jay was burned in effigy [note 5, page 176], Mr. Hamilton was stoned at a public meeting, and the British minister in Philadelphia was insulted. But the treaty resulted in good.

2. Between the years 1785 and 1793, the Algerine pirates captured and carried into Algiers, fifteen American vessels, used the property, and made one hundred and eighty officers and seamen, slaves of the most revolting kind. In 1795, the United States agreed, by treaty, to pay \$800,000 for captives, then alive, and in addition, to make the dey, or governor, a present of a frigate, worth \$100,000. An annual tribute of \$3,000, in maritime stores, was also to be paid. This was complied with until the breaking out of the war of 1812.

3. The French government was highly displeased because of the treaty made with England by Mr. Jay, and even adopted hostile measures toward the United States.

4. Commerce had wonderfully expanded. The exports had, in five years, increased from \$19,000,000 to more than \$56,000,000, and the imports in about the same ratio.

5. Note 4, page 237.

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of American commerce and Algerine pirates? 15. What was the condition of the United States in 1796? 16. What signal political event now occurred? What did Washington do?

Troubles with France.

American ministers in France.

SECTION II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. [1797-1801.]



ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. President Adams¹ adopted the federal cabinet council left by Washington,² as his own. The unpleasant relations existing between France and the United States received the earliest and most earnest attention of the new administration, and by proclamation the President convened an extraordinary Congress on the 15th of May, 1797. In the mean while, our government had been insulted by the French minister here, and by the French Directory.³ The American minister, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, had been ordered to leave France, and that government had authorized depredations upon our commerce.

2. Congress appointed [July] three envoys,⁴ with Pinckney at their head, to proceed to France, and adjust all difficulties. They were refused an audience [October] with the Directory, unless they should first pay a large sum of money into the French treasury. The demand was indignantly refused.⁵ The two Federalist envoys (Marshall and Pinckney) were ordered out of the country, while Mr. Gerry, who was a Republican, and whose party sympathized with the measures of France, was allowed to remain.

3. Perceiving the futility of further attempts at negotiation, Congress,

1. John Adams was born in Massachusetts in 1735, and, with Hancock and others, early took part in the popular movement at Boston. He was a signer of the Declaration of Independence, and for a long time a representative of the United States in Europe. He died on the 4th of July [verse 4, page 306], 1826.

2. Timothy Pickering, Secretary of State; Oliver Wolcott, Secretary of the Treasury; James M. Henry, Secretary of War; and Charles Lee, Attorney General. Washington's first cabinet had all resigned during the early part of his second term of office (the President is elected for four years), and the above named gentlemen were appointed during 1795 and 1796.

3. The Republican government of France was administered by a council called the *Directory*. It was composed of five members, and ruled in connection with two representative bodies, called, respectively, the *Council of Ancients*, and the *Council of Five Hundred*. The *Directory* was the head, or executive power of the government.

4. C. C. Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry, and John Marshall. Pinckney was an active patriot in South Carolina during the Revolution; Gerry was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; and Marshall had been an active patriot and soldier. The latter was afterward Chief-Justice of the United States, and administered the oath to several Presidents.

5. These overtures were made by unofficial agents employed by the French Directory. It was on this occasion that Pinckney uttered that noble sentiment—"Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute."

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of the beginning of President Adams's administration? What were the relations between France and the United States? 2. What occurred between the Government of the United States and France? How were United States ministers treated?

Preparations for war with France.	Peace.	Death of Washington.
-----------------------------------	--------	----------------------

during its next session,¹ and the country generally began to prepare for war. Quite a large standing army was authorized [May, 1798], and as Washington approved of the measure, he was appointed [July] its commander-in-chief.² A naval armament, and the capture of French vessels of war were authorized; and a naval department, with Benjamin Stoddart of Maryland, at its head, was created. Hostilities even commenced on the ocean, and a vessel of each nation suffered capture,³ but the army was not summoned to the field.

4. The dignified and decided measures⁴ adopted by the United States, humbled the proud tone of the French Directory, and that body made overtures for a peaceful adjustment of difficulties. President Adams immediately appointed [Feb. 26, 1799] three envoys⁵ to proceed to France and negotiate for peace, but when they arrived the weak Directory was no more. The government was in the hands of Napoleon Bonaparte [Nov., 1799], as First Consul,⁶ whose audacity and energy now saved France from anarchy and utter ruin. He promptly received the United States ambassadors, concluded a treaty [Sept. 30, 1800], and gave such assurances of friendly feelings, that, on the return of the ministers, the provisional army of the United States was disbanded. Its illustrious commander-in-chief had already been removed by death.

5. Washington died at Mount Vernon on the 14th of December, 1799, when almost sixty-eight years of age. No event, since the foundation of the government, had made such an impression on the public mind. The national grief was sincere, and party spirit was hushed into silence at his grave. All hearts united in homage to the memory of him who was properly regarded as the Father of his Country. Impressive funeral ceremonies were observed by Congress, and throughout the country. General Henry Lee,⁷ of Virginia, delivered [Dec. 26, 1799] an eloquent funeral oration before the national Legislature, and the recommendation of that body for the people of the United States to wear crape on their left arms for thirty days, was generally complied with.⁸ The whole nation put on tokens of mourning. The death of Wash-

1. Convened in November, 1797.

2. General Alexander Hamilton was appointed his lieutenant, and was the immediate and active commander-in-chief. It was hardly expected that Washington would engage in actual service.

3. The United States frigate *Constellation*, captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*, in February, 1799. That frigate had already taken the American schooner *Retaliation*. On the 1st of February, 1800, the *Constellation* had an action with the French frigate *La Vengeance*, but escaped capture after a loss of one hundred and sixty men, killed and wounded.

4. Two unpopular domestic measures were adopted in the summer of 1798, known as the *Alien and Sedition* laws. The first authorized the President to expel from the country any alien (not a citizen) who should be suspected of conspiring against the republic. It was computed that there were more than thirty thousand Frenchmen in the United States. The Sedition law authorized the suppression of publications calculated to weaken the authority of the government. These were unpopular, because they might lead to great abuses.

5. W. V. Murray, Oliver Ellsworth, and Patrick Henry. Mr. Henry declined, and William R. Davie [note 2, page 244], of North Carolina, took his place.

6. Bonaparte, Cambaceres, and the Abbé Sieyès, became the ruling power of France, with the title of Consuls, after the first had overthrown the Directory. Bonaparte was the First Consul, and was, in fact, an autocrat, or one who rules by his own will.

7. Verses 9, page 251, and 11, page 268.

8. Congress also resolved to erect a mausoleum, or monument, at Washington city, to his memory, but the resolution has never been carried into effect. A magnificent one is now in course of erection there, to be paid for by individual subscriptions.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did Congress do? What preparations for war were made? 4. What effect did these measures have? What was done by Congress? What changes had occurred in France? and what results followed? 5. What can you tell of the death of Washington? What public honors were awarded? What of public feeling?

Seat of government at Washington city.

Election of Jefferson.

ington made a profound impression in Europe, also. To the people there, who were aspiring for freedom, it seemed as if a bright star had disappeared from the firmament of their hopes.

6. Very little of general interest occurred during the remainder of Mr. Adams's administration, except the removal of the seat of the Federal Government to the District of Columbia,¹ during the summer of 1800; the admission [May, 1800] of the country between the western frontier of Georgia and the Mississippi river, into the Union, as the *Mississippi Territory*, and the election of a new President of the United States. Now, again, came a severe

struggle between the Federalists and Republicans, for political power. The former nominated Mr. Adams and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney,² for President; the latter nominated Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr,³ for the same office. In consequence of dissensions among Federalist leaders, and the rapid development of ultra-democratic ideas among the people, the Republican party was successful. Jefferson and Burr had the same number of votes. The former was afterward elected President by the House of Representatives.⁴



JEFFERSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

SECTION III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1801-1809.]

1. Mr. Jefferson⁵ was inaugurated [March 4, 1801] in the new capitol, at Washington city. The official oath was administered by his revolutionary compatriot, John Marshall, then Chief-Justice of the United States. He retained, for a short time, Mr. Adams's Secretaries of the Treasury and Navy,⁶ but called

1. Verse 4, page 235. A tract ten miles square, on each side of the Potomac, and ceded to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, in 1790. The city of Washington was laid out there in 1791, and the erection of the Capitol was commenced in 1793.

2. Verse 1, page 270.

3. Verse 6, page 275.

4. When the electors counted the votes, Jefferson and Burr had an equal number. The choice was therefore transferred to the House of Representatives, according to the provisions of the Constitution. The choice finally fell upon Mr. Jefferson, after thirty-five ballottings; and Mr. Burr was proclaimed Vice-President. During 1800, another enumeration of the inhabitants of the Union was made. The population was then 5,319,762, an increase of 1,401,000 in ten years. The revenue, which amounted to \$4,771,000 in 1790, amounted to almost \$13,000,000 in 1800.

5. Thomas Jefferson was born in Virginia in 1743. He was a signer of the Declaration of Independence [verse 10, page 202], Governor of Virginia, and a foreign minister. He retired from public life in 1809, and died on the 4th of July [verse 4, page 306], 1826.

6. Samuel Dexter, and Benjamin Stoddart.

QUESTIONS.—6. What public events occurred during the year 1800? 1. What of Jefferson's inauguration? What of his appointments to office?

Purchase of Louisiana.

War with Tripoli.

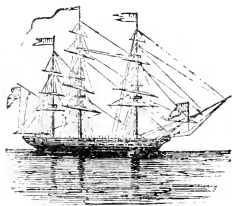
Republicans to fill the other seats in his cabinet.¹ Mr. Jefferson made many removals from official stations.

2. Jefferson's administration was signalized, at the beginning, by the repeal of the act imposing internal duties,² and other obnoxious and unpopular laws. Vigor and enlightened views marked his course; and even his political opponents confessed his forecast and wisdom in many things. During his first term, one State and two Territories were added to the confederacy. A part of the North-western Territory³ became a State, under the name of Ohio,⁴ in the autumn of 1802; and in the spring of 1803, Louisiana was purchased [April, 1803] of France,⁵ for fifteen millions of dollars. Out of it two Territories were formed, called, respectively, the *Territory of New Orleans*, and the *District of Louisiana*.

3. The insolence of the piratical powers on the southern shores of the Mediterranean⁶ became unendurable;⁷ and the United States government

now determined to cease paying tribute to them. The Bashaw of Tripoli declared war [June 10, 1801] against the United States; and Captain Bainbridge

was ordered to cruise in the Mediterranean to protect American commerce. In 1803, Commodore Preble was sent thither to humble the pirates. After bringing the Emperor



UNITED STATES FRIGATE.



COMMODORE BAINBRIDGE.

1. James Madison, Secretary of State; Henry Dearborn, Secretary of War; Levi Lincoln, Attorney-General. Before the meeting of Congress, in December, he appointed Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury, and Robert Smith, Secretary of the Navy. They were both Republicans.

2. Verse 11, page 168.

3. Verse 5, page 165.

4. No section of the Union had increased, in population and resources, so rapidly as Ohio. It was estimated that, during the year 1788, full twenty thousand men, women, and children, had passed down the Ohio river, to become settlers in the North-western Territory. When Ohio was admitted as a State, it contained a population of about 72,000. When, in 1803, Ohio was formed into a Territory, the residue of the North-west Territory remained as one until 1803, when the two Territories of *Indiana* and *Illinois* were formed.

5. In violation of a treaty made in the year 1765, the Spanish Governor of Louisiana closed the port of New Orleans in 1812. Great excitement prevailed throughout the western settlements; and a proposition was made in Congress, to take forcible possession of the territory. It was ascertained that, by a secret treaty, the country had been ceded to France, by Spain. Negotiations for its purchase were immediately opened with Napoleon, and the bargain was consummated in April, 1803. The United States took peaceable possession in the autumn of that year. It contained about 85,000 mixed inhabitants, and about 40,000 negro slaves. When this bargain was consummated, Napoleon said, prophetically, "This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States; and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

6. Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, in Africa. They are known as the *Barbary Powers*.

7. In September, 1800, Captain Bainbridge arrived at Algiers, in the frigate *George Washington*, with the annual tribute money [verse 14, page 239]. The dey, or governor, demanded the use of his vessel to carry an ambassador to Constantinople. Bainbridge remonstrated, when the dey haughtily observed, "You pay me tribute, by which you become my slaves, and therefore I have a right to order you, as I think proper." Bainbridge was obliged to comply, for the castle guns would not allow him to pass out of the harbor. He had the honor of first displaying the American flag before the ancient city of Constantinople. The Sultan regarded it as a favorable omen of future friendship, because his flag bore a *crescent* or new-moon, and the American, a group of *stars*.

QUESTIONS.—2. What signalized Jefferson's administration? What additions were made to the Union? 3. What occurred in relation to the pirates of the Mediterranean? What can you tell of an expedition against them?

Recapture of the *Philadelphia*.

Expedition under Eaton and Hamet.

of Morocco to terms, he appeared before Tripoli, with his squadron. One of his vessels (the *Philadelphia*), commanded by Bainbridge,¹ struck on a rock in the harbor, while reconnoitering, and was captured [Oct. 31, 1803] by the Tripolitans. The officers were treated as prisoners of war, but the crew were made slaves.



LIEUTENANT DECATUR.

4. Early the following year, Lieutenant Decatur,² with only seventy-six men, sailed into the harbor in the evening [Feb. 3, 1804]: and running alongside the *Philadelphia* (which lay moored near the castle, and guarded by a large number of Tripolitans), boarded her, killed or drove into the sea all of her turbaned defenders, set her on fire, and under cover of a heavy cannonade from the American squadron, escaped without losing a man.³ This bold act humbled and alarmed the bashaw;⁴ yet his capital withstood a heavy bombardment, and his gun-boats gallantly sustained a severe action [Aug. 3] with the American vessels.

5. Through the aid of Hamet Caramelli, brother of the reigning bashaw (or governor) of Tripoli, favorable terms of peace were secured the following year. The bashaw was a usurper, and Hamet, the rightful heir to the throne,⁵ was an exile in Egypt. He readily concerted with Captain William Eaton, American consul at Tunis, in a plan for humbling the bashaw, and obtaining his own restoration to rightful authority. Early in March, 1805, Eaton left Alexandria, with seventy United States seamen, accompanied by Hamet and his followers, and a few Egyptian troops. They made a journey of a thousand miles across the Libyan desert, and on the 27th of April, captured Derne, a Tripolitan city on the Mediterranean. Three weeks later [May 18], they had a successful battle with Tripolitan troops; and on the 18th of June they again defeated the forces of the bashaw, and pressed forward toward Tripoli. The terrified ruler had made terms of peace [June 3, 1805] with Colonel Tobias Lear, American consul-general⁶ in the



MOHAMMEDAN SOLDIER.

1. William Bainbridge was born in New Jersey, in 1774. He was captain of a merchant vessel at the age of nineteen years, and entered the naval service in 1798. He was distinguished during the second War for Independence [verse 6, page 250] and died in 1833.

2. Stephen Decatur was born in Maryland, in 1779. He entered the navy at the age of nineteen years. After his last cruise in the Mediterranean, he superintended the building of gun-boats. He rose to the rank of commodore, and during the second War for Independence [verse 6, page 250] he was distinguished for his skill and bravery. He afterward humbled the Barbary Powers [note 6, page 273]; and after returning home, he was killed in a duel with Commodore Barron, in March, 1820.

3. This act greatly enraged the Tripolitans, and the American prisoners were treated with the utmost severity.

4. Bashaw, or Pacha [Pas-shaw] is the title of the governor of a province, or town, in the dominions of the Sultan (or emperor) of Turkey. These Barbary States are all under the Sultan's rule.

5. The bashaw, who was a third son, had murdered his father and elder brother, and compelled Hamet to fly for his life. With quite a large number of followers he fled into Egypt.

6. A consul is an officer appointed by a government to reside in a foreign port, to have a general super-

QUESTIONS.—4. What bold act was performed in the harbor of Tripoli? What were its effects? 5. What remarkable expedition was undertaken? What did it accomplish?

Aaron Burr in the West.

His military scheme.

Trial for treason, and acquittal.

Mediterranean, and thus disappointed the laudable ambition of Eaton, and the hopes of Hamet.¹

6. The great West was now rapidly filling with adventurers, and the materials for new States were gathering. Michigan was erected into a Territory [1805], and all along the Mississippi, extensive settlements were commencing. Taking advantage of the restless spirit of these settlers, and the general impression that the Spanish population of Louisiana would not quietly submit to the jurisdiction of the United States,² Aaron Burr sought to make them subservient to his own ambitious purposes. His murder [July 12, 1804] of Hamilton in a duel,³ made him everywhere detested; and being superseded in the office of Vice-President of the United States by George Clinton,⁴ he sought a new field for achieving personal aggrandizement. In the Summer of 1806, he was active in the organization of a military expedition in the West, and the secrecy with which it was carried on, excited the suspicions of the general government. He was suspected of a design to dismember the Union, and to establish an independent



AARON BURR.

empire west of the Alleghanies, with himself at the head. He was arrested in the Mississippi Territory⁵ in February, 1807, tried at Richmond, in Virginia, on a charge of treason, and acquitted. The testimony showed that his probable design was an invasion of Mexican provinces, and there to establish an independent government.⁶

7. The year 1807, is remarkable in American history, as the era of the commencement of successful steamboat navigation. Experiments in



ROBERT FULTON.

vision of the commercial interests of his country there. In some cases they have powers almost equal to a minister. Such is the case with consuls within the ports of Mohammedan countries. The word *consul* was applied to Napoleon [verse 4, page 271] in the ancient Roman sense. It was the title of the chief magistrate of Rome during the Republic.

1. Hamet afterward came to the United States, and applied to Congress for a remuneration for his services in favor of the Americans. During 1853 a descendant of Hamet was here on the same errand. Both were unsuccessful.

2. A political quarrel led to fatal results. Burr had been informed of some remarks made by Hamilton, in public, derogatory to his character, and he demanded a retraction. Hamilton considered his demand unreasonable, and refused compliance. Burr challenged him to fight, and Hamilton reluctantly met him on the west side of the Hudson, near Hoboken, where they fought with pistols. Hamilton discharged his weapon in the air, but Burr took fatal aim, and his antagonist fell. Hamilton died the next day.

3. Jefferson's second election took place in the Autumn of 1805, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-President in the place of Burr.

4. He was arrested by Lieutenant (afterward major-general) Gaines, near Fort Stoddart, on the Tombigbee river, in the present State of Alabama.

5. Aaron Burr was born in New-Jersey, in 1756. In his twentieth year he joined the continental army, and accompanied Arnold [verse 21, page 19] in his expedition against Quebec. Ill health compelled him to leave the army in 1779, and he became a distinguished lawyer and active public man. He died on Staten Island, near New York, in 1836.

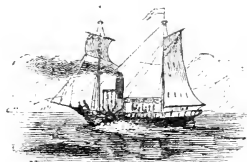
QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of settlements west of the Alleghanies? What notable movement was made in the Mississippi Valley? Who was at the head of it? and what was the result?

Fulton and steam navigation.

Condition of Europe.

Orders and decrees.

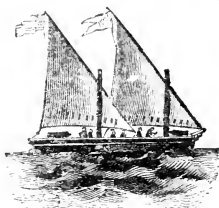
that direction had been made in this country many years before, but it was reserved for Robert Fulton to bear the honor of success. He spent many years in France, in the study of the subject, and through the influence and pecuniary aid of Robert R. Livingston,¹ he was enabled to construct a steamboat, and to make a voyage on the Hudson, from New York to Albany, "against wind and tide," in thirty-six hours.² He took out his first patent in 1809. Within a little more than forty years, the vast operations connected with steamboat navigation have been brought into existence.



FULTON'S STEAMBOAT.

8. The progress of events in Europe now began to disturb the amicable relations which had subsisted between the two governments of the United States and Great Britain, since the ratification of Jay's treaty.³ Napoleon Bonaparte was upon the throne of France as emperor, and in 1806 he was king of Italy, and his three brothers were made ruling monarchs. Although England had joined the continental powers against him [1803], in order to crush the democratic revolution commenced in France, all Europe was yet trembling in his presence. But the United States, by maintaining a strict neutrality, neither coveted his favors nor feared his power; at the same time American shipping being allowed free intercourse between the English and French ports, enjoyed the vast advantages of a profitable carrying trade between them.

9. But the belligerents, in their anxiety to damage each other, adopted measures at once destructive to American commerce, and in violation of the most sacred rights of the United States. In this matter, Great Britain took the lead. By an order in council,⁴ that government declared [May 16, 1806] the whole coast of Europe, from the Elbe in Germany, to Brest, in France, to be in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated by issuing [Nov. 21] a decree at Berlin, which declared all the ports of the British islands to be in a state of blockade.⁵ Great Britain, by another order [Jan. 7, 1807] prohibited all coast trade with France, and thus the gamblers played with the world's peace and prosperity. American vessels were seized by both English and French



A FELUCCA GUN-BOAT.

1. Note 2, page 264.

2. Robert Fulton was born in Pennsylvania, and was a student of West, the great painter, for several years. He had more genius for mechanics, than for the fine arts, and he turned his efforts in that direction. He died in 1815, soon after launching a steamship of war, at the age of fifty years. 3. Verse 12, page 268.

4. The British privy council consists of an indefinite number of gentlemen, chosen by the sovereign, and having no direct connection with the cabinet ministers. The sovereign may, under the advice of this council, issue orders of proclamation which, if not contrary to existing laws, are binding upon the subjects. These are for temporary purposes, and are called *Orders in Council*.

5. Napoleon intended this as a blow against England's maritime superiority, and it was the beginning of what he termed the *Continental System*, the chief object of which was the ruin of Great Britain.

QUESTIONS.—7. For what was the year 1807 remarkable? What can you tell of steam navigation? 8. What of the progress of events in Europe? What can you tell of Napoleon Bonaparte? How did events in Europe affect American commerce? 9. What evil did the warring parties do? What European measures affected the commerce of the United States? What was the position of the United States?

Excitement against the British.

The *Leopard* and *Chesapeake*.

Embargo act.

cruisers, and American commerce dwindled to a domestic coast trade.¹ The United States lacked a navy to protect her commerce on the ocean, and the swarms of gun-boats,² which Congress had authorized as a substitute, were quite inefficient, even as a coast-guard.

10. The American merchants, and all in their interest, so deeply injured by the "orders" and "decrees"³ of the warring monarchs, demanded redress of grievances. Great excitement prevailed throughout the country, and the most bitter feeling was beginning to be felt against Great Britain. This was increased by her haughty assertion and offensive practice of the doctrine that she had the right to search American vessels for suspected deserters from the British navy,⁴ and to carry away the suspected without hinderance. This right was strenuously denied, and its policy vehemently condemned, because American seamen might be thus forced into the British service, under the pretense that they were deserters. Indeed, this had already happened.⁵

11. A crisis approached. Four seamen on board the United States frigate *Chesapeake*, were claimed as deserters from the British armed ship *Melampus*.⁶ They were demanded, but Commodore Barron, of the *Chesapeake*, refused to give them up. The *Chesapeake* left the coast of Virginia on a cruise on the 22d of June, 1807, and on the same day she was chased and attacked by the British frigate *Leopard*. Unsuspicious of danger and unprepared for an attack, Barron surrendered his vessel, after losing three men killed and eighteen wounded. The four men were then taken on board the *Leopard*, and the *Chesapeake* returned to Hampton roads.⁷ Investigation proved that three of the seamen (colored men) were native Americans, and that the fourth had been impressed into the British service, and had deserted.

12. This outrage aroused the nation and provoked retaliatory measures. The President issued a proclamation in July [1807], ordering all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States, immediately, and forbidding any to enter, until full satisfaction for the recent insult, and security against future aggressions should be made.⁸ In the meantime France and England

1. In May, 1806, James Monroe [verse 1, page 301] and William Pinckney, were appointed to assist in the negotiation of a treaty with Great Britain, concerning the rights of neutrals, the imprisonment of seamen, right of search, etc. A treaty was finally signed, but as it did not offer security to American vessels against the aggressions of British ships in searching them and carrying off seamen, Mr. Jefferson refused to submit it to the Senate, and rejected it. The Federalists condemned the course of the President, but subsequent events proved his wisdom.

2. These were small sailing vessels, having a cannon at the bow and stern, and manned by full armed men for the purpose of boarding other vessels.

3. Verse 9, page 276.

4. England maintains the doctrine that a British subject can never become an alien. At the time in question, she held that she had a right to take her native born subjects wherever found, and place them in the army or navy, even though, by legal process, they had become citizens of another nation. Our laws give equal protection to native and adopted citizens, and would not allow Great Britain to exercise her asserted privilege toward a Briton who had become a citizen of the United States.

5. During nine months in the years 1796 and 1797, Mr. King, the American minister in London, had made application for the release of 271 seamen (a greater portion of whom were Americans), who had been seized on the false charge of being deserters, and pressed into the British service.

6. A small British squadron, of which the *Melampus* was one, was lying in Linn Haven bay, at the mouth of the Chesapeake bay, at this time. It was commanded by Admiral Berkeley.

7. Note 1, page 234.

8. The President forwarded instructions to Mr. Monroe, our minister in England, to demand immediate satisfaction for the outrage, and security against similar events in future. Great Britain thereupon dispatched an envoy extraordinary to the United States, to settle the difficulty in question. The envoy would not enter into negotiations until the President should withdraw his proclamation, and so the matter

The "orders" and "decrees." Repeal of Embargo act. Election and inauguration of Madison.

continued to play their desperate commercial game, unmindful of the interests of other nations, or the obligations of international law. A British order in council¹ was issued on the 11th of November, 1807, forbidding neutral nations to trade with France or her allies, excepting upon payment of a tribute to Great Britain. Napoleon retaliated by issuing [Dec. 17] a decree at Milan, forbidding all trade with England or her colonies; and authorizing the confiscation of any vessel found in his ports, which had submitted to English search, or paid the exacted tribute. When the American Congress met [Dec. 22], that body decreed an *embargo*, which detained all vessels, American and foreign, in our ports; and ordered American vessels abroad to return home immediately, that the seamen might be trained for the inevitable war. Thus the chief commerce of the world was brought to a full stop.

13. The embargo was a very unpopular measure with the commercial people of the United States, for it spread ruin throughout the shipping interest. As it failed to obtain from England and France any acknowledgment of American rights, it was repealed on the 1st of March, 1809, three days before Mr. Jefferson retired from office. Congress, at the same time, passed [March 1, 1809] a law which forbade all commercial intercourse with France and England, until the "orders in council" and the "decrees"² should be repealed.

14. Mr. Jefferson having served his country as chief magistrate for eight consecutive years, now retired to private life; and James Madison, who had been elected to succeed him, in the previous Autumn, entered upon his duties [March 4], with George Clinton³ as Vice-President.

SECTION IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1809-1817.]

1. No man appeared better fitted for the office of chief magistrate of the Republic at that time of general commotion, than Mr. Madison.⁴ He had been Secretary of State during the whole administration of Mr. Jefferson, and was familiar with every event which had contributed to produce the existing hostile relations between the United States and Great Britain. His cabinet⁵ was composed of able men; and in the eleventh Congress,⁶ which convened on the 22d of May, 1809, in consequence of the critical state of affairs, there

stood until November, 1811 (more than four years), when the British government declared the attack on the *Chesapeake* to have been unauthorized, and promised pecuniary aid to the families of those who were killed, at that time. But Britain would not relinquish the right of search, and so a cause for quarrel remained.

1. Note 4, page 276.

2. Verse 9, page 276.

3. Note 3, page 260.

4. James Madison was born in Virginia, in 1751. He was a member of the Continental Congress and one of the chief supporters [note 1, page 232] of the Federal Constitution. He was a vigorous and voluminous political writer. He retired from public life in 1817, and died in 1836.

5. Robert Smith, Secretary of State; Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury; William Eustis, Secretary of War; Paul Hamilton, Secretary of the Navy; Caesar Rodney, Attorney-General.

6. Its session lasted only about five weeks, because peace seemed probable.

QUESTIONS.—12. What did the government of the United States do? What did diplomacy do? What measures supported the commerce of the world? 13. How was the embargo regarded? What was done by Congress? 14. What government change took place? 1. What can you say of Madison? What of his cabinet? What of the eleventh Congress?

Erskine's assurances fallacious.

Injurious measures of Napoleon.

was a majority of his political friends. Yet there was a powerful party in the country (the Federalists) hostile¹ to his political creed, and opposed to a war with England, which now seemed probable.

2. Light beamed upon the future at the beginning of Madison's administration, but it proved deceitful. Mr. Erskine, the British minister, assured the President that a special envoy would soon arrive to settle all matters in dispute between the two governments. Supposing the minister to be authorized to make these assurances, the President issued a proclamation [April 19, 1809], permitting a renewal of commercial intercourse with Great Britain, on that day. But the government disavowed Erskine's act, and the President again proclaimed [Aug. 10] non-intercourse. This event caused great excitement in the public mind; and had the President then declared war against Great Britain, it would doubtless have been very popular.

3. Causes for irritation between the two governments continually increased, and, for a time, political intercourse was suspended.

France, too, continued its aggressions. On the 23d of March, 1810, Bonaparte issued a decree at Rambouillet, more destructive in its operations to American commerce than any measures hitherto employed.² Three months later [May, 1810], Congress offered to resume commercial intercourse with either France or England, or both, on condition that they should repeal their obnoxious orders and decrees, before the 3d of March, 1811.³ The French emperor feigned compliance, and by giving assurance [August] that such repeal should take effect in November, caused the President to proclaim such resumption of intercourse. But American vessels continued to be seized by French cruisers, and confiscated; and in March, 1811, Napoleon declared the decrees of Berlin⁴ and Milan⁵ to be the fundamental laws of his empire.



MADISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Verse 9, page 267.

2. It declared forfeit every American vessel which had entered French ports since March, 1810, or that might thereafter enter; and authorized the sale of the same, together with the cargoes, the money to be placed in the French treasury. Under this decree many American vessels were lost, for which only partial remuneration has since been obtained [note 2, p. 313]. Bonaparte justified this decree by the plea that it was made in retaliation for the American decree of non-intercourse. Verse 12, page 277.

3. The act provided that if either government should repeal its obnoxious acts, and if the other government should not do the same within three months thereafter, then the first should enjoy commercial intercourse with the United States, but the other should not. 4. Verse 9, page 276. 5. Verse 12, page 277.

QUESTIONS.—2. What good omens appeared? What did the United States government do? What disappointments followed? 3. What were the relations between the United States, and Great Britain and France, in 1810? How did Bonaparte act?

Conduct of Great Britain.

Indian hostilities.

Battle of Tippecanoe.

4. Great Britain acted more honorably, though wickedly. She continued her hostile orders, and sent ships of war to cruize near the principal ports of the United States, to intercept American merchant vessels and send them to England as lawful prizes. While engaged in this nefarious business, the sloop of war,¹ *Little Belt*, Captain Bingham, was met [April 16, 1811] off the coast of Virginia by the American frigate *President*, Commodore Rogers.² That officer hailed the commander of the sloop, and received a cannon-shot in reply. A brief action ensued, when Captain Bingham, after having eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, gave a satisfactory answer to Rogers. The conduct of both officers was approved by their respective governments.³

5. During 1811, events occurred which led to a declaration of war against Great Britain by the United States.⁴ It had been evident, for a long time, that British emissaries were exciting the western Indians against the Americans; and in the spring of 1811, it became certain that Tecumseh, a *Shawnee*⁵ chief, who possessed the qualities of a great leader, almost equal to those of Pontiac,⁶ was endeavoring to emulate that great *Ottawa* by confederating the tribes of the north-west, in a war against the people of the United States. During the summer [1811] the frontier settlers became so alarmed, that General Harrison,⁷ then Governor of the Indiana Territory,⁸ marched, with a considerable force, toward the town of the Prophet, an influential brother of Tecumseh,⁹ situated at the junction of the Tippecanoe and Wabash rivers.¹⁰ The Prophet appeared and proposed a conference, but Harrison, suspecting treachery, caused his soldiers to sleep on their arms [Nov. 6, 1811] that night. At four o'clock the next morning [Nov. 7] the savages fell upon the American camp, but after a bloody battle until dawn, the Indians were repulsed. The battle of Tippecanoe was one of the most desperate ever fought with the Indians, and the loss was heavy on both sides.

6. Now, throughout the entire West, and in the middle and southern States, there was a desire for war. Yet the administration fully appreciated the deep responsibility involved in such a step; and having almost the entire body of the New England people in opposition, they hesitated. The British orders in council were rigorously enforced; insult after insult was offered to the American flag; and the British press insolently boasted that the United

1. Page 283.

2. Died in the Naval Asylum, in Philadelphia, in August, 1838.

3. Powerful as was the navy of Great Britain, and weak as was that of the United States, the latter was willing to accept of war as an alternative for submission, and to measure strength on the ocean. The British navy consisted of almost *nine hundred* vessels, with an aggregate of one hundred and forty-four thousand men. The American vessels of war, of large size, numbered only *twelve*, with an aggregate of about three hundred guns. Besides these, there were a great number of gun-boats [note 2, p. 277]. It must be remembered, however, that the British navy was necessarily very much scattered, for that government had interests to protect in various parts of the globe.

5. Verse 9, p. 14.

6. Verse 50, p. 169.

7. Verse 1, p. 317.

4. Verse 6, page 280.

8. Note 4, p. 273.

9. He was a fierce and cruel warrior. In 1809 General Harrison had negotiated a treaty with the *Miamies* [verse 7, p. 14] and other tribes, by which they sold to the United States a large tract of land on both sides of the Wabash. The Prophet was present and made no objection; but Tecumseh, who was absent, was greatly dissatisfied. The British emissaries took advantage of this dissatisfied faction, to inflame him and his people against the Americans.

10. In the upper part of Tippecanoe county, Indiana.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Great Britain do? What hostile event occurred? 5. What led to a declaration of war against Great Britain? What can you tell of the Indians, and war with them? 6. What were the feelings of a majority of the American people? How was the administration embarrassed? What of the declaration of war?

Declaration of war.

Appointment of officers.

General Hull in the West.

States "could not be kicked into a war." Forbearance became no longer a virtue, and on the 4th of April, 1812, Congress laid another embargo¹ upon vessels in American waters, for ninety days. In June, the President, by the authority of Congress,² issued a proclamation which formally declared war against Great Britain.³ This is known in history as *THE WAR OF 1812*; or

THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.⁴

7. Congress passed an act which gave the President authority to enlist twenty-five thousand men, to accept fifty thousand volunteers, and to call out one hundred thousand militia for the defense of the sea-coast and frontiers. Henry Dearborn,⁵ an officer of the Revolution, was appointed major-general and commander-in-chief; and his principal brigadiers were James Wilkinson,⁶ Wade Hampton,⁷ William Hull,⁸ and Joseph Bloomfield, all of them esteemed soldiers of the Revolution.



GENERAL DEARBORN.

8. General Hull was Governor of Michigan; and when war was declared, he was marching with two thousand troops from Ohio, to attempt the subjugation of the hostile Indians.⁹ Congress authorized him to invade Canada; and on the 12th of July, 1812, he crossed the Detroit river with his whole force, to attack Fort Malden. At Sandwich he encamped, and by a fatal delay, lost every advantage which an immediate attack might have secured. In the mean while, Fort Mackinaw, one of the strongest posts of the United States in the north-west, was surprised and captured [July 17, 1812] by an allied force of British and Indians; and on the 5th of August, a detachment under Major Van Horne, sent by Hull to escort an approaching supply-party to camp, were defeated by some British and Indians near Brownstown, on the Huron river.¹⁰ These events, and the reinforcement

1. Verse 12, page 277.

2. On the 4th of June, 1812, a bill, drawn up by Mr. Pinckney, and presented by Mr. Calhoun, declaring war to exist between the United States and Great Britain, passed the House of Representatives by a vote of 79 to 49. On the 17th it passed the Senate by a vote of 19 to 13, and on that day received the signature of the President. He issued his war manifesto two days afterward.

3. The chief causes for this act were the impressment of American seamen by the British; the blockade of French ports without an adequate force to sustain the act; and the British *Orders in Council*. The Federalists in Congress presented an ably-written protest, which denied the necessity or the expediency of war.

4. This is an appropriate title, for, until the termination of that war, the United States were only nominally free. Blessed with prosperity, the people dreaded war, and submitted to many acts of tyranny and insult from Great Britain and France, rather than become involved in another conflict. Socially and commercially the United States were dependent upon Europe, and especially upon England; and the latter was rapidly acquiring a dangerous political influence here, when the war broke out. The war begun in 1775 was really only the first great step toward independence; the war begun in 1812 first thoroughly accomplished it. Franklin once heard a person speaking of the Revolution as the *War of Independence*, and reproved him, saying, "Sir, you mean the Revolution; the war of *Independence* is yet to come. It was a war for Independence, but not of Independence."

5. Henry Dearborn was a native of New Hampshire, and a meritorious officer in the Continental army. He accompanied Arnold to Quebec, and was distinguished in the battles which ruined Burgoyne [verse 23, page 222]. He held civil offices of trust after the Revolution. He returned to private life in 1815, and died at Roxbury near Boston, in 1829, at the age of seventy-eight years.

6. Verse 13, p. 289.

7. Note 5, p. 290.

8. Verse 9, p. 282.

9. Verse 5, p. 280.

10. On the 5th, Colonel Miller and several hundred men sent by Hull to accomplish the object of Van

QUESTIONS.—7. What preparation did Congress make for war? What military appointments were made? 8. Who had command in the north-west? What did Congress order? What military occurrences took place?

Hull's surrender.

Opposition to the war.

Invasion of Canada.

of the garrison at Malden by General Brock, the British commander-in-chief, caused Hull to recross [August 7] the river, abandon the expedition against Canada, and take post at Detroit, much to the disappointment of his troops.

9. Brock followed [Aug. 9], and crossed the river with seven hundred British troops and six hundred Indians. He demanded an instant surrender of Detroit, and threatened to give free rein to Indian cruelty, in the event of refusal. Hull's excessive prudence determined him to surrender rather than expose his troops to the hatchet. He ordered his troops to retire within the fort, and hung a white flag upon its wall, in token of submission. The army, fort, stores, garrison, and Territory, were all surrendered [Aug. 16, 1812], to the astonishment of the victor himself, and the deep mortification of the American troops. Hull was afterward tried by a court-martial¹ [1814], on charges of treason and cowardice. He was found guilty of the latter, and sentenced to be shot, but was pardoned by the President on account of his revolutionary services. The whole country severely censured him; but the sober judgment of this generation, guided by historic truth, must acquit him of all crime, and pity him as a victim of untoward circumstances.²

10. While these misfortunes were befalling the army of the north-west,³ the opponents of the war were casting obstacles in the way of the other divisions of the American troops operating in the State of New York. The British government declared the whole American coast in a state of blockade, except that of the New England States, whose apparent sympathy with the enemies of their country, caused them to be regarded as ready to leave the Union, and become subject to the British crown. But there was sterling patriotism sufficient there to prevent such a catastrophe.

11. During the summer of 1812, a plan was matured for invading Canada on the Niagara frontier. British troops were strongly posted on the heights of Queenstown, opposite Lewiston; and on the morning of the 13th of October, two hundred and twenty-five men, under Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer, crossed over to attack them. The commander was severely wounded, at the landing; but his troops pressed forward, under Captains Wool⁴ and Ogilvie, successfully assaulted a battery near the summit of the hill, and gained possession of Queenstown Heights.

Horne, met and defeated Tecumseh [verse 5, p. 280] and his Indians, with a party of British, near the scene of Horne's failure.

1. He was then taken to Montreal a prisoner, and was afterward exchanged for thirty British captives. He was tried at Albany, New York.

2. In 1848, his grandson published a full and thorough vindication of the character of General Hull, the material for which was drawn from official records. The general's thorough knowledge of the character of the foe who menaced him, and a humane desire to spare his troops was, doubtless, his sole reason for surrendering the post. A good and brave man has too long suffered the reproaches of history. William Hull was born in Connecticut in 1753. He rose to the rank of major in the Continental army, and was distinguished for his bravery. He was appointed Governor of the Michigan Territory, [verse 6, p. 275] in 1805. After the close of his unfortunate campaign, he never appeared in public life. He died near Boston in 1825.

3. The forces under General Harrison were called the *Army of the North-west*; those under General Stephen Van Rensselaer, at Lewiston, on the Niagara river, the *Army of the Center*; and those under General Dearborn, at Greenbush, near Albany, and near Plattsburg, the *Army of the North*.

4. Now General Wool of the United States army. See verse 15, page 325.

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of Hull's surrender of his army and Territory? How did it affect his character? 10. What events occurred in New England and on the Atlantic coast? 11. What invasion was planned? What military movements were made?

Battles on the Niagara.

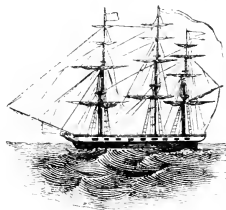
Exploits of the American navy.

12. At the moment of victory, General Brock approached from Fort George, with six hundred men, and attempted to regain the battery.¹ The British were repulsed, and Brock was killed.² In the meantime, General Stephen Van Rensselaer, who had crossed over, returned to Lewiston, and was using his most earnest endeavors to send reinforcements; but only about one thousand troops, many of them quite undisciplined, could be induced to cross the river. These were attacked in the afternoon [Oct. 13, 1812] by fresh troops from Fort George, and were nearly all killed or made prisoners, while at least fifteen hundred of their companions-in-arms cowardly refused to cross to their aid. These excused their conduct by the plea that they considered it wrong to invade the enemy's country, the war being avowedly a defensive one.

13. General Van Rensselaer, disgusted with the inefficiency everywhere displayed, left the service, and was succeeded by General Alexander Smyth of Virginia. This officer accomplished nothing of importance during the remainder of the season; and when the troops went into winter quarters [Dec.], there appeared to have been very few achievements made by the American army worthy of honorable mention in history. The little navy, however, had acquitted itself nobly, and the national honor had been fully vindicated on the ocean.³

14. On the 19th of August, 1812, the United States frigate *Constitution*, Commodore Isaac Hull,⁴ fought the British frigate *Guerriere*,⁵ Captain Dacres, off the American coast, in the present track of ships to Great Britain. The contest continued about forty minutes, when Dacres surrendered;⁶ and his vessel was such a complete wreck, that the victor burned her. The *Constitution*, it is said, was so little damaged, that she was ready for action the following day. This victory had a powerful effect on the public mind in both countries.

15. On the 18th of October, 1812, the United States sloop-of-war *Wasp*, Captain Jones, captured the British brig *Frolic*, off the coast of North Carolina, after a very severe conflict for three quarters of an hour. The slaughter on board the *Frolic* was dreadful. Only three officers and one seaman, of



A SLOOP-OF-WAR.

1. Note 2, page 110.

2. Sir Isaac Brock was a brave and generous officer. There is a fine monument erected to his memory on Queenstown Heights, a short distance from the Niagara river.

3. At this time the British navy numbered 1,060 vessels, while that of the United States, exclusive of gunboats [verse 9, page 276], numbered only twenty. Two of these were unseaworthy, and one was on Lake Ontario. Nine of the American vessels were of a class less than frigates. Verse 3, page 273.

4. Isaac Hull was made a lieutenant in the navy in 1798, and was soon distinguished for skill and bravery. He rendered important service to his country, and died in Philadelphia in February, 183.

5. This vessel had been one of a British squadron which gave the *Constitution* a long and close chase about a month before, in which the nautical skill of Hull was most signally displayed.

6. Seventy-nine killed and wounded. The *Constitution* lost seven killed and seven wounded.

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell of the battle on Queenstown Heights? What of American militia? 13. What change took place in leaders? What had been accomplished? 14. What can you tell of the *Constitution* and *Guerriere*? 15. What can you tell of the *Wasp* and *Frolic*?

American victories.	Re-election of Madison.	Campaign of 1813.
---------------------	-------------------------	-------------------

eighty-four, remained unhurt. The others were killed or badly wounded. The *Wasp* lost only ten men. Her term of victory was short, for the same afternoon, the British ship *Poictiers*¹ captured both vessels.

16. A week afterward [Oct. 25], the frigate *United States*, Commodore Decatur,² fought the British frigate *Macedonian*, west of the Canary Islands, for almost two hours. After being greatly damaged, and losing more than one hundred men, in killed and wounded, the *Macedonian* surrendered. Decatur lost only five killed, and seven wounded; and his vessel was very little injured. A few weeks afterward [Dec. 29, 1812], the *Constitution*, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge,³ became a victor, after combatting the British frigate *Java*, for almost three hours, off San Salvador, on the coast of Brazil. The *Java* had four hundred men on board, of whom almost two hundred were killed or wounded. The *Constitution* was again⁴ very little injured; but she made such havoc with the *Java*, that Bainbridge, finding her incapable of floating long, burned her [Jan. 1, 1813] three days after the action.

17. These victories greatly elated the Americans, while the numerous privateers⁵ which now swarmed upon the ocean, were making prizes in every direction. It is estimated that during the year 1812, upward of fifty British armed vessels, and two hundred and fifty merchantmen, with an aggregate of more than three thousand prisoners, and a vast amount of booty, were captured by the Americans. At the close of the year, naval armaments were in preparation on the lakes, to assist the army in an invasion of Canada.

18. Mr. Madison was re-elected President of the United States in the autumn of 1812, with Elbridge Gerry⁶ as Vice-President, George Clinton⁷ having died at Washington on the 12th of April, of that year. The re-election of Madison was considered a token of approval of the war by a majority of the people of the United States.

SECTION V.

THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1813.]

1. The campaign of 1813 opened with the year, and almost the entire northern frontier of the United States was the chief theater of operations. The army of the *West*,⁸ under General Harrison,⁹ was concentrating at the head of Lake Erie; that of the *Center*, now under Dearborn, was on the banks of the Niagara river; and that of the *North*,¹⁰ under Hampton, was on

1. She was a seventy-four gun ship.

3. Verse 3, page 273.

7. Verse 14, page 278.

4. Verse 14, page 283.

8. Note 3, page 282.

5. Note 4, page 198.

9. Verse 1, page 371.

2. Verse 4, page 274.

6. Note 4, page 270.

10. Note 3, page 282.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell of other naval battles? 17. What can you relate of privateers and their achievements? What did the Americans accomplish on the ocean? 18. What was the result of an election in 1812? 1. What military movements took place early in 1813? What was the disposition of the troops?

Gathering of volunteers.

Harrison in the West.

Battle on the river Raisin.

the borders of Lake Champlain. Sir George Prevost was the successor of Brock¹ in the command of the British army in Canada, assisted by General Proctor in the direction of Detroit,² and General Sheaffe in the vicinity of Montreal and the lower portions of Lake Champlain.

2. Hostilities commenced in the West, where the greatest warlike enthusiasm prevailed. Michigan had to be recovered, and the stain of Hull's surrender³ obliterated. Volunteers gathered under local leaders, in every settlement.⁴ Companies were formed and equipped in a single day, and were ready to march the next. Kentucky sent swarms of her young men, from every social rank, led by the veteran, Shelby;⁵ and the yeomanry of Ohio and its neighborhood hastened to the field.⁶



GENERAL SHELBY.

3. Harrison chose the west end of Lake Erie as his chief place of muster, having for his design the recovery of Michigan and the forts west of it. Early in January [Jan. 10, 1813], General Winchester, on his way from the southward, with eight hundred young men, chiefly Kentuckians, reached the Maumee rapids.⁷ There he was informed [Jan. 13, 1813] that a party of British and Indians had concentrated at Frenchtown, on the river Raisin,⁸ twenty-five miles south of Detroit. He immediately sent a detachment, under Colonels Allen and Lewis, to protect the inhabitants in that direction. Finding Frenchtown in the possession of the enemy, they successfully attacked [Jan. 18] and routed them, and held possession until the arrival of Winchester [Jan. 20], with almost three hundred men, three days afterward.

4. Proctor, who was at Malden, eighteen miles distant, heard of the advance of Winchester, and proceeded immediately and secretly, with a combined force of fifteen hundred British and Indians, to attack him. They fell upon the American camp at dawn, on the morning of the 22d of January. After a severe battle and heavy loss on both sides, Winchester,⁹ who had been made a prisoner by the Indians, surrendered his troops on the condition, agreed to by Proctor, that ample protection to all should be given. Proctor, fearing the approach of Harrison, who was then on the Lower Sandusky, im-

1. Verse 12, page 2-3.

2. Verse 9, page 782.

3. Verse 9, page 282.

4. During the autumn of 1812, the whole western country, incensed by Hull's surrender, seemed filled with the zeal of the old Crusaders [note 6, page 19]. The leaders found volunteers everywhere, anxious to find employment against the foe. They were engaged for many weeks in driving the Indians from post to post, in the vicinity of the extreme western settlements, and in desolating their villages and plantations, after the manner of Sullivan [verse 14, page 23], in 1779. Fierce indignation was thus excited among the tribes, and led to terrible retaliations under the stimulus of their white allies.

5. Isaac Shelby was born in Maryland, in 1750. He entered military life in 1774, and went to Kentucky as a land-surveyor, in 1775. He engaged in the War of the Revolution, and was distinguished in the battle on King's Mountain [verse 11, page 244], in 1780. He was made Governor of Kentucky in 1792, and soon afterward retired to private life, from which he was drawn in 1813, to lead an army to the field against his old enemy. He died in 1826.

6. So numerous were the volunteers, that General Harrison was compelled to issue an order against further enlistments.

7. Note 9, page 266.

8. Opposite the flourishing village of Monroe, Michigan, two or three miles from Lake Erie. The Raisin derived its name from the fact, that in former years great quantities of grapes clustered upon its banks.

9. James Winchester was born in Maryland in 1756. He was made brigadier-general in 1812; resigned his commission in 1815; and died in Tennessee in 1846.

QUESTIONS.—2. When, and how, did hostilities commence? How was the warlike feeling exhibited in the West? 3. What movements were made by Harrison? and for what purpose? What did Winchester do?

mediately marched for Malden, leaving the sick and wounded Americans behind, without a guard. After following him some distance, the Indians turned back [Jan. 23], murdered and scalped¹ the Americans who were unable to travel, set fire to dwellings, took many prisoners to Detroit, in order to procure exorbitant ransom prices, and reserved some of them for inhuman torture. Oftentimes after that, the war-cry of the Kentuckians was, "Remember the river Raisin!"

5. General Harrison had advanced to the Maumee rapids² when intelligence

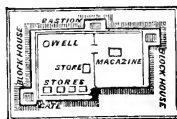


FORT MEIGS.

of the affair at Frenchtown reached him. Supposing Proctor would press forward to attack him, he fell back [Jan. 23] 1813; but on hearing of the march of the British toward Malden, he advanced [Feb. 1] to the rapids with twelve hundred men, established a fortified camp there, and called it Fort Meigs,³ in honor of the Governor of Ohio. There he was besieged by Proctor several weeks afterward [May 1], who was at the head of more than two thousand British and Indians. On the 5th day of the siege, General Clay arrived [May 5], with twelve hundred men, and dispersed the enemy. A large portion of his troops, while unwisely pursuing the fugitives, were surrounded and captured; and Proctor returned to the siege. The impatient Indians, refusing to listen to Tecumseh,⁴

their leader, deserted the British on the eighth day [May 8]; and twenty-four hours afterward, Proctor abandoned the siege and returned to Malden [May 9], to prepare for a more formidable invasion.

6. Toward the close of July [July 21, 1813], about four thousand British and Indians, under Proctor and Tecumseh, again appeared before Fort Meigs, then commanded by General Clay.⁵ Meeting with a vigorous resistance, Proctor left Tecumseh to watch the fort, while he marched [July 28], with five hundred regulars and eight hundred Indians, to attack Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky,⁶ garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men, commanded by Major Croghan, a brave young soldier, only twenty-one years of age.⁷ Proctor's demand for surrender was accompanied by the usual menace of Indian massacre;⁸ but it did not intimid-



FORT SANDUSKY.

1. Note 1, page 11.

3. Fort Meigs was erected on the south side of the Maumee, nearly opposite the former British post [note 9, page 266], and a short distance from the present village of Perrysburg.

5. Green Clay was born in Virginia in 1757, was made a brigadier of Kentucky volunteers early in 1813, and died in October, 1825.

6. On the west bank of the Sandusky river, about fifteen miles south from Sandusky bay. The area within the pickets [note 3, page 150] was about an acre. The fort was made of regular embankments of earth and a ditch, with bastions and block-houses (note 4, page 157), and some rude log buildings within.

7. The greater portion of the garrison were very young men, and some of them were mere youths.

8. Verse 9, page 282.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Proctor do? What can you tell of events at the river Raisin? What cruelties occurred? 5. What movements were made by Harrison? Where and how was he besieged? How were the British repulsed? 6. How was Fort Meigs again menaced? What did Proctor do? What can you tell of the defense of Fort Sandusky?

Brave conduct of Major Croghan.

Battle of Lake Erie.

ate Croghan.¹ After a severe cannonade² had made a breach, the besiegers attempted to rush in and take the place by assault [May 2, 1813]; but so terribly were they met by grape-shot³ from the only cannon in the fort, that they recoiled, panic-stricken, and the whole body fled in confusion, leaving one hundred and fifty of their number killed or wounded. The Americans lost only one man killed, and seven wounded. This gallant defense was universally applauded,⁴ and it had a powerful effect upon the Indians.



MAJOR CROGHAN.

7. While these events were in progress, a new power appeared in the conflict in the West and North. In the Autumn of 1812, Commodore Chauncey had fitted out a small naval armament at Sackett's Harbor, to dispute the mastery on Lake Ontario, with several British armed vessels,⁵ then afloat. And during the Summer of 1813, Commodore Perry had fitted out, on Lake Erie, an American squadron of nine vessels, mounting fifty-four guns, to co-

operate with the army of the West.⁶ The British had also prepared a small squadron of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, commanded by Commodore Barclay. The hostile fleets met near the western extremity of Lake Erie, on the morning of the 10th of September, 1813, and a very severe battle ensued. The brave Perry managed with the skill of an old admiral and the courage of the proudest soldier.⁷ At four o'clock in the afternoon, every British vessel had surrendered to him;⁸ and before sunset, he had sent a messenger to General Harrison with the famous dispatch,



COMMODORE PERRY.

1. In reply to Proctor's demand and threat, he said, in substance, that when the fort should be taken, there would be none left to massacre, as it would not be given up while there was a man left to fight. George Croghan was nephew of George Rogers Clarke (verse 13, page 235). He afterward rose to the rank of colonel, and held the office of inspector-general. He died at New Orleans in 1849.

2. The British employed six six-pounders and a howitzer in the siege. A howitzer is a piece of ordnance similar to a mortar, for hurling bombshells. Note 2, page 233.

3. Note 8, page 196.

4. Major Croghan was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-colonel; and the ladies of Chillicothe gave him an elegant sword.

5. Chauncey's squadron consisted of six vessels, mounting thirty-two guns, in all. The British squadron consisted of the same number of vessels, but mounting more than a hundred guns. Notwithstanding this disparity, Chauncey attacked them near Kingston (note 4, page 148) early in November, damaged them a good deal, and captured and carried into Sackett's Harbor, a schooner belonging to the enemy. He then captured another schooner, which had \$12,000 in specie on board, and the baggage of the deceased General Brock.

6. Verse 1, page 284.

7. The *Lawrence*, Perry's flag-ship, very soon became an unmanageable wreck, having all her crew, except four or five, killed or wounded. Perry then left her, in an open boat, and hoisted his flag on the *Niagara*. With this vessel he passed through the enemy's line, pouring broadsides, right and left, at half pistol-shot distance. The remainder of the squadron followed, with a fair wind, and the victory was soon decided.

8. The carnage was very great, in proportion to the numbers engaged. The Americans lost twenty-seven killed, and ninety-six wounded. The British lost about two hundred in killed and wounded, and six hundred prisoners. Perry's treatment of his prisoners received the highest applause. Commodore Barclay declared that his humane conduct was sufficient to immortalize him. Oliver H. Perry was born at Newport, Rhode Island, in 1758. He entered the service as midshipman in 1798. He continued in active serv-

QUESTIONS.—7. What new power appeared? What was done on Lake Erie? What can you tell of the battle there?

Battle on the Thames.

Recovery of Michigan.

Attack on Little York.

"We have met the enemy, and they are ours." This victory was hailed with unbounded demonstrations of joy. For a moment, party rancor was almost forgotten; and bonfires and illuminations lighted up the whole country.

8. The command of Lake Erie now being secured, and a reinforcement of four thousand Kentucky volunteers, under Governor Shelby, having arrived [Sept. 17, 1813], Harrison proceeded to attack Malden and recover Detroit. The fleet conveyed a portion of the troops across the lake [Sept. 27], but on their arrival at Malden, it had been deserted by Proctor, who was fleeing with Tecumseh and his Indians, toward the Moravian village on the Thames. A body of Americans took possession of Detroit on the 29th of September, and on the 2d of October, Harrison, with thirty-five hundred men, started in pursuit of the enemy. They overtook him [Oct. 5] at the Moravian town, eighty miles from Detroit,¹ when a desperate battle ensued. Tecumseh was slain;² and then his followers, who had fought furiously, broke and fled. Almost the whole of Proctor's command were killed or made prisoners,³ and the general himself narrowly escaped with a few of his cavalry.

9. By this victory, all that Hull had lost⁴ was recovered; the Indian confederacy⁵ was completely broken up, and the war on the north-western borders of the Union was terminated. General Harrison dismissed a greater portion of the volunteers, and leaving General Cass⁶ with about a thousand regulars to garrison Detroit, proceeded [Oct. 23, 1813] to Niagara with the remainder of his troops to join the Army of the Center,⁷ which had been making some endeavors to invade Canada. In the meantime, an Indian war had been kindled in the South;⁸ and on the ocean, the laurel wreaths of triumph won by the Americans during 1812,⁹ had been interwoven with garlands of cypress on account of reverses. Let us turn a moment to the operations of the Army of the North.¹⁰

10. Unable to afford assistance to exposed posts between Sackett's Harbor and Ogdensburg,¹¹ General Dearborn resolved to attempt the capture of York (now Toronto), the capital of Upper Canada, and the principal depository of British military stores for the supply of western garrisons. He embarked seventeen hundred troops on board the fleet of Commodore Chauncey,¹² at Sackett's Harbor, on the 25th of April; and two days afterward [April 27] they landed on the beach at York, about two miles west from the British

ice after the close of the Second War for Independence, and died of yellow fever in the West India seas, in 1819.

1. In the present town of Orford, Canada West.

2. Verse 5, page 280. He was only about 40 years of age at this time.

3. Here the Americans recaptured six brass field-pieces, which had been surrendered by Hull, on two of which were engraved the words, "surrendered by Burgoyne at Saratoga" [verse 23, page 222].

4. Verse 9, page 182.

5. Verse 5, page 280.

6. Now [1857] Secretary of State.

7. Verse 1, page 284.

8. Verse 15, page 290.

9. Verse 17, page 284.

10. Verse 1, page 289.

11. In February a detachment of British soldiers crossed the St. Lawrence on the ice from Prescott to Ogdensburg, and under pretense of seeking for deserters, committed robberies. Major Forsyth, then in command of riflemen there, retaliated. This was resented, in turn, by a large British force which crossed on the 21st of February, and after a conflict of an hour drove out the few military defenders of Ogdensburg, plundered and destroyed a large amount of property, and then returned to Canada.

12. Verse 7, page 287.

QUESTIONS.—8. How was the Army of the West strengthened? What military movements took place? What of the battle of the Thames? 9. What did the battle of the Thames effect? What did Harrison do? What had been done elsewhere? 10. What movements were made on Lake Ontario? What can you tell of the battle at York?

Death of Pike.

West end of Lake Ontario.

British repulsed at Sackett's Harbor.

works, in the face of a galling fire from regulars and Indians, under General Sheaffe. These were soon driven back to their fortifications, and the Americans, under General Pike,¹ were pressing forward when the magazine of the fort blew up,² and produced great destruction of life among the assailants. General Pike was mortally wounded, but he lived long enough to know that the enemy had fled, and that the American flag waved in triumph over the fort at York.³



GENERAL PIKE.

11. The fleet and troops returned to Sackett's Harbor, but soon afterward proceeded to attack Fort George, on the western shore of Niagara river, near its mouth. After a brief defense [May 27, 1813] the garrison fled to Burlington Heights,⁴ at the western extremity of Lake Ontario, thirty-five miles distant, closely pursued by a much larger force, under Generals Chandler⁵ and Winder.⁶ On the night of the 6th of June, the British fell upon the American camp, but were repulsed. It was very dark, and in the confusion both of the American generals were made prisoners.⁷

12. On the day [May 27] when the Americans attacked Fort George, a British squadron appeared before Sackett's Harbor; and two days afterward [May 29] Sir George Prevost and a thousand soldiers landed in the face of a severe fire from some regulars⁸ stationed there. General Brown, the commander, rallied the militia, and their rapid gathering near the landing-place so alarmed Prevost, lest they should cut off his retreat, that he hastily re-embarked, leaving almost the whole of his wounded behind.

13. General Dearborn⁹ withdrew from active service in June, on account of ill health, and was succeeded in command by General Wilkinson.¹⁰ General Armstrong¹¹ then Secretary of War, had conceived another invasion of Canada, by the united forces of the armies of the Center and North.¹² For this purpose a little more than seven thousand men concentrated at French Creek [Nov. 5, 1813], and went down the St. Lawrence in boats, with the

1. Dearborn had given the command of this expedition to Brigadier-General Zebulon M. Pike, a brave and useful officer, who had been at the head of an expedition, a few years earlier, to explore the country around the head waters of the Missouri. He was born in 1779. He died on board the flag-ship of Commodore Chaney, with the captured British flag under his head, at the age of thirty-four years.

2. The British had laid a train of wet powder communicating with the magazine, for the purpose, and when they retreated, they fired it.

3. General Sheaffe escaped with the principal part of the troops, but lost all his baggage, books, papers, and a large amount of public property.

4. At the head of Burlington Bay, in Canada.

5. John Chandler was a native of Massachusetts. Some years after the war he was United States senator from Maine. He died at Augusta, in that State, in 1811.

6. Verse 10, page 296.

7. This event was at Stony Creek, in the present Saltfleet township, Canada West. In this affair the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and missing, one hundred and fifty-four.

8. Note 7, page 157.

9. Note 5, page 281.

10. Born in Maryland, in 1757, and studied medicine. He joined the Continental army at Cambridge, in 1775, and continued in service during the war. He died near the city of Mexico, in 1825, at the age of sixty-eight years.

11. Note 1, page 279. Born in Pennsylvania in 1758, served in the war of the Revolution; was Secretary of the State of Pennsylvania; minister to France in 1804; Secretary of War in 1813, and died in Dutchess county, New York, in 1843.

12. Note 3, page 282.

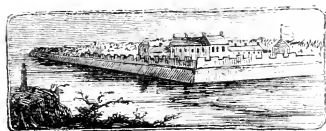
QUESTIONS.—12. What occurred at Sackett's Harbor? 13. What of General Dearborn? What can you tell of another invasion of Canada? What took place on the banks of the St. Lawrence?

Battle of Chrysler's Field.

Villages burned.

Indian war in the South.

intention of co-operating with about four thousand troops under Hampton,¹ in an attack upon Montreal. Being annoyed by the British on shore, and by gun-boats² in his rear, Wilkinson landed Brown and a strong detachment to go forward and disperse quite a large force near Williamsburg, and cover the descent of the boats. A severe battle ensued [Nov. 11], in which the Americans lost more than three hundred men in killed and wounded, and the British about two hundred. This is known as the battle of Chrysler's Field.³



FORT NIAGARA, 1813.

14. Wilkinson arrived at St. Regis⁴ the next day, with the main body, when he was informed that no troops from the Army of the North would join him.⁵ He therefore abandoned the expedition against Montreal, and went into winter quarters at French Mills,⁶ about nine miles east of St. Regis. A little later, some stirring events occurred on the Niagara frontier. General McClure, commanding at Fort George,⁷ burnt the Canadian village of Newark on the 10th of December. Two days later [Dec. 12, 1813] he was compelled, by the British, to abandon Fort George. A strong force of British and Indians then surprised and captured [Dec. 19] Fort Niagara;⁸ and in retaliation for the burning of Newark, they laid Youngstown, Lewis-town, Manchester (now Niagara Falls) and the Tuscarora Indian village, in Niagara county, in ashes. On the 30th, the little villages of Black Rock and Buffalo were also consumed, and a large amount of public and private property was destroyed. Thus ended the campaign of 1813, in the North.

15. In the Spring of 1813, Tecumseh⁹ went among the southern tribes, to arouse them to wage war upon the white people. The powerful *Creeks*¹⁰ yielded to his persuasions, and late in August [Aug. 30, 1813], a large party of them surprised and captured Fort Minnims, on the Alabama river,¹¹ and massacred almost three hundred men, women, and children. This event aroused the whole South. General Andrew Jackson,¹² accompanied by General Coffee, marched into the Creek country with twenty-five hundred Tennessee militia, and prosecuted a subjugating war against them, with great vigor.

1. Verse 7, page 281.

2. Note 2, page 277.

3. On the northern shore of the St. Lawrence, about ninety miles above Montreal.

4. Southern bank of the St. Lawrence, twenty-five miles south-east from Williamsburg. It was an early French settlement.

5. There was enmity between Wilkinson and Hampton, and Armstrong resolved to command the expedition himself, to prevent trouble on account of precedence. He joined the army at Sackett's Harbor, but soon returned to Washington, for he and Wilkinson could not agree. To the jealousies and bickerings of these old officers, must be added the disasters of the land troops here, in a great degree, attributed. General Hampton did move forward toward Canada, but finally returned to Plattsburg, and, leaving the command with General Izard, returned to South Carolina. He died at Columbia, South Carolina, in 1835, aged eighty-one years.

6. Now Fort Covington, St. Lawrence county.

7. Verse 11, page 289.

8. On the east side of the Niagara river. See verse 19, page 164.

9. Verse 5, page 280.

10. Verse 2, page 22.

11. On the east side, about ten miles above its junction with the Tombigbee.

12. Verse 1, page 308.

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of the invading expedition? What took place on the Niagara frontier?
15. What did Tecumseh do in the Spring of 1813? What outrages were committed by the southern Indians? What preparations were made to subdue them?

Indian war in Alabama.

Subjugation of the Indians.

Naval engagements.

16. General Coffee,¹ with nine hundred men, surrounded [Nov. 4] an Indian force at Tallushatchee² on the 3d of November, and killed two hundred of them. Not a warrior escaped. Within two weeks afterward, bloody battles were fought at Talladega³ [Nov. 8] Autossec⁴ [Nov. 29], and Emucfau⁵ [Jan. 22d, 1814,], and several skirmishes had also taken place. The Americans were always victorious, yet they lost many brave soldiers. At length the *Creeks* established a fortified camp at the Great Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa river,⁶ and there a thousand warriors, with their women and children, determined to make a last defensive stand. The Americans surrounded them, and Jackson, with the main body of his army, attacked them on the 27th of March, 1814. The Indians fought desperately, for they saw no future for themselves, in the event of defeat. Almost six hundred warriors were slain, for they disdained to surrender. Only two or three were made prisoners, with about three hundred women and children. This battle crushed the power and spirit of the Creek nation, and soon afterward the chiefs of the remnant signified their submission.⁷

17. There were many and severe conflicts on the ocean between armed vessels of the United States and Great Britain, during the year 1813. Toward the close of February, the United States sloop-of-war, *Hornet*, Captain Lawrence, fought [Feb. 24, 1813], the British brig, *Peacock*, off the mouth of Demarara river, South America. The *Peacock* surrendered after a fierce conflict of fifteen minutes, and a few moments afterward she sunk, carrying down with her nine British seamen and three Americans. The loss of the *Peacock*, in killed and wounded, was thirty-seven; of the *Hornet* only five.

18. Captain Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, on his return to the United States; and on the 1st of June, 1814, he sailed from Boston harbor, in search of the British frigate *Shannon*, which had recently appeared off the New England coast, and challenged any vessel of equal size, to meet her. Lawrence found the boaster the same day, about thirty miles from Boston light; and at five in the afternoon, a furious action began. It lasted only fifteen minutes; but in that time the *Chesapeake* had forty-eight killed and ninety-eight wounded;



CAPTAIN LAWRENCE.

1. John Coffee was a native of Virginia. He did good service during the second war for independence, and in subsequent campaigns. He died in 1834.

2. South side of Tallushatchee Creek, near the village of Jacksonville, in Benton county, Alabama.

3. A little east of the Coosa river, in the present Talladega county.

4. On the bank of the Tallapoosa, twenty miles from its junction with the Coosa, in Macon county.

5. On the west bank of the Tallapoosa, at the mouth of Emucfau Creek, in Tallapoosa county.

6. Called Tohopeka by the Indians. Near the north-east corner of Tallapoosa county.

7. Among those who bowed in submission, was Weathersford, their greatest leader. He appeared suddenly before Jackson, in his tent, and standing erect, he said, "I am in your power: do with me what you please. I have done the white people all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely."

QUESTIONS.—16. What battles took place in the Indian country? When and how were the Indians finally crushed? 17. What can you tell of battles on the ocean early in 1813? 18. What can you tell of the *Chesapeake* and *Shannon*? What distinguished men were killed?

Death of Captain Lawrence.

Other naval engagements.

Depredations on the coast.

the *Shannon*, twenty-three killed and fifty-six wounded. Lawrence was among the slain,¹ and his body, with that of Ludlow, the second in command, was carried to Halifax, in the victorious *Shannon*, and there buried with the honors of war.² This event caused great sadness in America and unbounded joy in England.

19. The loss of the *Chesapeake* was followed by that of the American brig *Argus*, Captain Allen, in August. The *Argus* had conveyed Mr. Crawford, United States minister, to France, and for two months had greatly annoyed British shipping in the English Channel. Several vessels were sent out to capture her; and on the 14th of August, 1813, the sloop-of-war *Pelican*, after a brief, but severe action, defeated the *Argus*. In less than a month afterward [Sept. 10], Perry gained his great victory on Lake Erie,³ and the British brig *Boxer*, Captain Blythe, had surrendered [Sept. 5, 1813] to the United States brig *Enterprise*, Lieutenant Burrows, after an engagement of forty minutes, off the coast of Maine. Both commanders were slain, and their bodies were buried in one grave at Portland, with military honors.

20. During the Spring and Summer of 1813, a small squadron, under Admiral Cockburn, carried on a distressing warfare upon the coast between Delaware Bay and Charleston, with the hopes of drawing the American troops from the northern frontier, to the defense of the seaboard. It was a sort of amphibious warfare—on land and water—and was marked by many acts of unnecessary cruelty. The American shipping in the Delaware was destroyed in March, 1813, and Lewiston was cannonaded in April. In May, Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Georgetown, and Frederictown, on the Chesapeake, were plundered and burned; and then the British fleet entered Hampton Roads,⁴ and menaced Norfolk. While attempting to go up to that city, the British were nobly repulsed [Jan. 22, 1813] by the Americans upon Craney Island,⁵ under the command of Major Faulkner, assisted by naval officers. The enemy then fell upon Hampton [Jan. 25]; and having surfeited themselves with plunder, withdrew. Cockburn⁶ sailed down the North Carolina coast, plundering whenever opportunity offered, and carried away a large number of negroes and sold them in the West Indies. In pleasant contrast to this, was the deportment of Commodore Hardy, whose squadron was em-

My warriors are all gone now, and I can do no more. When there was a chance for success I never asked for peace. There is none now, and I ask it for the remnant of my nation."

1. The two vessels became entangled, when the British boarded the *Chesapeake*, and after a desperate hand-to-hand struggle, hoisted the British flag. Lawrence was mortally wounded at the beginning of the action; and when he was carried below, he issued those brave words, which Perry afterward displayed on his flag-ship on Lake Erie, "*Don't give up the ship!*" Captain James Lawrence was a native of New Jersey, and received a midshipman's warrant at the age of sixteen years. He was with Decatur at Tripoli [see 4, page 274]. He died four days after receiving the wound, at the age of thirty-one years.

2. A beautiful monument was erected to his memory in Trinity church-yard, New York.

3. Verse 7, page 287.

4. Verse 9, page 234.

5. Craney Island is low and bare, and lies at the mouth of the Elizabeth river, about five miles below Norfolk. At the time in question, there were some unfinished fortifications upon it, remains of which may yet [1857] be seen.

6. Cockburn died in England in 1853, at an advanced age.

QUESTIONS.—19. What losses did the Americans have on the ocean? What victory off the coast of Maine? 20. What can you tell of a marauding warfare on the coasts of the Delaware and Chesapeake Bays? What of the repulse of the British at Craney Island?

Porter in the Pacific.

Napoleon.

Invasion of Canada.

ployed, during the same season, in blockading the New England coast.

21. The United States frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, made a long and successful cruise in the Atlantic and Pacific,¹ during the same year, but was finally captured in the harbor of Valparaiso [March 28, 1814], on the western coast of South America, by the British frigate *Phæbe*, and sloop-of-war *Cherub*, after one of the most desperately fought battles of the war. The *Essex* lost one hundred and fifty-four in killed and wounded. Captain Porter² wrote to the Secretary of the Navy, "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced."



COMMODORE PORTER.

SECTION VI.

SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE, CONTINUED. [1814, 1815.]

1. Early in 1814, the victorious career of Napoleon, in Europe, was checked by the allied powers;³ British troops were withdrawn from the continent, and fourteen thousand of Wellington's veterans were sent to Canada⁴ [1814] to operate against the United States. Considering the moral and material weakness of the American army, hitherto, the circumstance of the continual employment of the British troops on the continent was highly favorable to the United States. Had Europe been at peace, the result of the second war for independence⁵ might have been quite different.

2. The invasion of Canada⁶ continued to be the pet project of the public authorities; and to oppose it was the chief solicitude of the British officers on our northern frontiers. Toward the close of February, General Wilkinson broke up his camp at French Mills⁷ and retired to Plattsburg; and General Brown, with two thousand men, marched to Sackett's Harbor. Late in March, Wilkinson proceeded to erect a battery at Rouse's Point; and at La Colle, three miles below, he had an unsuccessful engagement [March 30] with the British. In consequence of his repulse, he was tried by a court-martial,

1. While in the Pacific, the *Essex* captured twelve British whale-ships, with an aggregate of 302 men, and 137 guns. The *Essex* carried at her mast-head, the popular motto, "Free Trade and Sailors' Rights."

2. Commodore David Porter was among the most distinguished of the American naval commanders. He was a resident minister of the United States in Turkey, and died near Constantinople in March, 1843.

3. Almost all continental Europe, with England, had now combined to crush Napoleon, and sustain the sinking Bourbon dynasty. The allied armies, approaching from different directions, reached Paris at the close of March, 1814, when the Russian and Prussian emperors entered the city. Hoping to secure the crown to his son, Napoleon abdicated in his favor on the 4th of April, and retired to Elba. Believing peace to be secured, England withdrew many of her troops from the continent.

4. These were embarked at Bordeaux, in France, and sailed directly for the St. Lawrence.

5. Note 4, page 281.

6. Verse 8, page 281, and verse 13, page 289.

7. Verse 14, page 290.

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell of Captain Porter in the Atlantic and Pacific oceans? What of his misfortunes? 1. What can you tell of British troops on the continent of Europe? What was favorable to the Americans? 2. What chiefly occupied the attention of the contending parties? What military movements occurred?

Battles at Oswego.

Battle of Chippewa.

Battle of Niagara Falls.

but acquitted, yet the chief command was taken from him and given to General Izard.

3. On the 5th of May, a British squadron, bearing about three thousand men, appeared before Oswego,¹ then defended by only about three hundred troops, under Colonel Mitchell, and a small flotilla under Captain Woolsey. The chief object of the expedition was to capture or destroy a large quantity of naval and military stores deposited at Oswego Falls;² but the gallant band of Americans at the harbor defeated the project. They withstood an attack by land and water for almost two days, before they yielded to a superior force. Afraid to penetrate the country toward the Falls, in the face of such determined opponents, the British withdrew on the morning of the 7th [May, 1814], after losing two hundred and thirty-five men, in killed and wounded. The Americans lost sixty-nine.

4. General Brown marched from Sackett's Harbor³ to the Niagara frontier; and on the morning of the 3d of July, Generals Scott and Ripley⁴ crossed the



GENERAL BROWN.

river with a considerable force, and captured Fort Erie.⁵ The garrison withdrew to the intrenched camp of the British, General Riall, then at Chippewa,⁶ a few miles below. On the morning of the 4th [July, 1814], Brown advanced, and on the 5th the two armies had a sanguinary battle in the open fields at Chippewa. The British were repulsed with a loss of about five hundred men, and retreated to Burlington Heights, where they were reinforced by troops under Lieutenant-General Drummond, who assumed the chief command. The Americans lost about three hundred.

5. Drummond's force was now about one third greater than that of Brown,⁷ and he immediately advanced to meet the Americans. The latter had encamped at Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls; and there, at the close of a sultry day, and within the sound of the great cataract's thunder, one of the most destructive battles of the war began.⁸ It commenced at sunset and ended at midnight [July 25, 1814], when the Americans had lost eight hundred and fifty-eight men, in killed and wounded, and the British twenty more than that. The Americans were left in quiet possession of the field, but were un-

1. The fort on the east side of the river was then in quite a dilapidated state, and formed but a feeble defense for the troops. It was strengthened after this attack.

2. At the present village of Fulton, about twelve miles from the harbor.

3. Verse 12, page 289.

4. Winfield Scott, now [1857] commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States. Verse 18, page 326. General Ripley died on the 2d of March, 18 9.

5. On the Canada side of Niagara river, nearly opposite Black Rock.

6. On the Canada shore, about two miles above Niagara Falls.

7. Jacob Brown was born in Pennsylvania, in 1775. He engaged in his country's service in 1813, and soon became distinguished. He was made major-general in 1814. He was commander-in-chief of the United States army in 1821, and held that rank and office when he died, in 1838.

8. The hottest of the fight was in and near an obscure road, known as Lundy's Lane. This battle is known by the respective names of *Bridgewater*, *Lundy's Lane*, and *Niagara Falls*.

QUESTIONS.—3. What appeared before Oswego? What occurred there? 4. What occurred on the Niagara frontier? Describe the battle at Chippewa. 5. What can you tell of a battle near Niagara Falls?

Successful sortie at Fort Erie.

British march on Plattsburg.

able to carry away the heavy artillery which they had captured.¹ Brown and Scott being wounded,² the command devolved on Ripley, and on the following day [July 26] he withdrew to Fort Erie, where General Gaines, a senior officer, who arrived soon afterward, assumed the chief command.

6. Drummond again advanced with five thousand men, and on the 4th of August appeared before Fort Erie. He made an assault on the 15th, but was repulsed, with a loss of almost a thousand men. Very little was done by either party for nearly a month, when General Brown, who had assumed command again, ordered a sortie [Sept. 17] from the fort. It was successful; and the Americans pressed forward, destroyed the advanced works of the besiegers, and drove them toward Chippewa. Informed, soon afterward, that General Izard³ was approaching with reinforcements for Brown, Drummond retired to Fort George.⁴ The Americans abandoned and destroyed Fort Erie in November [Nov. 5], and crossing the river, went into winter quarters at Buffalo, Black Rock, and Batavia.



NIAGARA FRONTIER.

7. Very little of moment transpired in the vicinity of Lake Champlain until toward the close of summer, when General Izard⁵ marched [Aug., 1814] from Plattsburg, with five thousand men, to reinforce General Brown⁶ on the Niagara frontier, leaving General Macomb⁷ in command, with only fifteen hundred men. Taking advantage of this circumstance, General Prevost, with fourteen thousand men, chiefly Wellington's veterans, marched for Plattsburg. During the Spring and Summer, the British and Americans had each constructed a small fleet on Lake Champlain, and these were now ready for operations; the former under Commodore Downie, and the latter under Commodore M'Donough.⁸

8. Prevost arrived near Plattsburg on the 6th of September, when Macomb's little army, and quite a large body of militia, under General Mooers, retired to the south side of the Saranac, and prepared to dispute its passage.

1. After the Americans had withdrawn, a party of the British returned and carried off their artillery. This event was so magnified in the British account of the battle, as to make the victory appear on the side of the British.

2. Drummond and Riall were also wounded. General Scott led the advance in the engagement, and for an hour maintained a most desperate conflict, when he was reinforced. It was quite dark, and General Riall and his suite were made prisoners by the gallant Major Jessup. A British battery [note 2, page 110] upon an eminence did terrible execution, for it swept the whole field. This was assailed and captured by a party under Colonel Miller, who replied, when asked if he could accomplish it, "I'll try, sir." Three times the British attempted to recapture this battery; in the last attempt Drummond was wounded.

3. Verse 7, page 295.

4. Verse 11, page 289.

5. George Izard was born in South Carolina in 1777, and made military life his profession. After the war he left the army. He was Governor of Arkansas Territory in 1825, and died at Little Rock, Ark., in 1828.

6. Verse 4, page 294.

7. Alexander Macomb was born at Detroit in 1782, and entered the army at the age of seventeen years. He was made a brigadier in 1814. In 1835 he was commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States, and died in 1841.

8. Thomas M'Donough was a native of Delaware. He was twenty-eight years of age at the time of the engagement at Plattsburg. The State of New York gave him one thousand acres of land on Plattsburg Bay, for his services. He died in 1825, at the age of thirty-nine years.

Battles at Plattsburg.

Troops on the sea-coast.

The British in Maryland.

by the invaders. On the morning of the 11th, the British fleet came around Cumberland Head, with a fair wind, and attacked M'Donough's squadron in Plattsburg Bay. At the same time the British land troops opened a heavy cannonade upon the Americans. After a severe engagement of two hours and twenty minutes, M'Donough became victor, and the whole British fleet was surrendered to him.¹ The land force fought until dark, and every attempt of the British to cross the Saranac was bravely resisted. During the evening, Prevost hastily retreated, leaving his sick and wounded, and a large quantity of military stores, behind him. The British



COMMODORE M'DONOUGH.

loss, in killed, wounded, and deserted, from the 6th to the 11th, was about twenty-five hundred; that of the Americans, one hundred and twenty-one. The victory was applauded with the greatest enthusiasm throughout the land, and gave emphasis to the effect of another at Baltimore, which had been recently achieved.²

9. While the northern frontier was the scene of stirring military events, the sea-coast was not exempt from trouble. The principal ports, from New York to Maine, were blockaded by British war-vessels; and early in the Spring, a depredating warfare again³ commenced on the shores of the Chesapeake. These were but feebly defended by a small flotilla,⁴ under the veteran, Commodore Barney;⁵ and when, about the middle of August, a British squadron, of almost sixty sail, arrived in the bay, with six thousand troops, under General Ross, destined for the capture of Washington city, it proved of little value.

10. Ross landed [Aug. 19, 1814] at Benedict, on the Patuxent,⁶ with five thousand men, and marched toward Washington city.⁷ Barney's flotilla, lying higher up the stream, was abandoned and burned, and his marines joined the gathering land forces, under General Winder. Ross was one of Wellington's most active commanders, and Winder had only three thousand troops to oppose him, one half of whom were undisciplined militia. A sharp engagement took place [Aug. 24] at Bladensburg, a few miles from Washington city, when the militia fled, and Barney, fighting gallantly at the head of

1. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, one hundred and sixteen; the British one hundred and ninety-four. Among them was Commodore Downie, whose remains lie under a monument at Plattsburg.

2. Verse 12, page 297.

3. Verse 20, page 282.

4. It consisted of a cutter (a vessel with one mast), two gun-boats [verse 9, page 276], and nine barges, or boats propelled by oars.

5. Born in Baltimore, 1759. He entered the naval service of the Revolution in 1775, and was active during the whole war. He bore the American flag to the French National Convention in 1796, and entered the French service. He returned to America in 1800, took part in the war of 1812, and died at Pittsburg in 1818.

6. About twenty-five miles from its mouth.

7. Another small division was sent up the Potomac, but effected little else than plunder.

QUESTIONS.—8. What occurred on land, at Plattsburg? What occurred on the lake near Plattsburg? What was the result of the battle? 9. What occurred on the sea-coast? What was done in Chesapeake Bay? 10. What did the British under Ross do? What battle occurred? and what outrages were committed?

Washington city burned.

Unsuccessful attack on Baltimore.

Attack on Stonington.

his seamen and marines, was made prisoner.¹ Ross pushed forward to Washington city the same day, burned [Aug. 24] the Capitol, President's house, and other public and private buildings, and then hastily retreated [Aug. 25] to his shipping.

11. Flushed with success, Ross proceeded to attack Baltimore, where the veteran, General Smith,² was in command. He landed [Sept. 12, 1814] with almost eight thousand troops, at North Point, fourteen miles from the city, while a portion of the fleet went up the Patapsco to bombard Fort M'Henry. He immediately pressed forward, but was soon met by the advanced corps of General Stricker, and a slight skirmish ensued. Ross was killed, and the command devolved on Colonel Brooke, who continued to advance. A severe battle now commenced, which continued an hour and a quarter, when the Americans fell back, in good order, toward the city. In this engagement the British lost about three hundred men; the Americans one hundred and sixty-three. Both parties slept on their arms³ that night; and the following morning [Sept. 13], the British advanced as if to attack the city.

12. The fleet, in the mean while, had opened its bombs and cannons upon the fort, whose garrison, under Major Armistead, made a most gallant defense. The bombardment continued most of the day and night, and no less than fifteen hundred bomb-shells were thrown. The people in the city felt in immediate danger of an attack from the land troops; but toward the morning of the 14th, these silently embarked, and the disheartened and discomfited enemy withdrew.⁴ This defense was hailed as an important victory.

13. During the Summer, the whole coast eastward from Sandy Hook⁵ was greatly annoyed by small British squadrons, which captured many American coasting vessels, and sometimes menaced towns with bombardment. Finally, in August [1814], Commodore Hardy appeared before Stonington, and opened a terrible storm of bomb-shells and rockets⁶ upon the town. The attack continued four successive days [Aug. 9-12], and several times land forces attempted to debark, but were always driven back by the militia. The object of this unprovoked attack seems to have been, to entice the American forces from New London, so that the British shipping might go up the Thames, and destroy some American frigates, then near Norwich. The expedition signally failed.

1. Until the latest moment, it was not known whether Washington or Baltimore was to be attacked. Winder's troops, employed for the defense of both cities, were divided. The loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and by desertion, was almost a thousand men; that of the Americans was about a hundred killed and wounded, and a hundred and twenty taken prisoners. The President and his cabinet were at Bladensburg when the British approached, but returned to the city when the conflict began, and narrowly escaped capture.

2. Samuel Smith, the commander of Fort Mifflin [verse 16, page 218] in 1777. He was born in Pennsylvania in 1752; entered the Revolutionary army in 1776; afterward represented Baltimore in Congress; and died in April, 1839.

3. Note 2, page 227.

4. General Smith estimated the entire loss of the British, in their attack upon Baltimore, at "between six and seven hundred."

5. Verse 5, page 200. It is a low sand-bank, stretching along the shore of New Jersey.

6. Rockets used for setting fire to towns and shipping, are made similar to the common "sky-rocket," but filled with inflammable substances, which are scattered over buildings and the rigging of ships.

QUESTIONS.—11. What occurred near Baltimore? 12. What can you tell of a bombardment? How did it terminate? 13. What occurred on the New England coasts?

Difficulties in Florida.

Capture of Pensacola.

British at New Orleans.

14. We have already considered Jackson's successful warfare upon the *Creek* Indians.¹ In the course of the Summer of 1814, he wrung from them a treaty which completed their downfall as a nation,² and the war at the South was considered ended. But the common enemy, favored by the Spaniards at Pensacola, soon appeared. A British squadron, cruising in the Gulf of Mexico, took possession of the forts at Pensacola, by permission of the Spanish authorities, and there fitted out an expedition against Fort Bower (now Fort Morgan), at the entrance to Mobile Bay,³ then commanded by Major Lawrence. Among the British land troops on the occasion, were two hundred *Creek* warriors. The attack was made on the afternoon of the 15th of September. The British were repulsed, with the loss of a ship of war and many men.

15. General Jackson held the Spanish governor of Florida responsible for sheltering the enemies of the United States. Failing to obtain any satisfactory guaranty for the future, Jackson marched from Mobile with about two thousand Tennessee militia and some *Choctaw* warriors, against Pensacola. He stormed [Nov. 7, 1814] the town, drove the British to their shipping, and finally from the harbor, and made the governor beg for mercy, and surrender Pensacola and all its military works, unconditionally. The British fleet disappeared the next day [Nov. 8], and the victor retraced his steps [Nov. 9]. On his arrival at Mobile, Jackson found messages from New Orleans, begging his immediate march thither, for the British in the Gulf of Mexico, reinforced by thousands of troops from England, were about to invade Louisiana.

16. Jackson instantly obeyed the summons. He found the people of New Orleans in the greatest alarm [Dec. 2], but his presence soon restored quiet and confidence. He declared martial law, and soon placed the city in a state of comparative security;⁴ and when the British squadron, bearing General Packenham and about twelve thousand troops, many of them Wellington's veterans, entered Lake Borgne, he felt confident of success, even against such fearful odds.

17. The British fleet captured a flotilla of American gun-boats in Lake Borgne⁵ [Dec. 14]; and eight days afterward [Dec. 22], about twenty-four hundred of the enemy reached the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans. An American detachment, led by Jackson in person, fell upon their camp the following night [Dec. 23, 1814], but withdrew, after killing or

1. Verse 15, page 230.

2. They agreed to give up a large portion of their country as indemnity for the expenses of the war; to allow the United States to make roads through the remainder; and also, not to hold intercourse with any British or Spanish posts.

3. On the east side, about thirty miles south from Mobile.

4. All the inlets, or bayous, were obstructed, and the banks of the Mississippi were so fortified as to prevent the ascent of vessels. A battery was erected on Chef Menteur, at the entrance to Lake Ponchartrain.

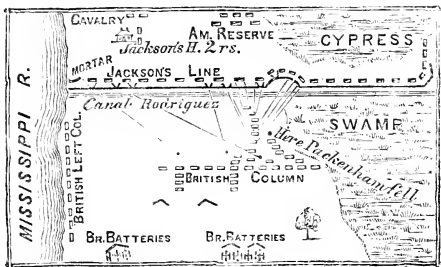
5. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, about forty; the British, about three hundred. The attack was made by the enemy in about forty barges, conveying twelve hundred men. The American gun-boats were under the command of Lieutenant (late Commodore) Thomas Ap Catesby Jones.

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of trouble with the British in Florida? 15. How did Jackson regard and treat the Spanish authorities in Florida? What occurred at Pensacola? What caused Jackson's hasty departure? 16. What caused alarm at New Orleans? What measures did Jackson adopt? 17. What did the British do? What skirmish took place? and what was the result?

Battle of New Orleans.

wounding four hundred of the British. The Americans lost about one hundred.

18. Jackson now concentrated his troops (about three thousand in number, and mostly militia) within a line of intrenchments cast up four miles below the city,¹ where they were twice cannonaded by the British, but without much effect. Finally, on the morning of the 8th of January, 1815, Packenham advanced with his whole force, numbering more than twelve thousand men, to make a general assault. Reinforced by about three thousand militia (chiefly Kentuckians), Jackson now had six thousand expert marksmen concealed behind his intrenchments, or stationed at the batteries on his extended line. When the British had approached within reach of these batteries, the Americans opened a terrible cannonade. Yet the enemy continued to advance until within range of the American rifles. Volley after volley then poured a deadly storm of lead upon the invaders. The British column soon wavered, General Packenham fell, and the entire army fled in dismay, leaving seven hundred dead, and more than a thousand wounded, on the field. The fugitives hastened to their encampment [Jan. 9], and finally to their ships [Jan. 18], and escaped.² The Americans were so safely intrenched, that they lost only seven killed, and six wounded. It was the crowning victory,³ and last land battle of moment of the SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.⁴



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

Volley after volley then poured a deadly storm of lead upon the invaders. The British column soon wavered, General Packenham fell, and the entire army fled in dismay, leaving seven hundred dead, and more than a thousand wounded, on the field. The fugitives hastened to their encampment [Jan. 9], and finally to their ships [Jan. 18], and escaped.² The Americans were so safely intrenched, that they lost only seven killed, and six wounded. It was the crowning victory,³ and last land battle of moment of the SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.⁴

19. The victory at New Orleans made the country vocal with rejoicings, and soon afterward, the proclamation of peace [Feb. 18, 1815] spread a smile of happiness over the whole Union. As early as December, 1813, the British government had sent overtures of peace to that of the United States.⁵ They

1. These intrenchments were a mile in length, extending from the river so far into the swamp, as to be impassable at the extremity. Along this line were eight distinct batteries, with heavy cannons; and on the opposite side of the river was a battery with fifteen cannons.

2. While these operations were in progress on the Mississippi, the British fleet had not been inactive. Some vessels bombarded Fort St. Philip, below New Orleans, on the 11th of January, and continued the attack for eight days without success. In the mean while, Admiral Cockburn was pursuing his detestable warfare along the Carolina and Georgia coasts, menacing Charleston and Savannah with destruction, and landing at obscure points to plunder the inhabitants.

3. During 1814 the war continued on the ocean, yet there were no battles of great importance. The *Peacock* captured the British brig *Epervier*, on the 29th of April, off the coast of Florida. The *Wasp*, Captain Blakely, also made a successful cruise, but after capturing her thirteenth prize, disappeared, and was never heard of again. Probably lost in a storm. The *President*, Commodore Decatur, was captured off Long Island, on the 16th of January, 1815, and on the 20th of February following, the *Constitution*, Commodore Stewart, had a severe action with the British frigate *Cyane*, and sloop-of-war *Lerant*, and captured both. Soon after this, the British brig *Penguin* was captured, but the proclamation of peace now ended the war.

4. Note 4, pag. 251.

5. The British schooner *Bramble* arrived at Annapolis, Maryland, on the 1st of January, 1814, bearing a flag of truce, and a proposition for peace. On the 6th, the President informed Congress of the fact.

QUESTIONS.—18. What preparations did Jackson make for attack? What number of soldiers had each army? What can you tell of the battle of New Orleans and its results? 19. What were the effects of the battle of New Orleans? What was done toward a treaty of peace?

Treaty of Peace.

Hartford Convention.

War with Algiers.

were promptly met by the latter in a conciliatory spirit, and commissioners were appointed by the two powers to negotiate a treaty.¹ They met in the city of Ghent, in Belgium, in the month of August, 1814, and on the 24th of December following, a treaty was signed, which both governments speedily ratified.

20. During these negotiations, the war, as we have seen, was vigorously prosecuted, and the opposition of the Federalists grew more intense. It reached its culmination in December, when delegates, appointed by several New England legislatures, met [Dec. 15, 1814] in convention at Hartford, for the purpose of considering the grievances of the people, caused by a state of war, and to devise speedy measures for its termination. This convention, whose sessions were secret, was denounced as treasonable, but patriotism appears to have prevailed in its councils, whatever may have been the designs of some. Its plans for disunion or secession, if any were formed, were rendered abortive soon after its adjournment, for, on the 18th of February, 1815, peace was proclaimed by the President, and then a day of national thanksgiving to the Almighty, for the blessed event, was observed throughout the Union.

21. The contest with England had but just ended, when the United States was compelled to engage in a brief

WAR WITH ALGIERS.

As we have observed,² the United States had paid tribute to Algiers since 1795. Every year, as his strength increased, the ruler of that Barbary State became more insolent,³ and finally, believing that the United States navy had been almost annihilated by the British, he made a pretense for renewing depredations upon American commerce, in violation of the treaty. Our government, determined to pay tribute no longer, accepted the challenge, and in May, 1815, Commodore Decatur⁴ proceeded with a squadron to the Mediterranean, to humble the pirate.

22. Fortunately, the Algerine fleet was cruising in the Mediterranean, in search of American vessels. On the 17th of June [1815], Decatur met and captured the frigate of the Algerine admiral, and another vessel with almost six hundred men, and then sailed for the bay of Algiers. He immediately demanded [June 28] the instant surrender of all American prisoners, full indemnification for all property destroyed, and absolute relinquishment of all claims to tribute from the United States, in future. Informed of the fate of

1. The United States commissioners were John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russel, and Albert Gallatin [note 1, page 273]. Those of Great Britain were Admiral Lord Gambier, Henry Goulbourn, and William Adams. These commissioners are all dead. Mr. Clay, who died in 1852, was the last survivor.

2. Verse 11, page 269.

3. Verse 3, page 273. In 1812, the Dey compelled Mr. Lear, the American consul [verse 5, page 274], to pay him \$27,000, for the safety of himself, family, and a few Americans, under the penalty of all being made slaves.

4. Verse 4, page 274.

QUESTIONS.—20. What did the Federalists do? What can you tell of a secret convention? What of peace? 21. What other war did the United States engage in? What can you tell of the relations between the United States and Algiers? What did the former resolve to do? 22. What can you tell of Commodore Decatur's exploits in the Mediterranean? What did he accomplish?

Decatur in the Mediterranean.

Election and inauguration of Monroe.

a part of his fleet, the Dey¹ yielded to the humiliating terms, and signed a treaty [June 30] to that effect.

23. Decatur then sailed for Tunis,² and demanded and received [July, 1815] from the bashaw³ forty-six thousand dollars, in payment for American vessels which he had allowed the English to capture in his harbor. The same demand, on the same account, was made upon the bashaw of Tripoli,⁴ and Decatur received [August] twenty-five thousand dollars from him, and the restoration of prisoners. This cruise to the Mediterranean gave full security to American commerce in those seas, and greatly elevated the character of the government of the United States in the opinion of Europe. Now was accomplished, in a single cruise, what the combined powers of Europe dared not to attempt.

24. The eventful administration of Mr. Madison now drew to a close, and very little of general interest occurred, except the chartering of a new United States Bank,⁵ and the admission of Indiana [Dec., 1816] into the Union of States. In the autumn of 1816, James Monroe of Virginia, who was Madison's Secretary of War for a few months, was elected President of the United States, and Daniel D. Tompkins,⁶ of New York, Vice-President.⁷

SECTION VII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION. [1817-1825.]

1. Mr. Monroe⁸ was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1817, at Congress Hall, in Washington city, the Capitol having been destroyed by the British.⁹ He selected his cabinet from the Republican party;¹⁰ and never, since the formation of the government, had a President been surrounded with abler counselors.¹¹ Monroe was a judicious and reliable man; and when we reflect upon the condition of the country at that time—in a transition state from war

1. Verse 14, page 269.

2. Verse 3, page 273.

3. Verse 5, page 274.

4. Verse 5, page 274.

5. The first, as we have observed [verse 6, page 266], was chartered in 1791. The charter expired in 1811. A project for a new bank was presented to the consideration of Congress, at the session of 1815-16, and on the 10th of April, 1816, a charter for twenty years, with a capital of \$35,000,000, was granted. The existence of the bank expired with this charter in 1836.

6. Born in 1774. He was a prominent Democrat when Jefferson was elected [verse 6, page 272] President of the United States. He was Chief-Justice of New York, and also Governor of the State. He died on Staten Island, in 1825.

7. Mr. Monroe's election was by an almost unanimous vote. Only one vote (in New Hampshire) was cast against him.

8. James Monroe was born in Virginia in 1759. He entered the patriot army in 1776, and rose to the rank of captain. He was a member of Congress in 1783, of the U. S. Senate in 1791, Governor of Virginia in 1799, and minister to France and England in 1803. He died in New York on the 4th of July, 1831.

9. Verse 10, page 296.

10. Verse 9, page 267.

11. John Quincy Adams, Secretary of State; William H. Crawford, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Calhoun, Secretary of War; Benjamin Crowninshield, Secretary of the Navy; and William Wirt, Attorney-General. He offered the War Department to the venerable Governor Shelby, of Kentucky [verse 8, page 288], who declined it. Calhoun was appointed in December, 1817. Crowninshield, who was in Madison's cabinet, continued in office until the close of November, 1818, when Smith Thompson, of New York, was appointed in his place.

QUESTIONS.—23. What did Decatur accomplish at Tunis and Tripoli? What did his cruise effect? 24. What notable events occurred during the remainder of Madison's administration? 1. When and where was Monroe inaugurated President of the United States? Why there? What was the character of his cabinet? What was the condition of the country?

Emigration to the West.

Buccaneers in the Gulf of Mexico.



MONROE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

and confusion to peace and order—his elevation to the presidency seems to have been a national blessing.

2. During the war, a large number of manufacturing establishments had been nurtured into vigorous life by great demands and high prices; but when peace returned, and European manufactures flooded the country at very low prices, wide-spread ruin ensued, and thousands of men were compelled to seek other employments. The apparent misfortune was a mercy in disguise, for the nation. Beyond the Alleghanies, millions of fertile acres, possessing *real* wealth, were awaiting the tiller's industry and skill.¹ Agriculture beckoned the bankrupts to her fields. Homes in the East were deserted; emigration flooded over the mountains in a broad and vigorous stream; and before the close of Monroe's administration, four new sovereign States had started into being² from the wilderness of the great West, and one in the East.³

3. The first year of Monroe's administration was chiefly distinguished by the admission [Dec., 1817] of a portion of the Mississippi Territory into the Union, as a State,⁴ and the suppression of two piratical and slave dealing establishments near the southern and south-western borders of the republic. One of them was at the mouth of the St. Mary, Florida, and the other at Galveston, Texas. In addition to a clandestine trade in slaves, these buccaneers,⁵ under pretense of authority from one of the Spanish republics of South America,⁶ were endeavoring to liberate the Floridas from the dominion of Spain.⁷ In November, 1817, United States troops proceeded to take pos-

1. The progress of the States and Territories west of the Alleghanies [note 7, page 14] in wealth and population, is truly wonderful. Fifty years ago, those immense lakes, Ontario, Erie, Michigan, Huron, and Superior, were entirely without commerce, and an Indian's canoe was almost the only craft seen upon them. In 1853, the value of traffic upon these waters and the navigable rivers, was estimated at \$562,000,000. See note 1, page 14. And never was the growth of the great West more rapid than at the present.

2. Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Missouri.

3. Maine.
4. The Territory was divided. The western portion was made a State, and the eastern was erected into a Territory, named Alabama, after its principal river. It included a portion of Georgia, given for a consideration. See note 4, page 351.

5. Note 3, page 119.
6. During the first quarter of the present century, nearly all of the countries in Central and South America, which, since the conquests of Cortez [verse 23, page 33] and Pizarro [note 5, page 34], had been under the Spanish yoke, rebelled, and forming republics, became independent of Spain. It was the policy of our government to encourage these republics, by preventing the re-establishment of monarchical power on the American continent. This is known as "The Monroe Doctrine."

7. Verse 18, page 32.

QUESTIONS.—2. What caused wide-spread commercial ruin? What good ensued? 3. What events distinguished the first year of Monroe's administration? Can you relate the circumstances?

Indian War at the South.

Pensacola again seized.

Cession of Florida.

session of Amelia Island, the rendezvous of the pirates on the Florida coast, and the Galveston establishment soon disappeared for want of support.

4. Another difficulty arose at about the same time. A motley host, composed chiefly of *Seminole* Indians,¹ *Creeks* dissatisfied with the treaty of 1814,² and runaway negroes, commenced murderous depredations upon the frontier settlements of Georgia and the Alabama Territory, toward the close of 1817. General Gaines³ was sent to suppress these outrages, and to remove every Indian from the Territory which the *Creeks* had ceded to the United States in 1814. His presence aroused the fiercest ire of the Indians, who, it was ascertained, were incited to hostilities by British subjects protected by the Spanish authorities in Florida. Gaines was placed in a perilous position, when General Jackson, with a thousand mounted Tennessee volunteers, hastened [Dec., 1817] to his aid.

5. Jackson marched [March, 1818] into Florida, took possession [April] of the weak Spanish post of St. Mark, at the head of Appalachee Bay,⁴ and sent the civil authorities and troops to Pensacola.⁵ At St. Mark he secured the persons of Alexander Arbuthnot and Robert C. Ambrister,⁶ who, on being tried [April 26] by a court-martial, were found guilty of being the principal emissaries among the southern Indians, inciting them to hostilities. They were both executed on the 30th of the same month. Jackson afterward seized Pensacola [May 24], captured the fortress of Barancas [May 27] at the entrance to Pensacola Bay, and sent the Spanish authorities and troops to Havana.

6. General Jackson was much censured at first for this invasion of the Territory of a friendly power, and his summary proceedings there. But he was sustained by the government and the majority of the people. These measures also led to the important treaty⁷ at Washington, in February, 1819, by which Spain ceded to the United States the whole of the Floridas and the adjacent islands, and that country was erected into a Territory in February, 1821. General Jackson was appointed [March, 1821] the first governor of the newly-acquired domain.

7. While the treaty concerning Florida was pending, the southern portion of a vast region of the remaining Territory of Louisiana, extending westward of that State to the Pacific ocean, which was erected into the "Missouri Ter-

1. Verse 4, page 22.

3. Edmund P. Gaines was born in Virginia, in 1777. He entered the army in 1799, and rose gradually until he was made major-general for his gallantry at Fort Erie [verse 5, page 294], in 1814. He remained in the army until his death, in 1849.

4. Verse 24, page 34.

2. Verse 14, page 298.

5. Verse 14, page 298.

6. Arbuthnot was a Scotch trader from New Providence, one of the Bahama Islands. He had a store on the Suwaney river, where many of the hostile Indians and negroes congregated. Ambrister was an Englishman, about twenty-one years of age, who had borne a lieutenant's commission in the British service. He was also at the Suwaney settlements, and put himself at the head of the Indians and negroes.

7. Made by John Quincy Adams for the United States, and Don Onís, the Spanish ambassador at Washington. Hitherto, the United States had claimed a large portion of Texas, as a part of Louisiana. By this treaty, Texas was retained by the Spaniards. The cession was made as an equivalent for all claims against Spain for injury done the American commerce to an amount not exceeding \$5,000,000. This treaty was not finally ratified until February, 1821.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell of border warfare at the South? What was done to suppress it? 5. What did Jackson do in Florida? Who caused trouble there? What rigorous measures were carried out? 6. How were Jackson's proceedings regarded? What was his plea? What was the result?

Admission of new States.

Missouri Compromise.

Pirates in the West Indies.

ritory" in 1812, was formed into a government [1819], and called Arkansas. In December, the same year, Alabama was admitted into the Union; and at the same time, Missouri and Maine were making overtures for a similar position. Maine was admitted in March, 1820,¹ but the entrance of Missouri was delayed until August, 1821, by a violent and protracted debate which sprung up between the North and the South on the subject of the admission of slavery, into that state.

8. During the session of 1818-19, a bill was introduced into Congress, which contained a provision forbidding the introduction of slavery or involuntary servitude into the new State of Missouri, when admitted. Violent debates arose, and the subject was postponed until another session. The whole country was agitated by disputes on the subject; and when it was again brought before Congress [Nov. 23, 1820], angry disputes and long discussions ensued. A compromise was finally agreed to [Feb. 28, 1821], by which slavery should be allowed in Missouri and in all territory south of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude (southern boundary of Missouri), and prohibited in all the territory northerly and westerly of these limits. This is known as *The Missouri Compromise*.² Under this compromise Missouri was admitted [Aug. 21, 1821], and the excitement on the subject ceased. The confederation was now composed of twenty-four sovereign States.³

9. During the pendency of the Missouri question, Mr. Monroe was re-elected President [1820], and Mr. Tompkins⁴ Vice-President, by an almost unanimous vote, the old Federal party,⁵ as an organization, being nearly extinct. His administration had been very popular, and the country was blessed with general prosperity. Two other measures, besides those already noticed, received the warmest approbation of the people. One made provision, in some degree, for the surviving officers and soldiers of the Revolution, and their families; the other was an arrangement made with Great Britain [Oct., 1818], by which American citizens were allowed to share with those of that realm, in the valuable Newfoundland fisheries.⁶

10. Very little of general importance, aside from the rapid progress of the country, occurred during the remainder of Monroe's administration, except the suppression of piracy among the West India Islands, and the visit of General La Fayette⁷ to the United States, as the nation's guest. In 1822, a small American squadron destroyed more than twenty piratical vessels on the coast of Cuba, and the following year the work was completed, by a larger force, under Commodore Porter.⁸

11. La Fayette arrived at New York, from France, in August, 1824, and

1. Verse 31, page 102.

3. Illinois was admitted as a State in December, 1818.

4. Verse 24, page 301.

6. Verse 15, page 340. At the same time, the northern boundary of the United States, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, was defined.

7. Verse 12, page 216.

2. Verse 8, page 347.

5. Verse 9, page 267.

8. Verse 21, page 293.

QUESTIONS.—7. What new Territory was formed? and how? What new States sought admission into the Union? What caused agitation? 8. What can you tell about the admission of Missouri into the Union? What compromise was made? and what did it effect? 9. What political changes occurred? What was the character of Monroe's administration? What measures were popular? 10. What was done to suppress piracy?

Visit of La Fayette.

Election and inauguration of J. Q. Adams.

during about eleven succeeding months, he made a tour of over five thousand miles, throughout the United States. He was everywhere greeted with the warmest enthusiasm, and was often met by men who had served under him in the first War for Independence. When he was prepared to return, an American frigate, named *Brandywine*, in compliment to him,¹ was sent by the United States government to convey him back to France.

12. In the Autumn of 1824, the people were called upon to select a successor to Mr. Monroe. Four candidates, representing the different sections of the Union,² were put in nomination. The result was, that the choice devolved upon the House of Representatives, for the second time.³ That body chose John Quincy Adams, President. John C. Calhoun had been chosen Vice-President by the people. The election and final choice produced great excitement throughout the country, and engendered political rancor equal to that which prevailed during the administration of the elder Adams.⁴



J. Q. ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

SECTION VIII.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1825-1829.]

1. John Quincy Adams⁵ was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1825. The Senate being in session, he immediately nominated his cabinet officers, and all but one were confirmed by a unanimous vote of that body.⁶

2. The political views of Mr. Adams were consonant with those of Mr. Monroe, and

1. His first battle for freedom in America, was that on the *Brandywine*, in September, 1777, where he was wounded in the leg. Note 4, page 217.

2. John Quincy Adams in the *East*, William H. Crawford in the *South*, Andrew Jackson and Henry Clay in the *West*. 3. Note 4, page 272. 4. Verse 6, page 272.

5. John Quincy Adams, son of President John Adams, was born at Quincy, Massachusetts, in 1767, and at the time of his death, his home residence was in the old family mansion, so long occupied by his father. He was in public life in the service of his country, from his youth, as legislator at home, and minister abroad. He was a fine scholar and sound statesman, and a warm-hearted philanthropist. He died at Washington city, in 1848, while a member of the House of Representatives.

6. Henry Clay, Secretary of State; Richard Rush, Secretary of the Treasury; James Barbour, Secretary of War; Samuel L. Southard (continued in office), Secretary of the Navy; and William Wirt (continued), Attorney-General. There was considerable opposition in the Senate to the confirmation of Henry Clay's nomination. He had been charged with defeating the election of General Jackson, by giving his influence to Mr. Adams, on condition that he should be appointed his Secretary of State. This, however, was only a bubble on the surface of political strife, and had no truthful substance. In the Senate, there were twenty-seven votes in favor, and fourteen against confirming the nomination of Mr. Clay.

QUESTIONS.—11. What distinguished man visited the United States? How was he received? and how sent home? 12. What occurred in the Autumn of 1824? What was the result of the election of President? 1. What of Mr. Adams's inauguration and appointments?

Adams's administration.

Singular coincidence.

Erie Canal.

the foreign and domestic policy of his administration was generally conformable to those views. The amity which existed between the United States and foreign governments, and the absence of serious domestic troubles, made the administration of Mr. Adams a remarkably quiet one. Thoroughly acquainted with all the public interests, and as thoroughly skilled in every art of diplomacy and jurisprudence, he managed the affairs of State with a fidelity and sagacity which command our warmest approbation.

3. The most exciting topic, at the beginning of Adams's administration [1825], was a controversy between the Federal government and the chief magistrate of Georgia, concerning the lands of the *Creek* Indians, and the removal of those aboriginals from the territory of that State. Governor Troup, impatient at the tardiness of the United States in extinguishing Indian titles and removing the remnants of the tribes, according to stipulation,¹ assumed the right to do it himself. The United States took the attitude of defenders of the Indians, and, for a time, the matter bore a serious aspect. The difficulties were finally settled, and the *Creeks*² and *Cherokees*³ gradually removed to the rich wilderness beyond the Mississippi.⁴

4. The fiftieth anniversary of American Independence, which occurred on the 4th of July, 1826, was distinguished by a most remarkable coincidence. On that day, and almost at the same hour, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson expired. They were both members of the committee who had framed the Declaration of Independence,⁵ both signed it,⁶ both had been foreign ministers,⁷ both had been Vice-Presidents, and then Presidents of the United States, and both had lived to a great age.⁸ These coincidences, and the manner and time of their death, produced a profound impression upon the public mind.

1. When Georgia relinquished her claims to portions of the Mississippi Territory [note 4, page 302], the Federal government agreed to purchase, for that State, the Indian lands within its borders, "whenever it could be peaceably done upon reasonable terms." The *Creeks*, who, with their neighbors, the *Cherokees*, were beginning to practice the arts of civilized life, refused to sell their lands. The Governor of Georgia demanded the immediate fulfilment of the contract. He caused a survey of the lands to be made, and prepared to distribute them by lottery, to the citizens of that State. The Federal government interfered in behalf of the Indians, and a civil war was menaced.

2. Verse 2, page 22.

3. Verse 1, page 20.

4. The great Erie canal, in the State of New York, was completed in 1825. It was the most important and stupendous public improvement ever undertaken in the United States. Its earliest advocate was Jesse Hawley, who, in a series of articles published in 1807 and 1808, signed *Hercules*, set forth the feasibility and great importance of such a connection of the waters of Lake Erie and the Hudson river. His views were warmly seconded by Gouverneur Morris [page 163], Dewitt Clinton, and a few others, and its final accomplishment was the result, chiefly, of the untiring efforts, privately and officially, of the latter gentleman, while a member of the Legislature, and Governor of the State. It is three hundred and sixty-three miles in length, and the first estimate of its cost was \$5,000,000. Portions of it have since been enlarged, to meet the increasing demands of its commerce; and in 1853, the people of the State decided, by a general vote, to have it enlarged its entire length. Dewitt Clinton, its chief patron, was a son of General James Clinton, of Orange county, New York. He was born in March, 1769. He was Mayor of New York ten years, and was elected Governor of the State in 1817, and again in 1820 and 1826. He died suddenly while in that office, in February, 1828.

5. Verse 10, page 202.

6. Jefferson was its author, and Adams its principal supporter in the Continental Congress.

7. Note 4, page 160, and note 3, page 265.

8. Mr. Adams died at Quincy, Massachusetts, at the age of almost ninety-one years. Mr. Jefferson died at Monticello, Virginia, at the age of almost eighty-three years.



DEWITT CLINTON.

QUESTIONS.—2. What was the character of his administration? and what did he accomplish? 3. What serious difficulty occurred in 1825? How was it settled? 4. What occurred on the fiftieth anniversary of the independence of the United States?

5. So peaceful and prosperous were the remaining years of Mr. Adams's administration, that public affairs present very few topics for the pen of the general historian.¹ The most important movement in foreign policy, was the appointment, early in 1826, of commissioners² to attend a congress of representatives of the South American republics,³ held at Panama [June, 1826], on the Pacific coast. This appointment produced much discussion in Congress, chiefly on party grounds. The result of the congress at Panama was comparatively unimportant, so far as the United States were concerned, and appears to have had very little influence on the affairs of South America.

6. It was during the administration of Mr. Adams that the policy of protecting home manufactures, by imposing a heavy duty upon foreign articles of the same kind, assumed the shape of a settled national policy, and the foundations of the *American System*,⁴ as that policy is called, were then laid. It was very popular with the manufacturers of the North; but the cotton-growing States, which found a ready market for the raw material in England, opposed it. A tariff law, passed in 1828 [May 15], was very obnoxious to the Southern people.⁵ They denounced it as oppressive and unconstitutional, and it led to menaces of serious evils in 1831 and 1832.⁶

7. Another presidential election was held in the Autumn of 1828, and resulted in the election of Andrew Jackson for President, and John C. Calhoun⁷ (re-elected) Vice-President,



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

1. An event occurred in 1825 which produced great excitement throughout the country, and led to the formation of a new, and, for a time, quite a powerful political party. William Morgan, of western New York, announced his intention to publish a book, in which the secrets of Free Masonry were to be disclosed. He was suddenly seized at Canandaigua one evening, placed in a carriage, and was never heard of afterward. Some Free Masons were charged with his murder, and the report of an investigating committee, appointed by the New York State Legislature, confirmed the suspicion. The public mind was greatly agitated, and there was a disposition to exclude Free Masons from office. An Anti-Masonic party was formed, and its organization spread over several States. In 1831, a national Anti-Masonic convention was held at Philadelphia, and William Wirt, of Virginia, was nominated for the office of President of the United States. Although the party polled a considerable vote, it soon afterward disappeared.

2. R. C. Addison, and John Sargeant, commissioners, and William B. Rochester, of New York, their secretary.

3. Note 6, page 302.

4. The illiberal commercial policy of Great Britain caused tariff laws to be enacted by Congress as early as 1816, as retaliatory measures. In 1824, imposts were laid on foreign fabrics, with a view to encourage American manufactures. In July, 1827, a national convention was held at Harrisburg, in Pennsylvania, to discuss the subject of protective tariffs. Only four of the slave States sent delegates. The result of the convention was a memorial to Congress, asking an augmentation of duties on several articles then manufactured in the United States. The Secretary of the Treasury called attention to the subject in his Report in December, 1827. Congress took up the matter, and a Tariff Bill became a law in May following.

5. The chief articles on which heavy protective duties were laid, were woolen and cotton fabrics. At that time, the value of annual imports of cotton goods from Great Britain, was about \$8,000,000; that of woolen goods about the same. The exports to Great Britain, of cotton, rice, and tobacco, alone (the chief products of the southern States), were about \$24,000,000 annually. These producers feared a great diminution of their exports, by a tariff that should almost wholly prohibit the importation of three million of dollars' worth of British cotton and woolen fabrics, annually.

6. Verse 6, page 310.

7. John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, in 1782. He first appeared in Congress in 1811, and was always distinguished for his consistency, especially in his support of the institution of slavery, and the doctrine of State rights. He was a sound and incorruptible statesman, and commanded the thorough respect of the whole country. He died at Washington city, while a member of the United States Senate, in March, 1850.

QUESTIONS.—5. What important movement took place in 1826? 6. What national policy was established in 1828? What was thought of a tariff law? 7. What can you tell of a presidential election in 1828? What pleasing aspect was presented?

Election and inauguration of Jackson.

His character.

by large majorities. During the contest the people appeared to be on the verge of civil war, so violent was the party strife, and so malignant were the denunciations of the candidates. When it was over, perfect tranquillity prevailed, the people cheerfully acquiesced in the result, and our system of government was nobly vindicated before the world.

8. President Adams left to his successor a legacy of unexampled national prosperity, peaceful relations with all the world, a greatly diminished national debt, and a surplus of more than five millions of dollars in the public Treasury. During his administration, more than five millions of dollars had been distributed among the surviving soldiers of the Revolution.¹



JACKSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

SECTION IX.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1829-1837.]

1. General Jackson² was surrounded by several surviving officers and soldiers of the Revolution when, on the 4th of March, 1829, he was inaugurated President of the United States. The whole of President Adams's cabinet officers having resigned, Jackson immediately nominated his political friends for his counselors, and the Senate confirmed his choice.³

2. Jackson was possessed of strong passions, an uncorrupt heart, and an iron will. Honest and inexorable, he seized the helm of the ship of state with a patriot's hand, resolved to steer it according to his own conceptions of the meaning of his guiding chart, *The Constitution*,⁴ unmindful of the interference of friends or foes. His audacity amazed his friends, and alarmed his opponents; and no middle men existed. He was either thoroughly loved or thoroughly hated; and for eight years he braved the fierce tempests of

1. Verse 9, page 304.

2. Andrew Jackson was born of Protestant Irish parents, in North Carolina, in 1767. He took part in the War of the Revolution while yet a lad, and was always distinguished for his bravery and patriotism. The chief events in his military life have been given in preceding pages. On leaving the presidency, he retired to private life on his estate, near Nashville, Tennessee, where he died in June, 1845.

3. Martin Van Buren, Secretary of State; Samuel D. Ingham, Secretary of the Treasury; John H. Eaton, Secretary of War; John Branch, Secretary of the Navy; and John McPherson Berrian, Attorney-General. It having been determined to make the Postmaster-General a cabinet officer, William T. Barry was appointed to that station.

4. Page .

QUESTIONS.—8. What legacies did President Adams leave? 1. What can you tell of Jackson's inauguration and appointments? 2. What was Jackson's character? How did he manage public affairs?

Troubles with the Indians.

The United States Bank.

party strife,¹ domestic perplexities,² and foreign arrogance,³ with a skill and courage which demand the admiration of his countrymen, however much they may have differed with him in matters of national policy.

3. The claims of Georgia⁴ to lands held by the powerful *Cherokee* tribe⁵ of Indians, lying within the limits of that State, were among the first subjects of general interest which occupied the attention of the President. Jackson favored the views of the Georgia authorities, and the white people proceeded to take possession of the Indians' land. Trouble ensued, and civil war was again menaced. In March [March 30, 1832], the Supreme Court of the United States decided against the claims of Georgia; but that State, favored by the President, resisted the decision. The difficulty was finally adjusted; and in 1838, General Scott⁶ was sent thither, with several thousand troops, to remove the *Cherokees*,⁷ forcibly, if necessary, beyond the Mississippi. Through the kindness and conciliation of Scott, they were induced to migrate peacefully.

4. Another cause for public agitation appeared in 1832. In his first annual message [Dec., 1829], Jackson took strong ground against the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank,⁸ as not authorized by the Constitution. Congress decided that such an act would be both constitutional and expedient; and at the close of 1831, the proper officers of the bank petitioned for a renewal of its charter. Long debates ensued; and, finally, a bill for re-chartering the bank passed both Houses of Congress.⁹ Jackson vetoed¹⁰ it [July 10, 1832]; and as it failed to receive the support of two thirds of the members of both Houses, the Bank Charter expired, by limitation, in 1836. The commercial community, regarding a national bank as essential to their prosperity, were alarmed; and prophecies of panics and business revulsions, everywhere uttered, helped to accomplish their own speedy fulfilment.

5. During the Spring of 1832, portions of some of the western tribes,¹¹ residing in Wisconsin,¹² led by Black Hawk,¹³ a fiery *Sac* chief, commenced

1. Following the precedent of Jefferson [verse 1, page 272], he filled a large number of the public offices with his political friends, after removing the incumbents. These removals were for all causes; and during his administration, they amounted to six hundred and ninety out of several thousands, who were removable. The entire number of removals made by all the preceding presidents, from 1790 to 1829, was seventy-four.

2. Verse 3, page 309, and verse 7, page 310.

5. Verse 1, page 20.

3. Note 2, page 313.

4. Verse 3, page 306.

6. Note 2, page 295, and verse 18, page 326.

7. The *Cherokees* were involved in the difficulties of their *Creek* neighbors. They were defended against the encroachments of the Georgians during Adams's administration, but in December, 1829, they were crushed, as a nation, by an act of Congress. The *Cherokees* were more advanced in the arts of civilized life than the *Creeks*. They had churches, schools, and a printing-press, and were becoming successful agriculturists. It appeared cruel in the extreme to remove them from their fertile lands and the graves of their fathers, to the wilderness; yet it was, doubtless, a proper measure for insuring the prosperity of both races. But now, again, the tide of civilization is beating against their borders. Will they not be borne upon its powerful wave, further into the wilderness?

9. The Senate, on the 11th of June, by twenty-eight against twenty votes; and by the House of Representatives, on the 3d of July, by one hundred and seven against eighty-five.

10. That is, refused to sign it; and returned it to Congress with his reasons, for reconsideration by that body. The Constitution gives the President this power, and when exercised, a bill can not become law without his signature, unless it shall, on reconsideration, receive the votes of two thirds of the members of both Houses of Congress. See article I., section 7, of the Constitution, page 362.

11. *Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes*. See Chap. I., Sec. II., page 12.

12. This was not made a Territory until four years after this event.

13. Verse 5, page 14.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of the claims of Georgia to Indian lands? How were the difficulties adjusted? 4. What other event caused public agitation? What can you tell of the United States Bank and its relation to the business of the country? 5. What border war occurred in 1832? What of its progress and results?

Black Hawk war.

Nullification.

Jackson's proclamation.

[April, 1832] warfare upon the frontier settlements of Illinois. After several skirmishes with United States troops and Illinois militia, under General Atkinson,¹ the Indians were driven beyond the Mississippi. Black Hawk was captured [Aug., 1832], and taken to Washington city; and then, to impress his mind with the strength of the nation he had foolishly made war with, he was conducted through several of the eastern cities. This brief strife, which appeared quite alarming at one time, is known as the "Black Hawk war."²

6. The discontents of the cotton-growing States, produced by the tariff act of 1828,³ assumed a serious aspect in South Carolina, toward the close of 1832. An act of Congress, imposing additional duties upon foreign goods, passed in the Spring of 1832, led to a State convention in South Carolina, in November following. That assembly declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and, therefore, null and void. It resolved that duties should not be paid; and proclaimed that any attempt to enforce the collection of duties in the port of Charleston, by the general government, would be resisted by arms, and would produce the withdrawal of South Carolina from the Union. To support this determination, military preparations were immediately made, and civil war appeared inevitable.



HENRY CLAY.

7. The crisis was promptly met by President Jackson, in a proclamation [Dec. 10], which denied the right of a State to nullify *any* act of the Federal government; and warned those who were engaged in fomenting a rebellion, that the laws of the United States would be strictly enforced by military power, if necessary. This proclamation met the hearty response of every friend of the Union, of whatever party, and greatly increased that majority of the President's supporters, who had just re-elected him to the chief magistracy of the republic.⁴ The nullifiers⁵ of South Carolina, though led by such

able men as Calhoun⁶ and Hayne,⁷ were obliged to yield for the moment; yet their zeal and determination in the cause of State rights, were not abated. Every day the tempest-cloud of civil commotion grew darker and darker;

1. Henry Atkinson was a native of North Carolina, and entered the army as captain, in 18th. He was retained in the army after the second War for Independence, was made adjutant-general, and was finally appointed to the command of the Western Army. He died at Jefferson barracks, in June, 1842.

2. Black Hawk returned to his people, but was, with difficulty, restored to his former dignity of chief. He died in October, 1840, and was buried on the banks of the Mississippi.

3. Verse 6, page 307.
4. Jackson was re-elected by a large majority, in November, 1832, over Mr. Clay, the opposing candidate. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected Vice-President.

5. Those who favored the doctrine that a State might nullify the acts of the Federal government, were called *nullifiers*, and the dangerous doctrine itself was called *nullification*.

6. Note 7, page 30th. Mr. Calhoun had recently resigned the office of Vice-President of the United States, and was one of the ablest men in Congress. He asserted the State Rights doctrine [verse 15, page 96] boldly on the floor of Congress, and held the same opinion until his death.

7. Robert Y. Hayne was one of the ablest of southern statesmen. The debate between Hayne and Webster, in the Senate of the United States, is regarded as one of the most eminent, for sagacity and eloquence, that ever marked the proceedings of that body.

A compromise.

Removal of deposits from United States Bank.

Excitement.

until, at length, Henry Clay,¹ a warm friend of the American system,² came forward, in Congress [Feb. 12, 1833], with a bill, which provided for a gradual reduction of the obnoxious duties, during the succeeding ten years. This compromise measure was accepted by both parties. It became a law [March 3], and discord between the North and South soon ceased, but only for a season.

8. In his annual message to Congress, in December, 1832, Jackson recommended the removal of the public funds from the custody of the Bank of the United States.³ Congress, by a decided vote, refused to authorize the measure; but after its adjournment, the President assumed the responsibility of the act, and directed the Secretary of the Treasury to withdraw the government funds (then almost \$10,000,000), and deposit them in certain State banks. The Secretary refused compliance, and was dismissed from office. His successor obeyed the President;⁴ and in October, 1833, the act was accomplished. The effect produced was sudden and wide-spread commercial distress. The business of the country was plunged from the height of prosperity to the depths of adversity, because its intimate connection with the national Bank rendered any paralysis of the operations of that institution fatal to commercial activity. This fact confirmed the President in his opinion of the danger of such an enormous moneyed institution.

9. Intense excitement now prevailed throughout the country; yet the President, supported by the House of Representatives, persevered and triumphed. The State deposit banks loaned freely, confidence was gradually restored, and apparent general prosperity⁵ returned. The wisdom and forecast of General Jackson, in this matter, appear to be universally acknowledged. The necessity for such an institution is no longer admitted, and its dangerous power, if wickedly exercised, may be plainly seen.

10. Toward the close of 1835, the Seminole Indians, guided by their head sachem, Micanopy, and led by their principal chief, Osceola,⁶ commenced a distressing warfare upon the frontier settlements of Florida. The cause of the outbreak was an attempt to remove them to the wilderness beyond the Mississippi.⁷ It was a sanguinary war, and almost



OSCEOLA.

1. Henry Clay was born in Virginia, in 1775. He became a lawyer at Richmond, and at the age of twenty-one he established himself in his profession at Lexington, Ky. He first appeared in Congress, as senator, in 1806, and from that period his life was chiefly devoted to the public service. He died at Washington city, while U. S. Senator, in 1852.

2. Verse 6, page 307.

3. By the law of 1816, for chartering the bank, the funds of the United States were to be deposited with that institution, and to be withdrawn only by the Secretary of the Treasury.

4. The dismissed Secretary was William J. Duane; the newly-appointed one was Roger B. Taney, now [1857] Chief Justice of the United States.

5. Verse 2, page 315.

6. Verse 5, page 315.

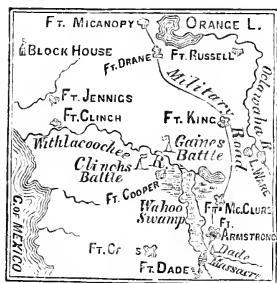
7. In his annual message in December, 1830, President Jackson recommended the devotion of a large tract

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell of Jackson's course toward the United States Bank? What were the effects of his measure? 9. How was the President and general business sustained? How are his measures now regarded? 10. What war commenced in 1835? What can you tell of earlier events of the war?

The Seminole war.

four years elapsed before it was wholly terminated. Osceola, with all the cunning of a Tecumseh,¹ and the heroism of a Philip,² was so successful in stratagem, and brave in conflict, that he baffled the skill and courage of the United States troops for a long time. He had agreed to fulfill treaty stipulations³ in December [1835], but instead of compliance, he was then at the head of a war party, murdering the unsuspecting inhabitants on the borders of the everglade haunts of the savages.

11. General Clinch was stationed at Fort Drane,⁴ in the interior of Florida, at this time, and Major Dade was dispatched from Fort Brooke, at the head of Tampa Bay, with more than a hundred men, for his relief. That young commander,⁵ and all but four of his detachment were massacred [Dec. 28,



SEAT OF SEMINOLE WAR.

1835], near Wahoo swamp.⁶ On the same day, and only a few hours before, Osceola, and a small war party, killed and scalped General Thompson, and five of his friends, who were dining at a store a few yards from Fort King.⁷ The assailants disappeared in the forest before the deed was known in the fort. Two days afterward [Dec. 31], General Clinch and his troops had a battle with the *Seminoles* on the Withlacoochee; and in February [Feb. 29, 1836], General Gaines⁸ was assailed near the same place,⁹ and several of his men were killed.

The battle-ground is about fifty miles from the mouth of the river.

12. In May, 1836, the *Creeks* aided their brethren in Florida, by attacking the settlers within their domain. Success made them bold, and they attacked mail-carriers, stages, steamboats, and finally villages, in Georgia and Alabama,

of land west of the Mississippi, to the use of the Indian tribes yet remaining east of that stream, forever. Congress passed laws in accordance with the proposition, and the work of removal commenced, first by the *Chickasaws* and the *Choctaws*. We have seen that trouble ensued with the *Creeks* and *Cherokees* [verse 4, page 303, and verse 3, page 306], and the *Seminoles* in east Florida were not disposed to leave their ancient domain. Some of the chiefs in council made a treaty in May, 1832, and agreed to remove; but other chiefs, and the great body of the nation, did not acknowledge the treaty as binding. In 1834, the President sent General Wiley Thompson to Florida, to prepare for a forcible removal of the *Seminoles*, if necessary. The tone and manner assumed by Osceola displeased Thompson, and he put him in irons and in prison for a day. The proud chief feigned penitence, and was released. Then his wounded pride called for revenge, and fearfully he pursued it, as recorded in the next verse.

1. Verse 5, page 280.

2. Verse 22, page 99.

3. Osceola had promised General Thompson that the delivery of certain cattle and horses belonging to the Indians, should be made during the first fortnight of December, 1835, and so certain was Thompson of the fulfilment of this stipulation, that he advertised the animals for sale.

4. About forty miles north-east from the mouth of the Withlacoochee river, and eight south-west from Orange Lake.

5. Francis L. Dade was a native of Virginia. After the war of 1812-15, he was retained in the army, having risen from third lieutenant to major. A neat monument has been erected to the memory of himself and companions in death, at West Point, on the Hudson.

6. Near the upper waters of the Withlacoochee, about fifty miles north from Fort Brooke. Three of the four survivors soon died of their wounds, and he who lived to tell the fearful narrative (Ransom Clarke), afterward died from the effects of his injuries on that day.

7. On the southern borders of Alachua county, about sixty miles south-west from St. Augustine. Osceola scalped [note 1, page 11] General Thompson with his own hands, and thus enjoyed revenge for the indignity he had suffered. Note 7, page 311.

8. Verse 5, page 294. Edmund P. Gaines was born in Virginia in 1777, and entered the army in 1799. He was breveted a major-general in 1814, and presented, by Congress, with a gold medal for his gallantry at Fort Erie. He died in 1849.

9. South side of the river, in Dade county. Gaines's, on the north side, in Alachua county.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell of the massacre of United States troops at two places? What battles occurred soon afterward?

Jackson's administration.

Specie circular.

until thousands of white people were fleeing for their lives from place to place, before the savages. General Scott was now in chief command in the South, and he prosecuted the war with vigor. The *Creeks* were finally subdued, and during the Summer, several thousands of them were removed to their designated homes beyond the Mississippi.

13. Governor Call, of Georgia, marched against the *Seminoles* with almost two thousand men, in October, 1836. A detachment of upward of five hundred of these had a severe contest [Nov. 21] with the Indians at Wahoo swamp, near the scene of Dade's massacre; yet, like all other engagements with the savages in their swampy fastnesses, neither party could claim a positive victory.¹

14. President Jackson's second official term was now drawing to a close. Energy had marked every step of his career as chief magistrate; and at the close of his administration, the nation stood higher in the esteem of the world than it had ever done before." Two new States (Arkansas [June 15, 1836], and Michigan [Jan. 25, 1837]) had been added to the Union. The original thirteen had doubled, and great activity prevailed in every part of the republic. In November, 1836, Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected to succeed Jackson in the presidential chair. The people having failed to elect a Vice-President, the Senate chose Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, to fill that station.

15. The last official act of President Jackson produced much excitement and bitter feelings toward him. A circular was issued from the Treasury department on the 11th of July, 1836, requiring all collectors of the public revenue to receive nothing but gold and silver in payment. This was intended to check speculations in the public lands, but it also bore heavily upon every kind of business. The "specie circular" was denounced; and so loud was the clamor, that toward the close of the session in 1837, both Houses of Congress adopted a partial repeal of it. Jackson refused to sign the bill, and by keeping it in his possession until after the adjournment of Congress, prevented it becoming a law. Jackson now retired from public life to enjoy that repose which an exceedingly active career entitled him to.

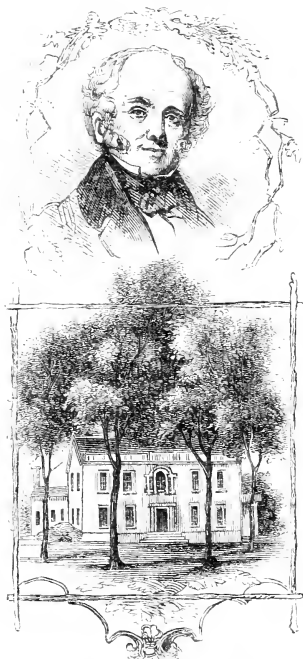
1. In this warfare the American troops suffered dreadfully from the poisonous vapors of the swamps, the bites of venomous serpents, and the stings of insects. The Indians were inaccessible in their homes amid the morasses, for the white people could not follow them.

2. At the close of Jackson's first term, our foreign relations were very satisfactory, except with France. That government had agreed to pay about \$5,000,000, by installments, as indemnification for French spoliations on American commerce, under the operations of the several decrees of Napoleon, from 1806 to 1811. The French government did not promptly comply with the agreement, and the President assumed a hostile tone, which caused France to perform her duty. Similar claims against Portugal were made, and payment obtained. A treaty of reciprocity was made with Russia and Belgium, and everywhere the American flag commanded the highest respect.

QUESTIONS.—12. What did the Indians do during 1836? What of their subjugation? 13. What took place in the Autumn of 1836? 14. What can you say of President Jackson's administration, and the position of the republic? What was the result of a presidential election in 1836? 15. What was Jackson's last official act? What can you tell of the "Specie Circular"? What did Congress do?

SECTION X.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION. [1837-1841.]



VAN BUREN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

out" on broad sheets of paper, and made the basis of vast money transactions. Borrowed capital was thus diverted from its sober, legitimate uses, to the fos-

1. When Mr. Van Buren¹ entered the presidential mansion as its occupant, on the 4th of March, 1837,² the business of the country was on the verge of a terrible convulsion and utter prostration. The distressing effects of the removal of the public funds [Oct., 1833] from the United States Bank,³ and the operations of the "specie circular"⁴ had disappeared, in a measure; but as the remedy for the evil was superficial, the cure was only apparent.

2. The chief remedy had been the free loaning of the public money to individuals by the State deposit banks;⁵ but a commercial disease was thus produced more disastrous than the panic of 1833-34. A sudden expansion of the paper currency was the result; and the consequences of such multiplied facilities for obtaining bank loans were an immensely-increased importation of foreign goods, inordinate stimulation of all industrial pursuits and internal improvements, and the operations of a spirit of speculation, especially in real estate, which assumed the features of a mania, in 1836. A hundred cities were founded, and a thousand villages were "laid

1. Martin Van Buren was born at Kinderhook, New York, in December, 1782. He chose the profession of law. In 1815 he became Attorney-General of his native State, and in 1828 was elected Governor of the same, having served the country in the Senate of the United States. He was appointed minister to England in 1831. Since his retirement from the presidency in 1841, Mr. Van Buren has spent a greater portion of his time on his estate in his native town. He went to Europe at the close of 1853, the first of the chief magistrates of the republic to visit the Old World after their term of office had expired.

2. He appointed John Forsyth, Secretary of State; Levi Woodbury, Secretary of the Treasury; Joel R. Poinsett, Secretary of War; Mahlon Dickinson, Secretary of the Navy; Amos Kendall, Postmaster-General; and Benjamin F. Butler, Attorney-General. All of them, except Mr. Poinsett, held their respective offices under President Jackson.

3. Verse 8, page 311.

4. Verse 15, page 313.

5. The State banks which accepted these deposits, supposed they would remain undisturbed until the government should need them for its use. Considering them as so much capital, they loaned their own funds freely. But in January, 1836, Congress authorized the Secretary of the Treasury to distribute all the public funds, except \$5,000,000, among the several States, according to their representation. The funds were accordingly taken from the deposit banks, after the first of January, 1837, and these banks being obliged to curtail their loans, a serious pecuniary embarrassment was produced.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the country when Van Buren was inaugurated? 2. What remedy had been used, and how did it work? What did land speculation do?

Immense failures.

Suspension of specie payments.

Seminole war.

tering of schemes as unstable as water, and as unreal in their fancied results as dreams of fairy-land.

3. Overtrading and speculation, relying for support upon continued bank loans, were suddenly checked by bank contractions early in 1837, and during March and April of that year, there were mercantile failures in the city of New York alone, to the amount of more than a hundred millions of dollars.¹ The effects of these failures were felt to the remotest borders of the Union, and credit and confidence were destroyed.

4. Early in May, 1837, a deputation from the merchants and bankers of New York waited upon the President, and solicited him to defer the collection of duties on imported goods; rescind the "specie circular;" and to call an extraordinary session of Congress to adopt relief measures. He acceded to the first request only. When his determination was known, all the banks in New York suspended specie payments, and their example was speedily followed throughout the country. The measure embarrassed the general government, and it was unable to obtain gold and silver to discharge its own obligations. The public good now demanded legislative relief, and an extraordinary session of Congress was convened on the 4th of September. During a session of forty-two days, it did little for the general relief, except the passage of a bill authorizing the issue of treasury notes, not to exceed, in amount, ten millions of dollars.²

5. The *Seminoles*³ still continued hostile.⁴ After severe encounters with the United States troops, several chiefs appeared in the camp of General Jesup⁵ (who was then in chief command), at Fort Dade,⁶ and signed [March 6, 1837] a treaty which guarantied immediate peace, and the instant departure of the Indians to their new home beyond the Mississippi. But the lull was temporary. The restless Osceola caused the treaty to be broken; and during the Summer of 1837, many more soldiers perished in the swamps while pursuing the Indians. At length, Osceola,⁷ with several chiefs and seventy warriors, appeared [Oct. 21] in Jesup's camp under the protection of a flag. They were seized and confined;⁸ and soon afterward Osceola was sent to Charleston, where he died of a fever, while immured in Fort Moultrie.⁹ This was the

1. Fifteen months before [Dec., 1835], property to the amount of more than \$20,000,000 had been destroyed by fire in the city of New York, when five hundred and twenty-nine buildings were consumed.

2. In his message to Congress at this session, the President proposed the establishment of an independent treasury for the safe keeping of the public funds, and their entire and total separation from banking institutions. This scheme met with vehement opposition. The bill passed the Senate, but was lost in the House. It was debated at subsequent sessions, and finally became a law on the 4th of July, 1840. It is known as *The Sub-Treasury Scheme*.

3. Thomas S. Jesup was born in Virginia in 1788. He was a brave and useful officer during the war of 1812-15, and was retained in the army. He was breveted major-general in 1828, and was succeeded in command in Florida by Colonel Zachary Taylor [verse 4, page 321] in 1838. He is now [1857] a resident of Washington city.

4. On the head waters of the Withlacoochee, about forty miles north-east from Fort Brooke, at the head of Tampa Bay. See map on page 312.

5. General Jesup was much censured for this breach of faith and the rules of honorable warfare. His excuse was the known treachery of Osceola, and a desire to put an end to bloodshed, by whatever means he might be able to employ.

6. On Sullivan's Island, upon the site of Fort Sullivan of the Revolution [verse 8, page 201]. Near the entrance gate to the fort is a small monument erected to the memory of Osceola.

QUESTIONS.—3. What caused business failures? and to what extent? 4. What was the President asked to do? What was done? What caused an extra session of Congress? What did Congress do? 5. What can you tell of the *Seminole* Indians? What can you tell of Osceola? How did his death affect his people?

End of Seminole war.

Troubles in Canada.

Maine boundary.

hardest blow yet dealt upon the *Seminoles*; but they continued to resist, notwithstanding almost nine thousand United States troops were in their territory at the close of 1837.

6. A large body of Indians suffered a severe repulse [Dec. 25] on the northern border of Macaco Lake,¹ from six hundred troops under Colonel Taylor.² That officer succeeded Jesup, and for more than two years afterward, endured every privation in efforts to bring the war to a close. In May, 1839, a treaty was made which appeared to terminate the war; but murder and robberies continued, and it was not until 1842 that peace was finally secured. This war, which lasted seven years, cost the United States many valuable lives, and millions of treasure.

7. The peaceful relations between the United States and Great Britain were somewhat disturbed by a revolutionary movement which commenced in Canada in 1837, and at one time seemed to promise a separation of that territory from the British crown.³ The movement was esteemed a patriotic effort to secure independence, and enlisted the warmest sympathies of the Americans in the North. Banded companies and individuals joined the "rebels;"⁴ and so general became this active sympathy on the northern frontier, that peace between the two governments was jeopardized. President Tyler finally issued [Sept. 25, 1841] an admonitory proclamation,⁵ which prevented further aggressive movements, and quiet was restored.

8. While this excitement was at its height, long-pending disputes concerning the boundary between the State of Maine and the British province of New Brunswick, had ripened into armed preparations for settling the matter by combat. This, too, threatened danger to the peaceful relations between the two governments. The President sent General Scott to the theater of the dispute, in the winter of 1839, and by his wise and conciliatory measures, he prevented bloodshed, and produced quiet. The whole matter was finally settled, by treaty, on the 20th of August, 1842.⁶

9. Mr. Van Buren was nominated for re-election in 1840. He was op-

1. Sometimes called Big Water Lake. The Indian name is O-ke-cho-bee, and by that name the battle is known.

2. Afterward General Taylor and President of the United States. See page 334.

3. Both Upper and Lower Canada exhibited revolutionary movements. The principal leader of the revolt in Upper Canada was William Lyon Mackenzie; the prime mover in the Lower Province was Louis Joseph Papineau. The movements of the revolutionary party were well planned, but local jealousies prevented unity of action, and the scheme failed.

4. A party of Americans took possession of Navy Island, situated in the Niagara river, about two miles above the falls, and belonging to Canada. They numbered seven hundred strong, well provisioned, and provided with twenty pieces of cannon. They had a small steamboat named *Caroline*, to ply between Schlosser, on the American side, and Navy Island. On a dark night in December, 1837, a party of royalists from the Canada shore crossed over, cut the *Caroline* loose, set her on fire, and she went over the great cataract while in full blaze.

5. In 1838, General Scott was sent to the frontier to preserve order, and was assisted by proclamations by the President and also the Governor of New York. Yet secret revolutionary associations, called "Hunter's Lodges," continued for two or three years. Against these, President Tyler's proclamation, here referred to, was specially directed.

6. This was negotiated at Washington city by Daniel Webster for the United States, and Lord Ashburton (special minister) for Great Britain. Besides settling the boundary question, this agreement, known as the Ashburton Treaty, provided for the final suppression of the slave trade, and for the giving up of criminal fugitives from justice, in certain cases.

QUESTIONS.—6. What more of the *Seminole* war? What of its termination? 7. What new movement of importance commenced in 1837? How was it esteemed? What can you tell of the sympathy of the people of the United States? 8. What boundary dispute arose? How was it settled?

Election and inauguration of Harrison.

His death.

posed by William Henry Harrison of Ohio, the popular leader in the northwest in the war of 1812.¹ Never, before, was the country so excited by an election, and never before was a presidential contest characterized by such demoralizing proceedings. The political change was wonderful, and General Harrison was elected by an overwhelming majority, with John Tyler, of Virginia, as Vice-President. And now, at the close of the first fifty years of the republic, the population had increased from three and a half millions of all colors, to seventeen millions.

SECTION XI.

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION. [1841-1845.]

1. The dawn of Harrison's administration gave omens of a brighter day for the country; and when his inaugural address went over the land, and the wisdom of his choice of cabinet counselors² was known, prosperity was half restored, for confidence was reenthroned in the commercial world. But all the hopes which centered in the new President were soon extinguished, and the anthems of the inaugural day were speedily changed to solemn requiems. Precisely one month after he uttered his oath of office, before Chief-Justice Taney, on the eastern portico of the capitol, the new President died [April 4, 1841], at the age of sixty-eight years.³

2. The only official act of general importance performed by President Harrison during his brief administration, was the issuing of a proclamation on the 17th of March, calling an extraordinary session of Congress, to commence at the close of the following May, to legislate upon the subject of finance and revenue.



HARRISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Verse 1, page 284.

2. Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Treasury; John Bell, Secretary of War; George E. Badger, Secretary of the Navy; Francis Granger, Postmaster-General; and J. J. Crittenden, Attorney-General.

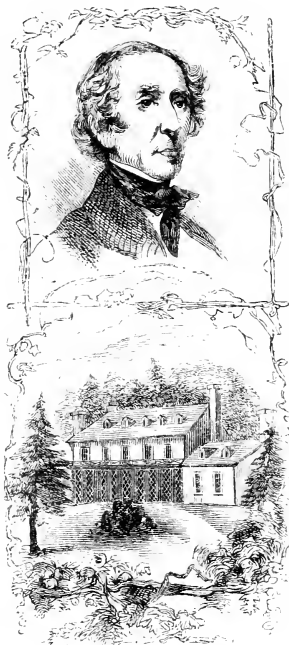
3. William Henry Harrison was born in Charles City county, Virginia, in February, 1773. His father was a signer of the Declaration of Independence. Young Harrison prepared to be a physician, but entered the army as ensign in the United States artillery, in 1791. He was afterward appointed Governor of Indiana Territory, and was very active during the war of 1812. At its close he retired to his farm on the banks of the Ohio. He served in the national council, and was finally raised to the highest post of honor in the nation. His last disease was pneumonia, or bilious pleurisy, which terminated his life in a few days.

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of the presidential election in 1840? What of the population? 1. What can you tell of President Harrison and his administration? 2. What was his chief official act?

President Tyler.

Extra session of Congress.

Exploring expedition.



TYLER, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

3. According to the provisions of the Constitution, the Vice-President became the official successor of the deceased President; and on the 6th of April the oath of office was administered to

JOHN TYLER.

He retained the cabinet appointed by President Harrison until September following, when all but the Secretary of State resigned.¹

4. The extra session of Congress called by President Harrison, commenced on the appointed day [May 31, 1841], and continued until the 13th of September following. The Sub-treasury act² was repealed; a general Bankrupt law³ was enacted; but the chief object sought to be attained during this session, namely, the chartering of a Bank of the United States, was not achieved. Two separate bills⁴ for that purpose were vetoed⁵ by the President, who, like Jackson, thought he perceived great evils to be apprehended from the workings of such an institution. The course of the President was vehemently censured by the party in power, and the last veto led to the dissolution of his cabinet. Mr.

Webster⁶ patriotically remained at his post, for great public interests would have suffered by his withdrawal at that time.

5. The second year [1842] of Mr. Tyler's administration was distinguished by the return of the United States Exploring Expedition;⁷ the settlement

1. He then appointed Walter Forward, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Spencer, Secretary of War; Abel P. Upshur, Secretary of the Navy; Charles A. Wickliffe, Postmaster-General; and Hugh S. Legaré, Attorney-General. Mr. Tyler had the misfortune to lose three of his cabinet officers, by death, in the course of a few months. Mr. Legaré accompanied the President to Boston on the occasion of celebrating the completion of the Bunker Hill monument [map, page 191], in June, 1842, and died there. On the 28th of February following, the bursting of a gun on board the steamship *Princeton*, while on an excursion on the Potomac, killed Mr. Upshur, then Secretary of State, Mr. Gilmer, Secretary of the Navy, and several other distinguished gentlemen. The President and many ladies were on board. Among the killed was Mr. Gardiner, of the State of New York, whose daughter the President soon afterward married.

2. Note 2, page 315.

3. This humane law accomplished a material benefit. Thousands of honest and enterprising men had been crushed by the recent business revulsion, and were so laden with debt as to be hopelessly chained to a narrow sphere of action. The law relieved them; and while it bore thus heavily upon the creditor class, for a while, its operations were beneficent and useful. When dishonest men began to make it the pretense for cheating, it was repealed.

4. One was passed on the 16th of August, 1841; the other, modified so as to meet the President's objections, it was believed, passed September 9th.

5. Note 10, page 309.

6. Daniel Webster was born in Salisbury, New Hampshire, in 1782. He was admitted to the bar in Boston, in 1805. He commenced his political career in Congress, in 1813. He was in public employment a greater portion of the remainder of his life, and was the most distinguished statesman of his time. He died at Marshfield, Massachusetts, in October, 1852.

7. This expedition, commanded by Lieutenant Wilkes, of the United States navy, had been sent, several

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of a successor in office? 4. What was done by the extra session of Congress? What important act was passed? What did the President do? and what was the result?

Change in tariff.

Difficulties in Rhode Island.

Texas.

of the North-eastern boundary question;¹ essential modifications of the tariff; and domestic difficulties in Rhode Island. By the Compromise act of 1832,² duties on foreign goods were to reach the minimum of reduction at the close of 1842, when the tariff would only provide *revenue*, not *protection to manufactures*, like that of 1828.³ The latter object appeared desirable; and by an act passed on the 29th of June, 1842, high duties were imposed on many foreign articles. The President vetoed it, but another tariff bill, less objectionable, received his assent on the 9th of August.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

6. The Rhode Island difficulties originated in a movement to adopt a State Constitution of government, and to abandon the old charter given by Charles the Second⁴ [1663], under which the people had been ruled for one hundred and eighty years. Disputes arose concerning the proper method to be pursued in making the change, and these assumed a serious aspect. Two parties were formed, known respectively as the "suffrage" or radical party; the other as the "law and order," or conservative party. Each formed a Constitution, elected a Governor and legislature,⁵ and finally armed [May and June, 1843] in defense of their respective claims. The State was on the verge of civil war, and the aid of Federal troops had to be invoked, to restore quiet and order. A free Constitution, adopted by the "law and order" party in November, 1842, to go into operation on the first Tuesday in May, 1843, was sustained, and became the law of the land.

7. The country was much agitated during the last year of Mr. Tyler's administration, by discussions concerning the proposed admission of the independent republic of Texas, on our south-west frontier, as a State of the Union. The proposition was warmly opposed at the North, because the annexation would increase the area and political strength of slavery, and lead to a war with Mexico.⁶ A treaty for admission, signed at Washington on the 12th of

years before, to explore the great southern ocean. It coasted along what is supposed to be an Antarctic continent, for seventeen hundred miles in the vicinity of latitude 66 degrees south, and between longitude 96 and 154 degrees east. The expedition brought home a great many curiosities of island human life, and a large number of fine specimens of natural history, all of which are now [1857] in the Smithsonian Institute, in Washington city. The expedition made a voyage of about ninety thousand miles, equal to almost four times the circumference of the globe.

1. Verse 8, page 316. 2. Verse 7, page 310. 3. Verse 6, page 307. 4. Verse 2, page 126.
5. The "suffrage" party elected Thomas W. Dorr, governor, and the "law and order" party chose Samuel W. King for chief magistrate. Dorr was finally arrested, tried for and convicted of treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life. The excitement having passed away in a measure, he was released in June, 1845, but was deprived of all the civil rights of a citizen. These disabilities were removed in the Autumn of 1853.

6. Texas was a part of the domain of that ancient Mexico conquered by Cortez [verse 23, page 33]. In 1824, Mexico became a republic under Generals Victoria and Santa Anna, and was divided into States united by a Federal Constitution. One of these was Texas, a territory which was originally claimed by the United

QUESTIONS.—5. What distinguished the second year of Tyler's administration? What of tariff bills? 6. What can you tell of difficulties in Rhode Island? What was the progress and the results? 7. What agitated the country toward the close of Tyler's administration? Why was the admission of Texas opposed? What was finally done?

Annexation of Texas.

Election and inauguration of Polk.

April, 1844, was rejected by the Senate [June 8]; but to the next Congress the proposition was presented in the form of a joint resolution, and received the concurrence of both Houses on the 1st of March, 1845, and the assent of the President on the same day.

8. The subject of the annexation of Texas had an important bearing upon the presidential election in 1844. It became more and more popular with the people throughout the Union; and James K. Polk, of Tennessee, who was pledged in favor of the measure, was elected President [Nov., 1844], and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, Vice-President. The opposing candidates were Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen. The last important official act of President Tyler¹ was the signing [March 3, 1845] of the bill for the admission of Florida and Iowa into the Union of States.

SECTION XII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION. [1845-1849.]

1. The largest concourse of people ever before assembled at Washington city, witnessed the inauguration of Mr. Polk² on the 4th of March, 1845. His address on that occasion clearly indicated that energetic policy which distinguished his administration. On the day after his inauguration he nominated his cabinet officers,³ and the Senate immediately confirmed them.

2. The most important topics which claimed the attention of the administration, were the annexation of Texas, and the claims of Great Britain to a large portion of the vast territory of Oregon, on the Pacific coast.⁴

States as a part of Louisiana, purchased [verse 2, page 273] from France in 1803, but ceded to Spain in 1820. In 1821-'2, a colony from the United States, under Stephen F. Austin, made a settlement on both sides of the Colorado river; and the Spanish government favoring immigration thither, caused a rapid increase in the population. There were ten thousand Americans in that province in 1831. Santa Anna became military dictator, and the people of Texas, unwilling to submit to his arbitrary rule, rebelled. A war ensued; and on the 2d of March, 1836, a convention declared Texas *independent*. Much bloodshed occurred afterward; but a final battle at San Jacinto, in which the Texans were led by General Houston, one of the present [1857] United States senators from Texas, vindicated the position the people had taken, and terminated the strife. Texas remained an independent republic until its admission into our Federal Union in 1845.

1. John Tyler was born in Charles City county, Virginia, in March, 1790. He was admitted to college studies at the age of twelve years; to the bar, as a lawyer, at the age of nineteen; and was elected a member of the Virginia Legislature when only twenty-one years of age. He was a member of Congress at the age of twenty-six. He was made Governor of Virginia in 1825, and afterward represented his State in Congress. Since his retirement from the presidency he has resided upon his estate, near Charles City courthouse, in Charles City county, Virginia.

2. James K. Polk was born in Mecklenburg county, North Carolina, in 1795. While he was a child his father settled in Tennessee; and the first appearance of young Polk into public life, was as a member of the Tennessee Legislature, in 1823. Two years afterward he was elected to Congress, and was almost continually there until elected President of the United States. He died at his residence, near Knoxville, Tennessee, in June, 1849.

3. James Buchanan, Secretary of State; Robert J. Walker, Secretary of the Treasury; William L. Marcy, Secretary of War; George Bancroft, Secretary of the Navy; Cave Johnson, Postmaster-General; and John Y. Mason, Attorney-General.

4. This vast territory, between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, had been, for some time, a subject of dispute between the United States and Great Britain. In 1818 it was mutually agreed that each nation should equally enjoy the privileges of all the bays and harbors on that coast, for ten years. This agreement was renewed in 1827 for an indefinite time, with the stipulation, that either party might rescind it by giving the other party twelve months' notice. Such notice was given by the United States in 1846, and the boundary was fixed. See verse 5, page 322.

QUESTIONS.—8. What aided in the election of Mr. Polk? What candidates were in the field? and what was the result? 1. What can you tell of Polk's inauguration?

Admission of Texas.

Relations with Mexico.

The former demanded and received the earliest consideration. On the last day of his official term, President Tyler had sent a messenger to the Texan government, with a copy of the joint resolutions of the American Congress,¹ in favor of annexation. These were considered by the Texan Congress, and approved on the 4th of July, 1845. On that day Texas became one of the States of our confederation.

3. This act, as had been predicted, caused an immediate rupture between the governments of the United States and Mexico;² for the latter claimed Texas as a part of its territory,³ notwithstanding its independence had been acknowledged by the United States, England, France, and other governments. There already existed a cause for serious disputes between the United States and Mexico.⁴ Ever since the establishment of republican government [1824] by the latter, it had been an unjust and injurious neighbor. Impoverished by civil wars, its authorities did not hesitate to replenish its Treasury by plundering American vessels in the Gulf of Mexico, or by confiscating the property of American merchants within its borders. The United States government remonstrated in vain, until, in 1831, a treaty was formed, and promises of redress were made. But aggressions continued; and in 1840, the aggregate amount of American property which had been appropriated by Mexicans, was more than six millions of dollars. The claim for this amount remained unsettled⁵ when the annexation of Texas occurred [July 4, 1845], and peaceful relations between the two governments were suspended.

4. Fully aware of the hostile feelings of the Mexicans, the President ordered [July] General Zachary Taylor,⁶ then in command of the troops in the



POLK, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Verse 7, page 319.

2. On the 6th of March, 1845, General Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, formally protested against the joint resolutions of Congress, and demanded his passports.

3. General Herrera, President of Mexico, issued a proclamation on the 4th of June, 1845, declaring the rights of Mexico, and his determination to defend them with arms.

4. The Spaniards pronounce it May-hee-co.

5. Commissioners appointed by the two governments to adjust these claims, met in 1840. The Mexican commissioners acknowledged two millions of dollars, and no more. In 1843 the whole amount was acknowledged by Mexico, and the payment was to be made in twenty installments, of \$300,000 each. Only three of these installments had been paid in 1845, and the Mexican government refused to decide whether the remainder should be settled or not.

6. His actual rank in the army list was only that of colonel. He had been made a brigadier-general by

QUESTIONS.—2. What important subjects claimed Polk's early attention? What was done toward the annexation of Texas? 3. What effects followed annexation? What causes for ill feeling between the United States and Mexico existed? What outrages had been committed?

Army of Occupation.

Oregon boundary question.

General Taylor in Texas.

south-west, to proceed to Texas, and take a position as near the Rio Grande¹ as prudence would allow. This force, about fifteen hundred strong, was called the "Army of Occupation," for the defense of Texas. At the same time, a strong squadron, under Commodore Conner, sailed for the Gulf of Mexico, to protect American interests there. General Taylor first landed [July 25, 1845] on St. Joseph's Island,² and then embarked for Corpus Christi, a Mexican village beyond the Nueces, and near its mouth. There he formed a camp [Sept., 1845], and remained during the succeeding Autumn and Winter.

5. While a storm of war was thus gathering in the south-west, the friendly relations between the governments of the United States and Great Britain were disturbed by rival claims to Oregon.³ The former claimed the whole territory⁴ to 54 degrees 40 minutes north latitude, the right to which was disputed by the latter. The difficulty was finally settled by a treaty made at Washington city, in June, 1846. The northern boundary of the United States was then fixed at 49 degrees north latitude. A territorial government was organized in 1848. In March, 1853, Oregon was divided, and the northern portion was made a separate domain, by the title of Washington Territory.

6. Early in 1846 [Jan. 13], the Secretary of War ordered General Taylor to advance from Corpus Christi to near the mouth of the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras, because Mexican troops were then gathering in that direction, with the evident intention of invading Texas. This was disputed territory between Texas and the Mexican province of Tamaulipas; and when he encamped at Point Isabel [March 25], on the coast,⁵ General Taylor was warned by the Mexicans that he was upon foreign soil. Regardless of menaces, he left his stores at Point Isabel, under Major Monroe and four hundred and fifty men, and with the remainder of his army advanced [March 28, 1846] to the bank of the Rio Grande, where he established a fortified camp, and commenced the erection of a fort.

7. President Herrera's desire for peace with the United States made him unpopular, and the Mexican people elected General Paredes⁶ to succeed him. That officer immediately dispatched General Ampudia,⁷ with a large force, to Matamoras, to drive the Americans beyond the Nueces. Ampudia arrived on the 11th of April, 1846, and the next day he sent a letter to General Tay-

brevet, for his good conduct in the Florida war. A title by *brevet* is only honorary. Taylor held the title of brigadier-general, but received only the *pay* of a colonel.

1. Great River. Also called *Rio Bravo del Norte*—Brave North River.

2. There the flag of the United States was first displayed in power over Texas soil.

3. Note 4, page 321.

4. Captain Grey, of Boston, entered the mouth of the Columbia river in 1792, and Captains Lewis and Clarke explored that region, from the Rocky Mountains westward, in 1804-5. In 1811, the late J. J. Astor established a trading station at the mouth of the Columbia river. The British doctrine, always practiced by them, that the entrance of a vessel of a civilized nation in the mouth of a river, gives title, by the right of discovery, to the territory watered by that river and its tributaries, clearly gave Oregon to 54 degrees 40 minutes, to the United States, for the discovery of Captain Grey, in 1792, was not disputed.

5. About twenty-eight miles north from Matamoras.

6. Pronounced Pa-ray-dhes.

7. Pronounced Am-poo-dhee-ah.

QUESTIONS.—4. What measures for the defense of Texas were adopted? What did General Taylor do? 5. What disturbed the friendly relations between the United States and Great Britain? What claims were set up? and how was the dispute settled? What was done in Oregon? 6. What order was given by the Secretary of War early in 1846? What did Taylor do? How did the Mexicans regard his movements? 7. What change took place in the Mexican government? and why? What hostile movements occurred?

First bloodshed.

War with Mexico.

Events near Matamoras.

lor, demanding his withdrawal within twenty-four hours. Taylor refused compliance, and continued to strengthen his camp. Ampudia hesitated; and on the 24th he was succeeded in command by the more energetic Arista.¹

8. The situation of the "Army of Occupation" was now becoming very critical. Parties of armed Mexicans had got between Taylor and his stores at Point Isabel,² and had cut off all inter-communication. Arista's army was hourly gathering strength; and already an American reconnoitering party, under Captain Thornton,³ had been killed or captured [April 24] on the Texas side of the Rio Grande. This was the first blood shed in

THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

9. Having nearly completed the fort opposite Matamoras, General Taylor now hastened [May 1], with his army, to the relief of Point Isabel, which was menaced by a large Mexican force⁴ collected in his rear. He left a force under Major Brown (in whose honor the fortification was named), to defend the fort, and reached Point Isabel the same day. This departure produced great joy in Matamoras, for the Mexicans regarded it as a cowardly retreat. Preparations were immediately made to attack Fort Brown; and on the morning of the 3d of May [1846], a battery at Matamoras opened a heavy cannonade and bombardment upon it, while quite a large body of troops crossed the river, to attack it on the rear. General Taylor had left orders that, in the event of aid being required, signal-guns should be fired at the fort. For a long time the little garrison made a noble defense, and silenced the Mexican battery; but when, finally, the enemy gathered strength in the rear, and commenced planting cannons, and the heroic Major Brown was mortally wounded,⁵ the signals were given [May 6], and Taylor prepared to march for the Rio Grande.

10. General Taylor left Point Isabel on the evening of the 7th, with a little more than two thousand men, having been reinforced by Texas volunteers, and marines from the American fleet then blockading the mouth of the Rio Grande. At noon the next day [May 8], they discovered a Mexican army, under Arista, full six thousand strong, drawn up in battle array upon a portion of a beautiful prairie, called Palo Alto. Taylor formed his army, and pressed forward to the attack. For five hours a hot contest was maintained,

1. Pronounced Ah-rees-tah.

2. Verse 6, page 222.

3. General Taylor had been informed that a body of Mexican troops were crossing the Rio Grande above his encampment, and he sent Captain Thornton, with sixty dragoons, to reconnoitre. They were surprised and captured. Sixteen Americans were killed, and Captain Thornton escaped by an extraordinary leap of his horse.

4. General Taylor was informed of this force of 1,500 Mexicans, by Captain Walker, the celebrated Texas Ranger, who had been employed by Major Monroe to keep open a communication between Point Isabel and Taylor's camp. Walker had fought them with his single company, armed with revolving pistols, and after killing thirty, escaped, and with six of his men, reached Taylor's camp.

5. He lost a leg by the bursting of a bomb-shell [note 2, page 233], and died on the 9th of May. He was born in Massachusetts in 1788; was in the war of 1812; was promoted to major in 1843; and was fifty-eight years of age when he died.

QUESTIONS.—8. What was the situation of Taylor's army? What can you tell of bloodshed? 9. What can you tell of Taylor's movements near the Rio Grande? What preparations against the Mexicans were made? What did the Mexicans do? What of the defense of Fort Brown? 10. What caused Taylor to leave Point Isabel? What can you tell of his march for Fort Brown? What can you tell of a battle that ensued?

Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.

Preparations for war.

when, at twilight, the Mexicans gave way and fled, and complete victory was with the Americans. It had been an afternoon of terrible excitement and fatigue, and when the firing ceased, the victors sank exhausted upon the ground. They had lost, in killed and wounded, fifty-three,¹ the Mexicans lost about six hundred.

11. The deep slumbers of the little army were broken at two o'clock the following morning [May 9, 1846], by a summons to renew the march for Fort Brown. They saw no traces of the enemy until toward evening, when they discovered them strongly posted in a ravine, called Resaca de la Palma,² drawn up in battle order. A shorter, but bloodier conflict than that at Palo Alto, ensued, and again the Americans were victorious. They lost, in killed and wounded, one hundred and ten; the Mexican loss was at least one thousand. General La Vega³ and a hundred men were made prisoners, and eight pieces of cannon, three standards, and a quantity of military stores were captured. The Mexican army was completely broken up. Arista saved himself by solitary flight, and made his way alone across the Rio Grande. After suffering a bombardment for one hundred and sixty hours, the garrison at Fort Brown were relieved, and the terrified Mexicans were trembling for the safety of Matamoras.

12. On the first intelligence of bloodshed,⁴ and the critical situation of the little Army of Occupation, the whole country was aroused, and before the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma [May 8, 9] were known in the States, Congress had declared [May 11, 1846] that "war existed by the act of Mexico;" authorized the President to raise fifty thousand volunteers, and appropriated ten millions of dollars [May 13] toward carrying on the contest. Within two days, the Secretary of War and General Scott⁵ planned [May 15] a campaign, greater in the territorial extent of its proposed operations, than any recorded in history. A fleet was to sweep around Cape Horn, and attack the Pacific coast of Mexico; an "Army of the West" was to gather at Fort Leavenworth,⁶ invade New Mexico, and co-operate with the Pacific fleet; and an "Army of the Center" was to rendezvous in the heart of Texas,⁷ to invade Old Mexico from the north. On the 23d of the same month [May], the Mexican government made a formal declaration of war against the United States.

1. Among the fatally wounded was Captain Page, a native of Maine, who died on the 12th of July following, at the age of forty-nine years. Also, Major Ringgold, commander of Flying Artillery, who died at Point Isabel, four days afterward, at the age of forty-six years.

2. Pronounced *Ray-sah-kah day la Pal-mah*, or dry river of palms. The ravine is supposed to be the bed of a dried-up stream. The spot is on the northerly side of the Rio Grande, three miles from Matamoras. In this engagement Taylor's force was about 1,700; Arista had been reinforced, and had about 1,700 men.

3. *Lay Tay-goh*. He was a brave officer, and was captured by Captain May, who, with his dragoons, rushed forward in the face of a heavy fire from a battery, captured La Vega, killed or dispersed the gunners, and took possession of the cannons.

4. The attack on Captain Thornton and his party [note 3, page 323], on the 24th of April.

5. Verse 5, page 294.

6. A United States post on the southern bank of the Missouri river, on the borders of the Great Plains. These plains extend to the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains.

7. At San Antonio de Bexar, the center of Austin's settlement [note 6, page 319], south of the Colorado river.

QUESTIONS.—11. What occurred the next morning? What can you tell of another battle and its results?
12. What caused excitement in the United States? What did Congress do? What can you tell of the plan of a campaign?

Capture of Matamoras and Monterey.

General Wool's services.

13. While great rejoicings and illuminations were in progress in the United States, General Taylor was in Mexico, preparing for other brilliant victories.¹ He crossed the Rio Grande, drove the Mexican troops from Matamoras, and took possession of that town on the 18th of May. There he remained until the close of August, receiving orders from government and reinforcements, and preparing to march into the interior.

14. The first division of his army, under General Worth,² marched toward Monterey³ on the 20th of August. General Taylor, with the remainder (in all more than six thousand men), followed on the 3d of September; and on the 19th, the whole army⁴ encamped within three miles of the doomed city, then defended by General Ampudia,⁵ with more than nine thousand troops. It was a strong town, at the foot of the great Sierra Madre, well fortified by both nature and art, and presented a formidable obstacle in the march of the victor toward the interior. But having secured the Saltillo road,⁶ by which supplies for the Mexicans in Monterey were to be obtained, General Taylor commenced a siege on the 21st of September. The conflict continued almost four days, a part of the time within the streets of the city, where the carnage was dreadful. Ampudia surrendered the town and garrison on the fourth day⁷ [Sept. 24]; and leaving General Worth in command there, General Taylor encamped at Walnut Springs, three miles distant, and awaited further orders from his government.⁸

15. General Wool⁹ had been commissioned to muster and prepare for service the gathering armies of volunteers. He performed this duty so promptly, that by the middle of July, twelve thousand of them had been inspected, and mustered into service. Nine thousand of them were sent to the Rio Grande, to reinforce General Taylor; and the remainder repaired to Bexar,¹⁰ in Texas, where they were disciplined by General Wool, in person, preparatory to marching into the province of Chihuahua,¹¹ in the heart of Mexico.

16. Wool went up the Rio Grande with about three thousand men, and on the last day of October, reached Monclova, seventy miles north-west from

1. On the 30th of May he was rewarded for his skill and bravery by a commission as major-general, by brevet. See note 6, page 321.

2. William J. Worth was born in Columbia county, New York, in 1794; was a gallant soldier during the war of 1812-'15; was retained in the army; and for his gallantry at Monterey, was made a major-general by brevet, and received the gift of a sword from Congress. He was of great service during the whole war with Mexico. He died in Texas, in May, 1849.

3. Pronounced *Mon-tar-ray*. It was the capital of New Leon.

4. The principal officers with General Taylor at this time, were Generals Worth, Quitman, Twiggs, Butler, Henderson, and Hamer.

5. Verse 7, page 322.

6. This road passes through the mountains along the San Juan river, and is the only communication between Monterey and the fertile provinces of Coahuila and Durango. The command of this road was obtained after a severe contest with Mexican cavalry, on the 20th of May, by a party under General Worth.

7. The Mexican soldiers were permitted to march out with the honors of war; and, being short of provisions, and assured that Santa Anna, now at the head of the Mexicans, desired peace, General Taylor agreed to a cessation of hostilities for eight weeks, if permitted by his government.

8. The Americans lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, 561. The number lost by the Mexicans was never ascertained, but it was supposed to be more than 1,000.

9. John Ellis Wool is a native of New York. He entered the army in 1812, and soon rose to the rank of lieutenant-colonel, for gallant conduct on Queenstown Heights [verse 11, page 282]. He has belonged to the army ever since. He was breveted brigadier in 1826, and for gallant conduct at Buena Vista, in 1847, was breveted major-general.

10. Austin's settlement. See note 6, page 319.

11. Pronounced *Chee-wah-wah*.

QUESTIONS.—13. What was Taylor doing while his countrymen at home were rejoicing? 14. What movements were made toward the interior of Mexico? What can you tell of the siege of Monterey? 15. What can you tell of General Wool's services? What was done with recruits?

The American army in Mexico. General Scott at Vera Cruz. Demand on General Taylor.

Monterey. His kindness to the people won their confidence and esteem, and he was regarded as a friend. There he was informed of the capture of Monterey,¹ and guided by the advice of General Taylor, he abandoned the project of penetrating Chihuahua, and marched to the fertile district of Parras, in Coahuila, where he obtained ample supplies for his own and Taylor's forces.

17. By order of the United States government, the armistice of Monterey² ceased on the 13th of November. General Worth, with nine hundred men, took possession of Saltillo [Nov. 15, 1846], the capital of Coahuila,³ and General Taylor, leaving General Butler in command at Monterey, marched for Victoria, the capital of Tamaulipas, with the intention of attacking Tampico, on the coast. That place had already surrendered⁴ [Nov. 14], and being informed that Santa Anna was collecting a large force at San Luis Potosi,⁵ he returned to Monterey, to reinforce General Worth, if necessary. Worth was joined by Wool's division, near Saltillo, on the 20th of December, and Taylor again advanced and took possession [Dec. 29] of Victoria.



GENERAL SCOTT.

18. The conquering Taylor was now compelled to endure a severe trial of his temper and patriotism. General Scott had arrived before Vera Cruz [Jan., 1847], for the purpose of invading Mexico from that point, and being the senior officer, he took supreme command. Just as Taylor was preparing for a vigorous Winter campaign, he received an order from General Scott,⁶ to send him a large portion of his best officers and troops, to assist against Vera Cruz, and to act thereafter only on the defensive.⁷ Taylor instantly obeyed, and he and General Wool were left with an aggregate force of only about five thousand men (only five hundred regulars) to oppose an army of twenty thousand, now gathering at San Luis Potosi, under Santa Anna. They united their forces at Agua Nueva,⁸ twenty miles south from Saltillo, on the 4th of February, and, weak as he was, Taylor determined to fight the Mexicans, who were now advancing upon him.

1. Verse 14, page 325.

2. The agreement for a cessation of hostilities is so called. See verse 31, page 322.

3. Pronounced *Co-ah weel-ah*.

4. Commodore Conner, who commanded the "Home Squadron" in the Gulf, captured Tampico. Tobasco and Tuspan were captured by Commodore Perry, in October following.

5. Santa Anna was elected provisional president of Mexico, in December, and in violation of his peace promises to Commodore Conner, he immediately placed himself at the head of the army.

6. Winfield Scott was born in Virginia in 1785. He was admitted to law practice at the age of twenty years. He joined the army in 1808, was made lieutenant-colonel in 1812, and passed through the war that ensued, with great honor to himself and his country. He was breveted major-general in 1814, and was made general-in-chief of the army in 1841. His successes in Mexico greatly added to his laurels, and he is now [1857] considered one of the greatest captains of the age. He was made Lieutenant-General in 1855.

7. The necessity for this order was as painful to General Scott as it was mortifying to General Taylor. Before leaving Washington, Scott wrote a long private letter to General Taylor, apprising him of this necessity, expressing his sincere regrets, and speaking in highest praise of the victories already achieved in Mexico.

8. Pronounced *Ag-rah New-rah*, or New Water.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell of Wool's movements? What did he accomplish? 17. What of the armistice at Monterey? What movements did the Americans make? What had been done? 18. What mortifying orders did Taylor receive? How did he act? What was the condition of his army? What did he proceed to do?

Battle of Buena Vista.

Taylor leaves Mexico.

Army of the West.

19. The Americans fell back [Feb. 21] to Buena Vista,¹ within eleven miles of Saltillo, and there, in a narrow defile in the mountains, encamped in battle order. At about noon the next day [Feb. 22], the Mexican army approached within two miles of them; and Santa Anna, assuring Taylor that he was surrounded by twenty thousand troops, and could not escape, ordered him to surrender within an hour. Taylor politely refused the request, and both armies prepared for battle. There was some skirmishing during the afternoon;² and early the following morning [Feb. 23] a terrible conflict commenced. It was desperate and bloody, and continued until sunset. Several times the overwhelming numbers of the Mexicans appeared about to crush the little band of Americans; and, finally, Santa Anna made a desperate assault³ upon the American center, commanded by Taylor in person. It stood like a rock against a billow, and by the assistance of the artillery of Bragg, Washington, and Sherman, the martial wave was rolled back, the Mexicans fled in confusion, and the Americans were masters of the bloody field.

20. The Mexicans all withdrew during the night, leaving their dead and wounded behind them.⁴ The invaders were now in possession of all the northern Mexican provinces, and Scott was preparing to storm Vera Cruz⁵ and march to the capital.⁶ In the course of a few months, General Taylor left Wool in command [Sept., 1847] and returned home, everywhere receiving tokens of the highest regard from his countrymen.



REGION OF TAYLOR'S OPERATIONS.

Let us now consider other operations of the war during this period.

21. The command of the "Army of the West"⁷ was given to General Kearney,⁸ with instructions to conquer New Mexico and California. He left Fort Leavenworth in June, and after a journey of nine hundred miles over the Great Plains and among the mountain ranges, he arrived at Santa Fé, the capital of New Mexico, on the 18th of August. He met with no resistance;⁹ and

1. Pronounced *Bice-nah Vest-ah*—Pleasant View. This was the name of a hacienda (plantation) at Anagustura.

2. It was the anniversary of the birth of Washington, and the American war-cry was, *The memory of Washington!*

3. To deceive the Americans, Santa Anna resorted to the contemptible trick of sending out a flag in token of surrender, at the moment of making an assault, hoping thereby to cause his enemy to be less vigilant. Taylor was too well acquainted with Mexican treachery to be deceived.

4. The Americans lost two hundred and sixty-seven killed, four hundred and fifty-six wounded, and twenty-three missing. The Mexicans lost almost two thousand. They left five hundred of their comrades dead on the field. Among the Americans slain was Lieutenant-Colonel Clay, son of the distinguished Henry Clay, of Kentucky. Verse 7, page 310.

5. On the day of the battle at Buena Vista, General Minon, with eight hundred cavalry, was driven from Saltillo by Captain Webster and a small party of Americans. On the 26th of February, Colonels Morgan and Irvin defeated a party at Agua Frio; and on the 7th of March, Major Giddings was victorious at Cerralvo.

6. Stephen W. Kearney was a native of New Jersey. He was a gallant soldier in the war of 1812-15. He was breveted a brigadier in 1816, and major-general in December the same year, for gallant conduct in the Mexican war. He died at Vera Cruz in October, 1848, at the age of fifty-four years.

7. The governor and four thousand Mexican troops fled at his approach, and the people, numbering about six thousand, quietly submitted.

QUESTIONS.—19. What did the two armies do? What can you tell of a battle that occurred? By what name is it known? 20. What did the Mexicans do? What had been accomplished? What did Taylor do?

Operations in California.

Doniphan's expedition.

having taken peaceable possession of the country, and constituted Charles Bent its Governor, he marched toward California. He soon met an express from Commodore Stockton¹ and Colonel Frémont, informing him that the conquest of California had already been achieved.² The main body of his troops then returned to Santa Fé, and with one hundred men he pushed forward to Los Angeles, near the Pacific coast, where he met [Dec. 27, 1846] Stockton and Frémont. In company with these officers, he shared in the honor of the final events which completed the conquest and pacification of California.



COLONEL FREMONT.

22. Fremont claimed the right to be governor, and was supported by Stockton and the people; but Kearney, his superior officer, would not acquiesce. Frémont refused to obey him, and Kearney departed, sailed to Monterey, and there, in conjunction with Commodore Shubrick, he assumed the office of governor, and proclaimed [Feb. 8, 1847] the annexation of California to the United States.³

23. While Kearney was on his way to California, Colonel Doniphan, by his command, was engaged, with a thousand Missouri volunteers, in forcing the Navajo Indians to make a treaty of peace. This was accomplished on the 22d of November, 1846, and then Doniphan marched toward Chihuahua,⁴ to join General Wool. When within eighteen miles of its capital, he was confronted [Feb. 28, 1847] by four thousand Mexicans. These he completely routed,⁵ and then pressing forward to the city of Chihuahua, he entered in triumph, raised the flag of the United States upon its citadel [March 2], in the midst of a population of forty thousand, and took possession of the province in the name of his government. After resting six weeks he marched

1. Robert F. Stockton is a son of one of the New Jersey signers of the Declaration of Independence. He entered the navy in 1811, and was appointed commodore in 1838. He left the navy in May, 1850, and became a member of the United States Senate from New Jersey.

2. Lieutenant-Colonel Frémont was sent with a party of about sixty men, to explore portions of New Mexico and California. When he arrived in the vicinity of Monterey, on the Pacific coast, he was opposed by a Mexican force under General Castro. Frémont aroused all the American settlers in the vicinity of San Francisco Bay, captured a Mexican post and garrison, and nine cannons and two hundred and fifty muskets, at Sonoma Pass [June 15, 1846], and then advanced to Sonoma, and defeated Castro and his troops. The Mexican authorities were effectually driven out of that region of the country; and on the 5th of July, the American Californians declared themselves independent, and placed Frémont at the head of their affairs. Two days afterward, Commodore Sloat, then in command of the squadron in the Pacific, bombarded and captured Monterey; and on the 9th, Colonel Montgomery took possession of San Francisco. Commodore Stockton arrived on the 15th, and, with Colonel Frémont, took possession of the city of Los Angeles on the 17th of August.

3. Frémont was ordered home to be tried for disobedience of orders. He was deprived of his commission, but the President, valuing him as one of the ablest officers in the army, offered it to him again. Frémont refused it, and went again to the wilderness and engaged in exploration. When California became a State, he was elected its first United States Senator [1851]; and in 1856 he was the candidate of the "Republican" party for the office of President of the United States.

4. At Bacoeti, in the valley of the Rio del Norte, they met a large Mexican force on the 22d of December, under General Ponce de Leon. He sent a black flag to Doniphan, with the message, "We will neither ask nor give quarter." The Mexicans then advanced and fired three rounds. The Missourians fell upon their faces, and the enemy, supposing them to be all slain, rushed forward for plunder. The Americans suddenly arose, and delivering a deadly fire from their rifles, killed two hundred Mexicans, and dispersed the remainder in great confusion.

5. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, only eighteen men; the Mexicans lost about six hundred.

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell of the movements of General Kearney? What conquests were made? 22. What can you tell of Frémont and Kearney? 23. What can you tell of Doniphan's expedition, and his wonderful march?

Attack on Vera Cruz.

Its capture.

March into the interior.

to Saltillo [May 22], where General Wool was encamped. Doniphan then returned to New Orleans, having made a perilous march from the Mississippi, of about five thousand miles. The conquest of all northern Mexico,¹ with California, was now complete, and General Scott was on his march for the great capital. Let us now consider

GENERAL SCOTT'S INVASION OF MEXICO.

24. The Mexican authorities having scorned overtures for peace made by the government of the United States in the Autumn of 1846, it was determined to conquer the whole country. For that purpose General Scott was directed to collect an army, capture Vera Cruz,² and march to the Mexican capital. His rendezvous was at Lobos Island;³ and on the 9th of March, 1847, he landed near Vera Cruz with an army of about thirteen thousand men, borne thither by a powerful squadron commanded by Commodore Conner.⁴ He invested the city on the 13th; and five days afterward [March 18], having every thing ready for an attack,⁵ he summoned the town and fortress, for the last time, to surrender. A refusal was the signal for opening a general cannonade and bombardment from his batteries and the fleet. The siege continued until the 27th, when the city, the strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa,⁶ with five thousand prisoners and five hundred pieces of artillery, were surrendered to the Americans.⁷ The latter had only forty men killed, and about the same number wounded. At least a thousand Mexicans were killed, and a great number were maimed.



25. General Scott took possession of Vera Cruz on the 29th of March, 1847, and on the 8th of April, the advanced force of his army, under General Twiggs, commenced their march for the interior, by way of Jalapa.⁸ Santa Anna had advanced, with twelve thousand men, to Cerro Gordo, a difficult mountain pass at the foot of the eastern chain of the Cordilleras. He was strongly fortified, and had many pieces of cannon well placed for defense.

1. Some conspiracies in New Mexico against the new government, ripened into revolt in January, 1847. Governor Bent and others were murdered at Fernando de Taos on the 19th, and massacres occurred in other quarters. On the 23d, Colonel Price, with three hundred and fifty men, marched against and defeated the insurgents, at Canada, and finally dispersed them at the mountain gorge called the Pass of Embudo.

2. This city was considered the key to the country. On an island opposite was a very strong fortress, called the castle of San Juan d'Ulloa [note 6, page 329], always celebrated for its great strength, and considered impregnable by the Mexicans.

3. About one hundred and twenty-five miles north from Vera Cruz.

4. Verse 4, page 321.

5. The engineering operations were performed very skillfully under the direction of Colonel Totten, an officer of the war of 1812. For his bravery at Vera Cruz he was made brigadier-general by brevet. He is now [1857] about seventy years of age.

6. Pronounced *San Juan-dah-oo-loo-ah*.

7. It is estimated that during this siege not less than six thousand seven hundred shots and shells were thrown by the American batteries, weighing, in the aggregate, more than four thousand pounds.

8. Pronounced *Hah-lah-pah*.

QUESTIONS.—24. What did the United States government determine to do? and why? What was General Scott directed to do? What can you tell of his expedition against Vera Cruz? What of the attack and surrender?

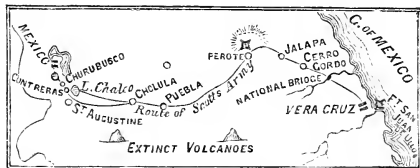
Battle at Cerro Gordo.

Victorious march toward the city of Mexico.

Scott had followed Twiggs with the main body. His whole army now numbered about eight thousand five hundred men.¹ Having skillfully arranged his plans, he attacked the enemy on the 18th of April. The assault was successful. More than a thousand Mexicans were killed or wounded, and three thousand were made prisoners.² The boastful Santa Anna³ narrowly escaped capture by fleeing upon a mule taken from his carriage. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, four hundred and thirty-one.

26. On the 19th of April the victors entered Jalapa; and on the 22d, General Worth unfurled the stripes and stars upon the castle of Perote, on the summit of the eastern Cordilleras, fifty miles from Jalapa. This was considered the strongest fortress in Mexico, next to Vera Cruz, yet it was surrendered without resistance.⁴ Onward the victorious army marched; and on the 15th of May [1847] it entered the ancient walled and fortified city of Puebla,⁵ without opposition from the eighty thousand inhabitants within. Here the Americans rested, after a series of victories almost unparalleled. Within two months, an army averaging only about ten thousand men, had taken some of the strongest fortresses on this continent, made ten thousand prisoners, and captured seven hundred pieces of artillery, ten thousand stand of arms, and thirty thousand shells and cannon-balls. Yet greater conquests awaited them.

27. General Scott remained at Puebla until August,⁶ when, being reinforced by fresh troops, sent by way of Vera Cruz, he resumed his march toward



ROUTE OF THE U. S. ARMY FROM VERA CRUZ TO MEXICO.

the capital, with more than ten thousand men, leaving a large number sick in the hospital.⁷ Their route was through a beautiful region, well watered, and clothed with the richest verdure, and then up the slopes of the great Cordilleras. From

their lofty summits, and almost from the same spot where Cortez and his followers stood amazed more than three centuries before,⁸ Scott and his army looked down [Aug. 10, 1847] upon that glorious panorama of intervalles, lakes,

1. A strong garrison had been left at Vera Cruz.

2. Having neither men to guard, nor food to sustain the prisoners, General Scott dismissed them on parole. Note 1, page 241.

3. Before the battle, Santa Anna said, "I will die fighting rather than the Americans shall proudly tread the imperial city of Azteca." So precipitate was his flight that he left all his papers behind him, and his wooden leg. He was so severely wounded in his leg, while defending Vera Cruz against the French, in 18'8, that amputation was necessary, and a wooden one was substituted.

4. Fifty-four pieces of cannon and mortars were captured here, and a large quantity of munitions of war.

5. Pronounced *Puebl-lah*.

6. During this long halt of the American army, the government of the United States made unavailing efforts to negotiate for peace. The Mexican authorities refused the olive branch, and boasted of their patriotism, valor, and strength, while losing post after post, in their retreat toward the capital.

7. At one time there were eighteen hundred men sick at Puebla; and at Perote seven hundred died during the Summer, notwithstanding the situations of these places, on lofty table lands, were considered exceedingly healthful.

8. Verse 23, page 3.

QUESTIONS.—25. What movements toward the interior of Mexico were made? What opposition was encountered? What can you tell of a battle at Cerro Gordo? 26. What progress did the Americans make? What important conquests were accomplished? What had now been achieved? 27. What can you tell of the march toward the Mexican capital? What of the country near the capital?

Battles of Churubusco and Contreras.

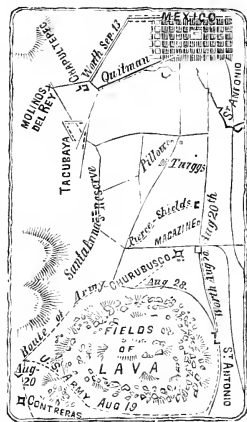
Flight of Santa Anna.

cities, and villages, in the great valley of Mexico—the capital of the Aztec Empire¹—the seat of “the Halls of the Montezumas.”²

28. On the 11th of August, General Twiggs³ cautiously led the advance of the American army toward the city of Mexico, and encamped at San Augustine, on the Acapulco road, eight miles south of the capital. Before him lay the strong fortress of San Antonio, and close on his left were the heights of Churubusco, crowned with embattled walls covered with cannons, and to be reached in front only by a dangerous causeway. Close by was the fortified camp of Contreras, containing six thousand Mexicans, under General Valencia; and between it and the city were Santa Anna and twelve thousand men, held in reserve.

29. Such was the general position of the belligerents when, a little after midnight on the 20th of August [1847], General Smith⁴ marched to the attack of the camp at Contreras. The battle opened at sunrise. It was sanguinary, but brief, and the Americans were victorious. Eighty officers and three thousand private soldiers were made prisoners; and the chief trophies were thirty-three pieces of artillery. In the mean while, Generals Pierce⁵ and Shields,⁶ with a small force, had kept Santa Anna's powerful reserve at bay.

30. Scott now directed a similar movement against Churubusco. Santa Anna advanced; and the whole region became a battle-field, under the eye and control of the American commander-in-chief. The invaders dealt blow after blow successfully. Antonio yielded, Churubusco was taken, and Santa Anna abandoned the field and fled to the capital. It was a memorable day in Mexico. An army thirty thousand strong, had been broken up by another less than one third its strength in numbers; and at almost every step the Americans were successful. Full four thousand of the Mexicans were killed or



OPERATIONS NEAR MEXICO.

1. According to the faint glimmerings of ancient Mexican history which have come down to us, the Aztecs, who occupied that country when it first became known to Europeans [verse 22, page 33], came from the North, and were more refined than any other tribes, which, from time to time, had held possession of the country. They built a city within the borders of Lake Tezcuco, and named it Mexico, in honor of *Merithi*, their god of war. Where the present great cathedral stands, they had erected an immense temple, dedicated to the sun, and there offered human sacrifices. It is related that, at its consecration, almost sixty thousand human beings were sacrificed. The temple was built about the year 1480, by the predecessor of Montezuma, the emperor found by Cortez.

2. This expression, referring to the remains of the palace of Montezuma in Mexico, was often used during the war.

3. David E. Twiggs was born in Georgia, in 1790. He was a major at the close of the war of 1812-'15, and was retained in the army. He was breveted a major-general after the battle at Monterey, and for his gallantry there received the gift of a sword from Congress.

4. General Persifer F. Smith, of Louisiana.

5. Note 1. page 343.

6. General James Shields, of Illinois, afterward United States Senator from that State.

QUESTIONS.—28. What did General Twiggs do? What were the relative positions of the opposing armies? What of the Mexican defenses? 29. What can you tell of the first conflict near the city of Mexico? 30. What other hostile movements occurred? What strong places yielded to the Americans? What was accomplished on the 24th of August, 1847?

Negotiations for peace.

Battles near the city.

The fall of Mexico.

wounded, three thousand were made prisoners, and thirty-seven pieces of cannon were taken, all in one day. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, almost eleven hundred.

31. General Scott might now have entered the city of Mexico in triumph, but he preferred to bear the olive branch rather than the palm. As he advanced to Tacubaya [Aug. 21], within three miles of the city, a flag came from Santa Anna to ask for an armistice, preparatory to negotiations for peace.¹ It was granted; and Nicholas P. Trist, who had been appointed by the United States government a commissioner to treat for peace, went into the capital [Aug. 24] for that purpose. Scott made the palace of the archbishop, at Tacubaya, his head-quarters, and there anxiously awaited the result of the conference until the 5th of September, when Mr. Trist returned, with the intelligence that his propositions were not only spurned with scorn, but that Santa Anna had violated the armistice by strengthening the defenses of the city. Disgusted with the continual treachery of his foe, Scott declared the armistice at an end [Sept. 7], and prepared to storm the capital.

32. On the morning of the 8th of September, less than four thousand Americans attacked fourteen thousand Mexicans, under Santa Anna, at *El Molinos del Rey* (the King's Mills), near Chapultepec. They were at first repulsed, with great slaughter; but returning to the attack, they fought desperately for an hour, and drove the Mexicans from their position. Both parties suffered dreadfully. The Mexicans lost almost a thousand dead on the field, and the Americans lost about eight hundred.

33. Chapultepec was doomed. It was a lofty hill, strongly fortified, and the seat of the military school of Mexico. It was the last place to be defended outside the suburbs of the city. Scott erected four heavy batteries to bear upon it, on the night of the 11th of September; and on the next day [Sept. 12, 1847] a heavy cannonade and bombardment commenced. On the 13th the assailants commenced a furious charge, routed the enemy, with great slaughter, and unfurled the American flag over the shattered castle of Chapultepec. The Mexicans fled to the city along an aqueduct, pursued by General Quitman² to its very gates. That night Santa Anna and his army, with the officers of government, fled from the doomed capital; and at four o'clock the following morning [Sept. 14] a deputation from the city authorities waited upon General Scott, and begged him to spare the town and treat for peace. He would make no terms, but ordered Generals Worth and Quitman³ to move forward, and plant the stripes and stars upon the national palace. The vic-

1. Note 2, page 196.

2. John A. Quitman is a native of New York, and is now [1857] about fifty-eight years of age. He led volunteers to the Mexican war, and was breveted and presented with a sword, by Congress, for his gallantry. He was Governor of Mississippi in 1851.

3. The approach of each was along separate aqueducts. See map, page 331.

QUESTIONS.—31. What forbearance did Scott show? What negotiations were entered into? What did Scott do? What was the result of his forbearance? 32. What occurred on the morning of the 14th of September? What of a battle? 33. What can you tell of the attack on Chapultepec? What victories did the Americans achieve? What can you tell of the flight of the Mexicans? What favor was asked of General Scott? What can you tell of the surrender of the capital?

Treaty with Mexico.

Election of General Taylor to the Presidency.

torious generals entered at ten o'clock, and on the Grand *Plaza*¹ took formal possession of the Mexican empire.

34. Order soon reigned in the capital. Santa Anna made some feeble efforts to regain lost power,² and failed; and before the close of October, he was a fugitive, stripped of every commission. The President of the Mexican Congress assumed provisional authority; and on the 2d of February, 1848, that body concluded a treaty of peace, with commissioners of the United States, at Guadalupe Hidalgo. This treaty was finally agreed to by both governments, and on the 4th of July following, President Polk proclaimed it.³ New Mexico and California⁴ now became Territories of the United States.

35. Besides the war with Mexico and the settlement of the Oregon boundary question⁵ with Great Britain, Mr. Polk's administration was distinguished by the establishment of an independent treasury system,⁶ by which the national revenues are collected in gold and silver, or treasury notes, without the aid of banks; and a revision of the tariff laws in 1846, by which protection to American manufactures was lessened. During the last year of his administration, Wisconsin was admitted [May 29, 1848] into the Union of States, making the whole number thirty.

36. The popularity which General Taylor had gained by his brilliant victories in Mexico, caused him to be nominated for President of the United States in many parts of the Union, even before he returned home;⁷ and he was chosen to be a candidate for that office, by a national convention, held at Philadelphia in June, 1848. His opponent was General Lewis Cass, of Michigan, now [1857] Secretary of State. General Taylor was elected by a large majority, with Millard Fillmore, of New York, as Vice-President.

1. Place. This is the large public square in the city of Mexico.

2. He appeared before Puebla on the 22d of September, where Colonel Childs had been besieged since the 13th. The approach of General Lane frightened him away; and in a battle with the troops of that leader at Huamantla, Santa Anna was defeated. On the 18th of October he was again defeated at Atlixco, and there his troops deserted him, and he became a fugitive, seeking safety, by flight, to the shores of the Gulf. See note 6, page 343.

3. It stipulated the evacuation of Mexico by the American army, within three months; the payment of \$3,000,000 in hand, and \$12,000,000 in four annual installments by the United States to Mexico, for the territory acquired by conquest; and, in addition, to assume debts due to certain citizens of the United States to the amount of \$3,500,000. It also fixed boundaries, etc.

4. During the same month that a treaty of peace was signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo, a man employed by Captain Sutter, who owned a mill twenty-five miles up the American fork of the Sacramento river, discovered gold. It was very soon found in other localities, and during the Summer, rumors of the fact reached the United States. These rumors assumed tangible form in the President's message in December, 1848; and at the beginning of 1849, thousands were on their way to the land of gold. Around Cape Horn, across the Isthmus of Panama, and over the great central plains of the continent, men went by hundreds; and far and wide in California, the precious metal was found. From Europe and South America hundreds flocked thither; and the Chinese came also by scores from Asia, to dig gold. The dreams of the early Spanish voyagers [verse 24, page 34], and those of the English who sought gold on the coasts of Labrador [verse 18, page 40], and up the rivers of the middle of the continent [verse 23, page 42], have been more than realized, and hundreds continue [1857] to go thither, and yet the gold seems inexhaustible. Since its first discovery in 1748 to the close of 1853, there was brought from California, and deposited in the mint (and its branches) of the United States alone, upward of \$200,000,000.

5. Verse 5, page 322.

6. Note 2, page 315.

7. Verse 20, page 327.

QUESTIONS.—34. What hostile efforts did Santa Anna make? What became of him? What government was established in Mexico? and what did it do? What treaty was made? 35. What else distinguished President Polk's administration? What can you tell of a treasury system? What other events took place? 36. What can you tell of the presidential election in 1848?

SECTION XIII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION. [1849-1850.]

1. Because the 4th of March, 1849, occurred on the Sabbath, Zachary Taylor¹ took the oath of office as President of the United States on the 5th, and appointed his cabinet on the following day.²



TAYLOR, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

The appointments were confirmed by the Senate; and with the heart of a patriotic and honest man, Taylor entered upon his responsible duties with a sincere desire to serve his country as faithfully in the cabinet as he had in the field.³ He had the sympathies of a large majority of the people with him, and his inauguration was the promise of great happiness and prosperity for the country.

2. Thousands of adventurers were flocking to California from all parts of the Union when Taylor took the presidential chair, and elements of a new and powerful State were rapidly gathering there. Statesmen and politicians perceived the importance of the new Territory, and soon the question whether slavery should have a legal existence there, became an absorbing topic in Congress and among the people. The inhabitants of California decided the question for themselves. In convention at San Francisco, the people voted against slavery, and a Constitution for a State government, adopted in convention at Monterey, on the 1st of September, 1849, excluded slavery from the Territory for ever.⁴

1. Zachary Taylor was born in Virginia, in November, 1784. He went with his father to Kentucky the following year, and his childhood was passed near the present city of Louisville. He entered the United States army in 1807. He was a distinguished subaltern during the war of 1812-15, and attained the rank of major. He was of great service in the Florida war [verse 6, page 316]; and when hostilities with Mexico appeared probable, he was sent in that direction, and, as we have seen, displayed great skill and bravery. He died in July, 1850, having performed the duties of President only sixteen months.

2. He appointed John M. Clayton, Secretary of State; William M. Meredith, Secretary of the Treasury; George W. Crawford, Secretary of War; William B. Preston, Secretary of the Navy; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Interior (a new office recently established, in which some of the duties before performed by the State and Treasury Departments are attended to); Jacob Collamer, Postmaster-General; and Reverdy Johnson, Attorney-General.

3. Verse 6, page 322, to Verse 20, page 327.

4. General Riley, the military governor of California, established a sort of judiciary by proclamation, in August, 1849, with Peter H. Burnett as Chief-Justice. Before that time there was no statute law in California. By proclamation, Governor Riley called a convention to form a State Constitution, and when it was adopted, Burnett was elected governor, and the first Legislature was held at San José, on the 20th of December following.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of President Taylor's inauguration? How did the future appear? 2. What great emigration was in progress? How was California regarded? What can you tell of its organization as a State?

Slavery agitation in Congress.

Compromise measures agreed to.

The birth and maturity of this new State seemed like a dream — all was accomplished within twenty months after gold was discovered near Sutter's Mill.¹

3. When the United States senators, appointed by the Legislature of California,² went to Washington, they carried their Constitution with them, and presented a petition [February, 1850], asking for the admission of that Territory into the Union as a free and independent State.³ The article of the Constitution which excluded slavery, became a cause for violent debates in Congress, and of bitter sectional feeling between the people of the North and South. As in 1832,⁴ there were menaces of secession from the Union, by southern representatives, and never before did civil war appear so inevitable.

4. Happily for the country, some of the ablest statesmen and patriots the republic had ever gloried in, were members of the national legislature at that time, and with consummate skill they directed and controlled the storm. In the midst of the tumult and alarm in Congress and throughout the land, Henry Clay again⁵ appeared as the potent peace-maker between the Hotspurs of the North and South; and on the 25th of January, 1850, he offered, in the Senate, a plan of compromise which met the difficulty. Eleven days afterward [Feb. 5, 1850] he spoke nobly in defense of his plan, denounced secession as treason, and implored his countrymen to make every sacrifice but honor, in support of the Union. Mr. Clay's plan was warmly seconded by Daniel Webster; and other senators approving of compromise, submitted propositions.

5. Finally, a committee of thirteen was appointed to consider the various plans and report a bill. It consisted of six northern and six southern senators, and these chose the thirteenth. The Senate appointed Mr. Clay chairman of the committee; and on the 8th of May following, he reported a bill. It was discussed for four months; and on the 9th of September, each measure included in the bill having been thoroughly considered separately, the famous *Compromise Act of 1850* had passed both Houses of Congress, and became a law.⁶ While this important discussion was progressing, President

1. Note 4, page 333.

2. John C. Fremont and William M. Gwin. Edward Gilbert and G. H. Wright were elected members of the House of Representatives.

3. At this time our government was perplexed by the claims of Texas to portions of the Territory of New Mexico, recently acquired [verse 34, page 333], and serious difficulty was apprehended. Early in 1850, the inhabitants of New Mexico petitioned Congress for a civil government, and the Mormons of the Utah region also petitioned for the organization of the country they had recently settled, into a Territory of the United State. See note 4, page 336.

4. Verse 6, page 310.

5. Verse 7, page 310.

6. Because several measures, distinct in their objects, were embodied in the act, it is sometimes known as the "Omnibus Bill." The most important stipulations of the act were, 1st. That California should be admitted into the Union as a State, with its anti-slavery Constitution, and its territorial extent from Oregon to the Mexican possessions; 2d. That the vast country east of California, containing the Mormon settlements near the Great Salt Lake, should be erected into a Territory, called Utah, without mention of slavery; 3d. That New Mexico should be erected into a Territory, within satisfactory boundaries, and without any stipulations respecting slavery, and that ten millions of dollars should be paid to Texas from the Federal treasury in purchase of her claims; 4th. That the slave-trade in the District of Columbia should be abolished; 5th. A law providing for the arrest, in the northern or free States, and return to their masters, of all slaves who should escape from bondage. The last measure of the Compromise Act produced, and continues to produce, much dissatisfaction at the North; and the execution, evasion, and violation of the law, in several instances, have led to serious disturbances and much bitter sectional feeling.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did California representatives do? What effect was produced by the anti-slavery article in its State Constitution? 4. What can you say of American statesmen? What was done to promote harmony? 5. What can you tell of the Compromise Act of 1850? What melancholy event occurred? What important event followed?

Death of President Taylor.

Fillmore becomes President.

Invasion of Cuba.



FILLMORE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

Taylor was seized with a disease similar to cholera, which terminated his earthly career on the 9th of July, 1850. In accordance with the provisions of the Constitution,¹ he was immediately succeeded in office by the Vice-President,

MILLARD FILLMORE.²

6. Although the administration of President Taylor was brief, it was distinguished by events which have an important bearing upon the future destiny of our republic. One of these was an invasion of Cuba by a force under General Lopez, which was organized and officered in the United States, in violation of existing neutrality laws. Lopez landed at Cardenas on the 19th of April, 1850, expecting to be joined by some of the Spanish troops and native Cubans, and, by concerted action, to rid the island of Spanish bondage. But the people and troops did not co-operate with him, and, disappointed, he returned to the United States to prepare for a more formidable expedition.³ During Taylor's administration, one sovereign State and three Territories⁴ were added to the confed-

1. Verse 3, page 318, and Article II., Sec. 1. Constitution, page 366.

2. Millard Fillmore was born in January, 1800, in Cayuga county, New York. His early education was limited, and at a suitable age he was apprenticed to a wool-carder. At the age of nineteen, his talent attracted the attention of Judge Wood, of Cayuga county, and he took the humble apprentice under his charge, to study the science of law. He became eminent in his profession. He was elected to the Assembly of his native State in 1829, and in 1832 was chosen to represent his district in Congress. He was re-elected in 1837, and was continued in office several years. In 1844 he was an unsuccessful candidate for the office of governor of his native State, and in 1848 he was elected Vice-President of the United States. The death of Taylor gave him the presidency, and he conducted public affairs with dignity and skill. In 1856 he was the candidate of the "American" or "Know Nothing" party for the presidency of the United States, but was unsuccessful.

3. Verse 11, page 338.

4. The State of California and the Territories of New Mexico, Utah, and Minnesota. The greater portion of the inhabitants of Utah are of the religious sect called Mormons, who, after suffering much in Missouri and Illinois from their opposers, penetrated the deep wilderness (1838) in the interior of our continent, and near the Great Salt Lake, in the midst of the savage Utah tribes, they have built a large city, made extensive plantations, and founded an empire almost as large, in territorial extent, as that of Alexander the Great. The sect was founded in 1827, by a shrewd young man, named Joseph Smith, a native of central New York, who professed to have received a special revelation from Heaven, giving him knowledge of a book which had been buried many centuries before, in a hill near the village of Palmyra, whose leaves were of gold, upon which were engraved the records of the ancient people of America, and a new gospel for man. He found dupes, believers, and followers; and now [1857] there are Mormon missionaries in every quarter of the globe, and the communion numbers, probably, not less than two hundred thousand souls. There is now [1857] a sufficient number in Utah (60,000) to entitle them to a State Constitution, and admission into the Union. Their per-



JOSEPH SMITH.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you say of President Taylor's administration? What expedition was attempted in 1850? What additions were made to the confederacy?

Support of Compromise Act. Change in post-office laws. The magnetic telegraph.

eracy, and preparations were made for organizing other local governments within the domain of the United States.

7. Mr. Fillmore assumed the duties of President of the United States on the 10th of July, 1850. At his request, President Taylor's cabinet ministers remained in office until the 15th, when new heads of departments were appointed.¹ William R. King, of Alabama, was elected President of the Senate, and thus became ex-officio Vice-President of the United States.²

8. The most important measure adopted during the early part of Fillmore's administration, was the Compromise Act, already considered.³ During his official career, the President firmly supported all the requirements of the act, and his judicious course kept the waters of public opinion comparatively calm, notwithstanding the workings of the Fugitive Slave Law frequently produced much excitement, where it happened to be executed. At the close of his administration, in the Spring of 1853, there was very little disquietude in the public mind on the subject of slavery.

9. In the Spring of 1851, Congress made important changes in the general post-office laws, chiefly in the reduction of letter postage, fixing the rate upon a letter weighing not more than half an ounce, and pre-paid, at three cents, to any part of the United States, excepting California and the Pacific Territories. This measure was a salutary one, and has been productive of much social and commercial advantage, for interchanges of thought are proportionately more frequent than before, and friendly intercourse and business transactions by letters are far more extensive. At the same time, electro-magnetic telegraphing had become quite perfect; and, by means of the subtle agency of electricity, communications were speeding over thousands of miles of iron wire, with the rapidity of lightning.⁴ The estab-



PROFESSOR MORSE.

mission of polygamy, or men having more than one wife, will be a serious bar to their admission, for Christianity and sound morality forbid the custom. The Mormons have poetically called their country, Deseret—the Land of the Honey Bee—but Congress has entitled it Utah, and by that name it must be known in history. They appear disposed to defy the civil power of the United States, and much trouble with them is apprehended.

Minnesota (sky-colored water) is the Indian name of the river St. Peter, the largest tributary of the Mississippi in that region. It was a part of the vast territory of Louisiana, and was organized in March, 1849. An embryo village at the Falls of St. Anthony, named St. Paul, was made the capital, and it now [1857] contains more than fifteen thousand souls. Its growth is unprecedented, even in the wonderful progress of other cities of the West, and it promises to speedily equal Chicago in its population.

1. Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Corwin, Secretary of the Treasury; Charles M. Conrad, Secretary of War; Alexander H. H. Stuart, Secretary of the Interior; William A. Graham, Secretary of the Navy; John J. Crittenden, Attorney-General; Nathan K. Hall, Postmaster-General.

2. See Article II., Sec. 1, Constitution, page 366.

3. Note 6, page 335.

4. In 1832, Professor Samuel F. B. Morse had his attention directed to the experiments of Franklin upon a wire of a few miles in length, on the banks of the Schuylkill, in which the velocity of electricity was found to be so inappreciable, that it was supposed to be instantaneous. Professor Morse, pondering upon this subject, suggested that electricity might be made the means of recording characters as signs of intelligence at

QUESTIONS.—7. What of the beginning of President Fillmore's administration? 8. What can you tell of Mr. Fillmore and the Compromise Act of 1850? 9. What changes were made in the post-office laws? What were the effects of a reduction of letter postage? What can you tell of a new method of communicating intelligence?

Expeditions against Cuba.

Disastrous result.

lishment of this instantaneous communication between distant points is one of the most important achievements of this age of invention and discovery; and the names of Fulton and Morse¹ will be for ever indissolubly connected in the commercial and social history of our republic.

10. During the Summer of 1851, there was again considerable excitement produced throughout the country because other concerted movements were made at different points, in the organization of a military force for the purpose of invading Cuba.² The vigilance of the government of the United States was awakened, and orders were given to Federal marshals to seize suspected men, vessels, and munitions of war. The steamboat *Cleopatra* was seized at New York; and several gentlemen, of the highest respectability, were arrested on a charge of a violation of existing neutrality laws. In the mean while, the greatest excitement prevailed in Cuba, and forty thousand Spanish troops were concentrated there, while a considerable naval force watched and guarded the coasts. These hinderances caused the dispersion of the armed bands who were preparing to invade Cuba, and quiet was restored for awhile.

11. In July, the excitement was renewed. General Lopez³ made a speech to a large crowd in New Orleans, in favor of an invading expedition. Soon afterward [Aug., 1851] he sailed from that port with about four hundred and eighty followers, and landed [Aug. 11] on the northern coast of Cuba. There he left Colonel Crittenden,⁴ of Kentucky, with one hundred men, and proceeded toward the interior. Crittenden and his party were captured, carried to Havana, and, on the 16th, were shot. Lopez was attacked on the 13th, and his little army dispersed. He had been greatly deceived. There yet appeared no signs of revolution in Cuba, and he became a fugitive. He was arrested on the 28th, with six of his followers, taken to Havana, and on the 1st

a distance; and in the Autumn of 1832, he constructed a portion of the instrumentalities for that purpose. In 1835 he showed the first complete instrument for *telegraphic recording*, at the New York city University. In 1837 he completed a more perfect machinery. In 1838 he submitted the matter and the telegraphic instruments to Congress, asking their aid to construct a line of sufficient length "to test its practicability and utility." The committee to whom the subject was referred, reported favorably, and proposed an appropriation of \$30,000, to construct the first line. The appropriation, however, was not made until the 3d of March, 1843. The posts for supporting the wires were erected between Washington and Baltimore, a distance of forty miles. In the Spring of 1844 the line was completed, and the proceedings of the Democratic convention, then sitting in Baltimore, which nominated James K. Polk for the presidency of the United States, was the first use, for public purposes, ever made by the telegraph, whose wires now [1857] extend a distance of more than fifty thousand miles in the United States and Canadas. At the last session of the Thirty-fourth Congress [1837], that body authorized the construction, by private enterprise, of a line of telegraph from the Mississippi river to the Pacific ocean. Professor Morse's system of Recording Telegraphs is adopted generally on the continent of Europe, and lately has been selected by the government of Australia, for the telegraphic systems of that country. A very ingenious machine for recording telegraphic communications with printing types, so as to avoid the necessity of copying, was constructed, a few years ago, by House, and is now extensively used.

1. Samuel F. B. Morse is the eldest son of Rev. Jedediah Morse, the first American geographer. He was born in Charlestown, Mass., in 1791, and graduated at Yale College in 1810. He studied painting in England, and was very successful. He was one of the founders of the National Academy of Design in New York, and he was the first to deliver a course of lectures upon art, in America. He became a professor in the New York city University, and there perfected his magnetic telegraph. Mr. Morse now [1857] resides on his beautiful estate of Loenst Grove, near Po'keepsie, New York.

2. Verse 6, page 336.

4. William L. Crittenden. He had been a second lieutenant in the United States infantry, by brevet, but resigned in 1849.

3. Verse 6, page 336.

QUESTIONS.—10. What produced excitement in the Summer of 1851. What occurred at New York in regard to an invasion of Cuba? What was the state of feeling in Cuba? and what was done? 11. What of a new expedition to Cuba? What was attempted? What was the result?

Territorial accessions.

Sir John Franklin.

Arctic expeditions.

of September was executed.¹ Since that event, no successful effort to organize an invading expedition has been made.

12. During the Autumn of 1851, more accessions were made to the vastly-extended possessions of the United States, by the purchase of twenty-one millions of acres of land in Minnesota, from the Upper *Sioux* tribes.² At about the same time, another broad region was purchased of the Lower *Sioux*;³ and now [1857] a white population is flowing thither, to take the place of the Indians, and make "the wilderness blossom as the rose." On account of the rapid progress of immigration from abroad, and inter-emigration at home, and the wonderful prosperity of business of all kinds, the greatest activity everywhere prevailed, and forecast perceived a vast and speedy increase of population and national wealth. Already new States and Territories were sending additional representatives to the seat of the Federal government, and the capitol was becoming too narrow.⁴ In view of future wants, its extension was decided upon; and on the 4th of July, 1851, the President laid the corner-stone of the addition.⁵

13. In May, 1845, Sir John Franklin, a veteran English explorer, with two vessels and one hundred and thirty-eight men, left Great Britain in search of the long-sought-for north-west passage to the East Indies.⁶ Since the Spring of 1846, no positive tidings of him have been received, and several expeditions have been sent in search of him. Among others, Henry Grinnell, a wealthy merchant of New York, sent two vessels, at his own expense, in quest of the missing mariner. The expedition left New York in May, 1850, under the command of Lieutenant De Haven, of the United States navy, and returned in October, 1851, without accomplishing its benevolent object. Mr. Grinnell, in connection with the government of the United States, sent another expedition on the same errand, in May, 1853, under the command of Dr. E. K. Kane, the surgeon and naturalist of the former enterprise. This expedition returned in October, 1855. Sir John Franklin was not found, but an open circum-polar sea was discovered.⁷ In the meantime, the great problem

1. The instrument of execution was a *garrote vil*. The victim is placed on a seat, on the high back of which is the instrument. Instant death is caused by breaking the neck with a piece of iron, forced forward by a screw.

2. Verse 1, page 23. The price paid for this tract was about \$305,000, to be given when they should reach their reservation in Upper Minnesota, and \$68,000 a year for fifty years.

3. About \$225,000 were paid for this tract, and an annual payment of \$30,000 for fifty years. Altogether, the United States government paid about \$3,000,000 for Indian lands, in the Autumn of 1851.

4. Each State is entitled to two senators. The number of States now [1857] being thirty-one, the Senate is composed of sixty-two members. The number of Representatives to which each State is entitled, is determined by the number of inhabitants. The present number of members in the House of Representatives, from States and Territories, is two hundred and forty-one.

5. On that occasion an oration was pronounced by Daniel Webster, in the course of which he said, "If, therefore, it shall hereafter be the will of God that this structure shall fall from its base, that its foundations be upturned, and the deposit beneath this stone brought to the eyes of men, be it then known, that on this day, the Union of the United States of America stands firm—that their Constitution still exists unimpaired, and, with all its usefulness and glory, growing every day stronger in the affections of the great body of the American people, and attracting, more and more, the admiration of the world."

6. Verse 4, page 36; also, verse 18, page 40, and note 7, page 45.

7. Supposing Greenland to be the southern cape of the polar continent, it was the intention of Dr. Kane to sail as far north along that coast as the ice would allow, and then leave his vessels and make an overland journey northward, in quest of supposed green fields under a mild atmosphere, and an open sea within the

QUESTIONS.—12. What Indian lands were purchased by the United States in 1851? What can you say of the progress of the country? and the enlargement of the capitol at Washington? 13. What can you tell of an English polar expedition? What efforts have been made to find the lost mariners? What can you tell of two American expeditions? What great problems have been solved?

Dr. E. K. Kane.

Governor Kossuth in the United States.



DR. KANE.

which, for three hundred years, had perplexed the maritime world, had been worked out by an English navigator. The fact of a north-west passage around the Arctic coast of North America, from Baffin's Bay to Behring's Straits, has been unquestionably demonstrated.¹

14. In December, 1851, Louis Kossuth, the exiled governor of Hungary, arrived in New York, from England, on a mission to the United States, in quest of aid for his oppressed country. His wonderful efforts in behalf of liberty in Hungary during and after the European revolutions in 1848,² and his extraordinary talent as an orator, secured for him a reception in Great Britain and in the United States, such as the most powerful emperor might be proud of. His journey throughout a greater portion of the States, was like a continued ovation. He was welcomed by deputations from all classes and pursuits; and many thousands of dollars were raised in aid of Hungary, by voluntary contributions. His noble advocacy of correct international law³ and universal brotherhood, his unwearied labors in behalf of his smitten country, and his devotion to the cause of human freedom in general, endeared him to the great majority of the people of the United States. The policy of our government forbade its lending material aid; but Kossuth received an expression of its warmest sympathies.⁴ His advent among us, and his bold enunciation of hitherto unrecognized national duties, are important and interesting events in the history of our republic.

15. During the Summer of 1852, the subject of difficulties concerning the fisheries⁵ on the coast of British America was brought to the notice of Con-

polar circle; and, perhaps, there find the temporary home of Franklin and his men. Dr. Kane held an accomplished pencil and a ready pen, and his scientific attainments were of the highest order. He had traveled extensively, and had collected a vast amount of material for popular instruction. His narrative of the first "Grinnell Expedition," written and illustrated by himself, is a wonderful record of travel, bold adventure, and scientific research. Soon after his return from the second expedition, Dr. Kane's health failed. He visited England, and finally went to Cuba. He died at Havana on the 16th of February, 1857, at the age of thirty-five years. Dr. Kane was a small man, of indomitable energy. His weight was only one hundred and six pounds. His narrative of the second expedition has been published since his death.

1. In October, 1853, Captain McClure, of the ship *Investigator*, sent in search of Sir John Franklin, having passed through Behring's Straits, and sailed eastward, reached a point with sleds upon the ice, which had been penetrated by navigators from the east (Captain Parry and others), thus establishing the fact, that there is a water connection between Baffin's Bay and Behring's Straits. Already the mute whale had demonstrated this fact to the satisfaction of naturalists. The same species are found in Behring's Straits and Baffin's Bay; and as the waters of the tropical regions would be like a sea of fire to them, they must have had communication through the polar channels. The connecting water between Baring Island and Prince Albert Land, is called Prince of Wales Strait.

2. In February, 1848, the French people drove Louis Philippe from his throne, and formed a temporary republic. The revolutionary spirit spread; and within a few months, almost every country on the continent of Europe was in a state of agitation, and the monarchs made many concessions to the people. Hungary made an effort to become free from the rule of Austria, but was crushed by the power of a Russian army.

3. He asserted that grand principle, that one nation has no right to interfere with the domestic concerns of another, and that all nations are bound to use their efforts to prevent such interference.

4. Matters connected with his reception, visit, and desires, occupied much of the attention of Congress, and elicited warm debates during the session of 1852. The Chevalier Hulsemann, the Austrian minister at Washington, formally protested against the reception of Kossuth, by Congress; and because his protest was not heeded, he retired from his post, and left the duties of his office with Mr. Belmonte, of New York. Previous to this, Hulsemann protested against the policy of our government in relation to Austria and Hungary, and that protest was answered, in a masterly manner [January, 1851], by Mr. Webster, the Secretary of State.

5. Verse 5, page 33.

QUESTION.—14. What can you tell of Governor Kossuth, and his visit to the United States?

The fishery question.

Treaty with Japan.

gress, and for several months there were indications of a serious disturbance of the amicable relations between the governments of the United States and Great Britain. American fishers were charged with a violation of the treaty of 1818, which stipulated that they should not cast their lines or nets in the bays of the British possessions, except at a distance of three miles or more from the shore. Now, the British government claimed the right to draw a line from head-land to head-land of these bays, and to exclude the Americans from the waters within that line.¹ An armed naval force was sent to sustain this claim, and American vessels were threatened with seizure if they did not comply. The government of the United States regarded the assumption as illegal, and two steam-vessels of war (*Princeton* and *Fulton*) were sent to the coast of Nova Scotia to protect the rights of American fishermen. The dispute was soon amicably settled by mutual concessions [Oct., 1853], and the cloud passed by.

16. Another important measure of national concern was matured and put in operation during the summer of 1852. The great importance of commercial intercourse with Japan, because of the intimate relations which must soon exist between our Pacific coast and the East Indies, had been felt ever since the foundation of Oregon² and California.³ An expedition, to consist of seven ships of war, under the command of Commodore Perry, a brother of the "Hero of Lake Erie,"⁴ was fitted out for the purpose of carrying a letter from the President of the United States to the emperor of Japan, soliciting the negotiation of a treaty of friendship and commerce between the two nations, by which the ports of the latter should be thrown open to American vessels, for purposes of trade. That expedition is yet [1857] in the East India waters,⁵ and its efforts have been crowned with success. Several Japan ports have been opened to our commerce, and other privileges have been granted. Hitherto the Dutch have monopolized the trade of Japan.⁶

17. The Spanish authorities of Cuba, being thoroughly alarmed by the attempts at invasion,⁷ and the evident sympathy in the movements of a large portion of the people of the United States, became excessively suspicious, and many little outrages were committed at Havana, which kept alive an irritation of feeling inconsistent with social and commercial friendship.⁸ The idea became prevalent in Cuba and in Europe, that it was the policy of the gov-

1. This stipulation was so construed as to allow American fishermen to catch cod within the large bays, where they could easily carry on their avocation at a greater distance than three miles from any land. Such had been the common practice, without interference, until the assumption of exclusive right to these bays was promulgated by the British.

2. Verse 5, page 322.

5. Note 5, page 29.

3. Verse 2, page 331.

6. Note 4, page 45.

4. Verse 7, page 287.

7. Verse 6, page 336, and verses 10, 11, page 338.

8. In the Autumn of 1852, an officer of the steamship *Crescent City*, which conveyed the United States mails, passengers, and freight between New Orleans and New York, was charged by the Spanish authorities with having written articles published in the New York papers, on Cuban affairs, which were very offensive. He was forbidden to land in Havana; and in November, when the *Crescent City*, on her way to New York, entered that harbor, no communication between her and the shore was allowed, and she was obliged to proceed to sea, with passengers and mails that should have been left at Havana. A more flagrant outrage of a similar character was committed in the Spring of 1854. See verse 11, page 348.

QUESTIONS.—15. What difficulties with Great Britain occurred in 1851? What claims were set up? How was the matter settled? 16. What important expedition was arranged in the Summer of 1852? What object is to be obtained? What has been accomplished? 17. What can you tell of the Spanish authorities of Cuba? and of their conduct? What suspicions were aroused? What did France and England ask the United States to do?

Tripartite treaty proposed. Election of Franklin Pierce. Washington Territory established.

ernment of the United States to ultimately acquire absolute possession of that island, and thus have control over the commerce of the Gulf of Mexico (the door to California), and the trade of the West India group of islands, which are owned chiefly by France and England. To prevent such a result, the cabinets of France and England asked that of the United States to enter with them into a treaty which should secure Cuba to Spain, by agreeing to disclaim "now and for ever hereafter, all intention to obtain possession of the Island of Cuba," and "to discountenance all such attempts to that effect, on the part of any power or individual whatever."

18. On the 1st of December, 1852, Edward Everett, then Secretary of State, issued a response to this extraordinary proposition, which the American people universally applauded for its keen logic and patriotic and enlightened views. He told France and England plainly, that the question was an American, not a European one, and not properly within the scope of their interference; that while the United States government disclaimed all intention to violate existing neutrality laws, it would not relinquish the right to act in relation to Cuba entirely independent of every other power; and that it could not see with indifference "the island of Cuba fall into the hands of any other power than Spain."¹ Lord John Russell, the English prime minister, answered this letter, in February, 1853, and thus ended the diplomatic correspondence on the subject of the proposed "Tripartite Treaty," as it was called.

19. The presidential election in November, 1852, resulted in the choice of Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire. William R. King, of Alabama, was elected Vice-President,² but failing health compelled him to leave the country before the oath of office could be administered to him. He went to Cuba, remained a few months, and died [April 18, 1853] soon after his return to his estate in Alabama, at the age of sixty-eight years. The most important of the closing events of Mr. Fillmore's administration, was the creation by Congress of a new Territory [March 2, 1853], called Washington, out of the northern part of Oregon.³

1. As early as 1823, when the Spanish provinces in South America were in rebellion, or forming into independent republics, President Monroe, in a special message upon the subject, promulgated the doctrine, since acted upon, that the United States ought to resist the extension of foreign domain or influence upon the American continent, and not allow any European government, by colonizing or otherwise, to gain a foothold in the New World, not already acquired. This was directed specially against the efforts expected to be made by the allied sovereigns who had crushed Napoleon, to assist Spain against her revolted colonies in America, and to suppress the growth of democracy there. It became a settled policy of our government, and Mr. Everett re-asserted it in its fullest extent. Such expression seemed to be important and reasonable, because it was well known that Great Britain was then making strenuous efforts to obtain potent influence in Central America, so as to prevent the United States from acquiring exclusive property in the routes across the isthmus from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific ocean.

2. The opposing candidates were General Winfield Scott [verse 18, page 326] for President, and William A. Graham [note 1, page 337] for Vice-President.

3. Verse 5, page 322.

QUESTIONS.—18. What did Secretary Everett do? What doctrines did he promulgate? 19. What was the result of the presidential election in 1852? What can you tell of Vice-President King? What of the close of Fillmore's administration?

SECTION XIV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION. [1853-1857.]

1. It was a stormy day [March 4, 1853] when Franklin Pierce¹ stood upon the rude platform of New Hampshire pine, erected for the purpose over the steps of the eastern portico of the Federal capitol, and took the oath of office administered by Chief-Justice Taney.² Untrammelled by special party pledges, the new chief magistrate entered upon the duties of his office under pleasant auspices; and his inaugural address, full of promise and patriotism, received the general approval of his countrymen. Three days afterward [March 7] the Senate, in special session, confirmed his cabinet appointments.³

2. The earliest serious difficulty which President Pierce was called upon to encounter, was a dispute concerning the boundary line between the Mexican province of Chihuahua⁴ and New Mexico.⁵ The Mesilla valley, a fertile and extensive region, was claimed by both Territories; and under the direction of Santa Anna,⁶ who was again President of the Mexican republic in 1854, Chihuahua took armed possession of the disputed territory. For a time, war seemed inevitable between the United States and Mexico. The dispute was finally settled by negotiations. The people of Mexico are quite impatient of the arbitrary rule of their



PIERCE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Franklin Pierce was born in Hillsborough, New Hampshire, in 1804. His education was finished in Bowdoin college, Maine. He chose the profession of law, and became one of its leading practitioners in his native State. He was early called to public duties in his State legislature. In 1831 he was elected to a seat in the Federal Congress, and remained there four years. He was elected United States Senator in 1837, which office he resigned in 1842. He prepared for the war with Mexico [verse 29, page 331] as a common soldier, but received the commission of brigadier-general, in which capacity he distinguished himself. He went into retirement after the war, from which he was unexpectedly called to the chief magistracy of the nation.

2. Note 4, page 311.

3. William L. Marcy, Secretary of State; James Guthrie, Secretary of the Treasury; Robert McClelland, Secretary of the Interior; Jefferson Davis, Secretary of War; James C. Dobbin, Secretary of the Navy; James Campbell, Postmaster-General; Caleb Cushing, Attorney-General. Mr. Marcy and Mr. Dobbin left office at the close of Mr. Pierce's administration, in March, 1857, and both died the following Summer.

4. Note 3, page 326.

5. Verse 34, page 333.

6. Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna is a native of Mexico, and first came into public life in 1821, during the excitements of revolution. He has been one of the chief revolutionists in that unhappy country. He was chosen President of the republic in 1837. After an exciting career as a commanding gen-

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of the inauguration of President Pierce? What of the promises at the beginning, and his appointments? 2. What serious difficulties did the new President first encounter? What claims were made? and how? What can you say of the Mexicans?

Exploring expeditions.

Their importance.

magistrates, and insurrection after insurrection continually disturb the republic. The youth of the present generation will probably observe the government of the United States eventually extended over the whole of that unhappy country.

3. Another exploring expedition,¹ consisting of four armed vessels and a supply-ship, sailed from Norfolk in May, 1853, under the command of Captain Ringgold. Its destination was the eastern coast of Asia, and its object a thorough exploration of those regions of the Pacific ocean yet to be traversed by vessels passing between the ports of our western frontier and China, and the whaling grounds of the sea of Okotsk and Behring's Straits. This expedition returned in the Summer of 1856, having accomplished many of the objects for which it set out. In the mean while, plans have been proposed for the construction of one or more railways from the Mississippi valley across the continent to the Pacific coast. The Thirty-second Congress, at its last session,² authorized surveys; and by mid-summer [1853] four expeditions were fitted out to explore as many different routes.³ These surveys, taken in connection with the naval operations, rank among the most important move-

ments of the age. Who can estimate the effect of a consummation of these gigantic plans upon the growth and prosperity of the United States, when the Pacific's shores shall be reached by railways, and steamships shall ply regularly between these termini and that "further India," whose wealth the commercial world has so long coveted?⁴ The beaten tracks of com-

merce will be changed, and teeming marts will burst into existence, where now the dwindling tribes of the forest build their wigwams,⁵ and gaze musingly upon the sunset, the emblem of their own destiny.⁶

eral, he was again elected President in 1841, but was hurled from power in 1845. After the capture of the city of Mexico by Scott [verse 33, page 322], he retired to the West Indies, and finally to Carthagena, where he resided until 1853, when he returned to Mexico, and was elected President again. In the Summer of 1854 he was accused of a design to assume imperial power, and the consequence was, violent insurrections, and his retirement from public life.

1. Verse 5, page 318.

2. Note 3, page 261.

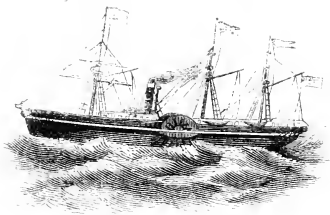
3. One, under Major Stephens, was instructed to survey a northern route from the upper waters of the Mississippi to Puget's Sound; another, under Lieutenant Whipple, was directed to cross the continent from the Mississippi along a line adjacent to the 36th parallel of latitude, to Los Angeles or San Diego; a third, under Captain Gunnison, to proceed by way of the Great Salt Lake in Utah; and a fourth, to leave the more southern portions of the Mississippi, and reach the Pacific somewhere in Lower California—perhaps at San Diego. Colonel Fremont [verse 22, page 28] was also at the head of a surveying and exploring party among the Rocky Mountains early in 1854. At about the same time, the Indians of the Wasatch range of mountains attacked Gunnison's party, and slew the leader and several of his men. Fremont's party suffered terribly. Forty-five days they fed on mules, which, from want of food, could go no further, and were killed and eaten, every particle, even to the entrails! They were met and relieved by another party on the 19th of February, 1854. The remains of the slain of Gunnison's party were afterward found.

4. Verse 1, page 27.

5. Verse 7, page 9.

6. Verse 2, page 25.

QUESTIONS.—3. What ocean exploring expeditions were sent out in 1853? What land expeditions? and for what purpose? What does the construction of railways to the Pacific promise?



AN OCEAN STEAMSHIP.

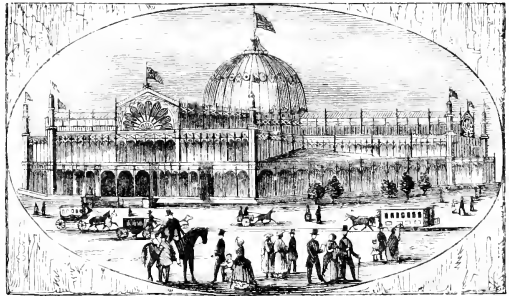


SANTA ANNA.

Crystal Palaces and World's Fairs.

4. An immense building, made of iron and glass, was erected in Hyde Park, London, under royal patronage,¹ in 1851, and within it an exhibition of the industry of all nations was opened on the 1st of May of that year. It was a *WORLD'S FAIR*; and representatives from every civilized nation of the globe were there, mingling together as brothers of one family, and all equally interested in the perfection of each other's productions. The idea was one of great moral grandeur, for it set the insignia of dignity upon labor, hitherto withheld by those who bore scepters and orders. There men of all nations and creeds received a lesson upon the importance of brotherhood among the children of men, such as the pen and tongue could not teach; and they are now diffusing the blessings of that lesson among their several peoples, the fruits of which will be seen by future generations.

5. Pleased with the idea of a World's Fair, Americans repeated its development upon their own free soil. In the heart of the commercial metropolis of the New World, a "Crystal Palace" was erected; and on the 14th of July, 1853, an exhibition of the industry of all nations was opened there with imposing ceremonies led by the President of the United States. For several months the Palace was thronged with delighted visitors; and on the 4th of July, 1854, it was re-opened, with impressive ceremonies, as a *perpetual* exhibition. There, in that beautiful palace, Labor was crowned as the supreme dignity of a nation and of the world.² Although the whole proceedings appeared but an ephemeral show, and the scheme of a *perpetual exhibition* has failed, the event will ever remain a prominent one on the pages of our history.



CRYSTAL PALACE IN NEW YORK.

6. In the month of July, 1853, an event occurred which greatly increased the respect of foreign nations for the flag of the United States. A Hungarian

1. The chief patron was Prince Albert, husband of Victoria, Queen of Great Britain.

2. One of the speakers on the occasion [Elihu Burritt] said: "Worthy of the grandest circumstances which could be thrown around a human assembly, worthy of this occasion, and a hundred like this, is that beautiful idea, the coronation of labor. * * * Not American labor, not British labor, not French labor, not the labor of the New World or the Old, but the labor of mankind as one undivided brotherhood—labor as the oldest, the noblest prerogative of duty and humanity." And Rev. E. H. Chapin closed with the beautiful invocation: "O! genius of art, fill us with the inspiration of still higher and more spiritual beauty. O! instruments of invention, enlarge our dominion over reality. Let iron and fire become as blood and muscle, and in this electric net-work let heart and brain inclose the world with truth and sympathy. And thou, O beautiful dome of light, suggestive of the brooding future, the future of human love and divine communion, expand and spread above the tribes of men a canopy broad as the earth, and glorious as the upper heaven."

QUESTIONS.—4. What building was erected in England in 1851? and for what purpose? How do you regard the idea of a World's Fair? What was effected? 5. What did the Americans do? What can you tell of a Crystal Palace in New York?

Captain Ingraham and the Austrian refugee.

Opening of the Thirty-third Congress.



CAPTAIN INGRAHAM.

refugee,¹ named Martin Koszta, had taken the legal measures to become a naturalized citizen of our republic. While engaged in business at Smyrna, on the Mediterranean, he was seized, by order of the Austrian consul-general,² and taken on board of an Austrian brig, to be conveyed to Trieste as a rebel refugee, notwithstanding he carried an American protection. Captain Ingraham, of the United States sloop-of-war³ *St. Louis*, then lying in the harbor of Smyrna, immediately claimed Koszta as an American citizen. On the refusal of the Austrian authorities to release the prisoner, Ingraham cleared his vessel for action [July 2], and threatened to fire upon the brig if Koszta was not delivered up within a given time. The Austrians yielded, and Koszta

was placed in the custody of the French consul, to await the action of the respective governments. Ingraham's course was everywhere applauded; and Congress signified its approbation by voting him an elegant sword. The Austrian government issued a protest against the proceedings of Captain Ingraham, and sent it to all the European courts; and Mr. Hulsemann, the Austrian minister at Washington,⁴ demanded an apology, or other redress, from our government, and menaced the United States with the displeasure of his royal master. But no serious difficulty occurred; and Koszta, under the protection of the United States flag, returned to this land of free opinions.

7. The Thirty-third Congress (first session⁵) assembled, as usual, early in December, 1853. A greater degree of good feeling was exhibited among members of both Houses, from all parts of the Union, than had been witnessed since the excitement incident to the slavery agitation in 1850.⁶ The people regarded the session as one of great moment, for subjects of vast national importance would necessarily occupy the attention of their representatives. The construction of a railway to the Pacific ocean⁷ was a topic of paramount importance to be discussed. There were treaties in progress respecting boundaries and claims between the United States and their southern neighbors, Mexico and Central America;⁸ and the government of the Sandwich Islands was making earnest overtures for annexing that ocean empire to our republic.⁹ Just as the preliminaries were arranged for entering vigor-

1. When Austria, by the aid of Russia [note 1, page 349], crushed the rebellion in Hungary, in 1848, many of the active patriots became exiles in foreign lands. A large number came to the United States, and many of them have become naturalized citizens—that is, after due legal preparation, took an oath to support the Constitution and laws of the United States, and to perform faithfully all the duties of a citizen.

2. Note 6, page 274.

3. Note 3, page 264.

4. Page 283.

5. Verse 5, page 335.

6. Note 4, page 340.

7. Verse 3, page 344.

8. Chiefly concerning grants of territory for inter-oceanic communications across the isthmuses; and boundary lines between New Mexico, California, and Old Mexico.

9. These islands are destined to be of great importance in the operations of the future commerce of the Pacific ocean. A great majority of the white people there are Americans by birth; and the government, in all its essential operations, is controlled by Americans, notwithstanding the ostensible ruler is a native king.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of the protection of the United States given to its citizens abroad? Can you relate all the circumstances connected with the affair alluded to? 7. What was the aspect of the Thirty-third Congress? What important questions were to be discussed by it? What disturbed its harmony, and that of the whole country?

Kansas and Nebraska.

Excitement concerning them.

ously upon the business of the session, the chairman of the Senate Committee on Territories presented a bill [Jan., 1854], which became the chief topic for discussion, in and out of Congress, for a long time.

8. In the center of our continent is a vast region, almost twice as large, in territorial extent, as the original thirteen States,¹ stretching between Missouri, Iowa, and Minnesota, and the Pacific territories, from the thirty-seventh parallel of north latitude to the British possessions,² and embracing one fourth of all the public lands of the United States. The bill alluded to proposed to erect this vast region into two Territories, the southern portion below the fortieth parallel to be named *Kansas*, and the northern and larger portion, *Nebraska*. The bill contained a provision which would nullify the Compromise of 1820,³ and allow the inhabitants of those Territories to decide for themselves whether they would have the institution of slavery or not.⁴

9. This proposition surprised Congress and the whole country. The slavery agitation was aroused in all its strength and rancor, and the whole North became violently excited. Public meetings were held by men of all parties, and petitions and remonstrances against the measure, especially in its relation to *Nebraska*, were poured into the Senate,⁵ while the debate on the subject was progressing, from the 30th of January until the 3d of March, 1854. On the latter day, the bill passed that body by the decisive vote of thirty-seven to fourteen. The measure encountered great opposition in the House of Representatives; and, by means of several amendments, its final defeat seemed almost certain, and the excitement subsided.⁶

10. Just as the public mind had become comparatively tranquil, the *Nebraska* bill was again called up in the House of Representatives [May 9, 1854]; and it was the absorbing subject for discussion, during a fortnight. Violent debates, with great acrimony of feeling, occurred; and on one occasion there was a session of thirty-six consecutive hours' duration, when an

Preliminary negotiations had already commenced for the annexation of this group of islands to our republic, when the old king died, and nothing has since been done in the matter.

1. Verse 1, page 142.

2. Verse 5, page 322.

3. Verse 8, page 304.

4. Verse 8, page 304. The bill defines the boundaries of *Nebraska*, as follows: "Beginning at a point in the Missouri river where the fortieth parallel north latitude crosses the same; thence west on said parallel to the summits of the highlands separating the waters flowing into the waters of the Green river, or Colorado of the West, from the waters flowing into the great lakes; thence northward on the said highlands to the summit of the Rocky Mountains; thence on said summit northward to the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude; thence east on said parallel to the western boundary of the Territory of Minnesota; thence southward on said boundary to the Missouri river; thence down the main channel of said river to the place of beginning." It also thus defines the boundaries of *Kansas*: "Beginning at a point on the western boundary of the State of Missouri, where the thirty-seventh parallel of north latitude crosses the same; thence west on said parallel to the eastern boundary of New Mexico; thence north on said boundary to latitude thirty-eight; thence following said boundary westward to the summit of the highlands dividing the waters flowing into the Colorado of the West, or Green river, from the waters flowing into the great basin; thence northward on said summit to the fortieth parallel of latitude; thence east on said parallel to the western boundary of the State of Missouri; thence south with the western boundary of said State to the place of beginning."

5. A petition against the measure was presented to the Senate, immediately after the passage of the bill by that body, signed by three thousand clergymen of New England.

6. A bill was reported in the Senate, on the 10th of March, providing for the construction of a railway to the Pacific ocean; and on the same day when the *Nebraska* bill passed that body [March 7], the House of Representatives adopted one called the Homestead bill, which provided that any free white male citizen, or one who may have declared his intentions to become one previous to the passage of this act, might select a quarter section (one hundred and sixty acres) of land, on the public domain, and on proof being given that he had occupied and cultivated it for five years, he might receive a title to it, in fee, without being required to pay any thing for it.

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell of a vast territory in the interior of our continent? What was proposed to be done with it? What would the measure effect? 9. What did the proposition produce? What did Congress do?

Difficulties respecting Cuba.

The Ostend Conference.

adjournment took place, in the midst of great confusion. The final question was taken on the 22d, and the bill was passed by a vote of one hundred and thirteen to one hundred. Three days afterward [May 25], the Senate agreed to it as it came from the House, and it received the signature of the President on the last day of May.¹

11. While the Nebraska subject was in progress, new difficulties with the Spanish authorities of Cuba appeared.² Under cover of a shallow pretense, the American steamship, *Black Warrior*, was seized in the harbor of Havana [Feb. 28, 1854], and the vessel and cargo were declared confiscated. The outrage was so flagrant, that a proposition was immediately submitted to the lower House of Congress, to suspend the neutrality laws,³ and compel the Havana officials to behave properly. The President sent a special messenger to the government at Madrid, with instructions to the American minister to demand immediate redress. In the meantime, the perpetrators of the outrage became alarmed, and the captain-general (or governor) of Cuba, with pretended generosity, offered to give up the vessel and cargo, on the payment by the owners of a fine of six thousand dollars. They complied, but under protest,⁴ and the matter was finally settled amicably between the governments of the United States and Spain.

12. The impending difficulties with Spain, in the Summer of 1854, led to an important conference of some of the American ministers in Europe.⁵ They met at Ostend, in Belgium, on the 9th of October, and after due deliberation there and elsewhere, they recommended the *purchase* of Cuba by the United States, if possible; at the same time they asserted the right of the latter to take it by force, if the former refused to sell.⁶ This is known as the *Ostend Conference*.

13. In the Summer of 1854, disputed boundary lines between the United States and Mexico were defined and settled; and nothing now [1857] seems likely to disturb the friendly relations between the two governments, except private invasions of Mexico by armed citizens of the United States.

14. At about the same time a reciprocity treaty was negotiated between

1. A few days after the final passage of the Nebraska bill, the city of Boston was made a theater of great excitement, by the arrest of a fugitive slave there, and a deputy-marshal was shot dead during a riot. United States troops from Rhode Island were employed to sustain the officers of the law, and a local military force was detailed, to assist in the protection of the court and the parties concerned, until the trial of the alleged fugitive was completed. The United States commissioner decided in favor of the claimant of the slave, and he was conveyed to Virginia by a government vessel.

2. Verse 17, page 341.

3. Agreements made between the governments of the United States and Old Spain, to remain neutral or inactive when either party should engage in war with another. Under the provisions of such laws, any number of citizens of the United States who may be engaged in hostilities against Spain, would forfeit the protection of their government, and become liable to punishment, for a violation of law. It was on this account that Crittenden and his party [verse 11, page 33^s] were shot at Havana, without the right of claiming the interference of the government of the United States in their behalf.

4. By protesting against an act which a party is *compelled* to perform, the matter is left open for future discussion and final settlement.

5. Mr. Buchanan, in England; Mr. Mason, in Paris; and Mr. Soulé, in Spain.

6. "If Spain," they said, "actuated by stubborn pride and a false sense of honor, should refuse to sell Cuba to the United States," then, "by every law, human and divine, we [the United States] shall be justified in wresting it from Spain, if we possess the power."

QUESTIONS.—10. What occurred in the House of Representatives? What was the final result of the whole matter? 11. What can you tell about new difficulties with the Cuban authorities? What was proposed in Congress? What did the President and the captain-general do? 12. What question remains to be settled? What are the feelings of the people of the United States? How manifested? What indications appear? 13. What about the boundary line between Mexico and the United States?

Reciprocity treaty with England.	Nicaragua.	British officials dismissed.	Kansas.
----------------------------------	------------	------------------------------	---------

the United States and Great Britain, which established almost free commerce between the British provinces in America and our confederation. It made most of the fisheries free;¹ and stipulated that the St. Lawrence river and the Canadian canals should be thrown open to American commerce. This arrangement has had a happy effect.

15. From the beginning of 1855 until early in 1857, Nicaragua and the Central American States southward of it, became a theater of events in which the people of the United States were much interested. It is an important region, because it lies in the track of vast commerce in the future, and the nation that shall control it will possess great power.² In the Summer of 1855, William Walker, an adventurer, came down from California and invaded Nicaragua. After many struggles, he took armed possession of the country; and so permanent did his power seem, that diplomatic relations were established between his government and the United States. The Costa Ricans joined the Nicaraguans, and Walker was driven from the country in the Spring of 1857. It is a coveted spot, and it will, doubtless, suffer other invasions from the North.

16. In 1855, the friendly relations between Great Britain and the United States were disturbed, by difficulties growing out of a violation of the neutrality laws by the representatives of the former. Enlistments for the war in the Crimea,³ within the limits of the United States, were sanctioned by the British minister at Washington and some lesser officials. The government of the United States demanded the recall of the minister. The British government refused compliance, and the President dismissed the offending officials.⁴ The cloud appeared dark for a moment, but it soon passed away.

17. There was great trouble in Kansas in 1855, when, on account of the efforts of men opposed to, and in favor of slavery, to control public affairs there, civil war was kindled. This continued, with more or less violence, until the Summer of 1856, when a committee of the House of Representatives, who had been sent there in March to inquire into matters, made an unsatisfactory report.⁵ Troubles still continued, but not with so much violence. As the Autumn came on, and the mind of the whole nation was absorbed with the topic of the approaching presidential election, these troubles almost ceased.

18. The presidential election in the Autumn of 1856, was a very exciting one. There were three parties in the contest, and each had a candidate. The

1. Verse 15, page 340.

2. A railway has been constructed across the isthmus of Panama. The first trains passed over it, from Aspinwall to Panama, on the 28th of June, 1855. Several other routes have been projected in that region. Explorations have also been made for a ship canal across the Isthmus of Darien. Nothing more definite has yet [1857] been done.

3. This was a war between Russia on one side, and England and France on the other. It was long, and very destructive of life.

4. The British minister at Washington, and the British consuls at New York and Cincinnati.

5. This was a committee of three. The majority reported strongly in favor of the anti-slavery people there, and the minority as strongly the other way. So neither side was satisfied by the investigation and report.

QUESTIONS.—14. What treaty was negotiated with Great Britain? What are its effects? 15. What can you tell about Nicaragua and adventurers there? 16. What can you tell about the conduct of British officials here? 17. What happened in Kansas?

The presidential election.

Atlantic telegraph.

Inauguration of Mr. Buchanan.

Democrats nominated James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania.¹ The *Republicans* (a new party, composed of men of all political creeds opposed to the extension of slavery) nominated Colonel John C. Fremont, of California;² and another comparatively new party, called the American or Know-Nothing party, nominated ex-President Fillmore.³ The canvass was a warm one, and resulted in the election of James Buchanan for President, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.

19. Nothing of great importance occurred during the remainder of President Pierce's administration, which ended on the 4th of March, 1857, except an arrangement made by the government of the United States with a company, formed in 1856, to connect America

and Europe, by way of Newfoundland and Ireland, by a magnetic telegraph cable.⁴ The distance, in a direct line, is sixteen hundred miles, and the enterprise is considered perfectly practicable, notwithstanding many impediments, such as strong ocean currents, and great inequalities of surface, are in the way of its success. This, when accomplished, will be one of the most wonderful triumphs of the human mind.

20. At one o'clock on the appointed day, James Buchanan⁵ was inaugurated the fifteenth President of the United States, in the presence of a vast assemblage of his fellow-citizens. Among that large assembly was one who bore a near relationship to the great Washington, and had been present at the inauguration of every chief magistrate of the United States since the formation of the Federal government, in 1789.⁶ Two days afterward the Senate confirmed Mr. Buchanan's cabinet appointments,⁷ and the administration now [1857] in progress commenced its work.

21. And here, on the verge of great



BUCHANAN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Note 5, page 345.

2. Page 325.

3. Page 336.

4. Verse , page .

5. James Buchanan was born in Pennsylvania, in April, 1791. He was admitted to the bar in 1808, and was a member of the Legislature of his State at the age of twenty-three years. He was elected to Congress in 1820; went to Russia as United States minister in 1831; was elected United States senator in 1833; and became Secretary of State in 1845. He was appointed minister to England in 1853, and in 1856 was chosen President of the United States.

6. George Washington Parke Custis, the grandson of Mrs. Washington, and the adopted son and only surviving executor of Washington.

7. He appointed Lewis Cass, Secretary of State; Howell Cobb, Secretary of the Treasury; John B. Floyd, Secretary of War; Isaac Toucey, Secretary of the Navy; Jacob Thompson, Secretary of the Interior; Aaron V. Brown, Postmaster-General; and Jeremiah S. Black, Attorney-General.

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell of parties and the presidential election? 19. What of a great magnetic telegraph cable?

Extent of the United States.

What constitutes a State?

events yet to be developed in the Old and New Worlds, we pause in our wonderful story of the discovery,¹ settlement,² and colonization³ of this beautiful land, and the establishment of the noblest republic the world ever saw, covering with the broad ægis of its power a territory as extensive as that of old Rome in her palmy days, when she was mistress of the world.⁴ Let us not take special pride in the extent and physical grandeur of our beloved country, but endeavor to have our hearts and minds thoroughly penetrated with the glorious thoughts of Alcæus of Mytelene, who asked and answered—

“What constitutes a State?

Not high-raised battlement or labored mound,

Thick wall or moated gate;

Not cities proud, with spires and turrets crowned;

Not bays and broad-armed ports,

Where, laughing at the storms, rich navies ride;

Not starred and spangled courts,

Where low-browed baseness wafts perfume to pride

No: men, high-minded men,

With powers as far above dull brutes endued,

In forest, brake, or den,

As brutes excel cold rocks and brambles rude—

Men who their duties know,

But know their rights, and knowing, dare maintain;

Prevent the long-aimed blow,

And crush the tyrant while they rend the chain—

These constitute a State.”

1. Page 26.

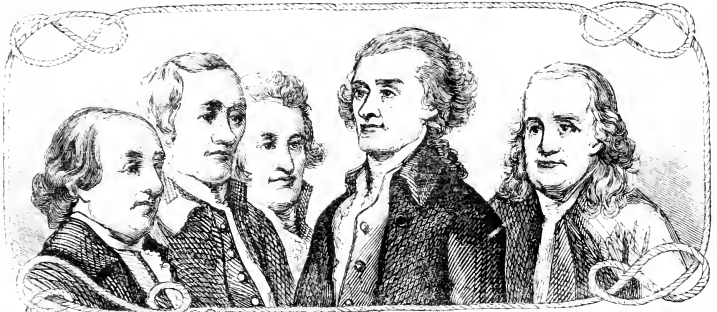
2. Page 47.

3. Page 81.

4. The territorial extent of our republic is ten times as large as that of Great Britain and France combined; three times as large as the whole of France, Britain, Austria, Prussia, Spain, Portugal, Belgium, Holland, and Denmark together; one and a half times as large as the Russian empire in Europe; and only one sixth less than the area covered by the sixty States and Empires of Europe. The entire area, in 1853, was 2,983,153 square miles. The internal trade of the United States is of vast extent. Its value amounted in 1853 (lake and western river trade), to more than \$560,000,000, in which about 11,000,000 of our people are directly or indirectly interested. Within thirty years our vast railway system has been created by the wealth and industry of our people. The first railway of the United States was built in 1827. At the beginning of 1857 there were in the United States almost 28,000 miles of railway completed, and half that number of miles under construction. These connect about ten thousand villages and cities. These are opening up vast resources, agricultural and mineral. According to the seventh enumeration of the inhabitants of the United States, made in 1850, the total number was 23,191,876, of whom 19,553,068 are white people; 434,495 free colored; and 3,204,313 slaves. Taking the increase of population from 1840 to 1850, as a basis of calculation, we may safely conclude the population of the United States to be, at this time [1857] about 28,000,000. The most accessible works in which are given, in detail, the progress of political events in the United States, from the formation of the Constitution until the present time, are Hildreth's *History of the United States*, second series, and the *Stat-man's Manual*. The former closes with the year 1821; the latter is continued to the present year.

QUESTION.—21. What can you tell of the extent of our republic? What does Alcæus say constitutes a State?

SUPPLEMENT.



THE COMMITTEE.



JEFFERSON'S BOARDING HOUSE.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. The following preamble and specifications,¹ known as the Declaration of Independence,² accompanied the resolution of Richard Henry Lee,³ which was adopted by Congress on the 2d day of July, 1776. This declaration was agreed to on the 4th, and the transaction is thus recorded in the Journal for that day:

2. "Agreeably to the order of the day, the Congress resolved itself into a committee of the whole, to take into their further consideration the Declaration; and, after some time, the presi-

dent resumed the chair, and Mr. Harrison reported that the committee have agreed to a declaration, which they desired him to report. The Declaration being read, was agreed to as follows:"

1. It must be remembered that these specific charges made against the king of Great Britain, include, in their denunciations, the government of which he was the head. Personally, George the Third was not a tyrant, but as the representative of a government, he was so.

2. The picture exhibits the portraits of the committee [note 6, p. 202], appointed to draft a Declaration. Also a view of the house of Mrs. Clymer [note 1, p. 203], where Mr. Jefferson boarded at the time, and wherein he performed the task of making the draft. The portrait nearest the front, and near the centre, is Mr. Jefferson. Behind him is Dr. Franklin, next on his right, is Robert R. Livingston [verse 7, p. 175], next to him is Roger Sherman, and the last, is John Adams.

3. Verse 9, p. 186.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,
IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station, to which the laws of nature, and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

3. We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain, is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

4. He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.¹

5. He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.²

6. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.³

1. The colonial assemblies, from time to time, made enactments touching their commercial operations, the emission of a colonial currency, and concerning representatives in the imperial parliament, but the assent of the sovereign to these laws was withheld. After the Stamp Act excitments [verse 11, p. 175], Secretary Conway informed the Americans that the tumults should be overlooked, provided the Assemblies would make provision for full compensation for all public property which had been destroyed. In complying with this demand, the Assembly of Massachusetts thought it would be "wholesome and necessary for the public good," to grant free pardon to all who had been engaged in the disturbances, and passed an act accordingly. It would have produced quiet and good feeling, but the royal assent was refused.

2. In 1764, the Assembly of New York took measures to conciliate the SIX NATIONS, and other Indian tribes. The motives of the Assembly were misconstrued, representations having been made to the king that the colonies wished to make allies of the Indians, so as to increase their physical power and proportionate independence of the British crown. The monarch sent instructions to all his governors to desist from such alliances, or to suspend their operations until his assent should be given. He then "utterly neglected to attend to them." The Massachusetts Assembly passed a law in 1770, for taxing officers of the British government in that colony. The governor was ordered to withhold his assent to such tax-bill. This was in violation of the colonial charter, and the people justly complained. The Assembly was prorogued from time to time, and laws of great importance were "utterly neglected."

3. A law was passed by parliament in the Spring of 1774, by which the popular representative system in the province of Quebec (Canada) was annulled, and officers appointed by the crown, had all power as legislators, except that of levying taxes. The Canadians being Roman Catholics, were easily pacified under the new order of things, by having their religious system declared the established religion of the province. But "large districts of people" bordering on Nova Scotia, felt this deprivation to be a

7. He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.¹

8. He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.²

9. He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.³

10. He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.⁴

11. He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.⁵

great grievance. Their humble petitions concerning commercial regulations were unheeded, because they remonstrated against the new order of things, and governor Carleton [verse 19, p. 195] plainly told them that they must cease their clamor about representatives, before they should have any new commercial laws. A bill for "better regulating the government in the province of Massachusetts Bay," passed that year, provided for the abridgment of the privileges of popular elections, to take the government out of the hands of the people, and to vest the nomination of judges, magistrates, and even sheriffs, in the crown. When thus deprived of "free representation in the Legislature," and the governor refused to issue warrants for the election of members of the Assembly, they called a convention of the freemen, and asked for the passage of "laws for the accommodation of large districts of people." These requests were disregarded, and they were told that no laws should be passed until they should quietly "relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only."

1. In consequence of the destruction of tea in Boston harbor [verse 30, p. 183] in 1773, the inhabitants of that town became the special objects of royal displeasure. The Boston Port Bill [verse 31, p. 184] was passed as a punishment. The custom house, courts, and other public operations were removed to Salem, while the public records were kept in Boston, and so well guarded by two regiments of soldiers, that the patriotic members of the colonial Assembly could not have referred to them. Although compelled to meet at a place [verse 31, p. 184] "distant from the repository of the public records," and in a place extremely "uncomfortable," they were *not* fatigued into compliance, but in spite of the efforts of the governor, they elected delegates to a general Congress [verse 35, p. 185], and adopted other measures for the public good.

2. When the British government became informed of the fact that the Assembly of Massachusetts in 1768, had issued a circular [verse 18, p. 173] to other Assemblies, inviting their co-operation in asserting the principle that Great Britain had no right to tax the colonists without their consent, Lord Hillsborough, the Secretary for Foreign Affairs, was directed to order the governor of Massachusetts to require the Assembly of that province to rescind its obnoxious resolutions expressed in the circular. In case of their refusal to do so, the governor was ordered to dissolve them immediately. Other Assemblies were warned not to imitate that of Massachusetts, and when they refused to accede to the wishes of the king, as expressed by the several royal governors, they were repeatedly dissolved. The Assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina were dissolved for denying the right of the king to tax the colonies, or to remove offenders out of the country, for trial. [See verse 22, p. 180]. In 1774, when the several Assemblies entertained the proposition to elect delegates to a general Congress [verse 34, p. 185], nearly all of them were dissolved.

3. When the Assembly of New York, in 1766, refused to comply with the provisions of the Mutiny Act [verse 16, p. 177], its legislative functions were suspended by royal authority [verse 17, p. 178], and for several months the State remained "exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within." The Assembly of Massachusetts after its dissolution in July, 1768, was not permitted to meet again until the last Wednesday of May, 1769, and then they found the place of meeting surrounded by a military guard, with cannons pointed directly at their place of meeting. They refused to act under such tyrannical restraint, and their legislative powers "returned to the people."

4. Secret agents were sent to America soon after the accession of George the Third to the throne of England [verse 7, p. 173], to spy out the condition of the colonists. A large influx of liberty-loving German emigrants was observed, and the king was advised to discourage these immigrations. Obstacles in the way of procuring lands, and otherwise, were put in the way of all emigrants, except from England, and the tendency of French Roman Catholics to settle in Maryland, was also discouraged. The British government was jealous of the increasing power of the colonies, and the danger of having that power controlled by democratic ideas, caused the employment of restrictive measures. The easy conditions upon which actual settlers might obtain lands on the Western frontier, after the peace of 1763 [verse 7, p. 173], were so changed, that toward the dawning of the revolution, the vast solitudes west of the Alleghanies were seldom penetrated by any but the hunter from the seaboard provinces. When the War for Independence broke out, immigration had almost ceased. The king conjectured wisely, for almost the entire German population in the colonies, were on the side of the patriots.

5. By an act of parliament in 1774, the judiciary was taken from the people of Massachusetts. The judges were appointed by the king, were dependent on him for their salaries, and were subject to his will. Their salaries were paid from moneys drawn from the people by the commissioners of customs [verse 17, p. 164], in the form of duties. The same act deprived them, in most cases, of the benefit of

12. He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.¹

13. He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.²

14. He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.³

15. He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.⁴

16. He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:⁵

17. For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;⁶

18. For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;⁷

19. For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;⁸

trial by jury, and the "administration of justice" was effectually obstructed. The rights for which Englishmen so manfully contended in 1688 [note 9, p. 89] were trampled under foot. Similar grievances concerning the courts of law, existed in other colonies, and throughout the Anglo-American [note 5, p. 159] domain, there was but a semblance of justice left. The people met in conventions, when Assemblies were dissolved, and endeavored to establish "judiciary powers," but in vain, and were finally driven to rebellion.

1. As we have observed in note 5, p. 355, judges were made independent of the people. Royal governors were placed in the same position. Instead of checking their tendency to petty tyranny, by having them depend upon the colonial Assemblies for their salaries, these were paid out of the national treasury. Independent of the people, they had no sympathies with the people, and thus became fit instruments of oppression, and ready at all times to do the bidding of the king and his ministers. The Colonial Assemblies protested against the measure, and out of the excitement which it produced, grew that power of the Revolution, the committees of correspondence [note 1, p. 185]. When, in 1774, chief justice Oliver, of Massachusetts, declared it to be his intention to receive his salary from the crown, the Assembly proceeded to impeach him, and petitioned the governor for his removal. The governor refused compliance, and great irritation ensued.

2. After the passage of the Stamp Act, stamp distributors were appointed in every considerable town. In 1766 and 1767, acts for the collection of duties created "swarms of officers," all of whom received high salaries; and when, in 1768, admiralty and vice-admiralty courts were established on a new basis, an increase in the number of officers was made. The high salaries and extensive perquisites of all of these, were paid with the people's money, and thus "swarms of officers" "eat out their substance."

3. After the treaty of peace with France, in 1763 [verse 48, p. 168], Great Britain left quite a large number of troops in America, and required the colonists to contribute to their support. There was no use for this standing army, except to repress the growing spirit of democracy among the colonists, and to enforce compliance with taxation laws. The presence of troops was always a cause of complaint, and when, finally, the colonists boldly opposed the unjust measures of the British government, armies were sent hither to awe the people into submission. It was one of those "standing armies" kept here "without the consent of the Legislature," against which the patriots at Lexington and Concord [verses 4 and 5, p. 188], and Bunker Hill [verse 10, p. 190] so manfully battled in 1775.

4. General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was appointed governor of Massachusetts, in 1774, and to put the measures of the Boston Port Bill [verse 31, p. 184] into execution, he encamped several regiments of soldiers upon Boston Common. The military there, and also in New York, was made independent of, and superior to, the civil power, and this, too, in a time of peace, before the minute men [verse 1, p. 187] were organized.

5. The establishment of a Board of Trade, to act independent of colonial legislation through its creatures (resident commissioners of customs) in the enforcement of revenue laws, was altogether foreign to the constitution of any of the colonies, and produced great indignation. The establishment of this power, and the remodelling of the admiralty courts, so as to exclude trial by jury therein, in most cases, rendered the government fully obnoxious to the charge in the text. The people felt their degradation under such petty tyranny, and resolved to spurn it. It was effectually done in Boston, as we have seen [verse 20, p. 179], and the government, after all its bluster, was obliged to recede. In 1774, the members of the council of Massachusetts (answering to our Senate), were, by a parliamentary enactment, chosen by the king, to hold the office during his pleasure. Almost unlimited power was also given to the governor, and the people were indeed subjected to "a jurisdiction foreign to their constitution," by these creatures of royalty.

6. In 1774 seven hundred troops were landed in Boston, under cover of the cannons of British armed ships in the harbor; and early the following year, parliament voted ten thousand men for the American service, for it saw the wave of rebellion rising high under the gale of indignation which unrighteous acts had spread over the land. The tragedies at Lexington and Concord, soon followed, and at Bunker Hill, the War for Independence was opened in earnest.

7. In 1768, two citizens of Annapolis, in Maryland, were murdered by some marines belonging to a British armed ship. The trial was a mockery of justice, and in the face of clear evidence against them, they were acquitted. In the difficulties with the Regulators [verse 27, p. 182] in North Carolina, in 1771, some of the soldiers who had shot down citizens, when standing up in defence of their rights, were tried for murder and acquitted, while governor Tryon mercilessly hung six prisoners, who were certainly entitled to the benefits of the laws of war, if his own soldiers were.

8. The navigation laws [note 4, p. 145] were always oppressive in character; and in 1764, the British naval commanders having been clothed with the authority of custom house officers, completely broke

20. For imposing taxes on us without our consent;¹
21. For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury;²
22. For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences;³
23. For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;⁴
24. For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments;⁵
25. For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.⁶
26. He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.⁷
27. He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.⁸
28. He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to

up a profitable trade which the colonists had long enjoyed with the Spanish and French West Indies, notwithstanding it was in violation of the old Navigation Act of 1660 [note 3, p. 86], which had been almost ineffectual. Finally, lord North concluded to punish the refractory colonists of New England, by crippling their commerce [verse 3, p. 188] with Great Britain, Ireland, and the West Indies. Fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was also prohibited, and thus, as far as parliamentary enactments could accomplish it, their "trade with all parts of the world" was cut off.

1. In addition to the revenue taxes imposed from time to time, and attempted to be collected by means of writs of assistance [verse 8, p. 174] the Stamp Act [verse 10, p. 174] was passed, and duties upon paper, painters' colors, glass, tea, &c., were levied. This was the great bone of contention between the colonists and the imperial government. It was contention on the one hand for the great political truth that *taxation and representation are inseparable*, and a lust for power, and the means for replenishing an exhausted treasury, on the other. The climax of the contention was the Revolution.

2. This was especially the case, when commissioners of customs were concerned in the suit. After these functionaries were driven from Boston in 1768 [verse 20, p. 179], an act was passed which placed violations of the revenue laws under the jurisdiction of the admiralty courts, where the offenders were tried by a creature of the crown, and were deprived "of the benefits of trial by jury."

3. A law of 1774 provided that any person in the province of Massachusetts, who should be accused of riot, resistance of magistrates or the officers of customs, murder, "or any other capital offence," might, at the option of the governor, be taken for trial to another colony, or transported to Great Britain, for the purpose. The minister pretended that impartial justice could not be administered in Massachusetts, but the facts of captain Preston's case [verse 25, p. 181], refuted his arguments, in that direction. The bill was violently opposed in parliament, yet it became a law. It was decreed that Americans might be "transported beyond the seas, to be tried for pretended offences," or real crimes.

4. This charge is embodied in an earlier one [verse 6, p. 354], considered in note 3, p. 354. The British ministry thought it prudent to take early steps to secure a footing in America, so near the scene of inevitable rebellion, as to allow them to breast, successfully, the gathering storm. The investing of a legislative council in Canada, with all powers except levying of taxes, was a great stride toward that absolute military rule which bore sway there within eighteen months afterward. Giving up their political rights for doubtful religious privileges, made them willing slaves, and Canada remained a part of the British empire, when its sister colonies rejoiced in freedom.

5. This is a reiteration of the charge considered in note 5, p. 355, and refers to the alteration of the Massachusetts charter, so as to make judges and other officers independent of the people, and subservient to the crown. The governor was empowered to remove and appoint all inferior judges, the attorney-general, provosts, marshals, and justices of the peace, and to appoint sheriffs independent of the council. As the sheriffs chose jurors, trial by jury might easily be made a mere mockery. The people had hitherto been allowed, by their charter, to select jurors; now the whole matter was placed in the hands of the creatures of government.

6. This, too, is another phase of the charge just considered. We have noticed the suppression of the Legislature of New York [note 3, p. 355], and in several cases, the governors, after dissolving colonial Assemblies, assumed the right to make proclamations stand in the place of statute law. Lord Dunmore assumed this right in 1775, and so did sir James Wright, of Georgia, and lord William Campbell, of South Carolina. They were driven from the country, in consequence.

7. In his message to parliament early in 1775, the king declared the colonists to be in a state of open rebellion, and by sending armies hither to make war upon them, he really "abdicated government," by thus declaring them "out of his protection." He sanctioned the acts of governors in employing the Indians against his subjects [note 3, p. 358], and himself bargained for the employment of German hirelings. And when, yielding to the pressure of popular will, his representatives (the royal governors) fled before the indignant people, he certainly "abdicated government."

8. When naval commanders were clothed with the powers of custom-house officers [note 8, p. 356], they seized many American vessels; and after the affair at Lexington and Bunker Hill, British ships of war "plundered our seas" whenever an American vessel could be found. They also "ravaged our coasts and burnt our towns." Charlestown [verse 11, p. 191], Falmouth (now Portland, in Maine), and Norfolk were burnt, and Dunmore and others [verse 25, p. 197] "ravaged our coasts," and "destroyed the lives of our people." And at the very time when this Declaration was being read to the assembled Congress [verse 10, p. 202], the shattered fleet of Sir Peter Parker was sailing northward [verse 8, p. 201], after an attack upon Charleston, South Carolina.

complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.¹

29. He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.²

30. He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.³

31. In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.⁴

32. Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren.⁵ We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war—in peace, friends.

33. We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved, from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved, and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

1. This charge refers to the infamous employment of German troops, known here as Hessians. See verse 2, p. 198.

2. An act of parliament passed toward the close of December, 1775, authorized the capture of all American vessels, and also directed the treatment of the crews of armed vessels to be as slaves and not as prisoners of war. They were to be enrolled for "the service of his majesty," and were thus compelled to fight for the crown, even against their own friends and countrymen. This act was loudly condemned on the floor of parliament, as unworthy of a Christian people, and "a refinement of cruelty unknown among savage nations."

3. This was done in several instances. Dunmore was charged [note 4, p. 193] with a design to employ the Indians against the Virginians, as early as 1774; and while ravaging the Virginia coast in 1775 and 1776, he endeavored to excite the slaves against their masters. He was also concerned with governor Gage and others, under instructions from the British ministry, in exciting the *Shawnees*, and other savages of the Ohio country, against the white people. Emissaries were also sent among the *Cherokees* and *Creeks*, for the same purpose, and all of the tribes of the *Six Nations*, except the *Oneidas*, were found in arms with the British when war began. Thus excited, dreadful massacres occurred on the borders of the several colonies.

4. For ten long years the colonies petitioned for redress of grievances, "in the most humble terms," and loyal manner. It was done by the Colonial Congress of 1765 [verse 12, p. 176], and also by the Continental Congresses of 1774 [verse 35, p. 185] and 1775 [verse 15, p. 193]. But their petitions were almost always "answered only by repeated injuries."

5. From the beginning, the colonists appealed, in the most affectionate terms, to "their British brethren." The first address put forth by the Congress of 1774 [note 2, p. 186] was "To the People of Great Britain;" and the Congress of 1775, sent an affectionate appeal to the people of Ireland.

SIGNERS OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

The following is a list of the members of the Continental Congress, who signed the Declaration of Independence, with the places and dates of their birth, and the time of their respective deaths.

NAMES OF THE SIGNERS.	BORN AT	DELEGATE FROM	DIED.
Adams, John . . .	Braintree, Mass., 19th Oct. 1735	Massachusetts,	4th July, 1826
Adams, Samuel . . .	Boston, " 22d Sept. 1722	Massachusetts,	2d Oct., 1803
Bartlett, Josiah . . .	Amesbury, " in Nov. 1729	New Hampshire,	19th May, 1795
Braxton, Carter . . .	Newington, Va., 10th Sept. 1736	Virginia,	10th Oct., 1797
Carroll Cha's of Car'ltou	Annapolis, Md., 20th Sept. 1737	Maryland,	14th Nov., 1832
Chase, Samuel . . .	Somerset co., Md., 17th April 1741	Maryland,	19th June, 1811
Clark, Abraham . . .	Elizabeth't'n, N.J. 15th Feb. 1726	New Jersey,	— June, 1794
Clymer, George . . .	Philadelphia, Penn., in 1739	Pennsylvania,	24th Jan., 1813
Ellery, William . . .	Newport, R. I., 22d Dec. 1727	R. I. & Prov. Pl.,	15th Feb., 1820
Floyd, William . . .	Suffolk co., N. Y., 17th Dec. 1734	New York,	4th Aug., 1821
Franklin, Benjamin . . .	Boston, Mass., 17th Jan. 1706	Pennsylvania,	17th April, 1790
Gerry, Elbridge . . .	Marblehead, Mass., 17th Jul. 1744	Massachusetts,	23d Nov., 1814
Gwinnet, Button . . .	England, in 1732	Georgia,	27th May, 1777
Hall, Lyman . . .	Connecticut, in 1731	Georgia,	— Feb., 1790
Hancock, John . . .	Braintree, Mass., in 1737	Massachusetts,	8th Oct., 1793
Harrison, Benjamin . . .	Berkely, Virginia,	Virginia,	— April, 1791
Hart, John . . .	Hopewell, N. J., about 1715	New Jersey,	— 1780
Heyward, Thomas, jr.	St. Luke's, S. C., in 1746	South Carolina,	— Mar., 1809
Hewes, Joseph . . .	Kingston, N. J., in 1730	North Carolina,	10th Nov., 1779
Hooper, William . . .	Boston, Mass., 17th June 1742	North Carolina,	— Oct., 1790
Hopkins, Stephen . . .	Scituate, " 7th Mar. 1707	R. I. & Prov. Pl.,	19th July, 1785
Hopkinson, Francis . . .	Philadelphia, Penn., in 1737	New Jersey,	9th May, 1790
Huntington, Samuel . . .	Windham, Conn., 3d July 1732	Connecticut,	5th Jan., 1796
Jefferson, Thomas . . .	Shadwell, Va., 13th April 1743	Virginia,	4th July, 1826
Lee, Francis Lightfoot . . .	Stratford, " 14th Oct. 1734	Virginia,	— April, 1797
Lee, Richard Henry . . .	Stratford, " 20th Jan. 1732	Virginia,	19th June, 1794
Lewis, Francis . . .	Landaff, Wales, in March 1713	New York,	30th Dec., 1803
Livingston, Philip . . .	Albany, N. Y., 15th Jan. 1716	New York,	12th June, 1778
Lynch, Thomas, jr. . .	St. George's, S. C., 5th Aug. 1749	South Carolina,	lost at sea, 1779
M'Kean, Thomas . . .	Chester co., Pa., 19th Mar. 1734	Delaware,	24th June, 1817
Middleton, Arthur . . .	Middleton Place, S. C., in 1743	South Carolina,	1st Jan., 1787
Morris, Lewis . . .	Morrisania, N. Y., in 1726	New York,	22d Jan., 1798
Morris, Robert . . .	Lancashire, England, Jan. 1733	Pennsylvania,	8th May, 1806
Morton, John . . .	Ridley, Penn., in 1724	Pennsylvania,	— April, 1777
Nelson, Thomas, jr. . .	York, Virginia, 26th Dec. 1738	Virginia,	4th Jan., 1789
Paca, William . . .	Wye-Hill, Md., 31st Oct. 1740	Maryland,	— 1799
Paine, Robert Treat . . .	Boston, Mass., in 1731	Massachusetts,	11th May, 1814
Penn, John . . .	Caroline co., Va., 17th May 1741	North Carolina,	— Sept., 1788
Read, George . . .	Cecil co., Md., in 1734	Delaware,	— 1798
Rodney, Caesar . . .	Dover, Delaware, in 1730	Delaware,	— 1783
Ross, George . . .	New Castle, Del., in 1730	Pennsylvania,	— July, 1779
Rush, Benjamin, M.D. . .	Byberry, Penn., 24th Dec. 1745	Pennsylvania,	19th April, 1813
Rutledge, Edward . . .	Charleston S. C., in Nov. 1749	South Carolina,	23d Jan., 1800
Sherman, Roger . . .	Newton, Mass., 19th April 1721	Connecticut,	23d July, 1793
Smith, James . . .	Ireland, —	Pennsylvania,	11th July, 1806
Stockton, Richard . . .	Princeton, N. J., 1st Oct. 1730	New Jersey,	28th Feb., 1781
Stone, Thomas . . .	Charles co., Md., in 1742	Maryland,	5th Oct., 1787
Taylor, George . . .	Ireland, in 1716	Pennsylvania,	23d Feb., 1781
Thornton, Matthew . . .	Ireland, in 1714	New Hampshire,	24th June, 1803
Walton, George . . .	Frederick co., Va., in 1740	Georgia,	2d Feb., 1804
Whipple, William . . .	Kittery, Maine, in 1739	New Hampshire,	28th Nov., 1785
Williams, William . . .	Lebanon, Conn., 8th April 1731	Connecticut,	2d Aug., 1811
Wilson, James . . .	Scotland, about 1742	Pennsylvania,	28th Aug., 1798
Witherspoon, John . . .	Yester, Scotland, 5th Feb. 1722	New Jersey,	15th Nov., 1794
Wolcott, Oliver . . .	Windsor, Conn., 26th Nov. 1726	Connecticut,	1st Dec., 1797
Wythe, George . . .	Elizabeth city co., Va., 1726	Virginia,	8th June, 1806

Among the signers of the Declaration of Independence, were men engaged in almost every vocation. There were twenty-four *lawyers*; fourteen *farmers*, or men devoted chiefly to agriculture; nine *merchants*; four *physicians*; one gospel *minister*, and three who were educated for that profession, but chose other avocations; and one *manufacturer*. A large portion of them lived to the age of three score and ten years. Three of them were over 90 years of age when they died; ten over 80; eleven over 70; fourteen over 60; eleven over 50; and six over 44. Mr. Lynch (lost at sea) was only 30. The aggregate years of life of the fifty-six patriots, were 3,687 years.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

Objects. WE the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

Legislative powers. SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.¹

House of Representatives. SECTION 2. The house of representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

Qualification of Representatives. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

Apportionment of Representatives. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,² which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.³ The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand,⁴ but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

Vacancies how filled. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

1. Note 4, p. 339.

2. This was not intended to restrict the power of imposing direct taxes, to States only.

3. Slaves. Every five slaves are accounted three persons, in making the apportionment.

4. Note 4, p. 339.

The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment. Speaker, how appointed.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.¹ Number of senators from each state.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies. Classification of Senators.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen. Qualification of senators.

The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided. Presiding officer of the Senate.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments: When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice² shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present. Senate, a court for trial of impeachments.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States: but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law. Judgment, in case of conviction.

SECTION 4. The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators. Elections of senators and representatives.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day. Meeting of Congress.

SECTION 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized Organization of Congress.

1. See art. v., page 368

2. Verse 3, p. 264.

to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Rules of proceeding. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Journal of Congress. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Adjournment of Congress. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

Compensation and privileges of members. SECTION 6. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Plurality of offices prohibited. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

Bills, how originated. SECTION 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

How bills become laws. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law.¹ But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sunday excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.²

Approval and veto powers of president. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (ex-

1. Verse 4, p. 309.

2. Verse 15, p. 313.

cept on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

Section 8. The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes,¹ duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

Powers vested in Congress.

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes;²

To establish an uniform rule of naturalization,³ and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies⁴ throughout the United States;

To coin money,⁵ regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish post-offices and post-roads;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;⁶

To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;⁷

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal,⁸ and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

To provide for calling forth the militia⁹ to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;¹⁰

1. The power of Congress to *lay and collect taxes, duties, &c.*, extends to the District of Columbia, and to the Territories of the United States, as well as to the States; but Congress is not bound to extend a direct tax to the district and territories.

2. Note 2, p. 25.

3. Under the Constitution of the United States, the power of naturalization is exclusively in Congress.

4. Since the adoption of the Constitution of the United States, a state has authority to pass a bankrupt law, provided such law does not impair the obligations of contracts within the meaning of the Constitution (art. i., sect. 10), and provided there be no act of Congress in force to establish a uniform system of bankruptcy conflicting with such law.

5. Verse 6, p. 256.

6. The first copyright law was enacted in 1790, on the petition of David Ramsay, the historian, and others.

7. Congress has power to provide for the punishment of offences committed by persons on board a ship-of-war of the United States, wherever that ship may lie.

8. Licensing privateers. Note 4, p. 198.

9. Note 7, p. 152.

10. See amendments, art. ii., p. 370.

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States,¹ and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings;—And

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

Immigrants how admitted.

SECTION 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.²

Habeas Corpus.

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus³ shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

Attainder.

No bill of attainder⁴ or ex post facto law⁵ shall be passed.

Taxes.

No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

Regulations regarding duties.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Money, how drawn.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Titles of nobility prohibited.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.⁶

Powers of state defined.

SECTION 10. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

1. Congress has authority to impose a direct tax on the District of Columbia [note 1, p. 272], in proportion to the census directed to be taken by the Constitution.

2. This was a provision for the gradual extinction of the slave trade carried on between Africa and the United States.

3. A writ for delivering a person from false imprisonment, or for removing a person from one court to another.

4. A deprivation of power to inherit or transmit property, a loss of civil rights, &c.

5. Declaring an act penal or criminal, which was innocent when committed.

6. Note 3, p. 212.

No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and impost, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

Executive power, in whom vested.

Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.¹

Presidential electors.

[The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for president; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall in like manner choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the vice-president].²

President and vice-president, how elected.

1. See amendment, article xii, p. 371.

2. This clause is annulled. See Amendments, article xii., p. 371. Also note 4, p. 272.

Time of choosing electors.	The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States. ¹
Qualifications of the president.	No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.
Resort in case of his disability.	In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president, ² and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.
Salary of the president.	The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them. ³
Oath of office.	Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the constitution of the United States."
Duties of the president.	SECTION 2. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, ⁴ and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.
His power to make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, &c.	He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; ⁵ and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments. ⁶
May fill vacancies.	The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.
Power to convene Congress.	SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their

1. Now the first Tuesday in November.

2. Verse 3, p. 318, and verse 5, p. 333.

3. The salary of the president of the United States is twenty-five thousand dollars a year.

4. Verse 2, p. 264.

5. Verse 13, p. 268.

6. Verse 2, p. 264.

consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them,¹ and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The president, vice-president and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

How officers may be removed.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish.² The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Judicial power, how vested.

SECTION 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more states;—between a state and citizens of another state;—between citizens of different states;³—between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

To what cases it extends.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Jurisdiction of the supreme court.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.⁴

Rules respecting trials.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

Treason defined.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

1. Verse 4, p. 315. and verse 2, p. 317.

2. Verse 3, p. 284.

3. A citizen of the District of Columbia is not a citizen of a state within the meaning of the Constitution of the United States.

4. See Amendments, article vi., p. 370

How punished.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.¹

ARTICLE IV.

Rights of States defined.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state.² And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Privileges of citizens.

SECTION 2. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

Executive requisition.

A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

Law regulating service or labor.

No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.³

New states, how formed and admitted.

SECTION 3. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the Legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the Congress.

Power of Congress over public lands.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

Republican government guaranteed.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guaranty to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

Constitution, how to be amended.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratifica-

1. Note 4, p. 364.

2. A judgment of a State court has the same credit, validity, and effect, in every other court within the United States, which it had in the court where it was rendered; and whatever pleas would be good to a suit thereon in such State, and none others, can be pleaded in any other court within the United States.

3. This is the clause of the Constitution, on which is based the provisions of the Fugitive Slave law of 1850. Verse 5, p. 335, and note 6, p. 335.

tion may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.¹

ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.

Validity of debts
recognized.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

Supreme law of the
land defined.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Oath, of whom re-
quired, and for what.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

Ratification.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.² In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,

President, and deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

JOHN LANGDON,
NICHOLAS GILMAN.

MASSACHUSETTS.

NATHANIEL GORHAM,
RUFUS KING.

CONNECTICUT.

WILLIAM SAM'L JOHNSON,
ROGER SHERMAN.

NEW YORK.

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

NEW JERSEY.

WILLIAM LIVINGSTON,
DAVID BREARLEY,
WILLIAM PATERSON,
JONATHAN DAYTON.

PENNSYLVANIA.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,
THOMAS MIFFLIN,
ROBERT MORRIS,
GEORGE CLYMER,
THOMAS FITZSIMONS,
JARED INGENSOLL,
JAMES WILSON,
GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

DELAWARE.

GEORGE REED,
GUNNING BEDFORD, JR.,
JOHN DICKINSON,
RICHARD BASSETT,
JACOB BROOM.

MARYLAND.

JAMES M'HENRY, [IFFER,
DANIEL OF ST THOS. JEN-
DANIEL CARROLL.

VIRGINIA.

JOHN BLAIR,
JAMES MADISON, JR.

NORTH CAROLINA.

WILLIAM BLOUNT,
RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT,
HUGH WILLIAMSON,

SOUTH CAROLINA.

JOHN RUTLEDGE,
CHARLES C. PINCKNEY,
CHARLES PINCKNEY,
PIERCE BUTLER.

GEORGIA.

WILLIAM FEW,
ABRAHAM BALDWIN.

Attest:

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

1. See ante art. 1, sec. 3, clause 1, p. 361.

2. Verse 9, p. 261.

AMENDMENTS¹

TO THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, RATIFIED ACCORDING TO THE PROVISIONS OF THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE FOREGOING CONSTITUTION.

- Freedom in religion and speech, and of the press.** ARTICLE THE FIRST. Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.
- Militia.** ARTICLE THE SECOND. A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.
- Soldiers.** ARTICLE THE THIRD. No soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.
- Search-warrants.** ARTICLE THE FOURTH. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.
- Capital crimes.** ARTICLE THE FIFTH. No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.
- Trial by jury.** ARTICLE THE SIXTH. In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.
- Suits at common law.** ARTICLE THE SEVENTH. In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of common law.
- Bail.** ARTICLE THE EIGHTH. Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.
- Certain rights defined.** ARTICLE THE NINTH. The enumeration in the Constitution,

1. Congress, at its first session, begun and held in the city of New York, on Wednesday, the 4th of March, 1789, proposed to the legislatures of the several states, twelve amendments to the Constitution, ten of which, ten only, were adopted. The others have since been adopted.

of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE THE TENTH. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

Rights reserved.

ARTICLE THE ELEVENTH.¹ The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United states by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Judicial power limited.

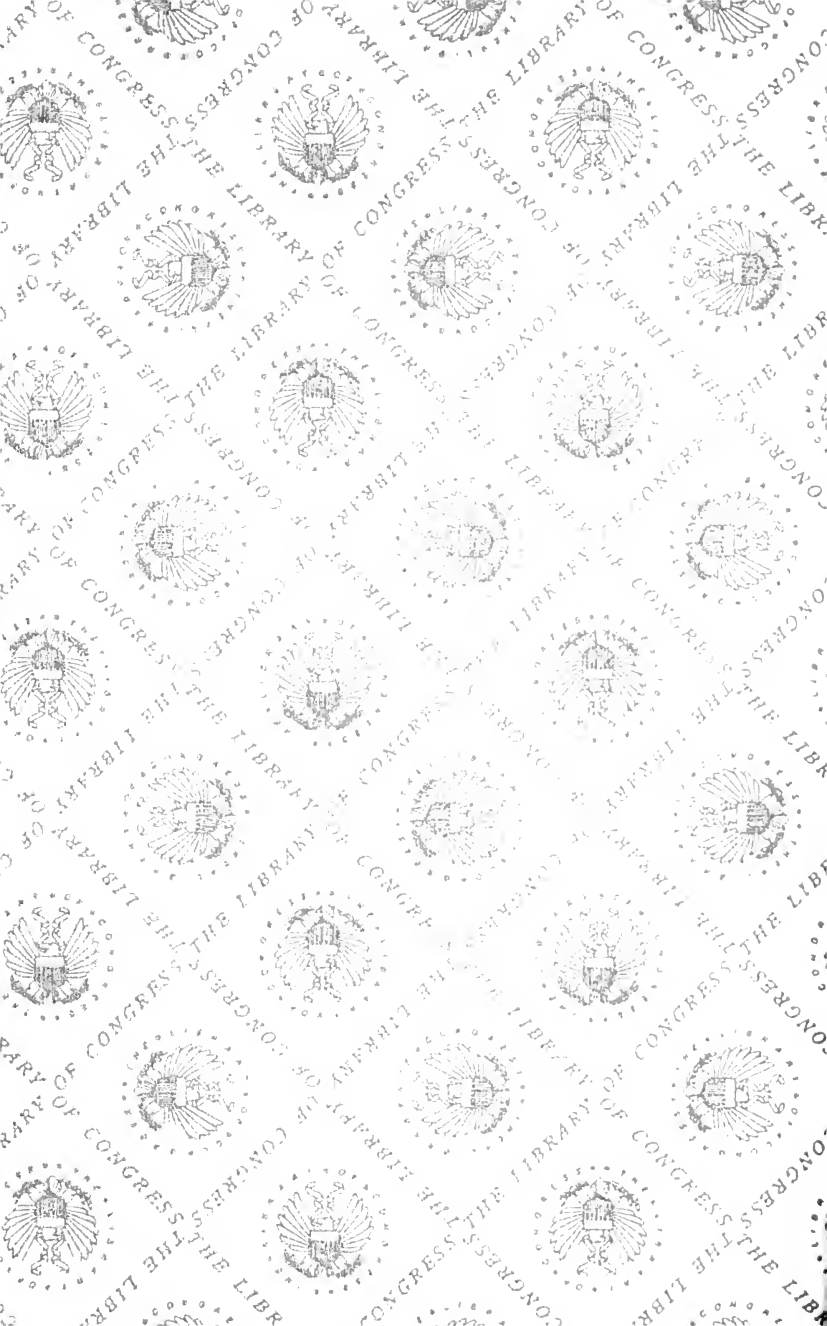
ARTICLE THE TWELFTH.² The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.³

Amendment respecting the election of president and vice-president.

1. This amendment was proposed at the first session of the third Congress. See ante, art. iii., sec. 2, clause 1, page 367.

2. Proposed at the first session of the eighth Congress. See ante, art. ii., sec. 1, clause 3, page 265.

3. Another amendment was proposed as article xiii., at the second session of the eleventh Congress, but not having been ratified by a sufficient number of states, has not yet become valid as a part of the Constitution of the United States.



JAN 13 1989

